Notice

1. All information included in this document is current as of the date this document is issued. Such information, however, is subject to change without any prior notice. Before purchasing or using any Renesas Electronics products listed herein, please contact Renesas Electronics sales office. Also, please pay regular and careful attention to additional and different information to be disclosed by Renesas Electronics such as that disclosed through our website.

2. Renesas Electronics does not assume any liability for infringement of patents, copyrights, or other intellectual property rights of third parties by or arising from the use of Renesas Electronics products or technical information described in this document. No license, express, implied or otherwise, is granted hereby under any patents, copyrights or other intellectual property rights of Renesas Electronics or others.

3. You should not alter, modify, copy, or otherwise misappropriate any Renesas Electronics product, whether in whole or in part.

4. Descriptions of circuits, software and other related information in this document are provided only to illustrate the operation of semiconductor products and application examples. You are fully responsible for the incorporation of these circuits, software, and information in the design of your equipment. Renesas Electronics assumes no responsibility for any losses incurred by you or third parties arising from the use of these circuits, software, or information.

5. When exporting the products or technology described in this document, you should comply with the applicable export control laws and regulations and follow the procedures required by such laws and regulations. You should not use Renesas Electronics products or the technology described in this document for any purpose relating to military applications or use by the military, including but not limited to the development of weapons of mass destruction. Renesas Electronics products and technology may not be used for or incorporated into any products or systems whose manufacture, use, or sale is prohibited under any applicable domestic or foreign laws or regulations.

6. Renesas Electronics has used reasonable care in preparing the information included in this document, but Renesas Electronics does not warrant that such information is error free. Renesas Electronics assumes no liability whatsoever for any damages incurred by you resulting from errors in or omissions from the information included herein.

7. Renesas Electronics products are classified according to the following three quality grades: "Standard", "High Quality", and "Specific". The recommended applications for each Renesas Electronics product depends on the product's quality grade, as indicated below. You must check the quality grade of each Renesas Electronics product before using it in a particular application. You may not use any Renesas Electronics product for any application categorized as "Specific" without the prior written consent of Renesas Electronics. Further, you may not use any Renesas Electronics product for any application for which it is not intended without the prior written consent of Renesas Electronics. Renesas Electronics shall not be in any way liable for any damages or losses incurred by you or third parties arising from the use of any Renesas Electronics product for an application categorized as "Specific" or for which the product is not intended where you have failed to obtain the prior written consent of Renesas Electronics. The quality grade of each Renesas Electronics product is "Standard" unless otherwise expressly specified in a Renesas Electronics data sheets or data books, etc.

- "Standard": computers; office equipment; communications equipment; test and measurement equipment; audio and visual equipment; home electronic appliances; machine tools; personal electronic equipment; and industrial robots.
- "High Quality": transportation equipment (automobiles, trains, ships, etc.); traffic control systems; anti-disaster systems; anti- crime systems; safety equipment; and medical equipment not specifically designed for life support.
- "Specific": Aircraft; aerospace equipment; submarine repeaters; nuclear reactor control systems; medical equipment or systems for life support (e.g. artificial life support devices or systems); surgical implantations; or healthcare intervention (e.g. excision, etc.), and any other applications or purposes that pose a direct threat to human life.

8. You should use the Renesas Electronics products described in this document within the range specified by Renesas Electronics, especially with respect to the maximum rating, operating supply voltage range, movement power voltage range, heat radiation characteristics, installation and other product characteristics. Renesas Electronics shall have no liability for malfunctions or damages arising out of the use of Renesas Electronics products beyond such specified ranges.

9. Although Renesas Electronics endeavors to improve the quality and reliability of its products, semiconductor products have specific characteristics such as the occurrence of failure at a certain rate and malfunctions under certain use conditions. Further, Renesas Electronics products are not subject to radiation resistance design. Please be sure to implement safety measures to guard them against the possibility of physical injury, and injury or damage caused by fire in the event of the failure of a Renesas Electronics product, such as safety design for hardware and software including but not limited to redundancy, fire control and malfunction prevention, appropriate treatment for aging degradation or any other appropriate measures. Because the evaluation of microcomputer software alone is very difficult, please evaluate the safety of the final products or system manufactured by you.

10. Please contact a Renesas Electronics sales office for details as to environmental matters such as the environmental compatibility of each Renesas Electronics product. Please use Renesas Electronics products in compliance with all applicable laws and regulations that regulate the inclusion or use of controlled substances, including without limitation, the EU RoHS Directive. Renesas Electronics assumes no liability for damages or losses occurring as a result of your noncompliance with applicable laws and regulations.

11. This document may not be reproduced or duplicated, in any form, in whole or in part, without prior written consent of Renesas Electronics.

12. Please contact a Renesas Electronics sales office if you have any questions regarding the information contained in this document or Renesas Electronics products, or if you have any other inquiries.

(Note 1) "Renesas Electronics" as used in this document means Renesas Electronics Corporation and also includes its majority-owned subsidiaries.

(Note 2) "Renesas Electronics product(s)" means any product developed or manufactured by or for Renesas Electronics.
Preface

This manual explains how to use the C/C++ compiler, assembler, and optimizing linkage editor for the SuperH RISC engine microcomputers. This system translates source programs written in C/C++ language, DSP-C language*1 or assembly language into relocatable object programs for SuperH RISC engine microcomputers.

Be sure to read this manual thoroughly and that you grasp its contents before using the compiler.

Notes on Symbols: The following symbols are used in this manual.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;&gt;</td>
<td>Indicates an item to be specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[]</td>
<td>Indicates an item that can be omitted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>Indicates that the preceding item can be repeated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Δ</td>
<td>Indicates one or more blanks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ ]</td>
<td>Indicates that one of the items must be selected.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This manual is intended for the software running under Microsoft® Windows® 2000, Windows® XP, Windows® Vista, or Windows® 7*2 on IBM PC*3 and compatible computers.

Notes:
1. DSP-C was proposed to the ISO Standardization Committee in 1998 by ACE (Associated Compiler Experts) of the Netherlands, based on their research into language extensions necessary for DSP compiler implementation.
2. Microsoft® and Windows® are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.
3. IBM PC is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.
Contents

Section 1  Overview ........................................................................................................ 1
  1.1 Procedures for Developing Programs ................................................................. 1
  1.2 Compiler .............................................................................................................. 3
  1.3 Assembler ............................................................................................................ 3
  1.4 Optimizing Linkage Editor ................................................................................... 4
  1.5 Prelinker .............................................................................................................. 4
  1.6 Standard Library Generator ................................................................................. 4
  1.7 Call Walker ......................................................................................................... 5

Section 2  Compiler Options ..................................................................................... 7
  2.1 Option Specification Rules ................................................................................... 7
  2.2 Interpretation of Options ..................................................................................... 7
     2.2.1 Source Options .......................................................................................... 8
     2.2.2 Object Options ......................................................................................... 13
     2.2.3 List Options ............................................................................................ 30
     2.2.4 Optimize Options .................................................................................... 33
     2.2.5 Other Options ......................................................................................... 61
     2.2.6 CPU Options ........................................................................................... 77
     2.2.7 Options Other Than Above ...................................................................... 86

Section 3  Assembler Options ............................................................................... 91
  3.1 Command Line Format ....................................................................................... 91
  3.2 List of Options .................................................................................................. 91
     3.2.1 Source Options ....................................................................................... 92
     3.2.2 Object Options ....................................................................................... 96
     3.2.3 List Options .......................................................................................... 101
     3.2.4 Other Option ......................................................................................... 108
     3.2.5 CPU Options ......................................................................................... 112
     3.2.6 Options Other than Above .................................................................... 117

Section 4 Optimizing Linkage Editor Options .................................................. 125
  4.1 Option Specifications ....................................................................................... 125
     4.1.1 Command Line Format ....................................................................... 125
     4.1.2 Subcommand File Format ................................................................. 125
  4.2 List of Options .................................................................................................. 125
     4.2.1 Input Options ....................................................................................... 126
### Section 8.4 
8.4.2 Option Information ................................................................. 232  
8.4.3 Error Information ................................................................. 232  
8.4.4 Linkage Map Information ..................................................... 233  
8.4.5 Symbol Information .............................................................. 234  
8.4.6 Symbol Deletion Optimization Information ......................... 235  
8.4.7 Cross-Reference Information ............................................... 236  
8.4.8 Total Section Size ............................................................... 237  
8.4.9 Vector Information .............................................................. 237  
8.4.10 CRC Information ............................................................... 238  

### Section 8.5 
8.5 Library Listings ............................................................................. 239  
8.5.1 Structure of Library Listing ................................................... 239  
8.5.2 Option Information ............................................................... 240  
8.5.3 Error Information ............................................................... 241  
8.5.4 Library Information ............................................................. 241  
8.5.5 Module, Section, and Symbol Information within Library ........ 242  

### Section 9 Programming ............................................................... 243  
9.1 Program Structure ........................................................................ 243  
9.1.1 Sections .................................................................................. 243  
9.1.2 C/C++ Program Sections .................................................... 244  
9.1.3 Assembly Program Sections ................................................. 248  
9.1.4 Linking Sections ................................................................... 250  
9.2 Creation of Initial Setting Programs ............................................. 253  
9.2.1 Memory Allocation ............................................................... 254  
9.2.2 Execution Environment Settings .......................................... 262  
9.3 Linking C/C++ Programs and Assembly Programs ................... 300  
9.3.1 Method for Mutual Referencing of External Names ............... 300  
9.3.2 Function Calling Interface .................................................. 302  
9.3.3 Examples of Parameter Allocation ....................................... 312  
9.3.4 Using the Registers and Stack Area ...................................... 315  
9.4 Important Information on Programming ................................. 316  
9.4.1 Important Information on Program Coding ......................... 316  
9.4.2 Important Information on Compiling a C Program with the C++ Compiler ........................................................................ 321  
9.4.3 Important Information on Program Development ................ 322  

### Section 10 C/C++ Language Specifications ................................. 323  
10.1 Language Specifications .......................................................... 323  
10.1.1 Compiler Specifications .................................................... 323  
10.1.2 Internal Data Representation ............................................. 331  
10.1.3 Floating-Point Number Specifications ............................... 348
### 10.1.4 Operator Evaluation Order ................................................................. 357

### 10.2 DSP-C Specifications ............................................................................... 358
- 10.2.1 Fixed-Point Data Types ..................................................................... 358
- 10.2.2 Qualifiers ......................................................................................... 358
- 10.2.3 Constants ......................................................................................... 361
- 10.2.4 Type Conversion .............................................................................. 362
- 10.2.5 Arithmetic Conversion .................................................................... 364
- 10.2.6 Pointer Conversion .......................................................................... 365
- 10.2.7 Operators ......................................................................................... 365
- 10.2.8 Libraries .......................................................................................... 366

### 10.3 Extended Specifications ......................................................................... 369
- 10.3.1 #pragma Extension Specifiers .......................................................... 369
- 10.3.2 Section Address Operator ................................................................. 408
- 10.3.3 Intrinsic Functions ........................................................................... 410

### 10.4 C/C++ Libraries ...................................................................................... 487
- 10.4.1 Standard C Libraries ........................................................................ 487
- 10.4.2 EC++ Class Libraries ....................................................................... 665
- 10.4.3 Reentrant Library ............................................................................ 753
- 10.4.4 Unsupported Libraries ..................................................................... 759
- 10.4.5 DSP Library ..................................................................................... 760

### Section 11 Assembly Specifications ............................................................ 817

### 11.1 Program Elements .................................................................................. 817
- 11.1.1 Source Statements .......................................................................... 817
- 11.1.2 Reserved Words .............................................................................. 821
- 11.1.3 Symbols .......................................................................................... 821
- 11.1.4 Constants ....................................................................................... 824
- 11.1.5 Location Counter ............................................................................ 834
- 11.1.6 Expressions ..................................................................................... 835
- 11.1.7 String Literals ................................................................................. 844
- 11.1.8 Local Label ..................................................................................... 845

### 11.2 Executable Instructions ......................................................................... 847
- 11.2.1 Overview of Executable Instructions .............................................. 847
- 11.2.2 Notes on Executable Instructions .................................................. 853

### 11.3 DSP Instructions ..................................................................................... 884
- 11.3.1 Program Contents .......................................................................... 884
- 11.3.2 DSP Instructions ............................................................................ 888

### 11.4 Assembler Directives ............................................................................ 897

### 11.5 File Inclusion Function ......................................................................... 964

### 11.6 Conditional Assembly Function ........................................................... 967
Section 14 Error Messages for the Optimizing Linkage Editor ....................... 1127
14.1 Error Format and Error Levels................................................................. 1127
14.2 Return Values for Errors........................................................................ 1127
14.3 List of Messages ..................................................................................... 1128

Section 15 Limitations .................................................................................. 1147
15.1 Limitations of the Compiler................................................................. 1147
15.2 Limitations of the Assembler............................................................... 1150

Section 16 Notes on Version Upgrade ...................................................... 1151
16.1 Notes on Version Upgrade..................................................................... 1151
  16.1.1 Guaranteed Program Operation ....................................................... 1151
  16.1.2 Compatibility with Earlier Version .................................................. 1152
  16.1.3 Compatibility with Objects for Earlier Version ............................. 1153
  16.1.4 Command-line Interface ................................................................. 1154
  16.1.5 Provided Contents ......................................................................... 1157
  16.1.6 List File Specification .................................................................... 1158
16.2 Additions and Improvements ................................................................ 1158
  16.2.1 Common Additions and Improvements (Package: Ver. 6) .............. 1158
  16.2.2 Added and Improved Compiler Functions ...................................... 1158
  16.2.3 Added and Improved Assembler Functions .................................... 1165
  16.2.4 Added and Improved Optimizing Linkage Editor Functions ............ 1165

Section 17 Appendix .................................................................................... 1171
17.1 S-Type and HEX File Format ............................................................... 1171
  17.1.1 S-Type File Format ....................................................................... 1171
  17.1.2 HEX File Format ....................................................................... 1173
17.2 ASCII Code List .................................................................................... 1176
Section 1   Overview

1.1   Procedures for Developing Programs

Figure 1.1 shows the procedures for developing programs. The shaded part shows software provided in the SuperH RISC engine C/C++ compiler package.

The C/C++ compiler, assembler, optimizing linkage editor, standard library generator, and call walker are explained in this manual.
Figure 1.1 Procedures for Developing Programs
Outlines of the C/C++ compiler, assembler, optimizing linkage editor, prelinker, standard library generator, and call walker are given in the following instructions.

1.2 Compiler

The SuperH RISC engine C/C++ compiler (hereinafter referred to as compiler) is software that takes source programs written in C or C++ language as inputs, and produces relocatable object programs or assembly source programs for SuperH RISC engine microcomputers.

Features of this compiler are as follows:

1. Generates an object program that can be written to ROM for installation in a user system.
2. Supports an optimization that improves the speed of execution of object programs and minimizes program size.
3. Supports the C and C++ programming languages.
4. Supports functions that are essential for the programming of embedded programs but are not supported by the C and C++ languages as extended functions. Such functions include interrupt functions and descriptions of system instructions.
5. The output of debugging information to enable C/C++ source-level debugging by the debugger is supported.
6. Either an assembly source program or a relocatable object program can be selected for output.
7. Supports an inter-module optimization information output to execute optimization for the optimizing linkage editor.

1.3 Assembler

The SuperH RISC engine assembler (hereinafter referred to as assembler) is software that takes source programs written in assembly language, and outputs relocatable object programs for SuperH RISC engine microcomputers.

Features of this assembler are as follows:

1. Enables the efficient writing of source programs by providing the preprocessor functions listed below:
   — File include function
   — Conditional assembly function
   — Macro function
2. The mnemonics for execution instruction and assembly directives conform to the naming rules laid out in the IEEE-694 specifications, and the system is uniform.
1.4 Optimizing Linkage Editor

The optimizing linkage editor is software that takes multiple object programs output by the compiler or assembler and produces load modules or library files.

Features of this optimizing linkage editor are as follows:

1. Optimization can be applied to a set of several object files, depending on memory allocation and relations among function calls which cannot be optimized by the compiler.
2. Any of the following five types of load modules can be selected for output:
   — Relocatable ELF format
   — Absolute ELF format
   — S-type format
   — HEX format
   — Binary format
3. Generates and edits library files.
4. Outputs symbol reference count list.
5. Deletes debugging information from library and load module files.
6. Specifies the output of a stack information file for use by the call walker.

1.5 Prelinker

The prelinker is called from the optimizing linkage editor. When a C++ program template or runtime type-detection function is used, the prelinker calls the compiler and instructs it to generate the necessary object files. When neither a C++ program template nor the runtime type-detection function is used, the speed of linkage can be improved by specifying the `noprelink` option for the optimizing linkage editor.

1.6 Standard Library Generator

The SuperH RISC engine standard library generator (hereinafter referred to as the standard library generator) is a software system for the reconfiguration of standard library files provided, using user-specified options.

The standard library functions provided with the compiler include the standard set of C library functions, a set of C++ class library functions for embedded systems, and a set of runtime routines (arithmetic operations that are necessary for the execution of a program). In some cases, runtime routine will be necessary, even though library functions are not used in source programs.
1.7 Call Walker

The call walker is software that takes the stack information file that is output by the optimizing linkage editor and calculates the size of the stack that will be used by C/C++ programs.
Section 2  Compiler Options

2.1  Option Specification Rules

The format of the command line to initiate the compiler is as follows:

```
shc[<option>...] [<file name>[<option>...] ...]
<option>:-<option>=[<suboption>] [...] ...
```

2.2  Interpretation of Options

In the command line format, uppercase letters indicate the abbreviations and characters underlined indicate the defaults.

The format of the dialog menus that correspond to the integrated development environment is category name [Item].

The order of options corresponds to that of the tabs in the integrated development environment.

Note that conditions apply to the application of some options related to optimization, i.e. some may not be applicable. Check the output code to see whether or not the optimization has actually been performed.
### 2.2.1 Source Options

#### Table 2.1 Source Category Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Command Line Format</th>
<th>Dialog Menu</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Include file directory</td>
<td>Include = &lt;path name&gt;[,...]</td>
<td>Source</td>
<td>Specifies include-file include path name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default include file</td>
<td>PREInclude = &lt;file name&gt;[,...]</td>
<td>Source</td>
<td>Includes the specified files at the head of compiling units.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macro name definition</td>
<td>DEFINE = &lt;sub&gt;[,...]</td>
<td>Source</td>
<td>Defines &lt;string literal&gt; as &lt;macro name&gt;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information message</td>
<td>MESSAGE [= &lt;error number&gt;][- &lt;error number&gt;[,...]]</td>
<td>Source</td>
<td>Output Not output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inter-file inline expansion</td>
<td>FILE_INLINE_PATH = &lt;path name&gt;[,...]</td>
<td>Source</td>
<td>Specifies the path name where obtains a file for inline expansion between files.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message level</td>
<td>CHAnge_message = &lt;sub&gt;[,...] &lt;sub&gt;:&lt;level&gt; [=&gt;&lt;-m],... ] &lt;level&gt;:{Information</td>
<td>Source</td>
<td>Changes message level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>Error }</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Include: Include File Directory

Source[Show entries for :] [Include file directories]

- **Command Line Format**
  Include = <path name>[, …]

- **Description**
  Specifies the name of the path where the include file is stored. Two or more path names can be specified by separating them with a comma (,).

  System include files are retrieved in the order of the `include` option specification directory, the environment variable `SHC_INC` specification directory, and the environment variable `SHC_LIB` specification directory. User include files are retrieved in the order of the current directory, the `include` option specification directory, the environment variable `SHC_INC` specification directory, and the environment variable `SHC_LIB` specification directory.

- **Example**
  shc -include=c:\usr\inc,c:\usr\shc test.c

  Directories `c:\usr\inc` and `c:\usr\shc` are retrieved as include file paths.

PREInclude: Default Include File

Source[Show entries for :] [Preinclude]

- **Command Line Format**
  PREInclude = <file name>[, …]

- **Description**
  Includes the specified file contents at the head of the compiling unit. Two or more file names can be specified by separating them with a comma (,).

- **Example**
  shc -preinclude=a.h test.c

  — Contents of <test.c>
  
  ```
  int a;
  main(){...}
  ```

  — Interpretation at compilation
  
  ```
  #include "a.h"
  int a;
  main(){...}
  ```
DEFine: Macro Name Definition

Source[Show entries for :][Defines]

- Command Line Format
  DEFine = <sub> [,…] <sub>: <macro name> [= <string literal>]]

- Description
  This option is the same as `#define` described in the C/C++ source file.
  When `<macro name>=<string literal>` is specified, `<string literal>` is defined as a macro name.
  When only `<macro name>` is specified for a suboption, the macro name is assumed to be defined. Names or integer constants can be written in `<string literal>`.

MESSage, NOMESSAGE: Information Message

Source[Show entries for :][Messages][Display information level messages]

- Command Line Format
  MESSage
  NOMESSAGE [= <error number> [- <error number>][,…]]

- Description
  This option specifies whether or not the information-level messages are output.
  When the `message` option is specified, the compiler outputs information-level messages.
  When the `nomessage` option is specified, the compiler inhibits the output of the information-level messages. When the error number is specified by a suboption, the output of the specified information-level messages will be inhibited.
  A range of error numbers to be inhibited can be specified by using a hyphen (-), that is, in the form `<error number> - <error number>`. The default for this option is `nomessage`.

- Example
  shc -message test.c
  Information-level messages will be output.
FILE_INLINE_PATH: Inter-file Inline Expansion Directory Specification

Source[Show entries for :][File inline path]

- **Command Line Format**
  
  
  ```
  FILE_INLINE_PATH = <path name> [,…]
  ```

- **Description**

  Specifies the name of the path where a file for inter-file inline expansion is stored.
  
  Two or more path names can be specified by separating them with a comma (,).
  
  Files for inter-file inline expansion are retrieved in the order of the file_inline_path option specification directory and the current directory.

- **Example**

  ```
  shc -file_inline_path=c:\usr\file -file_inline=test2.c test.c
  ```

  Directory `c:\usr\file` is considered as the inter-file inline expansion specification directory to retrieve `test2.c` specified by the file_inline option.
CHAnge_message: Message Level

Source[Message level :]

- Command Line Format
  CHAnge_message = <sub>[,...]
    <sub> : <error level>[=<error number>[- <error number>][,...]]
    <error level> : { Information | Warning | Error }

- Description
  Changes the message level of information-level and warning-level messages.

- Example
  change_message=information=<error number>
  Warning level messages with the specified error numbers are changed to Information level messages.
  change_message=warning=<error number>
  Information level messages with the specified error numbers are changed to Warning level messages.
  change_message=error=<error number>
  Information and Warning level messages with the specified error numbers are changed to Error level messages.
  change_message=information
  All warning-level messages are changed to Information level messages.
  change_message=warning
  All information-level messages are changed to Warning level messages.
  change_message=error
  All information-level and warning-level messages are changed to Error level messages.

- Remarks
  Output of the messages which were changed to the information-level can be disabled by nomessage specification.
### 2.2.2 Object Options

#### Table 2.2 Object Category Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Command Line Format</th>
<th>Dialog Menu</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pre-processor expansion</td>
<td>PreProcessor [= &lt;file name&gt;]</td>
<td></td>
<td>Outputs source program after preprocessor expansion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOLine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Disables #line output at preprocessor expansion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Object type</td>
<td>Code =</td>
<td></td>
<td>Outputs machine code program.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{ Machinecode [ ] Asmcode }</td>
<td></td>
<td>Outputs assembly-source program.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debugging information</td>
<td>DEBug NODEBug</td>
<td></td>
<td>Output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Not output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section name</td>
<td>Section = &lt;sub&gt;[....] &lt;sub&gt;:{</td>
<td></td>
<td>Program area section name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Program=&lt;section name&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td>Constant area section name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Const=&lt;section name&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td>Initialized data area section name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Data=&lt;section name&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td>Non-initialized data area section name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bss=&lt;section name&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Area of string literal to be</td>
<td>String = { Const [ ] Data }</td>
<td></td>
<td>Outputs string literal to constant section (C).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>output</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Outputs string literal to initialized data section (D).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Object file name specification</td>
<td>Objectfile = &lt;file name&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td>Outputs the object file of the specified file name.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2.2  Object Category Options (cont)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Command Line Format</th>
<th>Dialog Menu</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Template instance generation</td>
<td>Template={ None</td>
<td>Object [Code generation]</td>
<td>Does not generate instances.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Static</td>
<td>[Template :]</td>
<td>Generates instances as internal linkage only for referenced templates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Used</td>
<td></td>
<td>Generates instances as external linkage only for referenced templates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALI</td>
<td></td>
<td>Generates instances for templates declared or referenced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td></td>
<td>Generates instances at linkage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABS16/20/28/32 declaration</td>
<td>&lt;ABS&gt;=&lt;sub&gt;[…]</td>
<td>Object [Code generation2]</td>
<td>Specifies the memory space where the label addresses or runtime routines belonging to the specified section are to be allocated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;ABS&gt;:</td>
<td>[Address declaration]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{ ABS16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{ ABS20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{ ABS28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{ ABS32}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;sub&gt;:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{ Program</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{ Const</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{ Data</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{ Bss</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{ Run</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{ All }</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Method of division</td>
<td>Division = Cpu =</td>
<td>Object [Code generation]</td>
<td>Uses the CPU’s division instruction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[except for SH-1]</td>
<td>{ Inline</td>
<td>[Division sub-options :]</td>
<td>Converts division to multiplication and performs inline expansion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{ Runtime}</td>
<td></td>
<td>Calls run-time routine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[Use no FPU instructions]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 2.2 Object Category Options (cont)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Command Line Format</th>
<th>Dialog Menu</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>16-byte or 32-byte alignment of labels</td>
<td>ALIGN16</td>
<td>Object [Code generation] [Alignment of branch destination]</td>
<td>Every first label appear an unconditional branch instruction in a program section is aligned on a 16-byte boundary. Every first label appear an unconditional branch instruction in a program section is aligned on a 32-byte boundary. Does not necessarily place labels on a 16-byte or 32-byte boundary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALIGN32</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NOALign</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Order of uninitialized variables</td>
<td>BSs_order = {DEClaration</td>
<td>DEFinition }</td>
<td>Object [Code generation2] [Order of uninitialized variables :]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disposition of STUFF [= {Bss</td>
<td>Data</td>
<td>Const} [...]] variables</td>
<td>NOSTuff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disposition of variables in $G0/$G1</td>
<td>STUFF_GBR</td>
<td>Object [Code generation2] [Disposition of Variables in $G0/$G1]</td>
<td>Assigns variables according to the size of variables in $G0/$G1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alignment of branch destination</td>
<td>ALIGN4 = {ALL</td>
<td>LOOP</td>
<td>INMOSTLOOP }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allocate const volatile variables</td>
<td>CONST_VOLATILE = {DATA</td>
<td>CONST}</td>
<td>Object [Code generation] [const volatile variables:]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

R20UT0704EJ0102 Rev. 1.02
Mar 01, 2022
PREProcessor, NOLINE: Preprocessor Expansion

- Object[Output file type :][Preprocessed source file]
  [Suppress #line in preprocessed source file]

- Command Line Format
  PREProcessor [= <file name>]

- Description
  Outputs a source program processed by the preprocessor.
  If no <file name> is specified, an output file with the same file name as the source file and
  with a standard extension is created. The standard extension after C compilation is p (if the
  input source program is written in C), and that after C++ compilation is pp (if the input source
  program is written in C++).

  When *preprocessor* is specified, no object file is output from the compiler.
  When *noline* is specified, disables #line output at preprocessor expansion.

- Remarks
  When *preprocessor* is specified, other than the following options become invalid:
  show=source, include, expansion, width, length, tab, listfile, define, include, comment, euc,
  sjis, latin1, subcommand, preinclude, message, lang, logo, cpu, change_message

Code: Object Type

Object[Output file type :][Machine code][Assembly source code]

- Command Line Format
  Code = { Machinecode | Asmcode }

- Description
  Specifies an object file output type.
  When *code=machinecode* is specified, a relocatable object program (machine code) is
  generated.
  When *code=asmcode* is specified, an assembly source program is generated.
  The default for this option is *code=machinecode*.

- Remarks
  When *code=asmcode* is specified, *show=object* and *goptimize* become invalid.
DEBug, NODEBug: Debugging Information

Object[Generate debug information]

- Command Line Format
  DEBug
  NODEBug

- Description
  When the debug option is specified, debugging information will be output to object files. The debug option is valid regardless of whether or not the optimization option is specified. When nodebug option is specified, no debugging information will be output to the object file. The default for this option is nodebug.

SECTION: Section Name

Object[Code generation][Section :][Program section (P)][Const section (C)][Data section (D)]
[Uninitialized data section (B)]

- Command Line Format
  SEction = <sub>[…]
  <sub>: [ Program=<section name>
  | Const=<section name>
  | Data=<section name>
  | Bss=<section name>
  ]

- Description
  Specifies the section name of an object program.
  section=program=<section name> specifies the section name in the program area.
  section=const=<section name> specifies the section name in the constant area.
  section=data=<section name> specifies the section name in the initialized data area.
  section=bss=<section name> specifies the section name in the non-initialized data area. The <section name> must be alphabetic, numeric, or underscore (_) or $. The first character must not be numeric. The section name must be specified within 8192 characters. The default for this option is section=program=P, const=C, data=D, bss=B.
Remarks
For details on correspondence between programs and section names, refer to section 9.1, Program Structure. The same section name cannot be specified for different areas of the section.

STring: String Literal Output Area

Object[Code generation][Store string data in :]

- Command Line Format
  STring = { Const | Data }

- Description
  Specifies the destination where string literals are output.
  When string=const is specified, the compiler outputs the string literals to the constant area.
  When string=data is specified, the compiler outputs the string literals to the initialized data area.
  The string literals output to the initialized data area can be modified at program execution; however, the initialized data area must be allocated in both ROM and RAM in order to transfer the string literals to RAM from ROM at the beginning of program execution. For details on the initial settings of the initialized data area or on memory allocation, refer to section 9.2.1 Memory Allocation.
  The default for this option is string=const.

O Objective: Object File Output

Object[Output directory :]

- Command Line Format
  OBJectfile = <object file name>

- Description
  Specifies an object file name to be output.
  If this option is not specified, the object file name becomes the same as that of the source file and the extension becomes obj for a relocatable object program and src for an assembly source program, which is determined by code.
Template: Template Instance Generation

Object[Code generation][Template :]

- Command Line Format
  Template = { None
  | Static
  | Used
  | ALI
  | Auto }

- Description
  Specifies the condition to generate template instances.
  When template=none is specified, instances are not generated.
  When template=static is specified, instances of templates referenced in the compiling unit are generated. However, generated functions contain the internal linkage.
  When template=used is specified, instances of templates referenced in the compiling unit are generated. However, generated functions contain the external linkage.
  When template=all is specified, instances of all templates declared or referenced in the compiling unit are generated.
  When template=auto is specified, instances needed at linkage are generated.

- Remarks
  When code=asmcode is specified, template=static must be specified.

ABS16, ABS20, ABS28, ABS32: ABS16/20/28/32 Declaration

Object[Code generation][Address declaration]

- Command Line Format
  ABs16 = { Program | Const | Data | Bss | Run | All }[…]
  ABS20 = { Program | Const | Data | Bss | Run | All }[…]
  ABS28 = { Program | Const | Data | Bss | Run | All }[…]
  ABS32 = { Program | Const | Data | Bss | Run | All }[…]

- Description
  Specifies the memory space where the label addresses or runtime routines belonging to the section specified by the suboption are to be allocated.
  The default for this option is abs32=all.
Table 2.3 Address Ranges

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Address Range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abs16</td>
<td>0x00000000 to 0xFFFF8000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0x0007FFFF to 0xFFFFFFFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abs20</td>
<td>0x00000000 to 0x0007FFFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0xFFF80000 to 0xFFFFFFFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abs28</td>
<td>0x00000000 to 0x07FFFF7F*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0xF8000000 to 0xFFFFFFFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abs32</td>
<td>0x00000000 to 0xFFFFFFFF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: *Note that the end of the address range is 0x07FFFF7F.

Table 2.4 Suboptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suboption</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>program</td>
<td>Allocates the program areas to the specified memory space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const</td>
<td>Allocates the constant areas to the specified memory space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>data</td>
<td>Allocates the initialized data areas to the specified memory space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bss</td>
<td>Allocates the uninitialized data areas to the specified memory space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>Allocates the runtime routines to the specified memory space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all</td>
<td>Allocates all areas to the specified memory space.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Example
  Program
  ```
  -abs20=program -abs28=const,data
  → Same as -abs20=program -abs28=const,data -abs32=bss,run
  -abs20=data -abs16=data
  → Outputs a warning message and -abs16=data becomes valid
  ```

- Remarks
  When this option and `#pragma abs16|abs20|abs28|abs32` are specified simultaneously, the `#pragma` specification is valid.
  When this option and `#pragma gbr_base|gbr_base1` are specified simultaneously, this option specification is not applied to the variables specified by `#pragma gbr_base|gbr_base1`.
  `abs20|abs28` is only valid when `cpu=sh2a|sh2afpu` is specified.
Division: Division Method Selection

Object[Code generation][Division sub-options :]/CPU[Division :]

- Command Line Format
  
  Division = { Cpu [= { Inline | Runtime }]
              | Peripheral
              | Nomask }

- Description
  Selects the method of integer type division and residue.

  When division=cpu=inline is specified, division operations on constants are converted into multiplications and inline-expanded, and for division operations on variables, the DIVS or DIVU instruction is selected when cpu is SH-2A or SH2A-FPU; otherwise, the runtime routine for the DIV1 instruction is selected. This option is invalid when cpu=sh1 is specified.

  When division=cpu=runtime is specified, if a division cannot be performed through shift operations, the DIVS or DIVU instruction is selected when cpu is SH-2A or SH2A-FPU; otherwise, the runtime routine for the DIV1 instruction is selected. This option is invalid when cpu=sh1 is specified.

  When only division=cpu is specified, either division=cpu=runtime is assumed when the size option is specified, and division=cpu=inline is assumed when the speed or nospeed option is specified.

  When division=peripheral is specified, the runtime routine that uses the divider is selected (sets interrupt mask level to 15). Executable only if cpu is SH-2 (SH7604).

  When division=nomask is specified, the runtime routine that uses the divider is selected (no change in interrupt mask level). Executable only if cpu is SH-2 (SH7604).

  When specifying peripheral or nomask, note the following:
  
  1. Division by 0 is not checked and errno is not set up.

  2. When nomask is specified, if an interrupt occurs during operation of the divider, and if the divider is used in the interrupt processing routine, the result is not guaranteed.

  3. Overflow interrupt is not supported.

  4. Results of division by zero and overflow depend on specifications of the divider, and may differ from the results obtained when the cpu suboption is specified.

  The default for this option is division=cpu.
IFUnc: Disabling of Save and Restore of Floating-Point Registers

Object[Code generation][Use no FPU instructions]

- Command Line Format
  IFUnc
- Description
  Disables saving and restoring of floating-point registers.
- Remarks
  This specification can be made for each function unit using #pragma ifunc.
  When a source program that generates floating-point instructions is compiled with this option specified, an error occurs.
  This option is only valid when cpu=sh2e, sh2afpu, sh4, or sh4a is specified.

ALIGN16, ALIGN32, NOALign: 16-Byte or 32-Byte Alignment of Labels

Object[Code generation][Align Labels after unconditional branches 16/32 byte boundaries]

- Command Line Format
  ALIGN16
  ALIGN32
  NOALign
- Description
  When align16 is specified, every first label within the program section to appear after an unconditional branch instruction is aligned with a 16-byte boundary.
  When align32 is specified, every first label within the program section to appear after an unconditional branch instruction is aligned with a 32-byte boundary.
  When noalign is specified, labels appearing after unconditional branch instructions are not aligned with 16- or 32-byte boundaries.
  The default for this option is noalign.
- Remarks
  align16 and align32 cannot be specified simultaneously.
  When the noalign16 option is specified, it is considered that noalign has been specified.
TBR: TBR Relative Function Call

Object[Code generation2][TBR specification]

- Command Line Format
  TBR [= <section name>]

- Description
  Calls functions using TBR relative addresses.
  When <section name> is specified, the function address table for function definitions is output to the \( STBR<\text{section name}> \) section.
  When <section name> is omitted, the function address table for function definitions is output to the \( STBR \) section.
  For details, refer to section 10.3.1 (2), `#pragma tbr`.

- Remarks
  This option is only valid when \( \text{cpu=sh2a \ or \ sh2afpu} \) is specified.
  When this option and `#pragma tbr` are specified simultaneously, the `#pragma tbr` specification is valid. When this option and `pic=1` are specified simultaneously, this option is invalid.
  When the number of functions to be included in the function address table exceeds 255, an error message will be output.

BSs_order: Order of Uninitialized Variables

Object[Code generation2][Order of uninitialized variables]

- Command Line Format
  BSs_order = \{declaration | definition\}

- Description
  When \( \text{bs}_{-}\text{order=declaration} \) is specified, uninitialized variables are output in the order of declarations.
  When \( \text{bs}_{-}\text{order=definition} \) is specified, uninitialized variables are output in the order of definitions.
  The default for this option is \( \text{bs}_{-}\text{order=declaration} \).

- Example
  extern int a1;
  extern int a2;
  int a3;
extern int a4;
int a5;
int a2;
int a1;
int a4;

<bss_order=declaration is specified>
.SECTION B,DATA,ALIGN=4
    _a1:
    .RES.L 1
    _a2:
    .RES.L 1
    _a3:
    .RES.L 1
    _a4:
    .RES.L 1
    _a5:
    .RES.L 1

<bss_order=definition is specified>
.SECTION B,DATA,ALIGN=4
    _a3:
    .RES.L 1
    _a5:
    .RES.L 1
    _a2:
    .RES.L 1
    _a1:
    .RES.L 1
    _a4:
    .RES.L 1

• Remarks
When the stuff option is specified, uninitialized variables are output in the order of declarations regardless of the bss_order setting.
STUFF

NOSTuff: Disposition of Variables

Object[Code generation][Disposition of variables :]

- Command Line Format
  STUFF [= <section type>[,...]]
  NOSTuff
  <section type> : {Bss | Data | Const}

- Description
  When the **stuff** option is specified, the variables that belong to the <section type> are assigned to 4-byte, 2-byte, or 1-byte boundary alignment sections depending on the size of the variables (see table 2.5).
  When <section type> is omitted, any variable is applicable.
  C, D, and B are the section names specified by the **section** option or **#pragma section**. The data assigned to each section are arranged in the order of definitions (**bss_order** option setting is ignored).

Table 2.5  Relationship between Size of Variable and Section Name

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section Type</th>
<th>Size of Variable (Byte)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const-type variables</td>
<td>C$4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initialized variables</td>
<td>D$4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uninitialized variables</td>
<td>B$4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the **nstuff** option is specified, all variables are assigned to 4-byte boundary alignment sections.

The data assigned to sections C and D are arranged in the order of definitions, and the data assigned to section B are arranged according to the **bss_order** option.

The default for this option is **nstuff**.
• Example

```c
int a;
char b=0;
const short c=0;
struct {
    char x;
    char y;
} ST;
```

```asm
<>stuff is specified>
.SECTION C$2,DATA,ALIGN=2
_c:
.DATA.W H’0000
.SECTION D$1,DATA,ALIGN=1
_b:
.DATA.B H’00
.SECTION B$4,DATA,ALIGN=4
_a:
.RES.L 1
.SECTION B$2,DATA,ALIGN=2
_ST:
.RES.B 2

<nostuff is specified>
.SECTION C,DATA,ALIGN=4
_c:
.DATA.W H’0000
.SECTION D,DATA,ALIGN=4
_b:
.DATA.B H’00
.SECTION B,DATA,ALIGN=4
_a:
.RES.L 1
_ST:
.RES.B 2
```
Remarks
This option is invalid for variables with \texttt{#pragma gbr\_base | gbr\_base1} or \texttt{#pragma global\_register}.

**STUFF\_GBR**

Description Format: \texttt{C/C++ <Object> [Code generation2] [Disposition of Variables in $G0/$G1]}

Command Line Format: STUFF\_GBR

Description: Assigns a \texttt{#pragma gbr\_base|gbr\_base1}-specified variable to sections listed in table 2.6 depending on the size of the variable. This reduces the amount of gap area generated by boundary alignment.

**Table 2.6 Size of the Variable and Section Names**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Size of the Variable (in Bytes)</th>
<th>4n</th>
<th>4n-2</th>
<th>2n-1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>With \texttt{#pragma gbr_base}</td>
<td>$G0$4</td>
<td>$G0$2</td>
<td>$G0$1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With \texttt{#pragma gbr_base1}</td>
<td>$G1$4</td>
<td>$G1$2</td>
<td>$G1$1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: \( n \) is integer.

Remarks: This option is valid only when \texttt{gbr=\texttt{user}} has been specified. Sections starting with \$G0 or \$G1 should be assigned as shown in table 2.7.
Table 2.7 Allocation of Sections

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section Name</th>
<th>Allocation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$G0$</td>
<td>The start address should be a multiple of 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$G0$1, $G0$2, $G0$4</td>
<td>The section should be within 128 bytes from the start address of $G0$.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$G1$</td>
<td>The start address should be 128 bytes far from the start address of $G0$.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$G1$1</td>
<td>The section should be within 256 bytes from the start address of $G0$.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$G1$2</td>
<td>The section should be within 512 bytes from the start address of $G0$.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$G1$4</td>
<td>The section should be within 1024 bytes from the start address of $G0$.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ALIGN4

Description Format: C++ <Object> [Code generation] [Alignment of Branch Destination]

Command Line Format: ALIGN4 = { ALL | LOOP | INMOSTLOOP }  

Description: When align4=all is specified, all branch destination addresses are aligned to the 4-byte boundary.

When align4=loop is specified, the start addresses of all loops are aligned to the 4-byte boundary.

When align4=inmostloop is specified, the start addresses of the innermost loops are aligned to the 4-byte boundary.

Remarks: This option is not available when align16 or align32 has already been specified. When align4 is specified, the start address of the function is always aligned to the 4-byte boundary. All functions with align4 will not be optimized at linkage.
CONST_VOLATILE

Allocate const volatile variables

Description Format: Object [Code generation] [const volatile variables:]

Command Line Format: -CONST_VOLATILE={ DATA | CONST}

Description: This option specifies the area where const- and volatile-qualified variables should be allocated.

When const_volatile=const, the variables will be allocated to the constant area.

When const_volatile=data, the variables will be allocated to the initialized data area.

The default for this option is const_volatile=data.

[Examples]

(1) Where variable c of const volatile int c=3; will be allocated
    const_volatile=data: Initialized data area (section D)
    const_volatile=const: Constant area (section C)
    const_volatile=const -stuff: Constant area (section CS4)
    const_volatile=const -section=const=N: Constant area (section N)

(2) Where variable x of X const volatile __fixed x=0.5r; will be allocated
    const_volatile=data: Initialized data area (section XD)
    const_volatile=const: Constant area (section XC)
2.2.3 List Options

Table 2.8 List Category Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Command Line Format</th>
<th>Dialog Menu</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Listing file</td>
<td>Listfile [= &lt;file name&gt;]</td>
<td>List</td>
<td>Output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NOListfile</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Listing contents and</td>
<td>SHow = &lt;sub&gt; [...]&lt;sub&gt;:{</td>
<td>List</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>format</td>
<td>SOurce</td>
<td>NOSOurse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Object</td>
<td>NOObject</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>STatistics</td>
<td>NOSTatistics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Include</td>
<td>NOInclude</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Expansion</td>
<td>NOExpansion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Width = &lt;numeric value&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td>Maximum characters per line:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Length = &lt;numeric value&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td>0 or 80 to 132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tab = {4</td>
<td>8} }</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0 or 40 to 255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Number of columns when Tab is used: 4 or 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Listfile, NOListfile: List File

List[Generate list file]

- Command Line Format
  Listfile [= <file name>]
  NOListfile

- Description
  Specifies whether a listing file is output or not.
  When listfile option is specified, a listing file will be output. By specifying <file name>, a file name can also be specified.
  When nolistfile is specified, a listing file will not be output.
  A listing file name should be specified in accordance with section 8.1, Naming Files.
  If no file name is specified, a listing file with the same name as the source and a standard extension (lst/lpp) is created. The standard extension for filenames in C compilation is lst, and that for filenames in C++ compilation is lpp.
  The default for this option is nolistfile.
SHow: List Contents and Format

List[Contents]

• Command Line Format

SHow= <sub>[
  <sub>: { Source | NOSource
   | Object | NOObject
   | Statistics | NOSTatistics
   | Include | NOInclude
   | Expansion | NOExpansion
   | Width= <numeric value>
   | Length= <numeric value>
   | Tab = { 4 | 8 }

  }

• Description

Specifies the contents and format of the list output by the compiler, and the cancellation of listing output.

For examples of each list in this section, refer to section 8.2, Compiler Listings.

The default for this option is show=nosource, object, statistics, noinclude, noexpansion, width=0, length=0, tab=8.

• Remarks

Table 2.9 shows a list of suboptions.
### Table 2.9  List of Suboptions of show Option

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suboption</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>source</td>
<td>Outputs a list of source programs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nosource</td>
<td>Outputs no list of source programs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>Outputs a list of object programs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noobject</td>
<td>Outputs no list of object programs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statistics</td>
<td>Outputs a list of statistics information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nostatistics</td>
<td>Outputs no list of statistics information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>include</td>
<td>Outputs a source program listing after include file expansion. If the nosource suboption and the include suboption are specified simultaneously, the include suboption will be invalid, and no source program listing will be output to a file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noinclude</td>
<td>Outputs a source program listing before include file expansion. If the nosource suboption and the noinclude suboption are specified simultaneously, the noinclude suboption will be invalid, and no source program listing will be output to a file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expansion</td>
<td>Outputs a source program listing after macro expansion. If the nosource suboption and the expansion suboption are specified, simultaneously the expansion suboption will be invalid, and no source program listing will be output to a file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noexpansion</td>
<td>Outputs a source program listing before macro expansion. If the nosource suboption and the noexpansion suboption are specified simultaneously, the noexpansion suboption will be invalid, and no source program listing will be output to a file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>width=&lt;numeric value&gt;</td>
<td>The number specified by &lt;numeric value&gt; is set as the maximum number of characters in a single line of a listing. The &lt;numeric value&gt; can specify decimal numbers from 80 to 132 or 0. If &lt;numeric value&gt; is specified as 0, the maximum number of characters in a single line is not specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>length=&lt;numeric value&gt;</td>
<td>The number specified by &lt;numeric value&gt; is set as the maximum number of lines on a single page of a listing. The &lt;numeric value&gt; can specify decimal numbers from 40 to 255 or 0. If &lt;numeric value&gt; is specified as 0, the maximum number of lines on a single page of a listing is not specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tab = { 4</td>
<td>8 }</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 2.2.4 Optimize Options

#### Table 2.10 Optimize Category Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Command Line Format</th>
<th>Dialog Menu</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Optimization</td>
<td>OPTimize = { 0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Debug_only}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optimized for speed</td>
<td>SPeed</td>
<td>Optimize [Speed or size :] [Optimize for speed]</td>
<td>Selects the optimization item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Size</td>
<td>[Optimize for size]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NOSpeed</td>
<td>[Optimize for both speed and size]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inter-module optimization information</td>
<td>Goptimize</td>
<td>Optimize [Generate file for inter-module optimization :]</td>
<td>Outputs information for inter-module optimization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optimized for access to external variables</td>
<td>MAP = &lt;file name&gt;</td>
<td>Optimize [Optimization for access to external variables :] [inter-module]</td>
<td>Optimized for access to external variables.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optimization of external variable access</td>
<td>SMap</td>
<td>Optimize [Optimization for access to external variables :] [inner-module]</td>
<td>Optimizes access to external variables defined in the file to be compiled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic creation of GBR relative access code</td>
<td>GBr = { Auto</td>
<td>User}</td>
<td>Optimize [Gbr relative operation :]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch statement expansion method</td>
<td>CAse = { Ifthen</td>
<td>Table }</td>
<td>Optimize [Switch statement :]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shift-operation expansion</td>
<td>SShift = { Inline</td>
<td>Runtime }</td>
<td>Optimize [Shift operation :]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item</td>
<td>Command Line Format</td>
<td>Dialog Menu</td>
<td>Specification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transfer-code BLOckcopy =</td>
<td>( Inline</td>
<td>Runtime)</td>
<td>Optimize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unaligned data transfer</td>
<td>Unaligned =</td>
<td>(Inline</td>
<td>Runtime)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inter-file inline expansion</td>
<td>&lt;file name&gt;[…]</td>
<td>Optimize</td>
<td>Specifies a file for inter-file inline expansion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External variables handled as volatile</td>
<td>GLOBAL_Volatile = { 0</td>
<td>1}</td>
<td>Optimize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External variable optimizing range</td>
<td>OPT_Range = { All</td>
<td>NOLoop}</td>
<td>Optimize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vacant loop elimination</td>
<td>DEL_vacant_loop = { 0</td>
<td>1}</td>
<td>Optimize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loop unroll</td>
<td>LOop NOLoop</td>
<td>Optimize</td>
<td>Performs loop unrolling. Does not perform loop unrolling.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2.10 Optimize Category Options (cont)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Command Line Format</th>
<th>Dialog Menu</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum number of loop expansions</td>
<td>MAX_unroll = &lt;numeric value&gt; &lt;numeric value&gt;: 1 to 32</td>
<td>Optimize [Details] [Miscellaneous] [Specify maximum unroll factor :]</td>
<td>Specifies the maximum number of times a loop is expanded. Default: 1 (2 when speed or loop is specified)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elimination of INFinite_loop = { 0</td>
<td>1 }</td>
<td>Optimize [Details] [Global variables] [Delete assignment to global variables before an infinite loop]</td>
<td>Enables elimination of an assignment expression for external variables preceding an infinite loop. Eliminates an assignment expression for external variables preceding an infinite loop.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External variable register allocation</td>
<td>GLOBAL_Alloc = { 0</td>
<td>1 }</td>
<td>Optimize [Details] [Global variables] [Allocate registers to global variables :]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structure/union member register allocation</td>
<td>STRUCT_Alloc = { 0</td>
<td>1 }</td>
<td>Optimize [Details] [Miscellaneous] [Allocate registers to struct/union members :]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const constant propagation</td>
<td>CONST_Var_propagate = { 0</td>
<td>1 }</td>
<td>Optimize [Details] [Global variables] [Propagate variables which are external constants declared by const qualified :]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expansion of constant loading instructions</td>
<td>CONST_Load = { Inline</td>
<td>Literal }</td>
<td>Optimize [Details] [Miscellaneous] [Load constant value as :]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 2.10 Optimze Category Options (cont)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Command Line Format</th>
<th>Dialog Menu</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Instruction scheduling</td>
<td>SC: SChedule = { 0</td>
<td>Optimize</td>
<td>Instructions are not scheduled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 }</td>
<td></td>
<td>Instructions are scheduled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Software pipelining</td>
<td>SOftpipe</td>
<td>Optimize</td>
<td>Validates software pipelining.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[SH-2A, SH2A-FPU, SH-4, SH-4A and SH4AL-DSP]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division of optimizing ranges</td>
<td>SCOpe</td>
<td>Optimize</td>
<td>Optimizing ranges are divided.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NOSCope</td>
<td></td>
<td>Optimizing ranges are not divided.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GBR relative logic operation generation</td>
<td>LOGic_gbr</td>
<td>Optimize</td>
<td>Generates code that uses GBR relative addresses for logic operations of external variables.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preventing expansion of C++ Inline functions</td>
<td>CPP_NOINLINE</td>
<td>C/C++ &lt;Optimize&gt;</td>
<td>C++ Inline functions are not expanded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[Details]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[Inline]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[Doesn't Expand C++ Inline Functions]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optimization considering type of object indicated by pointer</td>
<td>ALIAS = {ANSI</td>
<td>Optimize</td>
<td>Optimization considering type of object indicated by pointer is applied.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NOANSI }</td>
<td></td>
<td>Optimization considering type of object indicated by pointer is not applied.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**OPtimize: Optimization**

Optimize[Optimization]

- **Command Line Format**
  
  `OPTimize = { 0 | 1 | Debug_only }`

- **Description**

  Specifies the level of compiler optimization for the object program.

  When `optimize=debug_only` is specified, the compiler does not optimizes the object program. The output has highly accurate debugging information, which eases debugging at the source level.

  When `optimize=0` is specified, the compiler optimizes some parts of the object program, allocating automatic variables to registers, consolidating function-exit blocks, consolidating multiple functions where this is possible, etc. Accordingly, the code size may become smaller than that compiled with the `optimize=debug_only` setting. When `optimize=1` is specified, the compiler optimizes the object program.

  The default for this option is `optimize=1`.

**SPeed, SIze, NOSPeed: Optimization for Speed**

Optimize[Speed or size :][Optimize for speed][Optimize for size]
[Optimize for both speed and size]

- **Command Line Format**

  `SPeed`
  `SIze`
  `NOSPeed`

- **Description**

  Table 2.11 is a list of the items optimized for the speed, size, and nospeed options. These optimization items can be controlled by option. The default for this option is nospeed.
Table 2.11  List of Optimization Items

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Automatic Inline Expansion</th>
<th>Optimize for Loop Expansion</th>
<th>Expansion of Shift Code</th>
<th>Expansion of Transfer Code</th>
<th>Expansion of Integer Constant Division</th>
<th>Unaligned Data Transfer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>speed</td>
<td>inline=20</td>
<td>loop</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>inline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>size</td>
<td>noinline</td>
<td>nooop</td>
<td>runtime</td>
<td>runtime</td>
<td>runtime</td>
<td>runtime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nospeed</td>
<td>noinline</td>
<td>nooop</td>
<td>runtime</td>
<td>runtime</td>
<td>runtime</td>
<td>runtime</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Goptimize: Inter-Module Optimization

Optimize[Generate file for inter-module optimization]

- Command Line Format
  Goptimize
- Description
  Outputs the additional information for the inter-module optimization.
  For the file specified with this option, the inter-module optimization is performed at linkage.

MAP: External Variable Access Optimization

Optimize[Optimization for access to external variables :][Inter-module]

- Command Line Format
  MAP = <file name>
- Description
  This option sets the base addresses by using an external symbol-allocation information file created by the optimizing linkage editor and creates code that performs access to external or static variables relative to the base address. When gbr=auto is specified, the compiler may set the base address in the GBR register, and may create code that performs access to external or static variables relative to the value in GBR.
  Compile the program before using this option. At linkage, specify map=<file name> to create the external symbol-allocation information file. Then specify map=<file name> and compile the program again.
- Example
  Source program (test.c)
int A,B,C;
void main()
{
    A = 0;
    B = 0;
    C = 0;
}

(1) Command: shc test.c
<Output code>

_main:
MOV.L  L11,R6    ;_A
MOV  #0,R2
MOV.L  R2,@R6
MOV.L  L11+4,R6  ;_B
MOV.L  R2,@R6
MOV.L  L11+8,R6  ;_C
RTS
MOV.L  R2,@R6
L11:
.DATA.L  _A
.DATA.L  _B
.DATA.L  _C
(2) Command: shc test.c
   optlnk –map=test.bls –start=P/400,B/1000 test.obj
   shc –map=test.bls test.c

Data allocation after linkage

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>0x100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>0x100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>0x100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<Output code>

```c
_main:
  MOV.W  L11,R1    ;_A Sets the address of A as the base address.
  MOV  #0,R0
  MOV.L  R0,@R1
  MOV.L  R0,@(4,R1)
  RTS
  MOV.L  R0,@(8,R1)
  L11:
  .DATA.W _A    The address of A consists of 2 bytes.
```

- Remarks

When the order of the definitions of external variables has been changed, a new external symbol-allocation information file must be created.

If any option other than the `map` option in the previous compilation differs from the one in the current compilation, or if any contents of a function are changed, the result of the object code is not guaranteed. In such a case, a new external symbol-allocation information file must be created.
SMap: Optimization of External Variable Access

Optimize[Optimization for access to external variables :][Inner-module]

- **Format**
  
  SMap

- **Description**
  
  Specifies a base address for external or static variables defined in the file to be compiled, and generates code that uses addresses relative to the base address for access to the variables.

  When `gbr=auto` is specified, the compiler specifies a base address in the GBR according to the conditions and generates code that uses GBR relative addresses for access to external or static variables.

- **Example**

  ```c
  int A, B, C;
  void main()
  {
    A = 0;
    B = 0;
    C = 0;
  }
  ```
  
  ```assembly
  MOV.L       L11,R6     ; _A
  MOV         #0,R2      ; H'00000000
  MOV.L       R2,@R6
  MOV.L       R2,@(4,R6)
  RTS
  MOV.L       R2,@(8,R6)
  ```

- **Remarks**

  When this option and `map=<file name>` are specified simultaneously, the `map` option is valid.
GBr: Automatic Creation of GBR Relative Access Code

Optimize[Gbrr relative operation :]

- Command Line Format
  GBr = { Auto | User }

- Description
  When gbr=auto is specified, the compiler will automatically create GBR-relative code for logic operations by certain conditions. When gbr=auto and map=<file name> are specified, the compiler may set a base address in GBR and may create code that performs access to external or static variables relative to the value in GBR by certain conditions. When gbr=user is specified, the user must specify the setting of and references to GBR and access relative to the value in GBR by using the #pragma extensions #pragma gbr_base or #pragma gbr_base1, or intrinsic functions that are related to GBR. The default for this option is gbr=auto.

- Example Program
  char A,B,C;
  void main()
  {
    A |= 1;
    B &= 1;
    C ^= 1;
  }

  <Output code(gbr=auto)>
  _main:
  STC GBR,@-R15 ; Saves the contents of GBR
  MOV #0,R0
  LDC R0,GBR ; Sets 0 to GBR
  MOV.L L11+2,R0 ; R0 <- Address of A
  OR.B #1,@(R0,GBR) ; A |= 1
  MOV.L L11+6,R0 ; R0 <- Address of B
  AND.B #1,@(R0,GBR) ; B &= 1
  MOV.L L11+10,R0 ; R0 <- Address of C
  XOR.B #1,@(R0,GBR) ; C ^= 1
  RTS
  LDC @R15+,GBR ; Restores the contents of GBR
  L11:
• Remarks

When `gbr=auto` is specified in compiling a program in which `#pragma gbr_base` or `#pragma gbr_base1` is used, a warning message will be displayed and the specifications by the `#pragma` extensions will be ignored.

When `gbr=auto` is specified in compiling a program in which intrinsic functions that are related to GBR are used, an error will occur.

When `gbr=auto` is specified, the contents of the GBR register will be saved and restored.

### CAse: switch Statement Expansion Method

Optimize[Switch statement :]

• Command Line Format
  CAse = { Ifthen | Table }

• Description
  Specifies a switch statement expansion method.
  
  When `case=ifthen` is specified, the switch statement is expanded using the `if_then` method, which repeats, for each case label, comparison between the evaluated value of the expression in the switch statement and the case label value. If they match, execution jumps to the statement of the case label. This method increases the object code size depending on the number of case labels in the switch statement.

  When `case=table` is specified, the switch statement is expanded using the table method, which stores the case label jump destinations in a jump table and enables a jump to the statement of the case label that matches the expression in the switch statement by accessing the jump table only once. This method increases the jump table size in the literal pool depending on the number of case labels in the switch statement, but the execution speed is always the same.

  If this option is not specified, the compiler automatically selects one of the methods for expansion.
**SHIf: Shift Operation Expansion**

Optimize[Shift Operation :]

- Command Line Format
  
  \[\text{SHIf} = \{ \text{Inline} | \text{Runtime} \}\]

- Description
  
  Selects the method for shift operations where shifting is by a constant number of bits greater than 0 and less than (length in bits of the left operand - 1).

  When \(\text{shift=inline}\) is specified, all shift operations are expanded.

  When \(\text{shift=runtime}\) is specified, the runtime routine will be called if some instructions are to be expanded.

  When the \text{size} option has been specified, the default for this option is \(\text{shift=runtime}\). When the \text{speed} or \text{nosped} option has been specified, the default for this option is \(\text{shift=inline}\).

**BLOckcopy: Transfer Code Expansion**

Optimize [Transfer code development :]

- Command Line Format
  
  \[\text{BLOckcopy} = \{ \text{Inline} | \text{Runtime} \}\]

- Description
  
  When \(\text{blockcopy=inline}\) is specified, (the instructions of) all coding for transfer between areas of memory are expanded.

  When \(\text{blockcopy=runtime}\) is specified, the runtime routine will be called when a large block of memory is to be transferred.

  When the \text{size} option has been specified, the default for this option is \(\text{blockcopy=runtime}\). When the \text{speed} or \text{nosped} option has been specified, the default for this option is \(\text{blockcopy=inline}\).
Unaligned: Unaligned Data Transfer

Optimize[Unaligned move :]

- **Command Line Format**
  Unaligned = { Inline | Runtime }

- **Description**
  When `unaligned=inline` is specified, unaligned data transfer are expanded.
  When `unaligned=runtime` is specified, the runtime routine will be called if a large block of unaligned data is to be transferred.
  When the `size` option has been specified, the default for this option is `unaligned=runtime`.
  When the `speed` or `nospeed` option has been specified, the default for this option is `unaligned=inline`.

- **Remarks**
  This option is used for transfer of a structure whose alignment value is 1.

INLine, NOINLine: Automatic Inline Expansion

Optimize[Details][Inline][Automatic inline expansion]

- **Command Line Format**
  INLine= [<numeric value>]
  NOINLine

- **Description**
  Specifies whether to automatically perform inline expansion of functions.
  When the `inline` option is specified, the compiler automatically performs inline expansion.
  The user is able to use `inline=<numeric value>`, to specify the allowed increase in the program’s size due to the use of inline expansion. For example, when `inline=50` is specified, inline expansion will be applied until the program has grown to 150% of its size (gain of 50%).
  When the `noinline` option is specified, automatic inline expansion is not performed.
  When the `speed` option has been specified, the default for this option is `inline=20`. When the `nospeed` or `size` option, or `optimize=0` has been specified, the default is `noinline`. 
**FILE_inline: Inter-file Inline Expansion**

Optimize[Details][Inline][Inline file path]

- **Command Line Format**
  
  `FILE_inline=<file name>[,...]`

- **Description**
  
  Performs inline expansion for functions that extend across files for the files specified with `<file name>`.  

- **Example**
  
  ```c
  <a.c>
  func()
  
  g()
  
  }
  
  <b.c>
  
  g(){
  
  h();
  
  }
  
  By compiling a program with `shc -file_inline=b.c a.c` specified, calling of function g() in a.c is expanded as follows:
  ```
  ```c
  func()
  
  h();
  
  ```

- **Remarks**
  
  If the `file_inline` option and `noinline` option are specified simultaneously, inline expansion is performed for only the functions specified with `#pragma inline`.  

  If an `extern` function is defined with the same name in more than one function specified with the `file_inline` option, no operation is guaranteed (using a single function definition randomly selected for inline expansion).

  The extension of the file name specified by `<file name>` cannot be omitted.

  A file to be compiled cannot be specified with the `file_inline` option.

  A wild card (`*` or `?`) cannot be specified for `<file name>`. 
GLOBAL_Volatile: Handling External Variables as volatile

Optimize[Details][Global variables][Treat global variables as volatile qualified]

- Command Line Format
  GLOBAL_Volatile = { 0 | 1 }

- Description
  When global_volatile=0 is specified, the external variables not declared with volatile are optimized. Accordingly, the access count and access order for external variables may differ from those in the written C/C++ program.
  When global_volatile=1 is specified, all external variables are handled as if they were declared with volatile. Accordingly, the access count and access order for external variables are exactly the same as those in the written C/C++ program.
  The default for this option is global_volatile=0.
OPT_Range: External Variable Optimizing Range Specification

Optimize[Details][Global variables][Specify optimizing range :]

- Command Line Format
  OPT_Range = { All | NOLoop | NOBlock }

- Description
  When opt_range=all is specified, the compiler optimizes external variables within the entire function.
  When opt_range=noloop is specified, external variables in a loop and external variables used in a loop iteration condition are not to be optimized.
  When opt_range=noblock is specified, external variables extending across branches (including loops) are not to be optimized.
  When optimize=0 or optimize=debug_only is specified, the default for this option is opt_range=noblock. For any other case, the default for this option is opt_range=all.

- Examples
  (1) Optimization extending across a branch (done when opt_range=all or opt_range=noloop is specified)

  ```c
  int A,B,C;
  void f(int a) {
    A = 1;
    if (a)
      B = 1;
    C = A;
  }
  <Source program image after optimization>
  int A,B,C;
  void f(int a) {
    A = 1;
    if (a)
      B = 1;
    C = 1; /* Reference of A is eliminated and A = 1 is propagated */
  }
  ```
(2) Optimization in a loop (done when opt_range=all is specified)

```c
int A,B,C[100];
void f {
  int i;
  for (i=0;i<A;i++) {
    C[i] = B;
  }
}
```

<Source program image after optimization>

```c
int A,B,C[100];
void f {
  int i;
  int temp_A, temp_B;
  temp_A = A; /* Reference of A by loop iteration condition is moved outside the loop */
  temp_B = B; /* Reference of B in the loop is moved outside the loop */
  for (i=0;i< temp_A;i++) { /* Reference of A in the loop is eliminated */
    C[i] = temp_B; /* Reference of B in the loop is eliminated */
  }
}
```

- Remarks
  - When opt_range=noloop is specified, max_unroll=1 is always the default.
  - When opt_range=noblock is specified, max_unroll=1, const_var_propagate=0, and global_alloc=0 are always the default.
DEL_vacant_loop: Vacant Loop Elimination

Optimize[Details][Miscellaneous][Delete vacant loop]

- **Command Line Format**
  \[ \text{DEL\_vacant\_loop} = \{ 0 \mid 1 \} \]

- **Description**
  When \text{del\_vacant\_loop}=0\ is specified, even when there is no loop internal processing, a loop is not eliminated.
  When \text{del\_vacant\_loop}=1\ is specified, loops with no internal processing are eliminated.
  The default for this option is \text{del\_vacant\_loop}=0.

- **Remarks**
  Note that the default differs from that for earlier versions of Ver. 7.0 (up to Ver. 7.0.04) of the SH C/C++ compiler.
  — Up to Ver. 7.0.04: Vacant loops are eliminated.
  — Ver. 7.0.06 or later: Vacant loops are not eliminated.

LOop, NOLOop: Loop Unrolling

Optimize[Details][Miscellaneous][Loop unrolling :]

- **Command Line Format**
  \text{LOop} \quad \text{NOLOop}

- **Description**
  Specifies whether to perform loop unrolling.
  When the \text{loop} option is specified, optimization is performed in compiling loop statements (for, while, and do-while).
  When the \text{noloop} option is specified, optimization is not performed in compiling loop statements.
  When \text{optimize}=1\ and \text{speed} are specified, the default for this option is \text{loop}. For any other case, the default for this option is \text{noloop}. 
MAX_unroll: Loop Expansion Maximum Number Specification

Optimize[Details][Miscellaneous][Specify maximum unroll factor :]

- Command Line Format
  MAX_unroll = <numeric value>

- Description
  Specifies the maximum number of loops to be expanded. An integer from 1 to 32 can be specified for <numeric value>. If any other value is specified, an error will occur.
  If speed or loop is specified, the default for this option is max_unroll=2. For any other case, the default for this option is max_unroll=1.

- Remarks
  When opt_range=noloop or opt_range=noblock is specified, the default for this option is max_unroll=1.
INFinite_loop: Elimination of Expression Preceding Infinite Loop

Optimize[Details][Global variables][Delete assignment to global variables before an infinite loop]

- Command Line Format
  \texttt{INFinite\_loop = \{ 0 | 1 \}}

- Description
  When \texttt{infinite\_loop=0} is specified, an assignment expression for external variables, which is located immediately before an infinite loop is not eliminated.
  When \texttt{infinite\_loop=1} is specified, an assignment expression that is located immediately before an infinite loop and is for external variables that are not referenced from the infinite loop is eliminated.
  The default for this option is \texttt{infinite\_loop=0}.

- Example
  \begin{verbatim}
  int A;
  void f()
  {
   A = 1; /* Assignment expression for external variable A */
   while(1) {} /* A is not referenced */
  }
  
  <Source program image when \texttt{infinite\_loop=1} is specified>
  void f()
  {
   /* Assignment expression for external variable A is eliminated */
   while(1) {}
  }
  \end{verbatim}

- Remarks
  Note that the default differs from that for earlier versions of Ver. 7.0 (up to Ver. 7.0.04) of the SH C/C++ compiler.
  - Up to Ver. 7.0.04: An assignment expression that is located immediately before an infinite loop and is for external variables that are not referenced from the infinite loop are eliminated.
  - Ver. 7.0.06 or later: An assignment expression for external variables, which is located immediately before an infinite loop is not eliminated.
GLOBAL_Alloc: External Variable Register Allocation

Optimize[Details][Global variables][Allocate registers to global variables :]

- Command Line Format
  GLOBAL_Alloc = { 0 | 1 }

- Description
  When global_alloc=0 is specified, allocation of external variables to registers is disabled.
  When global_alloc=1 is specified, external variables are allocated to registers.

- Remarks
  When opt_range=noblock or optimize=debug_only is specified, the default for this option is global_alloc=0.
  Note that when optimize=0 is specified, the default differs from that for earlier versions of Ver. 7.0 (up to Ver. 7.0.04) of the SH C/C++ compiler.
  — Up to Ver. 7.0.04: External variables are allocated to registers.
  — Ver. 7.0.06 or later: Allocation of external variables to registers is disabled.
  For any other case, the default for this option is global_alloc=1.

STRUCT_Alloc: Structure/Union Member Register Allocation

Optimize[Details][Miscellaneous][Allocate registers to struct/union members]

- Command Line Format
  STRUCT_Alloc = { 0 | 1 }

- Description
  When struct_alloc=0 is specified, allocation of structure or union members to registers is disabled.
  When struct_alloc=1 is specified, structure or union members are allocated to registers.

- Remarks
  If struct_alloc=1 is specified when opt_range=noblock or global_alloc=0 is specified, only local structure or union members are allocated to registers.
  When optimize=debug_only is specified, the default for this option is struct_alloc=0. Note that when optimize=0 is specified, the default differs from that for earlier versions of Ver. 7.0 (up to Ver. 7.0.04) of the SH C/C++ compiler.
  — Up to Ver. 7.0.04: Structure or union members are allocated to registers.
  — Ver. 7.0.06 or later: Allocation of structure or union members to registers is disabled.
  For any other case, the default for this option is struct_alloc=1.
CONST_Var_propagate: const Constant Propagation

Optimize[Details][Global variables][Propagate variables which are const qualified :]

- Command Line Format
  CONST_Var_propagate = { 0 | 1 }

- Description
  When const_var_propagate=0 is specified, constant propagation for external variables declared by const is disabled.
  When const_var_propagate=1 is specified, constant propagation is performed for even external variables declared by const.

- Example
  ```
  const int x = 1;
  int A;
  void f() {
    A = x;
  }
  ```
  <Source program image when const_var_propagate=1 is specified>
  ```
  void f() {
    A = 1; /* x = 1 is propagated */
  }
  ```

- Remarks
  Variables declared by const in a C++ program cannot be controlled by this option (constant propagation is always performed).
  When optimize=0, optimize=debug_only, or opt_range=noblock is specified, the default for this option is const_var_propagate=0. For any other case, the default for this option is const_var_propagate=1.
CONST_Load: Constant Loading Instruction Expansion

Optimize[Details][Miscellaneous][Load constant value as :]

- Command Line Format
  CONST_Load = { Inline | Literal }

- Description
  When const_load=inline is specified, the instructions for loading constants within 2 bytes with a sign are expanded.

  When const_load=literal is specified, the literal pool is accessed for loading constants of two bytes or more.

  The following shows the default for this option.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option Specified</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-optimize=1 and -speed</td>
<td>const_load=inline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-optimize=1 and -size</td>
<td>The default for this option is const_load=inline when instruction expansion for a 2-byte constant is possible with two instructions or when instruction expansion for a 4-byte constant is possible with three instructions. For any other case, the default for this option is const_load=literal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-optimize=1 and -nospeed</td>
<td>const_load=literal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-optimize=0 or -optimize=debug_only</td>
<td>const_load=literal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Example
  ```c
  int f(){
    return (257);
  }
  ```
(1) const_load=inline or speed is specified

```
MOV #1,R0 ; R0 <- 1
SHLL8 R0   ; R0 <- 256 (1<<8)
RTS
ADD #1,R0 ; R0 <- 257 (256+1)
```

(2) const_load=literal, or size or nospeed is specified

```
MOV.W #L11,R0
RTS
NOP
L11:
.DATA.W H'0101
```

**SChedule: Instruction Scheduling**

Optimize[Details][Global variables][Schedule instructions :]

- **Command Line Format**
  
  SChedule = { 0 | 1 }

- **Description**

  When `schedule=0` is specified, instructions are not scheduled. Accordingly, processing is performed in the same order the instructions have been written in the C/C++ program.

  When `schedule=1` is specified, instructions are scheduled taking into consideration pipeline processing and superscalar (SH-2A, SH2A-FPU, SH-4, SH-4A, or SH4AL-DSP).

  The default for this option is `schedule=0` when `optimize=0` or `optimize=debug_only` is specified, and `schedule=1` otherwise.

**SOftpipe: Software Pipelining**

Optimize[Details][Miscellaneous][Software pipelining :]

- **Command Line Format**

  SOftpipe

- **Description**

  Validates software pipelining.

- **Remarks**

  This option is only valid when `cpu=sh2a`, `cpu=sh2afpu`, `cpu=sh4`, `cpu=sh4a`, or `cpu=sh4aldsp` is specified.
**SCOpe, NOSCope: Division of Optimizing Ranges**

Optimize[Details][Miscellaneous][Not divide the optimization range :]

- **Command Line Format**
  
  SCOpe

  NOSCope

- **Description**

  When the `scope` option is specified, the compiler divides the optimizing ranges of the large-size functions into many sections.

  When the `noscope` option is specified, the compiler does not divide the optimizing ranges. When the optimizing range is expanded, the object performance is generally improved although the compilation time is delayed. However, if registers are not sufficient, the object performance may be lowered.

  Use this option at performance tuning because it affects the object performance depending on the program.

**LOGIc_gbr: GBR Relative Logic Operation Generation**

Optimize[Gbr relative operation]

- **Format**
  
  LOGIc_gbr

- **Description**

  Generates code that uses GBR relative addresses for logic operations of external variables.

- **Remarks**

  When `gbr=auto` is specified, this option is invalid.

  When using this option, specify the $G0 section start address by intrinsic function `set_gbr()`.
CPP_NOINLINE

Description Format: C/C++ <Optimize> [Details] [Inline] [Doesn't Expand C++ Inline Functions]

Command Line Format: CPP_NOINLINE

Description: In compilation of a C++ source program, this option prevents inline expansion of an inline-specified function or a member function defined in a class or structure and generates a code as a calling static function with internal linkage.

Remarks: This option is valid only in compilation of C++ source programs. If the inline or speed option is specified or #pragma inline is used, the inline expansion of a function that is supposed to be prevented by CPP_NOINLINE may be carried out.
**ALIAS: Optimization considering type of object indicated by pointer**

Optimize[Details][Miscellaneous][Optimization considering type of object indicated by pointer]

- **Command Line Format**
  
  ALIAS = {ANSI | NOANSI }

- **Description**
  
  When alias=ansi is specified, the compiler performs optimization considering type of object indicated by pointer in compliance with the ANSI standard. Although, this generally produces object code with better performance than that when alias=noansi is specified, the results of execution may differ from those for code produced by old versions of the compiler.
  
  When alias=noansi is specified, the compiler does not perform ANSI-complaint optimization considering type of object indicated by pointer. The default for this option is alias=noansi.

- **Examples**

  ```c
  long x, n;
  void func(short * ps)
  {
    n = 1;
    *ps = 2;
    x = n;
  }
  ```

  [alias=noansi is specified]
  
  ;; The possibility of the value of n being overwritten by *ps = 2;
  ;; is considered, so the value of n is reloaded by (A)
  
  MOV         #1,R2      ; H'00000001
  MOV.L       L11+2,R6   ; _n
  MOV.L       R2,@R6     ; n
  MOV         #2,R2      ; H'00000002
  MOV.W       R2,@R4     ; *(ps)
  MOV.L       @R6,R2     ; n          (A) n is reloaded
  MOV.L       L11+6,R6   ; _x
  RTS
  MOV.L       R2,@R6     ; x
Since the types of *ps and n are different, we assume that the
n value will not overwritten by *ps = 2, and n = 1 is reused at
(B). Accordingly, the results will differ if the value of n was
overwritten by *ps = 2;.

```
MOV     #1,R2   ; H'00000001
MOV.L   L11+2,R6 ; _n
MOV.L   R2,0R6  ; n
MOV     #2,R2   ; H'00000002
MOV.W   R2,0R4  ; *(ps)
MOV     #1,R2   ; H'00000001 (B) n = 1 is reused
MOV.L   L11+6,R6 ; _x
RTS
MOV.L   R2,0R6  ; x
```

- Remarks
  This option is only valid when optimize=1 has been specified.
### 2.2.5 Other Options

**Table 2.12 Other Category Options**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Command Line Format</th>
<th>Dialog Menu</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Embedded C++ language</td>
<td>ECpp</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Checks syntax according to the Embedded C++ language specifications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSP-C language [SH2-DSP, SH3-DSP and SH4AL-DSP]</td>
<td>DSpc</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Checks syntax according to the DSP-C language specifications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comment nesting</td>
<td>COMment = { Nest }</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Permits comment /* <em>/ nesting. Does not permit comment /</em> */ nesting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAC register</td>
<td>Macsave = { 0</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Does not guarantee the MAC register contents before and after a function is called. Guarantees the MAC register contents before and after a function is called.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saving and restoring SSR and SPC registers [SH-3 to SH-4]</td>
<td>SAve_cont_reg = { 0</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Does not save or restore SSR and SPC registers. Saves and restores SSR and SPC registers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extension of return value</td>
<td>RTnext</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Creates a sign-extension or zero-extension of the return value Creates no sign-extension or zero-extension of the return value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NORTnext</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2.12 Other Category Options (cont)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Command Line Format</th>
<th>Dialog Menu</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Converting the floating-point constant divisions to multiplications</td>
<td>APproxdiv</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Converts the division of floating-point constant to multiplication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avoiding SH7055 illegal operation [SH-2E]</td>
<td>PAitch=7055</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Avoids the creation of a program that includes operations that are illegal for the SH7055 due to the order of instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FPSCR register switching [SH2A-FPU, SH-4, and SH-4A]</td>
<td>FPScr = { Safe</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td>The FPU is guaranteed to be in single-precision mode before and after function calls. The FPU is not guaranteed to be in single-precision mode before and after function calls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suppress optimization of loop iteration condition</td>
<td>Volatile_loop</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Suppresses optimization of loop iteration condition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enumeration data size</td>
<td>AUto_enum</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Automatically selects the enumeration data size.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preferential allocation of register storage class variables</td>
<td>ENAble_register</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Allocates preferentially the variables with register storage class specification to registers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item</td>
<td>Command Line Format</td>
<td>Dialog Menu</td>
<td>Specification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI conformance</td>
<td>STRIct_ansi</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Conforms to the ANSI standard for the following processing:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• unsigned int and long type operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Associativity of floating-point operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conversion to floating-point division</td>
<td>FDIV</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Converts integer division to floating-point division.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[SH-2E, SH2A-FPU, SH-4, and SH-4A]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floating-point to fixed-point conversion</td>
<td>FIXED_Const</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Handles floating-point values as fixed-point values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[SH2-DSP, SH3-DSP and SH4AL-DSP]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conversion of 1.0 to fixed type maximum value</td>
<td>FIXED_Max</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Handles 1.0r (1.0R) as the maximum value of _ _fixed type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[SH2-DSP, SH3-DSP and SH4AL-DSP]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Omitting type conversion for fixed multiplication result</td>
<td>FIXED_Noround</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Omits type conversion for the operation result of _ _fixed type multiplication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[SH2-DSP, SH3-DSP and SH4AL-DSP]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSP repeat loop</td>
<td>REPeat</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Uses a DSP-expansion repeat loop.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[SH3-DSP and SH4AL-DSP]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 2.12 Other Category Options (cont)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Command Line Format</th>
<th>Dialog Menu</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Omitting range check for conversion between floating-point number and integer [SH-2E, SH2A-FPU, SH-4, and SH-4A]</td>
<td>SIMple_float_conv</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Generates a code that does not include a check of the target value range for the type conversion between an unsigned integer and a floating-point number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suppress DIVS and DIVU instruction generation</td>
<td>NOUSE_DIV_INS</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Suppress generation of the DIVU and DIVS instructions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change operation order for floating-point expression</td>
<td>FLOAT_ORDER</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Change operation order for floating-point expression aggressively</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ECpp: Embedded C++ Language

Other[Miscellaneous options:] [Check against EC++ language specification]

- Command Line Format
  ECpp

- Description
  The compiler checks the syntax of the C++ source program according to the Embedded C++ language specifications. The Embedded C++ language specifications do not support such keywords as catch, const_cast, dynamic_cast, explicit, mutable, namespace, reinterpret_cast, static_cast, template, throw, try, typeid, typename, and using. Therefore, if these keywords are written in the source program, the compiler will output an error message.

- Remarks
  The Embedded C++ language specifications do not support a multiple inheritance or virtual base class. If a multiple inheritance or virtual base class is written in the source program, the compiler will display error message "C5882 (E) Embedded C++ does not support multiple or virtual inheritance" at compilation.
  This option and the exception option cannot be specified simultaneously.

DSpc: DSP-C Language

Other[Miscellaneous options:] [Check against DSP-C language specification]

- Command Line Format
  DSpc

- Description
  The compiler checks the syntax of the DSP-C source program according to the DSP-C language specifications. For details on the DSP-C language specifications, refer to section 10.2, DSP-C Specifications.

- Remarks
  This option can only be specified for cpu=sh2dsp, sh3dsp, or sh4aldsp.
  This option cannot be specified for a C++ source program.
COMment: Comment Nesting

Other[Miscellaneous options :][Allow comment nest]

- Command Line Format
  COMment={Nest | NONest}

- Description
  When `comment=nest` is specified, nested comments are allowed to be written in the source program.
  When `comment=nonest` is specified, and if nested comments are written, an error will occur.
  The default for this option is `comment=nonest`.

- Example
  ```c
  /* This is an example of /* nested */ comment */
  ```

When `comment=nest` is specified, the compiler handles the above line as a nested comment; however, when `comment=nonest` is specified, the compiler assumes (1) as the end of the comment.

Macsave: MAC Register

Other[Miscellaneous options :][Callee saves/restores MACH and MACL registers if used]

- Command Line Format
  Macsave = { 0 | 1 }

- Description
  Specifies whether or not to guarantee the contents of the MACH and MACL registers before and after a function call.
  When `macsave=0` is specified, the contents of the MACH and MACL registers before and after a function call are not guaranteed.
  When `macsave=1` is specified, the contents of the MACH and MACL registers before and after a function call are guaranteed.
  Functions compiled with `macsave=0` specified cannot be called from functions compiled with `macsave=1` specified. On the contrary, functions compiled with `macsave=1` specified can be called from functions compiled with `macsave=0` specified.
  The default for this option is `macsave=1`. 
SAve_cont_reg: Saving and Restoring SSR and SPC Registers

Other[Miscellaneous options :][Saves/restores SSR and SPC registers]

- Command Line Format
  \texttt{SAve\_cont\_reg = \{ 0 | 1 \}}

- Description
  Specifies whether or not to save and restore the contents of the SSR and SPC registers.
  When \texttt{save\_cont\_reg=0} is specified, the contents of the SSR and SPC registers are not saved or restored.
  When \texttt{save\_cont\_reg=1} is specified, the contents of the SSR and SPC registers are saved and restored.
  This option is only valid when \texttt{cpu=sh3, sh3dsp, sh4, sh4a, or sh4ldsp} is specified and \texttt{#pragma interrupt} is specified.
  The default for this option is \texttt{save\_cont\_reg=1}.

RTnext, NORTnext: Return Value Extension

Other[Miscellaneous options :][Expand return value to 4 byte]

- Command Line Format
  \texttt{RTnext}
  \texttt{NORTnext}

- Description
  Specifies whether to perform sign or zero extension of a return value in register R0 when a type of a return value is char, signed char, unsigned char, short, signed short, or unsigned short in a function where function prototype has been declared.
  When the \texttt{rtnext} option is specified, sign or zero extension of the function return value is performed.
  When the \texttt{nortnext} option is specified, sign or zero extension of the function return value is not performed.
  The default for this option is \texttt{nortnext}. 
APproxdiv: Converting Floating-point Constant Division to Multiplication

Other[Miscellaneous options :][Approximate a floating-point constant division]

- Command Line Format
  APproxdiv
- Description
  Converts divisions of floating-point constants into multiplications of the corresponding reciprocals as constants.
- Remarks
  When this option is specified, the speed of execution of floating-point constant division will be improved. The precision of operation may, however, be changed, so take care on this point.

PAthc: Avoiding SH7055 Illegal Operation

Other[Miscellaneous options :][Avoid illegal SH7055 instructions]

- Command Line Format
  PAthc = 7055
- Description
  Avoids the output of a program that includes operations that are illegal for the SH7055 due to the order of instructions.
- Remarks
  This option is only valid when cpu=sh2e has been specified.

FPScr: FPSCR Register Precision Mode Switching

Other[Miscellaneous options :][Change FPSCR register if double data used]

- Command Line Format
  FPScr = { Safe | Aggressive }
- Description
  Specifies whether or not to guarantee the precision mode for the FPSCR register before and after a function call.
  In the SH2A-FPU, SH-4, or SH-4A, single or double precision mode is specified for the FPSCR register when executing float or double operation.
  When fpscr=safe is specified, the compiler always switches the precision-mode setting of the FPSCR register to single precision after return from function calls.
  When fpscr=aggressive is specified, the contents of the FPSCR register in terms of precision mode after return from function calls are not guaranteed.
This option is valid when `cpu=sh2afpu|sh4|sh4a` is specified and neither `fpu=single` nor `fpu=double` is specified.

The default for this option is `fpscr=aggressive`.

**Volatile_loop: Disabling Loop Iteration Condition Optimization**

**Other [Miscellaneous options :][Treats loop condition as volatile qualified]**

- **Command Line Format**
  - `Volatile_loop`

- **Description**
  - Disables optimization of the loop iteration condition if the loop iteration condition includes an external variable.
  - Note however that if type conversion is performed, if two or more external variables are included, or if composite operation is performed, optimization may be performed.

- **Remarks**
  - Without this option, if the loop iteration condition is invariant in the loop, the loop iteration condition may be eliminated.
AUto_enum: Enumeration Data Size

Other[Miscellaneous options :][enum size is made the smallest]

- Command Line Format
  AUto_enum
- Description
  Processes the enum data as the minimum data type with which the enum value can fit in. The default for this option is to process the enum value as the int type. Table 2.13 shows the relationship between the possible enum values and data types.

Table 2.13  Relationship between enum Values and Data Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Enumerator</th>
<th>Minimum Value</th>
<th>Maximum Value</th>
<th>Data Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>–128</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>signed char</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>255</td>
<td>unsigned char</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>–32768</td>
<td>32767</td>
<td>signed short</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>65535</td>
<td>unsigned short</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other than above</td>
<td>Other than above</td>
<td>int</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ENAble_register: Preferential Allocation of register Storage Class Variables

Other[Miscellaneous options :][Enable register declaration]

- Format
  ENAble_register
- Description
  Allocates preferentially the variables with register storage class specification to registers.
- Remarks
  If a variable cannot be allocated to a register, message C0102 (1) Register is not allocated to "variable name" in "function name" will be output. Note, however, that this message will not be output if a parameter is not allocated to a register.
STRIct_ansi: ANSI Conformance

Other[Miscellaneous options :][Obey ansi specifications more strictly]

- Format
  STRIct_ansi

- Description
  Conforms to the ANSI standard for the following processing:
  - unsigned int and long type operations
  Example:
  ```c
  long sl;
  unsigned int ui;
  sl /= ui; /* When strict_ansi has been specified, unsigned int is applied for operation. Otherwise, long is applied. */
  ```
  - Associativity of floating-point operations

- Remarks
  When this option is specified, the operation results may be different from those of former-version compilers.

FDIv: Conversion to Floating-Point Division

Other[Miscellaneous options :][Change integer division into floating-point]

- Format
  FDIv

- Description
  Converts integer division to floating-point division, which improves the speed of division operation.

- Remarks
  This option is only valid when `cpu=sh2e, sh2afpu, sh4, or sh4a` is specified.
  This option is invalid when the `ifunc` option is specified and is invalid for the function specified with `#pragma ifunc`.
  When `cpu=sh2afpu, sh4, or sh4a` and `fpu=double` are specified, this conversion is applied to division when divisor and dividend are both four bytes or less. In other cases, this conversion is applied to division when divisor and dividend are both two bytes or less.
FIXED_Const: Floating-Point Values to Fixed-Point Values Conversion

Other[Miscellaneous options :][Floating-point constant is handled as a fixed-point constant]

- Command Line Format
  FIXED_Const

- Description
  Generates an object with converting floating-point values to fixed-point values.

- Remarks
  This option is only valid when `cpu=sh2dsp, cpu=sh3dsp` or `cpu=sh4aldsp` and `dspc` are specified.
  When the expression format of the floating-point constant is explicitly used, an object is generated as the floating-point constant even if this option is specified.

FIXED_Max: Conversion of 1.0 to ____fixed Type Maximum Value

Other[Miscellaneous options :][treats 1.0 as maximum number of fixed type]

- Command Line Format
  FIXED_Max

- Description
  Generates an object with converting 1.0r to the maximum value of the ____fixed type, and converting 1.0R to the maximum value of the long ____fixed type.
  For details on the maximum value, refer to the description on fixed.h in section 10.4.1 (8), Standard C Libraries.

- Remarks
  This option is only valid when `cpu=sh2dsp, cpu=sh3dsp` or `cpu=sh4aldsp, and dspc` are specified.
FIXED_Noround: Omitting Type Conversion for __fixed Multiplication Result

Other[Miscellaneous options :][delete type conversion after fixed multiple]

- Command Line Format
  FIXED_Noround

- Description
  Omits converting the long __fixed type result obtained from __fixed type multiplication to the __fixed type.

- Remarks
  When this option is specified, the precision of operation may be changed.
  This option is only valid when cpu=sh2dsp, cpu=sh3dsp or cpu=sh4aldsp, and dspe are specified.
  When the expression format of the floating-point constant is explicitly used, an object is generated as the floating-point constant even if this option is specified.

REPeat: DSP-expansion Repeat Loop

Other[Miscellaneous options :][DSP repeat loop is used]

- Command Line Format
  REPeat

- Description
  When the repeat option is specified, the loop may be expanded as the code that uses the DSP-expansion repeat loop.

- Remarks
  The expansion-repeat loop is only available for the CPU that supports the LDRC instruction.
  This option is only valid when cpu=sh3dsp or cpu=sh4aldsp has been specified

SIMple_float_conv: Omitting Range Check for Conversion between Floating-Point Number and Integer

Other[Miscellaneous options :][Not check the range in conversion between floating point number and integer]

- Command Line Format
  SIMple_float_conv
• Description
  The compiler generates a code that does not include a check of the target value range for the
type conversion between unsigned integers and floating-point numbers.

• Examples
  (1) unsigned long func(float f)
      {
      return ((unsigned int)f);
      }

  [Without simple_float_conv setting]
  MOV         #79,R2   ; 0x0000004F
  SHLL8       R2
  SHLL16      R2       ; 0x4F000000
  LDS         R2,FPUL
  FSTS        FPUL,FR8
  FCMP/GT     FR4,FR8
  BT          L12
  FADD        FR8,FR8  ; When f ≥ 0x4F000000,
  FSUB        FR8,FR4  ; (f - 0x4F800000) is used as the value before conversion.
  L12:
  FTRC        FR4,FPUL ; Conversion from float to signed long
  STS         FPUL,R0

  [With simple_float_conv setting]
  FTRC        FR4,FPUL ; Conversion from float to signed long
  STS         FPUL,R0
(2) float func2(unsigned long u)
{
    return ((float)u);
}

[Without `simple_float_conv` setting]
LDS R4, FPUL
CMP/PZ R4
BT/S L12
FLOAT FPUL, FR0 ; Conversion from signed long to float
MOVA L13+2, R
FMV.S @R0, FR9 ; When u ≥ 0x80000000u,
FADD FR9, FR0 ; 0x4F800000 is added to the value after conversion.
L12:
RTS
NOP
L13:
RES.W 1
DATA.L H'4F800000

[With `simple_float_conv` setting]
LDS R4, FPUL
RTS
FLOAT FPUL, FR0 ; Conversion from signed long to float

- Remarks
  This option is valid when `cpu` is sh2e, sh2afpu, sh4, or sh4a.
  Correct operation is not guaranteed when the value before type conversion is not an integer from 0 to 2147483647 or a floating-point number from 0.0 to 2147483647.0. When using a value outside of these ranges, do not specify this option.
NOUSE_DIV_INST: Inhibiting generation of the DIVU and DIVS instructions

Other[Miscellaneous options :][Suppress DIVS and DIVU instruction generation]

- Command Line Format
  -NOUSE_DIV_INST

- Description
  Expands all integer-type division operations and remainder operations into code which does not use the DIVU and DIVS instructions.
  This option is only valid when the cpu=sh2a | sh2afpu specification has been made.

FLOAT_ORDER: Change operation order for floating-point expression aggressively

Other[Miscellaneous options :][Change operation order for floating-point expression aggressively]

- Command Line Format
  -FLOAT_ORDER

- Description
  The compiler aggressively optimizes floating-point expressions by changing the order of operations.
  Although the object code generally has better performance than when float_order is not specified, the precision of operations may differ from that for code produced by earlier versions of the compiler.

- Examples
  /* -float_order is specified, performed as * (b + c) * 100.0f */
  float a,b,c;
  f()
  {
    a = b * 100.0f + c * 100.0f;
  }

- Remarks
  This option is only valid when optimize=1 is specified.
## 2.2.6 CPU Options

### Table 2.14 CPU Tab Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Command Line Format</th>
<th>Dialog Menu</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Byte order [SH-3 to SH-4]</td>
<td>ENdian = { Big</td>
<td>Little }</td>
<td>CPU [Endian :]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rounding mode [SH2A-FPU, SH-4, and SH-4A]</td>
<td>Round = { Zero</td>
<td>Nearest }</td>
<td>CPU [Round to :]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Denormalized numbers [SH4 and SH-4A]</td>
<td>DENormalize = { OFF</td>
<td>ON }</td>
<td>CPU [Denormalized number allow as a result]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Program section position independent [other than SH-1]</td>
<td>Pic= { 0</td>
<td>1 }</td>
<td>CPU [Position independent code (PIC)]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item</td>
<td>Command Line Format</td>
<td>Dialog Menu</td>
<td>Specification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>double to float conversion [other than SH2A-FPU, SH-4, or SH-4A]</td>
<td>DOuble=Float</td>
<td>CPU [Treat double as float]</td>
<td>Handles a double-type variable as a float-type variable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bit field order specification</td>
<td>Bit_order={Left</td>
<td>Right }</td>
<td>CPU [Bit field's members are allocated from the lower bit]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boundary alignment of structure, union, and class members</td>
<td>PACK = { 1</td>
<td>4 }</td>
<td>CPU [Pack struct, union and class]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exception handling</td>
<td>EXception</td>
<td>CPU [Use try, throw and catch C++]</td>
<td>Enables exception handling function. Disables exception handling function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Runtime type information</td>
<td>RTTI= {ON</td>
<td>OFF }</td>
<td>CPU [Enable/disable runtime information]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Method of division* [SH-2]</td>
<td>Division = { CPU</td>
<td>Peripheral</td>
<td>Nomask }</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: For details of this option, see section 2.2.2, Object Options.
CPU : CPU

CPU[CPU :]

- Command Line Format

CPU = { SH1
      | SH2
      | SH2E
      | SH2A
      | SH2AFPU
      | SH2DSP
      | SH3
      | SH3DSP
      | SH4
      | SH4A
      | SH4ALDSP
    }

- Description

  Specifies the CPU type for the object program to be generated. Suboptions are listed in table 2.15.

  The default for this option is **cpu=sh1**.

**Table 2.15 Suboptions for cpu Option**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suboption</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sh1</td>
<td>Generates SH-1 object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sh2</td>
<td>Generates SH-2 object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sh2e</td>
<td>Generates SH-2E object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sh2a</td>
<td>Generates SH-2A object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sh2afpu</td>
<td>Generates SH2A-FPU object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sh2dsp</td>
<td>Generates SH2-DSP object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sh3</td>
<td>Generates SH-3 object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sh3dsp</td>
<td>Generates SH3-DSP object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sh4</td>
<td>Generates SH-4 object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sh4a</td>
<td>Generates SH-4A object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sh4aldsp</td>
<td>Generates SH4AL-DSP object.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Endian: Memory Byte Order**

`CPU[Endian :]`

- **Command Line Format**
  `Endian = { Big | Little }

- **Description**
  When `Endian=big` is specified, data bytes are arranged in the big endian order.
  When `Endian=little` is specified, data bytes are arranged in the little endian order.
  Little endian object programs do not run on the SH-1, SH-2, SH-2E, SH-2A, SH2A-FPU, or SH2-DSP.
  The default for this option is `Endian=big`.

**FPU: Floating-point Operation Mode**

`CPU[FPU :]`

- **Command Line Format**
  `FPU = { Single | Double }

- **Description**
  When `FPU=single` is specified, double-precision floating-point operation is carried out in single precision.
  When `FPU=double` is specified, single-precision floating-point operation is carried out in double precision.
  Specify `FPU=single` if floating point calculations are not used in the program.
  This option is valid only when `cpu=sh2afpu|sh4|sh4a` is specified.

- **Note**
  When the `FPU` option is not specified or when `FPU=single` is specified, the precision mode might need to be set to perform single-precision floating-point operation in an interrupt function. For details, see section 9.4.1 (6) Interrupt Functions When the CPU Type Is SH2A-FPU, SH4, or SH4A.
Round: Rounding Mode

CPU[Round to :]

- Command Line Format
  Round = { Zero | Nearest }

- Description
  Specifies the rounding method when floating-point constants are converted to object codes.
  When round=zero is specified, values are rounded to zero.
  When round=nearest is specified, values are rounded to nearest.
  This option is valid only when cpu=sh2afpu|sh4|sh4a is specified.
  The default for this option is round=zero.

DENormalize: Denormalized Numbers

CPU[Denormalized number allower as a result]

- Command Line Format
  DENormalize = { OFF | ON }

- Description
  Specifies the operation when denormalized numbers are used to describe floating-point constants.
  When denormalize=off is specified, denormalized numbers are treated as zeros.
  When denormalize=on is specified, denormalized numbers as treated as they are.
  This option is valid only when cpu=sh4|sh4a is specified.
  The default for this option is denormalize=off.
Pic: Position Independent Code

CPU[Position independent code (PIC)]

- **Command Line Format**
  
  Pic = { 0 | 1 }

- **Description**
  
  When pic=1 is specified, a program section after linkage can be allocated to any address and executed. A data section can only be allocated to an address specified at linkage. When using this option as a position independent code, a function address cannot be specified as an initial value. At C++ compilation, a pointer to a virtual function or function member requires a function address as the initial value. Therefore, C++ programs containing virtual functions and pointers to member functions cannot be executed as position independent codes.

  **Example 1:**
  
  ```c
  extern int f();
  
  int (*fp)() = f;
  ```
  
  `<-- Cannot be specified`

  **Example 2:**
  
  ```c
  struct A {virtual void f();};
  
  void (A::*ap)() = &A::f;
  ```
  
  `<-- Cannot be specified`

  When cpu=sh1 is specified, pic=1 is ignored.

  The default for this option is pic=0.
DOUBLE=Float: double to float Conversion

CPU[Treat double as float]

- Command Line Format
  DOUBLE=Float

- Description
  Generates an object with converting double-type (double-precision floating-point) values to float-type (single-precision floating-point) values.

- Remarks
  This option is invalid when cpu=sh2afpu|sh4|sh4a is specified, and assumes that fpu=single is specified.

BIT_order: Bit Field Order Specification

CPU[Bit field’s members are allocated from the lower bit :]

- Command Line Format
  BIT_order={ Left | Right }

- Description
  Specifies the order of bit field members.
  When bit_order=left is specified, members are allocated from the upper bit.
  When bit_order=right is specified, members are allocated from the lower bit.
  The default for this option is bit_order=left.

- Remarks
  For details on allocation of bit field members, refer to section 10.1.2, Internal Data Representation, and the description on #pragma bit_order in section 10.3.1, #pragma Extension Specifiers.
PACK: Boundary Alignment of Structure, Union, and Class Members

CPU[Pack struct, union and class]

- Command Line Format
  
  ```
  PACK = { 1 | 4}
  ```

- Description
  
  Specifies the boundary alignment value for structure, union, and class members.

  The boundary alignment of structure members can also be specified by the `#pragma pack` extension. If both this option and a `#pragma` extension are specified, the `#pragma` specification is valid.

  The boundary alignment value for structures, unions, and classes equals the maximum boundary alignment of members.

  For details, refer to section 10.1.2 (2), Compound Type (C), Class Type (C++).

- Remarks
  
  When the `iodefine.h` file created by the Renesas High-Performance Embedded Workshop is in use, if `#pragma` or an option is used to set the alignment value to 1, the members of I/O register structures will not specify the correct addresses. To avoid this problem, place `#pragma pack4` at the start of `iodefine.h` and place `#pragma unpack` at the end of `iodefine.h`.

  Table 2.16 shows the boundary alignment values for structure, union, and class members when `pack` is specified.

**Table 2.16 Boundary Alignment for Structure, Union, and Class Members when the pack Option is Specified**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Member Type</th>
<th>pack=1</th>
<th>pack=4</th>
<th>Not Specified</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(unsigned) char</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(unsigned) short, and long _ _fixed</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(unsigned) int, (unsigned) long, (unsigned) long long, long _ _fixed, _ _accum, long _ _accum, floating-point type, and pointer type</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structures, unions, and classes aligned to a 1-byte boundary</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structures, unions, and classes aligned to a 2-byte boundary</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structures, unions, and classes aligned to a 4-byte boundary</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EXception, NOEXception: Exception Handling

CPU[Use try, throw and catch of C++]

- Command Line Format
  
  EXception
  NOEXception

- Description
  
  When the `EXception` option is specified, the C++ exceptional handling function (try, catch, throw) becomes valid.
  
  When the `NOEXception` option is specified, the C++ exceptional handling function (try, catch, throw) becomes invalid.
  
  When the `EXception` option is specified, the code performance may be reduced.
  
  The default for this option is `NOEXception`.

- Remarks
  
  In order to use the C++ exceptional handling function among files, specify `rtti=on` at compilation, and do not specify the `noprelink` option at linkage.
  
  The `EXception` option and `ecpp` option cannot be specified simultaneously.
  
  Object files created by using the `EXception` option must not be registered with libraries or output as relocatable files by the optimizing linkage editor. Doing so will lead to a duplicate-definition or no-definition error.

RTTI: Runtime-Type Information

CPU[Enable/disable runtime information]

- Command Line Format
  
  `RTTI = { ON | OFF }`

- Description
  
  Enables or disables runtime type information.
  
  When `rtti=on` is specified, dynamic_cast and typeid are enabled.
  
  When `rtti=off` is specified, dynamic_cast and typeid are disabled.
  
  The default for this option is `rtti=off`.

- Remarks
  
  Do not define object files which are created by specifying this option in a library, and do not output files with this information as relocatable object files through the optimizing linkage editor. A symbol double definition error or symbol undefined error may occur.
2.2.7 Options Other Than Above

Table 2.17 Options Other Than Above

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Command Line Format</th>
<th>Dialog Menu</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Selecting C or C++ language</td>
<td>\texttt{LAng = { C</td>
<td>CPp }}</td>
<td>(Determined by an extension)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable of copyright output</td>
<td>\texttt{LOGO NOLOGO}</td>
<td>(nologo is always valid)</td>
<td>Outputs copyright. Disables output of copyright.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Character code select in string literals</td>
<td>Euc \texttt{ SJis} \texttt{LATin1}</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Selects euc code. Selects sjis code. Selects latin1 code.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japanese character code specified within object</td>
<td>\texttt{OUTcode = { EUC</td>
<td>SJis }}</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subcommand file specified</td>
<td>\texttt{SUBcommand = &lt;file name&gt;}</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Command option is fetched from the file specified with &lt;file name&gt;.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\textbf{LAng: Selecting C or C++ Language}

None (Always determined by an extension)

- Command Line Format
  \texttt{LAng = \{ C | CPp \}}
- Description
  Specifies the language of the source program.
  When \texttt{lang=c} is specified, the compiler will compile the program file as a C source program.
  When \texttt{lang=cpp} is specified, the compiler will compile the program file as a C++ source program.
  If this option is not specified, the compiler will determine whether the source program is a C or a C++ program by the extension of the file name. If the extension is c, the compiler will compile it as a C source program. If the extension is cpp, cc, or cp, the compiler will compile it as a C++ source program. If there is no extension, the compiler will compile the program as a C source program.
• Example
  
  `shc test.c` Compiled as a C source program.
  `shc test.cpp` Compiled as a C++ source program.
  `shc -lang=cpp test.c` Compiled as a C++ source program.
  `shc test` Assumed to be test.c and thus be compiled as a
  C source program.

• Remarks
  
  If `lang=c` is specified, `ecpp` is invalid.

LOGO, NOLOGO: Copyright Output Control

None (`nologo` is always available)

• Command Line Format
  
  LOGO
  NOLOGO

• Description
  
  Disables the copyright output.
  
  When the `logo` option is specified, copyright display is output.
  
  When the `nologo` option is specified, the copyright display output is disabled.
  
  The default for this option is `logo`.

Euc, SJis, LATin1: Character Code Select in String Literals

None

• Command Line Format
  
  Euc
  SJis
  LATin1

• Description
  
  Use this option to specify the Japanese character code or ISO-Latin1 code written in a string
  literal, a character constant, or a comment.
  
  Table 2.18 shows character code in the string literals for three types of host computers.
Table 2.18  Relationship between the Host Computer and Character Code in String Literals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Host Computer</th>
<th>euc</th>
<th>sjis</th>
<th>latin1</th>
<th>Not Specified</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PC</td>
<td>euc</td>
<td>sjis</td>
<td>latin1</td>
<td>sjis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPARC</td>
<td>euc</td>
<td>sjis</td>
<td>latin1</td>
<td>euc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HP9000/700</td>
<td>euc</td>
<td>sjis</td>
<td>latin1</td>
<td>sjis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Remarks
  When the `latin1` option is specified, the `outcode` option will become invalid.

OUtcode: Japanese Code Conversion in Object Code

None

- Command Line Format
  \texttt{OUtcode = \{ EUc | SJis \}}

- Description
  Specifies the Japanese character code to be output to the object program when Japanese is written in string literals and character constants.

  When `outcode=euc` is specified, the compiler outputs the Japanese character code in the `euc` code.

  When `outcode=sjis` is specified, the compiler outputs the Japanese character code in the `sjis` code.

  Option `euc` or `sjis` can be specified for the Japanese character code in a source program.
SUBcommand: Subcommand File

None

- Format
  SUBcommand = <file name>

- Description
  Specifies the subcommand file where options used at compiler initiation are stored. The command format in the subcommand file is the same as that on the command line.

- Example
  opt.sub: -listfile -show=object -debug
  Command line specification: shc -cpu=sh4 -subcommand=opt.sub test.c
  Interpretation at compilation: shc -cpu=sh4 -listfile -show=object -debug test.c
Section 3  Assembler Options

3.1  Command Line Format

The format of the command line to initiate the assembler is as follows:

asmsh [A<option>] … [A<file name> [,…]] [A<option> …]
<option>:<option> [=<suboption> [,…]]

Note: When the user specifies multiple source files, the assembler will merge and assemble
these files as one unit in the order they were specified. In this case, the user must
write .END only in the file that was specified last.

3.2  List of Options

In the command line format, uppercase letters indicate the abbreviations. Characters underlined
indicate the default assumptions.

The format of the dialog menus for the integrated development environment is as follows:

Category [Item]

Options are described in the order of tabs in the integrated development environment’s option
dialog box.
### 3.2.1 Source Options

#### Table 3.1 Source Category Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Command Line Format</th>
<th>Dialog Menu</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Include file directory</td>
<td>Include = &lt;path name&gt;[…]</td>
<td>Source [Show entries for:]</td>
<td>Specifies include-file destination path name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Include file directories</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replacement symbol definition</td>
<td>DEFine = &lt;sub&gt;[, …]</td>
<td>Source [Show entries for:]</td>
<td>Defines replacement string literal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;sub&gt;: &lt;replacement symbol&gt; = &quot;&lt;string literal&gt;&quot;</td>
<td>Defines [Defines]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Integer preprocessor variable definition</td>
<td>ASsignA = &lt;sub&gt;[, …]</td>
<td>Source [Show entries for:]</td>
<td>Defines integer preprocessor variable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;sub&gt;: &lt;variable name&gt; = &lt;integer constant&gt;</td>
<td>Preprocessor variables [Preprocessor variables]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Character preprocessor variable definition</td>
<td>ASsignC = &lt;sub&gt;[, …]</td>
<td>Source [Show entries for:]</td>
<td>Defines character preprocessor variable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;sub&gt;: &lt;variable name&gt; = &quot;&lt;string literal&gt;&quot;</td>
<td>Preprocessor variables [Preprocessor variables]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Include

Source [Show entries for:] [Include file directories]

- Command Line Format
  Include = <path name> […]

- Description
  The include option specifies the include file directory. The directory name depends on the naming rule of the host machine used. As many directory names as can be input in one command line can be specified. The current directory is searched first, and then the directories specified by the include option are searched in the specified order.
  Example:  
  asmsh aaa.src –include=C:\common,C:\local
  (.INCLUDE "file.h" is specified in aaa.src.)
  The current directory, C:\common,C:\local are searched for file.h in that order.

Relationship with Assembler Directives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Assembler Directive</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| include | (regardless of any specification) | (1) Directory specified by .INCLUDE  
  (2) Directory specified by include* |

(no specification) .INCLUDE <file name> Directory specified by .INCLUDE

Note: The directory specified by the include option is added before that specified by .INCLUDE.

DEFine

Source [Show entries for:] [Defines]

- Command Line Format
  DEFine = <sub>[…]  
  <sub>:=<replacement symbol>="<string literal>"

- Description
  The define option defines the specified symbol as the corresponding string literal to be replaced by the preprocessor.
  Differences between define and assignc are the same as those between .DEFINE and .ASSIGNC.
Relationship with Assembler Directives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Assembler Directive</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>define</td>
<td>.DEFINE *</td>
<td>String literal specified by define</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(no specification)</td>
<td>.DEFINE</td>
<td>String literal specified by define</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: When a string literal is assigned to a replacement symbol by the `define` option, the definition of the replacement symbol by `DEFINE` is invalidated. This replacement is not applied to the `.AENDI`, `.AENDR`, `.AENDW`, `.AIFDEF`, `.END`, and `.ENDM` directives.

ASSignA

Source[Show entries for:][Preprocessor variables]

- Command Line Format
  
  `ASSignA = <sub>[…] <sub>:<preprocessor variable>=<integer constant>`

- Description
  
  The `ASSignA` option sets an integer constant to a preprocessor variable. The naming rule of preprocessor variables is the same as that of symbols. An integer constant is specified by combining the radix (B', Q', D', or H') and a value. If the radix is omitted, the value is assumed to be decimal. An integer constant must be within the range from –2,147,483,648 to 4,294,967,295. To specify a negative value, use a radix other than decimal.

Relationship with Assembler Directives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Assembler Directive</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>assigna</td>
<td>.ASSIGNA*</td>
<td>Integer constant specified by assigna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(no specification)</td>
<td>.ASSIGNA</td>
<td>Integer constant specified by assigna</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: When a value is assigned to a preprocessor variable by the `assigna` option, the definition of the preprocessor variable by ASSIGNA is invalidated.

Example: `asmsh aaa.src -assigna=_$=H'FF`

Value H'FF is assigned to preprocessor variable _$. All references (&_$) to preprocessor variable _$ in the source program are set to H'FF.
ASSignC

Source [Show entries for:][Preprocessor variables]

- Command Line Format
  ASSignC = <sub>[,...]
  <sub>:<preprocessor variable>="<string literal>"

- Description
  The assignc option sets a string literal to a preprocessor variable.
  The naming rule of preprocessor variables is the same as that of symbols.
  A string literal must be enclosed with double-quotiation marks (")
  Up to 255 characters (bytes) can be specified for a string literal.

Relationship with Assembler Directives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Assembler Directive</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>assignc</td>
<td>.ASSIGNC*</td>
<td>String literal specified by assignc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(no specification)</td>
<td>.ASSIGNC</td>
<td>String literal specified by .ASSIGNC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: When a string literal is assigned to a preprocessor variable by the assignc option, the definition of the preprocessor variable by .ASSIGNC is invalidated.

Example:    asmsh  aaa.src -assignc=_$="ON!OFF"
String literal ON!OFF is assigned to preprocessor variable _$$. All references ($&_$$) to preprocessor variable _$$ in the source program are set to ON!OFF.
### 3.2.2 Object Options

#### Table 3.2 Object Category Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Command Line Format</th>
<th>Dialog Menu</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Debugging information</td>
<td>Debug</td>
<td>Object</td>
<td>Controls output of debugging information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NODebug</td>
<td>[Debug information:]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-processor expansion</td>
<td>EXPand [ = &lt;output file name&gt; ]</td>
<td>Object [Generate assembly source file after preprocess]</td>
<td>Outputs preprocessor expansion result.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>result</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Literal pool output point</td>
<td>LITERAL = &lt;point&gt; [ , … ]</td>
<td>Object [Generate literal pool after:]</td>
<td>Specifies the point to output literal pool.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Object module output</td>
<td>Object [ = &lt;output file name &gt; ]</td>
<td>Object [Output file directory:]</td>
<td>Controls object module output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NOObject</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unresolved symbol size</td>
<td>Dispsize = {4</td>
<td>12}</td>
<td>Object [Selects displacement size]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[SH-2A and SH2A-FPU]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Debug, NODebug

Object [Debug information:]

- Command Line Format
  Debug
  NODebug

- Description
  When the debug option is specified, debugging information is output. When the nodebug option is specified, no debugging information is output. The debug and nodebug options are only valid in cases where an object module is generated. The default is nodebug.

- Remarks
  Debugging information is required when debugging a program with the debugger. Debugging information includes information about source statement lines and symbols.

Relationship with Assembler Directives

The assembler gives priority to specifications made by options.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Assembler Directive</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>debug</td>
<td>(regardless of any specification)</td>
<td>Debugging information is output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nodebug</td>
<td>(regardless of any specification)</td>
<td>Debugging information is not output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(no specification)</td>
<td>.OUTPUT DBG</td>
<td>Debugging information is output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.OUTPUT NODBG</td>
<td>Debugging information is not output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(no specification)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Debugging information is not output.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EXPand

Object [Generate assembly source file after preprocess]

- Command Line Format
  EXPand [= <output file name>]

- Description
  The **expand** option outputs an assembler source file for which macro expansion, conditional assembly, and file inclusion have been performed.

  When this option is specified, no object will be generated.

  When the output file parameter is omitted, the assembler takes the following actions:
  - If the file extension is omitted:
    The file extension will be exp.
  - If the specification is completely omitted:
    The source file name will be the same name as that of the input source file (the source file specified first) and the file extension will be exp.

Note: Do not specify the same file name for the input and output files.

LITERAL

Object [Generate assembly source file after preprocess]

- Command Line Format
  LITERAL = <point>[, …]
  <point>: {Pool|Branch|Jump|Return}

- Description
  The **literal** option specifies the point where the literal pool that was created by the automatic literal pool creation function is placed.

  - pool: The literal pool is output at the location of .POOL.
  - branch: The literal pool is output after the BRA/BRAF instruction.
  - jump: The literal pool is output after the JMP instruction.
  - return: The literal pool is output after the RTS/RTE instruction.

  The default is **literal = pool, branch, jump, return.**
Object, NOObject

Object [Output file directory:]

- Command Line Format
  Object [= <object output file>]
  NOObject

- Description
  When the object option is specified, an object module is output.
  When the noobject option is specified, no object module is output.
  When the object output file parameter is omitted, the assembler takes the following actions:
  — If the file extension is omitted:
    The file extension will be obj.
  — If the specification is completely omitted:
    The source file name will be the same name as that of the input source file (the source file specified first) and the file extension will be obj.

  The default is object.

Relationship with Assembler Directives

The assembler gives priority to specifications made by options.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Assembler Directive</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>(regardless of any specification)</td>
<td>An object module is output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noobject</td>
<td>(regardless of any specification)</td>
<td>An object module is not output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(no specification)</td>
<td>.OUTPUT OBJ</td>
<td>An object module is output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.OUTPUT NOOBJ</td>
<td>An object module is not output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(no specification)</td>
<td>An object module is output.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Do not specify the same file name for the input source file and the output object module. If the same file is specified, the contents of the input source file will be lost.
**DISpsize**

Object [Selects displacement size]

- Command Line Format
  
  DISpsize = {4 | 12}

- Description
  
  Specifies the size of external reference symbols and unresolved symbols. This specification is applied to instructions that accept both 4 and 12 as the displacement size for the addressing mode; it is not applied to instructions that only accept displacement size 4. This option is only valid when the CPU type is SH-2A or SH2A-FPU. The default is **dispsize=12**.

- Remarks
  
  The allocation size specification (:12) overrides this option specification.
### 3.2.3 List Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Command Line Format</th>
<th>Dialog Menu</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assemble listing output control</td>
<td>LIST [= &lt;output file name&gt;]</td>
<td>List [Generate list file]</td>
<td>Controls output of assemble listing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NOLIST</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source program listing output control</td>
<td>SOURce</td>
<td>List [Source program:]</td>
<td>Controls output of source program listing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NOSOURce</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part of source program listing output control and tab size setting</td>
<td>SHOW [= &lt;item&gt;[, ...]]</td>
<td>List [Source program list Contents:]</td>
<td>Controls output of parts of source program listing and sets the size of tabs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NOSHOW [= &lt;item&gt;[, ...]]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;item&gt;:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{CONditionals</td>
<td>Definitions</td>
<td>Calls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NOCRoss_reference</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section information listing output control</td>
<td>SEction</td>
<td>List [Section:]</td>
<td>Controls output of section information listing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NOSEction</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: These options are valid only if the list option is specified.
LIST, NOLIST

List [Generate list file]

- Command Line Format
  LIST [= <listing output file>]
  NOLIST

- Description
  When the list option is specified, an assemble listing is output.
  When the nolist option is specified, no assemble listing is output.
  When the listing output file parameter is omitted, the assembler takes the following actions:

  — If the file extension is omitted:
    The file extension will be lis.
  — If the specification is completely omitted:
    The source file name will be the same name as that of the input source file (the source file
    specified first) and the file extension will be lis.
    The default is nolist.

Relationship with Assembler Directives

The assembler gives priority to specifications made by options.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Assembler Directive</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>list</td>
<td>(regardless of any specification)</td>
<td>An assemble listing is output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nolist</td>
<td>(regardless of any specification)</td>
<td>An assemble listing is not output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(no specification)</td>
<td>.PRINT LIST</td>
<td>An assemble listing is output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.PRINT NOLIST</td>
<td>An assemble listing is not output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(no specification)</td>
<td>An assemble listing is not output.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Do not specify the same file for the input source file and the output object file. If the same
file is specified, the contents of the input source file will be lost.
SOurce, NOSOurce

List [Source program:]

- Command Line Format
  - SOurce
  - NOSOurce
- Description
  When the `source` option is specified, a source program listing is output to the assemble listing.
  When the `nosource` option is specified, no source program listing is output to the assemble listing.
  The `source` and `nosource` options are only valid in cases where an assemble listing is being output.
  The default is `source`.

Relationship with Assembler Directives

The assembler gives priority to specifications made by options.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Assembler Directive</th>
<th>Result (When an Assemble Listing Is Output)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>source</td>
<td>(regardless of any specification)</td>
<td>A source program listing is output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nosource</td>
<td>(regardless of any specification)</td>
<td>A source program listing is not output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(no specification)</td>
<td>.PRINT SRC</td>
<td>A source program listing is output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.PRINT NOSRC</td>
<td>A source program listing is not output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(no specification)</td>
<td>A source program listing is output.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SHow, NOSHow

List [Source program list Contents:] [Conditions:], [Definitions:], [Calls:], [Expansions:], [Code:], [Tab size:]

- Command Line Format
  SHow [= <output type>[...]]
  NOSHow [=<output type>[...]]
  <output type>: {CONditionals | Definitions | CAlls | Expansions | CODe | TAB = { 4 | 8 } }  

- Description
  When the show option is specified, preprocessor source statements in the source program listing and lines of object code are output in the specified tab size. When <output type> is specified, only those items of the specified type are output. If no specification is made for the tab size, the default value will be applied.
  When the noshow option is specified, neither preprocessor source statements in the source program listing nor lines of object code are output. When <output type> is specified, only the specified items are not output.
  The show and noshow options are only valid if an assembler listing is output. The following items are available for <output type>:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Output Type</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>conditionals</td>
<td>Unsatisfied condition</td>
<td>Unsatisfied .AIF or .AIFDEF statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>definitions</td>
<td>Definition</td>
<td>Macro definition parts, .AREPEAT and .AWHILE definition parts, .INCLUDE, .ASSIGNA, and .ASSSIGNC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calls</td>
<td>Call</td>
<td>Macro call statements, .AIF, .AIFDEF, and .AENDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expansions</td>
<td>Expansion</td>
<td>Macro expansion statements .AREPEAT and .AWHILE expansion statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>code</td>
<td>Object code lines</td>
<td>The object code lines exceeding the source statement lines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tab={4</td>
<td>8}</td>
<td>Tab size</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The default is show.

- Remarks
  When specifying more than two output types, enclose the types with parentheses.
Relationship with Assembler Directives

The assembler gives priority to specifications made by options.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Assembler Directive</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show[=&lt;output type&gt;]</td>
<td>(regardless of any specification)</td>
<td>The object code is output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noshow[=&lt;output type&gt;]</td>
<td>(regardless of any specification)</td>
<td>The object code is not output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(no specification)</td>
<td>.LIST &lt;output type&gt; (output)</td>
<td>The object code is output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.LIST &lt;output type&gt; (suppress)</td>
<td>The object code is not output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(no specification)</td>
<td>The object code is output.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CRoss_reference, NOCRoss_reference

List [Cross reference:]

- Command Line Format
  
  CRoss_reference
  NOCRoss_reference

- Description
  
  When the cross_reference option is specified, a cross-reference listing is output to the assemble listing.

  When the nocross_reference option is specified, no cross-reference listing is output to the assemble listing.

  The cross_reference and nocross_reference options are valid only if an assemble listing is being output.

  The default is cross_reference.
### Relationship with Assembler Directives

The assembler gives priority to specifications made by options.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Assembler Directive</th>
<th>Result (When an Assemble Listing Is Output)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cross_reference</td>
<td>(regardless of any specification)</td>
<td>A cross-reference listing is output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nocross_reference</td>
<td>(regardless of any specification)</td>
<td>A cross-reference listing is not output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(no specification)</td>
<td>.PRINT CREF</td>
<td>A cross-reference listing is output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.PRINT NOCREF</td>
<td>A cross-reference listing is not output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(no specification)</td>
<td>A cross-reference listing is output.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SEction, NOSEction

List [Section:]

- **Command Line Format**
  - `SEction`
  - `NOSEction`
- **Description**
  - When the `section` option is specified, a section information listing is output to the assemble listing.
  - When the `nosection` option is specified, no section information listing is output to the assemble listing.
  - The `section` and `nosection` options are valid only if an assemble listing is being output. The default is `section`.  


### Relationship with Assembler Directives

The assembler gives priority to specifications made by options.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Assembler Directive</th>
<th>Result (When an Assemble Listing Is Output)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>section</td>
<td>(regardless of any specification)</td>
<td>A section information listing is output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nosection</td>
<td>(regardless of any specification)</td>
<td>A section information listing is not output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(no specification)</td>
<td>.PRINT SCT</td>
<td>A section information listing is output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.PRINT NOSCT</td>
<td>A section information listing is not output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(no specification)</td>
<td>A section information listing is output.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 3.2.4 Other Option

#### Table 3.4 Other Category Option

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Command Line Format</th>
<th>Dialog Menu</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Size mode specification for automatic literal pool generation</td>
<td>AUTO_literal</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Specifies size mode for automatic literal pool generation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preventing output of information on unreferenced external symbols</td>
<td>Exclude</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Selects whether or not to prevent output of information on unreferenced symbol information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specification to check privileged-mode instructions</td>
<td>CHKMd</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Specifies to check privileged-mode instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specification to check LDTLB instructions</td>
<td>CHKTlb</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Specifies to check LDTLB instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specification to check cache-related instructions.</td>
<td>CHKCache</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Specifies to check cache-related instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specification to check DSP-related instructions.</td>
<td>CHKDsp</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Specifies to check DSP-related instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specification to check FPU-related instructions.</td>
<td>CHKFpu</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Specifies to check FPU-related instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specification to check 8-byte boundary alignment of .FDATA.</td>
<td>CHKAlign8</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Specifies to check 8-byte boundary alignment of .FDATA.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
AUTO_literal

Other [Miscellaneous options:] [Automatically generate literal pool for immediate value]

- Command Line Format
  AUTO_literal
- Description
  The **AUTO_literal** option specifies the size mode for automatic literal pool generation.
  
  When this option is specified, automatic literal pool generation is performed in size selection mode, and the assembler checks the **imm** value in the data transfer instruction without operation size specification (MOV #imm,Rn) and automatically generates a literal pool if necessary.

  When this option is not specified, automatic literal pool generation is performed in size specification mode, and the data transfer instruction without size specification is handled as a 1-byte data transfer instruction.

  In the size selection mode, the **imm** value in the data transfer instruction without operation size specification is handled as a signed value. Therefore, a value within the range from H'00000080 to H'000000FF (128 to 255) is regarded as word-size data.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>imm Value Range</th>
<th>Selected Size or Error</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H'80000000 to H'FFFF7FFF (−2,147,483,648 to −32,769)</td>
<td>Longword</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H'FFFF8000 to H'FFFF7F (−32,768 to −129)</td>
<td>Word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H'FFFFF80 to H'0000007F (−128 to 127)</td>
<td>Byte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H'00000080 to H'000000FF (128 to 255)</td>
<td>Word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H'00000100 to H'00007FFF (256 to 32,767)</td>
<td>Word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H'00008000 to H'7FFFFFF (32,768 to 2,147,483,647)</td>
<td>Longword</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The value in parentheses ( ) is in decimal.
Exclude, NOExclude

Other [Miscellaneous options:] [Remove unreferenced external symbols]

- Command Line Format
  
  Exclude
  NOExclude

- Description
  
  When the exclude option is specified, no information on unreferenced external symbols is output.
  
  When the noexclude option is specified, information on unreferenced external symbols is output.
  
  The size of an object module can be smaller if output of information on unreferenced external symbols is prevented.
  
  Examples:
  
  asmsh aaa.mar -exclude
  
  No information on unreferenced external symbols is output.
  
  asmsh aaa.mar -noexclude
  
  Information on unreferenced external symbols is output.

CHKMd

Other [Miscellaneous options:] [check privileged instructions]

- Command Line Format
  
  CHKMd

- Description
  
  When this option is specified for the CPU type SH-3, SH3-DSP, SH-4, SH-4A, or SH4AL-DSP, only user-mode instructions of the CPU are valid. If a privileged-mode instruction is written, warning 704 occurs.

- Remarks
  
  When the CPU type is SH3-DSP or SH4AL-DSP with the CHKDSP option not specified, the following privileged-mode instructions will be handled as user-mode instructions.
  
  LDC Rm,SR
  
  LDC.L @Rm+,SR
  
  STC SR,Rm
  
  STC.L SR,=@-Rn
CHKTlb

Other [Miscellaneous options:] [check LDTLB instruction]

- Command Line Format
  CHKTlb

- Description
  When this option is specified for the CPU type SH-3, SH3-DSP, SH-4, SH-4A, or SH4AL-DSP, warning 705 occurs if an LDTLB instruction is written.

CHKCache

Other [Miscellaneous options:] [check cache instructions]

- Command Line Format
  CHKCache

- Description
  When this option is specified for the CPU type SH-3, SH3-DSP, SH-4, SH-4A, or SH4AL-DSP, warning 706 occurs if a cache-related instruction is written.

CHKDsp

Other [Miscellaneous options:] [check DSP instructions]

- Command Line Format
  CHKDsp

- Description
  When this option is specified for the CPU type SH3-DSP or SH4AL-DSP, warning 707 occurs if a DSP-related instruction is written.

CHKFpu

Other [Miscellaneous options:] [check FPU instructions]

- Command Line Format
  CHKFpu

- Description
  When this option is specified for the CPU type SH2A-FPU, SH-4, or SH-4A, warning 708 occurs if an FPU-related instruction is written.
CHKAlign8

Other [Miscellaneous options:] [check 8-byte alignment]

- Command Line Format
  CHKAlign8

- Description
  When this option is specified for the CPU type SH-4A or SH4AL-DSP, 8-byte boundary alignment of .FDATA is checked. Warning 816 occurs if double-precision floating-point constant data specified by .FDATA is not aligned to an 8-byte boundary.

### 3.2.5 CPU Options

#### Table 3.5 CPU Tab Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Command Line Format</th>
<th>Dialog Menu</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Target CPU specification</td>
<td>CPU = &lt;target CPU&gt;</td>
<td>CPU [CPU:]</td>
<td>Specifies target CPU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endian type specification</td>
<td>ENdian = {Big</td>
<td>Little}</td>
<td>CPU [Endian:]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rounding direction of floating-point data</td>
<td>Round = {Nearest</td>
<td>Zero}</td>
<td>CPU [Round to:]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handling denormalized numbers in floating-point data</td>
<td>DENormalize = {ON</td>
<td>OFF}</td>
<td>CPU [Denormalized number allower as a result:]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CPU

CPU [CPU:]

- Command Line Format
  CPU = <target CPU>

- Description
  The cpu option specifies the target CPU for the source program to be assembled.
  The following CPUs can be specified.
  - SH1 (for SH-1)
  - SH2 (for SH-2)
  - SH2E (for SH-2E)
  - SHDSP (for SH2-DSP)
  - SH2A (for SH-2A)
  - SH2AFPU (for SH2A-FPU)
  - SH3 (for SH-3)
  - SH3DSP (for SH3-DSP)
  - SH4 (for SH-4)
  - SH4A (for SH-4A)
  - SH4ALDSP (for SH4AL-DSP)

**Relationship with Assembler Directives**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Assembler Directive</th>
<th>SHCPU Environment Variable</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cpu= &lt;target CPU&gt; (regardless of any specification)</td>
<td>(regardless of any specification)</td>
<td>Target CPU specified by cpu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(no specification) .CPU &lt;target CPU&gt; (regardless of any specification)</td>
<td>(regardless of any specification)</td>
<td>Target CPU specified by .CPU</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(no specification) SHCPU = &lt;target CPU&gt; SHCPU specified by SHCPU environment variable</td>
<td>(no specification)</td>
<td>SH1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Endian**

CPU [Endian:]

- Command Line Format
  
  ENdian = {Big | Little}

- Description
  
  The `_endian` option selects big endian or little endian for the target CPU.
  
  The default is `Endian=big`.

**Relationship withAssembler Directives**

The assembler gives priority to specifications made by options.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Assembler Directive</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>endian=big</td>
<td>(regardless of any specification)</td>
<td>Assembles in big endian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>endian=little</td>
<td>(regardless of any specification)</td>
<td>Assembles in little endian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(no specification)</td>
<td>ENDIAN BIG</td>
<td>Assembles in big endian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ENDIAN LITTLE</td>
<td>Assembles in little endian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(no specification)</td>
<td>Assembles in big endian</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Round

CPU [Round to:]

- Command Line Format
  
  \textit{Round = \{Nearest | Zero\}}

- Description

  The \textit{round} option specifies the rounding mode used when converting constants in floating-point data assembler directives into object codes.
  
  When \textit{round=nearest} is specified, \textit{round to NEAREST even} is selected.
  
  When \textit{round=zero} is specified, \textit{round to ZERO} is selected.
  
  When this option is omitted, the rounding mode depends on the target CPU as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Target CPU</th>
<th>Rounding Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SH1</td>
<td>round to NEAREST even</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH2</td>
<td>round to NEAREST even</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH2E</td>
<td>round to ZERO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH2A</td>
<td>round to NEAREST even</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH2AFPU</td>
<td>round to ZERO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHDSP</td>
<td>round to NEAREST even</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH3</td>
<td>round to NEAREST even</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH4</td>
<td>round to ZERO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH3DSP</td>
<td>round to NEAREST even</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH4A</td>
<td>round to ZERO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH4ALDSP</td>
<td>round to NEAREST even</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: When the target CPU is SH2E and \textit{round to NEAREST even} is selected as the rounding mode, warning 818 occurs at the first floating-point data assembler directive in the source program, and object code is output in the selected "round to NEAREST even" rounding mode.
DENormalize

CPU [Denormalize :]

- Command Line Format
  DENormalize = {ON | OFF}

- Description
  The `denormalize` option specifies whether to handle the denormalized numbers in floating-point data assembler directives as valid values.

  The object code differs when denormalized numbers are specified as valid values (ON) and invalid values (OFF).

  When `denormalize=on` is specified, the denormalized numbers are valid.
  When `denormalize=off` is specified, the denormalized numbers are invalid.
  — Valid: Warning 842 occurs and the object code is output.
  — Invalid: Warning 841 occurs and zero is output for the object code.

  When this option is omitted, whether the denormalized numbers are valid depends on the target CPU as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Target CPU</th>
<th>Denormalized Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SH1</td>
<td>Valid (ON)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH2</td>
<td>Valid (ON)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH2E</td>
<td>Invalid (OFF)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH2A</td>
<td>Valid (ON)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH2AFPU</td>
<td>Invalid (OFF)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHDSP</td>
<td>Valid (ON)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH3</td>
<td>Valid (ON)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH3DSP</td>
<td>Valid (ON)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH4</td>
<td>Invalid (OFF)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH4A</td>
<td>Invalid (OFF)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH4ALDSP</td>
<td>Valid (ON)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

  Note: When the target CPU is SH2E or SH2AFPU and denormalized numbers are specified as valid, warning 818 occurs at the first floating-point data assembler directive in the source program, and object code is output with the denormalized numbers handled as valid values as specified.
### 3.2.6 Options Other than Above

#### Table 3.6 Options Other than Above

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Command Line Format</th>
<th>Dialog Menu</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Change of error level</td>
<td>ABort = {Warning</td>
<td>Error}</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western code character enabled</td>
<td>LATIN1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Enables the use of Western code characters in source file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interpretation of Japanese character as Shift JIS code</td>
<td>SJIS</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Interprets Japanese character in source file as shift JIS code.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interpretation of Japanese character as EUC code</td>
<td>EUC</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Interprets Japanese character in source file as EUC code.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specification of Japanese character</td>
<td>OUtcode = {SJIS</td>
<td>EUC}</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting of the number of lines in the assemble listing</td>
<td>LINes = &lt;number of lines&gt;</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Specifies the number of lines in assemble listing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting of the number of digits in the assemble listing</td>
<td>Columns = &lt;number of digits&gt;</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Specifies the number of digits in assemble listing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copyright</td>
<td>LOGO</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NOLOGO</td>
<td>(nologo is always valid)</td>
<td>Not output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specification of subcommand</td>
<td>SUBcommand = &lt;file name&gt;</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Inputs command line from a file.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**ABort**

None

- **Command Line Format**
  
  ABort = {Warning|Error}

- **Description**
  
  The `abort` option controls the error level at which the assembler will be abnormally terminated.

  When `abort=warning` is specified, processing is aborted by a warning.

  When `abort=error` is specified, processing is aborted by an error.

  When the return value to the OS becomes 1 or larger, the object module is not output.

  The `abort` option is valid only if the object module is output.

  The return value to the OS is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of Cases</th>
<th>Return Value to OS when Option Specified</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>&gt;Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 or more</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 or more</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

  The default is `abort=error`.

**LATIN1**

None

- **Command Line Format**
  
  LATIN1

- **Description**
  
  The `latin1` option enables the use of Western code characters in string literals and in comments.

  Do not specify this option together with the `sjis`, `euc`, or `outcode` option.
**SJIS**

None

- Command Line Format
  
  SJIS

- Description
  
  The `sjis` option interprets Japanese characters in string literals and comments as shift JIS code. When both of `sjis` and `euc` options are omitted, Japanese characters in string literals and comments are interpreted as Japanese characters depending on the host computer.
  
  Do not specify this option together with the `latin1` or `euc` option.

**EUC**

None

- Command Line Format
  
  EUC

- Description
  
  The `euc` option interprets Japanese characters in string literals and comments as EUC code. When both of `euc` and `sjis` options are omitted, Japanese characters in string literals and comments are interpreted as Japanese characters depending on the host computer.
  
  Do not specify this option together with the `latin1` or `sjis` option.
**OUtcode**

None

- **Command Line Format**
  
  `OUtcode = {SJIS | EUC}`

- **Description**
  
  When `outcode=sjis` is specified, this option converts Japanese characters in the source file to the shift JIS code for output to the object file.

  When `outcode=euc` is specified, this option converts Japanese characters in the source file to the EUC code for output to the object file.

  The Japanese character output to the object file depends on the `outcode` specification and the Japanese character (`sjis` or `euc`) in the source file as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Japanese Character in Source File</th>
<th>outcode Option</th>
<th>sjis</th>
<th>euc</th>
<th>No Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Japanese Character</td>
<td>sjis</td>
<td>euc</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Shift JIS code</td>
<td>Shift JIS code</td>
<td>Shift JIS code</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>euc</td>
<td>EUC code</td>
<td>EUC code</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No specification</td>
<td>Shift JIS code</td>
<td>EUC code</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

  Default code is as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Host Computer</th>
<th>Default Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SPARC station</td>
<td>EUC code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HP9000/700 series</td>
<td>Shift JIS code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC</td>
<td>Shift JIS code</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LINes

None

- Command Line Format
  LINes = <Number of lines>

- Description
  The **lines** option sets the number of lines on a single page of the assemble listing. The range of valid values for the line count is from 20 to 255.

  This option is valid only if an assemble listing is being output.

**Relationship with Assembler Directives**

The assembler gives priority to specifications made by options.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Assembler Directive</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lines=&lt;number of lines&gt;</td>
<td>(regardless of any specification)</td>
<td>The number of lines on a page is given by lines.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(no specification)</td>
<td>.FORM LIN=&lt; number of lines&gt;</td>
<td>The number of lines on a page is given by .FORM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(no specification)</td>
<td></td>
<td>The number of lines on a page is 60 lines.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
COlumns

None

• Command Line Format
  COlumns = <Number of digits>

• Description
  The **columns** option sets the number of digits in a single line of the assemble listing. The range of valid values for the column count is from 79 to 255.
  This option is valid only if an assemble listing is being output.

Relationship with Assembler Directives

The assembler gives priority to specifications made by options.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Assembler Directive</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>columns=</td>
<td>(regardless of any specification)</td>
<td>The number of digits in a line is given by columns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;number of digits&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(no specification)</td>
<td>.FORM COL=&lt;number of digits&gt;</td>
<td>The number of digits in a line is given by .FORM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(no specification)</td>
<td></td>
<td>The number of digits in a line is 132.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LOGO, NOLOGO

None (nologo is always available)

• Command Line Format
  LOGO
  NOLOGO

• Description
  Controls the copyright output.
  When the **logo** option is specified, copyright display is output.
  When the **nologo** option is specified, the copyright display output is disabled.
  The default is **logo**.
SUBcommand

None

- Command Line Format
  SUBcommand = <file name>

- Description
  The **subcommand** option inputs command line specifications from a file.
  Specify input file names and command line options in the subcommand file in the same order
  as for normal command line specifications.
  Only one input file name or one command line option can be specified in one line in the
  subcommand file.
  This option must not be specified in a subcommand file.

Example:

```
asmsh aaa.src -subcommand=aaa.sub
```

The subcommand file contents are expanded to a command line and assembled.

```
------ aaa.sub contents ------
   bbb.src
   -list
   -noobj
```

The above command line and file aaa.sub are expanded as follows:

```
asmsh aaa.src, bbb.src -list -noobj
```

**Note**

A subcommand file must be no larger than 65,535 bytes.
Section 4  Optimizing Linkage Editor Options

4.1  Option Specifications

4.1.1  Command Line Format

The format of the command line is as follows:

\[\text{optlnk[\{}\Delta<\text{file name}>|\Delta<\text{option string}>\{,\}...\}\]

\[<\text{option string}>:-<\text{option}>[=<\text{suboption}][,\ldots]\]

4.1.2  Subcommand File Format

The format of the subcommand file is as follows:

\[<\text{option}>|=\Delta[<\text{suboption}>[,\ldots]]\Delta&[;<\text{comment}>]\]

&: means line continuous.

For details, refer to section 4.2.8, Subcommand File Option.

4.2  List of Options

In the command line format in the following sections, uppercase letters indicate abbreviations.
Underlined characters indicate the default settings.

The format of the corresponding dialog menus in the High-performance Embedded Workshop is
as follows:

\[\text{Tab name }<\text{Category}>[\text{Item}].\ldots\]

The order of option description corresponds to that of the tabs and the categories in the High-
performance Embedded Workshop.

The file name and path name should not include a parenthesis ("(" or ")").
### 4.2.1 Input Options

#### Table 4.1 Input Category Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Command Line Format</th>
<th>Dialog Menu</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Input file</td>
<td>Input = &lt;sub&gt;{[].\ldots[&lt;\text{\ldots}],...}</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Input&gt;</td>
<td>Specifies input file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;\text{\ldots}:[\text{\ldots}])</td>
<td>[Show entries for :]</td>
<td>(Input file is specified without input on the command line.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;file name&gt;</td>
<td>[Relocatable files and object files]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[&lt;[module name][\ldots])]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library file</td>
<td>Library = &lt;file name&gt;[...]</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Input&gt;</td>
<td>Specifies input library file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[Show entries for :]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[Library files]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Binary file</td>
<td>Binary = &lt;sub&gt;[\ldots]</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Input&gt;</td>
<td>Specifies input binary file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;\text{\ldots}&gt;</td>
<td>[Show entries for :]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;\text{\ldots}:[\text{\ldots}])</td>
<td>[Library files]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;file name&gt;(&lt;section name&gt;[:&lt;boundary alignment&gt;]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[/&lt;section attribute&gt;]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[&lt;symbol name])</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symbol definition</td>
<td>DEFine = &lt;sub&gt;[\ldots]</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Input&gt;</td>
<td>Defines undefined symbols forcedly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;\text{\ldots}&gt;</td>
<td>[Show entries for :]</td>
<td>Defined as the same value of symbol name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;\text{\ldots}:[\text{\ldots}])</td>
<td>[Defines:]</td>
<td>Defined as a numerical value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;symbol name&gt; =</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{&lt;symbol name&gt;}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;\text{\ldots}&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;\text{\ldots}&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;\text{\ldots}&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Execution start address</td>
<td>ENTry = {&lt;symbol name&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;address&gt;}</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Input&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[Use entry point:]</td>
<td>Specifies an entry address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prelinker</td>
<td>NOPRELink</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Input&gt;</td>
<td>Disables prelinker initiation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[Prelinker control :]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Input File

**Format:**

```
Input = <suboption>[, | ∆]…]
```

- `<suboption>`: `<file name>[ (<module name>[,…] ) ]`

**Description:**

Specifies an input file. Two or more files can be specified by separating them with a comma (,) or space.

Wildcards (* or ?) can also be used for the specification. String literals specified with wildcards are expanded in alphabetical order. Expansion of numerical values precedes that of alphabetical letters. Uppercase letters are expanded before lowercase letters.

Specifiable files are object files output from the compiler or the assembler, and relocatable or absolute files output from the optimizing linkage editor. A module in a library can be specified as an input file using the format of `<library name>(<module name>)`. The module name is specified without an extension.

If an extension is omitted from the input file specification, **obj** is assumed when a module name is not specified and **lib** is assumed when a module name is specified.

**Examples:**

- `input=a.obj libl(e)`  ; Inputs **a.obj** and module **e** in **libl.lib**.
- `input=c*.obj`    ; Inputs all **.obj** files beginning with **c**.

**Remarks:**

When **form**=**object** or **extract** is specified, this option is unavailable.

When an input file is specified on the command line, **input** should be omitted.
LIBRARY

Link/Library <Input>

Format: LIBRARY = <file name>[,…]

Description: Specifies an input library file. Two or more files can be specified by separating them with a comma (,).

Wildcards (* or ?) can also be used for the specification. String literals specified with wildcards are expanded in the alphabetical order. Expansion of numerical values precedes that of alphabetical letters. Uppercase letters are expanded before lowercase letters.

If an extension is omitted from the input file specification, lib is assumed.

If form=library or extract is specified, the library file is input as the target library to be edited.

Otherwise, after the linkage processing between files specified for the input files are executed, undefined symbols are searched in the library file.

The symbol search in the library file is executed in the following order: user library files with the library option specification (in the specified order), the system library files with the library option specification (in the specified order), and then the default library (environment variable HLNK_LIBRARY1,2,3).

Examples:

library=a.lib,b ; Inputs a.lib and b.lib.
library=c*.lib ; Inputs all files beginning with c with the extension .lib.
Binary File

Link/Library <Input> [Show entries for :][Binary files]

Format:

```
Binary = <suboption> [,…. ]
```

- `<suboption>`: 
  - `<file name>`( `<section name>`
    `[:<boundary alignment>][<section attribute>],[<symbol name>]`)

- `<section attribute>`: CODE | DATA
- `<boundary alignment>`: 1 | 2 | 4 | 8 | 16 | 32 (default: 1)

Description:

Specifies an input binary file. Two or more files can be specified by separating them with a comma (,).

If an extension is omitted for the file name specification, **bin** is assumed.

Input binary data is allocated as the specified section data. The section address is specified with the **start** option. That section cannot be omitted.

When a symbol is specified, the file can be linked as a defined symbol. For a variable name referenced by a C/C++ program, add an underscore (_) at the head of the reference name in the program.

The section specified with this option can have its section attribute and boundary alignment specified.

CODE or DATA can be specified for the section attribute.

When section attribute specification is omitted, the write, read, and execute attributes are all enabled by default.

A boundary alignment value can be specified for the section specified by this option. A power of 2 can be specified for the boundary alignment; no other values should be specified.

When the boundary alignment specification is omitted, 1 is used as the default.

Examples:

```
input=a.obj
start=E,D*/200
binary=b.bin(D1bin),c.bin(D2bin:4,_datab)
form=absolute
```
Allocates \texttt{b.bin} from 0x200 as the \texttt{D1bin} section.
Allocates \texttt{c.bin} after \texttt{D1bin} as the \texttt{D2bin} section (with boundary alignment = 4).
Links \texttt{c.bin} data as the defined symbol \_datab.

Remarks: When \texttt{form=\{object \mid library\}} or \texttt{strip} is specified, this option is unavailable.
If no input object file is specified, this option cannot be specified.

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{l l}
\textbf{DEFine} & \textbf{Symbol Definition} \\
\hline
\begin{tabular}{l}
\text{Link/Library <Input>[Show entries for :
][Defines]
\end{tabular} & \text{DEFine} = <suboption>[,…]
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

Format: \texttt{DEFine = <suboption>[,…]}

\texttt{<suboption>: <symbol name>=\{<symbol name> \mid <numerical value>\}}

Description: Defines an undefined symbol forcedly as an externally defined symbol or a numerical value.

The numerical value is specified in the hexadecimal notation. If the specified value starts with a letter from A to F, symbols are searched first, and if no corresponding symbol is found, the value is interpreted as a numerical value.
Values starting with 0 are always interpreted as numerical values.

If the specified symbol name is a C/C++ variable name, add an underscore (\_\_) at the head of the definition name in the program. If the symbol name is a C++ function name (except for the \texttt{main} function), enclose the definition name with the double-quotes including parameter strings. If the parameter is \texttt{void}, specify as "<function name>( )".

Examples:
\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{define=_sym1=data} \quad \text{Defines \_sym1 as the same value as the externally defined symbol data.}
  \item \texttt{define=_sym2=4000} \quad \text{Defines \_sym2 as 0x4000.}
\end{itemize}

Remarks: When \texttt{form=\{object \mid relocate \mid library\}} is specified, this option is unavailable.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>ENTRY</strong></th>
<th>Execution Start Address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Format:</strong></td>
<td>( \text{ENTRY} = {&lt;\text{symbol name}&gt; \mid &lt;\text{address}&gt;} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Description:</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the execution start address with an externally defined symbol or address. The address is specified in hexadecimal notation. If the specified value starts with a letter from A to F, symbols are searched first, and if no corresponding symbol is found, the value is interpreted as an address. Values starting with 0 are always interpreted as addresses. For a C function name, add an underscore (_) at the head of the definition name in the program. For a C++ function name (except for the \texttt{main} function), enclose the definition name with double-quotes in the program including parameter strings. If the parameter is \texttt{void}, specify as (&quot;&lt;\text{name}&gt;())&quot;. If the \texttt{ENTRY} symbol is specified at compilation or assembly, this option precedes the entry symbol.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Examples:</strong></td>
<td>entry=_main ; Specifies \texttt{main} function in C/C++ as the execution start address. entry=&quot;init()&quot; ; Specifies \texttt{init} function in C++ as the execution start address. entry=100 ; Specifies 0x100 as the execution start address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Remarks:</strong></td>
<td>When \texttt{form} = {object</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**NOPRElink**

**Format:** NOPRElink

**Description:** Disables the prelinker initiation.

The prelinker supports the functions to generate the C++ template instance automatically and to check types at run time. When the C++ template function and the run-time type test function are not used, specify the `noprelink` option to reduce the link time.

**Remarks:**

When `extract` or `strip` is specified, this option is unavailable.

If `form=lib` or `form=rel` is specified while the C++ template function and run-time type test are used, do not specify `noprelink`. 
### 4.2.2 Output Options

#### Table 4.2 Output Category Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Command Line Format</th>
<th>Dialog Menu</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Output format</strong></td>
<td>FORM = { Absolute</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Output&gt; [Type of output file ]</td>
<td>Absolute format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Relocate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Object</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Library [= (S</td>
<td>U)]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Hexadecimal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>S-type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Binary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Debugging information</strong></td>
<td>DEBug</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Output&gt; [Debug information ]</td>
<td>Output (in output file)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SDebug</td>
<td></td>
<td>Debugging information file output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NODEBug</td>
<td></td>
<td>Not output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Record size unification</strong></td>
<td>Record=[ H16</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Output&gt; [Data record header ]</td>
<td>HEX record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>H20</td>
<td>Expansion HEX record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>H32</td>
<td>32-bit HEX record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>S1</td>
<td>S1 record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>S2</td>
<td>S2 record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>S3</td>
<td>S3 record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ROM support function</strong></td>
<td>ROm = &lt;sub&gt;[…]</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Output&gt; [Show entries for ]</td>
<td>Reserves an area in RAM for the relocation of a symbol with an address in RAM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;ROM section name&gt;</td>
<td>[ROM to RAM mapped sections:]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Output file</strong></td>
<td>OUput = &lt;sub&gt;[…]</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Output&gt; [Show entries for ]</td>
<td>Specifies output file (range specification and divided output are enabled)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;file name&gt;</td>
<td>[Output file path/ Messages] or [Divided output files:]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[=&lt;output range&gt;]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;output range&gt;:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>{&lt;start address&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-&lt;end address&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[{&lt;section name&gt;[…]}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>External symbol-allocation information file</strong></td>
<td>MAp [= &lt;file name&gt;]</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Output&gt; [Generate external symbol-allocation information file]</td>
<td>Specifies output of the external symbol-allocation information file (for SuperH Family and RX Family)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Output to unused area</strong></td>
<td>SPace [= {&lt;numerical value&gt;</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Output&gt; [Specify value filled in unused area]</td>
<td>Specifies a value to output to unused area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Random}]</td>
<td>[Output padding data]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item</td>
<td>Command Line Format</td>
<td>Dialog Menu</td>
<td>Specification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information message</td>
<td>Message [= &lt;sub&gt;[…]]] [&lt;sub&gt;:=&lt;error code&gt; [&lt;-&lt;error code&gt;]]</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Output&gt; &lt;Show entries for :&gt; [Output file path/ Messages]</td>
<td>Output No output (error number specification and range specification are enabled)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notification of unreferenced defined symbol</td>
<td>M$_$unused [Show entries for :] [Notify unused symbol:]</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Output&gt; &lt;Show entries for :&gt; [Reduce empty areas of boundary alignment:]</td>
<td>Notification of defined symbol which is never referenced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reduce empty areas of boundary alignment</td>
<td>D$_$ata_$stuff [Show entries for :] [Reduce empty areas of boundary alignment:]</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Output&gt; &lt;Show entries for :&gt; [Reduce empty areas of boundary alignment:]</td>
<td>Reduces empty areas generated as the boundary alignment of sections after compilation (for SuperH Family and H8, H8S, H8SX Family)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specification of data record byte count</td>
<td>BY$_$te_$count=&lt;numerical value&gt; [Length of data record :]</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Output&gt; &lt;Length of data record :&gt;</td>
<td>Specifies the maximum byte count of a data record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRC</td>
<td>CR$c$ = &lt;suboption&gt; [&lt;suboption&gt;: &lt;address where the result is output&gt;:&lt;target range&gt; [&lt;&gt;polynomial expression&gt; [.&lt;endian&gt;]] [&lt;address where the result is output&gt;: &lt;address&gt; &lt;target range&gt;: &lt;start address&gt;-&lt;end address&gt;[,...]&lt;polynomial expression&gt;: { CCITT</td>
<td>16 }&lt;endian&gt;: {BIG</td>
<td>LITTLE} ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filling padding data at section end</td>
<td>PADDING [Padding]</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Output&gt; &lt;Padding&gt;</td>
<td>Outputs padding data to the end of a section to make the section match the boundary alignment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Address setting for specified vector number</td>
<td>VECTN=&lt;suboption&gt;[,...] [&lt;suboption&gt;: &lt;vector number&gt;=&lt;symbol&gt; [.&lt;address&gt;]]</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Output&gt; &lt;Show entries for :&gt; [Vector] [Specific vector :]</td>
<td>Assigns an address to the specified vector number in the variable vector table (for RX Family and M16C Series).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Address setting for unused variable vector area</td>
<td>VECT=&lt;symbol&gt;[&lt;address&gt;]</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Output&gt; &lt;Show entries for :&gt; [Vector] [Empty vector :]</td>
<td>Assigns an address to an unused area in the variable vector table (for RX Family and M16C Series).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item</td>
<td>Command Line Format</td>
<td>Dialog Menu</td>
<td>Specification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utl30 information output</td>
<td>UTL</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Output&gt;</td>
<td>Outputs information for utl30 (for M16C Series)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jump table output</td>
<td>JUMP_ENTRIES_FOR_PIC</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Output&gt;</td>
<td>Outputs a jump table (for the PIC function of RX Family)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Link/Library <Output>[Type of output file :]

FOrm = {Absolute | Relocate | Object | Library={S | U}| Hexadecimal | Sype | Binary}

Description: Specifies the output format.

When this option is omitted, the default is form=absolute. Table 4.3 lists the suboptions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suboption</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>absolute</td>
<td>Outputs an absolute file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relocate</td>
<td>Outputs a relocatable file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>Outputs an object file. This is specified when a module is extracted as an object file from a library with the <code>extract</code> option.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>library</td>
<td>Outputs a library file. When <code>library=s</code> is specified, a system library is output. When <code>library=u</code> is specified, a user library is output. Default is <code>library=u</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hexadecimal</td>
<td>Outputs a HEX file. For details of the HEX format, refer to appendix 13.1.2, HEX File Format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stype</td>
<td>Outputs an S-type file. For details of the S-type format, refer to appendix 13.1.1, S-Type File Format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>binary</td>
<td>Outputs a binary file.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remarks: Table 4.4 shows relations between output formats and input files or other options.
Table 4.4  Relations Between Output Format And Input File Or Other Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Output Format</th>
<th>Specified Option</th>
<th>Enabled File Format</th>
<th>Specifiable Option*1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Absolute</td>
<td>strip specified</td>
<td>Absolute file</td>
<td>input, output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other than above</td>
<td>strip specified</td>
<td>Object file</td>
<td>input, library, binary, debug/nodebug, sdebug, cpu, ps_check, start, rom, entry, output, map, hide, optimize/nooptimize, samesize, symbol_forbid, samecode_forbid, variable_forbid, function_forbid, section_forbid, absolute_forbid, profile, cachesize, sbr, compress, rename, delete, define, fsymbol, stack, noprelink, memory, msg_unused, data_stuff*3, show=symbol, reference, xreference, jump_entries_for_pic, aligned_section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hexadecimal</td>
<td>strip specified</td>
<td>Object file</td>
<td>input, library, binary, cpu, ps_check, start, rom, entry, output, map, space, optimize/nooptimize, samesize, symbol_forbid, samecode_forbid, variable_forbid, function_forbid, section_forbid, absolute_forbid, profile, cachesize, sbr, rename, delete, define, fsymbol, stack, noprelink, record, s9<em>2, byte_count</em>3, memory, msg_unused, data_stuff*3, show=symbol, reference, xreference, jump_entries_for_pic, aligned_section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library</td>
<td>strip specified</td>
<td>Library file</td>
<td>input, library, output, record, s9<em>2, byte_count</em>3, show=symbol, reference, xreference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other than above</td>
<td>strip specified</td>
<td>Object file</td>
<td>input, library, output, hide, rename, delete, noprelink, memory*4, show=symbol, section</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Depending on the specified options, some options may not be valid.
Notes: 1. `message/nomessage, change_message, logo/nologo, form, list, and
    subcommand` can always be specified.
2. `s9` can be used only when `form=stype` is specified for the output format.
3. `byte_count` can be used only when `form=hexadecimal` is specified for the output
    format.
4. `memory` cannot be used when `hide` is specified.
5. `data_stuff` cannot be used when `form=relocate` is specified for the output format.

**DEBug, SDebug, NODEBug**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Format</th>
<th>Debugging Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DEBug</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Output&gt;[Debug information :]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SDebug</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NODEBug</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description: Specifies whether debugging information is output.

- When `debug` is specified, debugging information is output to the output file.
- When `sdebug` is specified, debugging information is output to `<output file
  name>.dbg` file.
- When `nodebug` is specified, debugging information is not output.

If `sdebug` and `form=relocate` are specified, `sdebug` is interpreted as `debug`.

If `debug` is specified and if two or more files are specified to be output with
`output`, they are interpreted as `sdebug` and debugging information is output to
`<first output file name>.dbg`.

When this option is omitted, the default is `debug`.

Remarks: When `form={object | library | hexadecimal | stype | binary}, strip or extract` is
specified, this option is unavailable.
**REcord**

**Record Size Unification**

Link/Library <Output>[Data record header :

**Format:**

REcord = { H16 | H20 | H32 | S1 | S2 | S3 }

**Description:**

Outputs data with the specified data record regardless of the address range. If there is an address that is larger than the specified data record, the appropriate data record is selected for the address.

When this option is omitted, various data records are output according to each address.

**Remarks:**

This option is available only when `form=hexadecimal` or `stype` is specified.

---

**ROm**

**ROM Support Function**

Link/Library <Output>[Show entries for :

**Format:**

ROm = <suboption>[,,…]

<suboption>:  <ROM section name>=<RAM section name>

**Description:**

Reserves ROM and RAM areas in the initialized data area and relocates a defined symbol in the ROM section with the specified address in the RAM section.

Specifies a relocatable section including the initial value for the ROM section.

Specifies a nonexistent section or relocatable section whose size is 0 for the RAM section.

**Examples:**

rom=D=R
start=D/100,R/8000

Reserves R section with the same size as D section and relocates defined symbols in D section with the R section addresses.

**Remarks:**

When `form=[object | relocate | library]` or `strip` is specified, this option is unavailable.
**OOutput**

Link/Library <Output> [Show entries for :][Output file path/ Messages] or [Divided output files]

Format:  

\[ \text{OOutput} = \langle \text{suboption} \rangle[, \ldots] \]

\[ \langle \text{suboption} \rangle: \langle \text{file name} \rangle=\langle \text{output range} \rangle \]

\[ \langle \text{output range} \rangle: \{ \langle \text{start address} \rangle-\langle \text{end address} \rangle \mid \langle \text{section name} \rangle[: \ldots] \} \]

Description: Specifies an output file name. When \text{form}=\text{absolute}, \text{hexadecimal}, \text{stype}, or \text{binary} is specified, two or more files can be specified. An address is specified in the hexadecimal notation. If the specified data starts with a letter from A to F, sections are searched first, and if no corresponding section is found, the data is interpreted as an address. Data starting with 0 are always interpreted as addresses.

When this option is omitted, the default is \langle \text{first input file name} \rangle.\langle \text{default extension} \rangle.

The default extensions are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form=absolute: abs</th>
<th>form=relocate: rel</th>
<th>form=object: obj</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>form=library: lib</td>
<td>form=hexadecimal: hex</td>
<td>form=stype: mot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>form=binary: bin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:  

\text{output}=\langle \text{file1.abs} \rangle=0-ffff, \langle \text{file2.abs} \rangle=10000-1ffff

Outputs the range from 0 to 0xffff to \text{file1.abs} and the range from 0x10000 to 0x1ffff to \text{file2.abs}.

\text{output}=\langle \text{file1.abs} \rangle=\text{sec1:sec2}, \langle \text{file2.abs} \rangle=\text{sec3}

Outputs the \text{sec1} and \text{sec2} sections to \text{file1.abs} and the \text{sec3} section to \text{file2.abs}.

Remarks: When a file is output in section units while the CPU type is RX Family in big endian, the section size should be a multiple of 4.
**MAp**

Output of External Symbol Allocation Information File

**Link/Library <Output>**-[Generate external symbol-allocation information file]

**Format:**

MAp [= <file name>]

**Description:**

Outputs the external-symbol-allocation information file that is used by the compiler in optimizing access to external variables.

When <file name> is not specified, the file has the name specified by the **output** option or the name of the first input file, and the extension **.bls**.

If the order of the declaration of variables in the external-symbol-allocation information file is not the same as the order of the declaration of variables found when the object was read after compilations, an error will be output.

**Remarks:**

This option is valid only when **form={absolute | hexadecimal | stype | binary}** is specified.

This option is available when the CPU type is SuperH Family or RX Family.
SPace Output to Unused Areas

Link/Library <Output>[Show entries for :][Specify value filled in unused area]
[Output padding data]

Format: SPace [= {<numerical value> | Random}]  

Description: Fills the unused areas in the output ranges with random values or a user-specified hexadecimal value.

The following unused areas are filled with the value according to the output range specification in the output option:

When section names are specified for the output range:
The specified value is output to unused areas between the specified sections.

When an address range is specified for the output range:
The specified value is output to unused areas within the specified address range.

A 1-, 2-, or 4-byte value can be specified. The hexadecimal value specified to the space option determines the output data size. If a 3-byte value is specified, the upper digit is extended with 0 to use it as a 4-byte value. If an odd number of digits are specified, the upper digits are extended with 0 to use it as an even number of digits.

If the size of an unused area is not a multiple of the size of the specified value, the value is output as many times as possible, then a warning message is output.

Remarks: When no suboption is specified by this option, unused areas are not filled with values.

This option is available only when form={binary | stype | hexadecimal} is specified.

When no output range is specified by the output option, this option is unavailable.
Message, NOMessage

Format: Message

NOMessage [=<suboption>[,…]]

<suboption>: <error number>[,-<error number>]

Description: Specifies whether information level messages are output.

When message is specified, information level messages are output.

When nomessage is specified, the output of information level messages are disabled. If an error number is specified, the output of the error message with the specified error number is disabled. A range of error message numbers to be disabled can be specified using a hyphen (-). If a warning or error level message number is specified, the message output is disabled assuming that change_message has changed the specified message to the information level.

When this option is omitted, the default is nomessage.

Examples: nomessage=4,200-203,1300

Messages of L0004, L0200 to L0203, and L1300 are disabled to be output.
MSg_unused Notification of Unreferenced Symbol

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Format:</th>
<th>MSg_unused</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Description:</td>
<td>Notifies the user of the externally defined symbol which is not referenced during linkage through an output message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examples:</td>
<td>optlnk -msg_unused a.obj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remarks:</td>
<td>When an absolute file is input, this option is invalid. To output a message, the message option must also be specified. The linkage editor may output a message for the function that was inline-expanded at compilation. To avoid this, add a static declaration for the function definition. In any of the following cases, references are not correctly analyzed so that information shown by output messages will be incorrect.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **goptimize** is not specified at assembly and there are branches to the same section within the same file (only when an H8, H8S, H8SX Family CPU is specified).
- There are references to constant symbols within the same file.
- There are branches to immediate subordinate functions when optimization is specified at compilation.
- The external variable access optimization is valid at compilation (only when an SuperH Family CPU is specified).
- An offset value is directly specified in a #pragma tbr in the C source program (only when the SH-2A or SH2A-FPU is specified as the CPU).
- Optimization is specified at linkage and constants or literals are unified.
**DAta_stuff**

**Reduce empty areas of boundary alignment**

Link/Library <Output>[Show entries for :] [Reduce empty areas of boundary alignment:]

**Format:**

DAta_stuff

**Description:**

At linkage, reduces empty areas of boundary alignment. This option affects constant, initialized and uninitialized data areas.

When this option is specified, empty areas generated as the boundary alignment of sections after compilation are filled at linkage. However, the order of data allocation is not changed.

When this option is not specified, linkage is based on the boundary alignment of sections after compilation.

Specifying this option fills the unnecessary empty areas generated by boundary alignment, reducing the size of the data sections as a whole.

**Examples:**

```c
<tp1.c> <tp2.c>
long a; char d;
char b, c; long e;
char f;
```

Sizes of data sections after compilation (taking the output of the SuperH Family compiler as an example):

- `tp1.obj`: 4 + 1 + 1 = 6 bytes
- `tp2.obj`: 1 + 3 [*] + 4 + 1 = 9 bytes

Sizes of data sections for `tp1.obj` and `tp2.obj` after linkage:

1) When **data_stuff** is not specified
   - Object files are linked based on the boundary alignment of the sections (conventional process).
   - 6 bytes [tp1] + 2 bytes [*] + 9 bytes [tp2] = 17 bytes

2) When **data_stuff** is specified
   - Linkage is performed with filling of the unnecessary empty spaces generated between sections by boundary alignment.
   - (4 + 1 + 1) bytes + 1 byte + 1 byte [*] + 4 bytes + 1 byte = 13 bytes

**Notes:**

1. * indicates an empty area generated by boundary alignment.
2. The sizes of the data sections after compilation may differ from those in the above example according to the specification of other options, etc. at compilation.

Remarks: Correct operation is not guaranteed if this option is specified when an object file compiled with the `smap` option of the SuperH Family compiler is linked.

The function of this option is not applicable to object files generated by the assembler.

Specification of this option is invalid in any of the following cases:

- `form=library, object, or relocate` is specified
- An absolute load module is input
- `memory=low` is specified
- `nooptimize` is not specified

Optimization will not be applied in the linkage of a relocatable file that was generated with this option specified.

This option is unavailable when the CPU type is RX Family, M16C Series, or R8C Family.

---

**BYTE_count** Specification of Data Record Byte Count

Link/Library <Output>[Length of data record :]

Format: `BYTE_count=<numerical value>`

Description: Specifies the maximum byte count for a data record when a file is to be created in the Intel-Hex format. Specify a one-byte hexadecimal value (01 to FF) for the byte count. When this option is not specified, the linkage editor assumes FF as the maximum byte count when creating an Intel-Hex file.

Examples: `byte_count=10`

Remarks: This option is invalid when the file to be created is not an Intel-Hex-type (form=hex) file.
Link/Library <Output> [Show entries for :] [Generate CRC code]

**CRC**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Format</th>
<th>CRC = &lt;suboption&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;suboption&gt;: &lt;address where the result is output&gt;=&lt;target range&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[&lt;polynomial expression&gt;][:&lt;endian&gt;]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;address where the result is output&gt;: &lt;address&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;target range&gt;: &lt;start address&gt;-&lt;end address&gt;[,...]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;polynomial expression&gt;: { CCITT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;endian&gt;: {BIG</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Description:** This option is used for cyclic redundancy checking (CRC) of values from the lowest to the highest address of each target range and outputs the calculation result to the specified address.

<endian> can be specified only when the CPU type is RX Family. When <endian> is specified, the calculation result is output to the specified address in the specified endian. When <endian> is not specified, the result is output to the specified address in the endian used in the absolute file.

**CRC-CCITT** or **CRC-16** is selectable as a polynomial expression (default: CRC-CCITT).

**Polynomial expression:**

- **CRC-CCITT**
  
  \[ X^{16}+X^{12}+X^5+1 \]
  
  In bit expression: (10001000000100001)

- **CRC-16**
  
  \[ X^{16}+X^{15}+X^2+1 \]
  
  In bit expression: (1100000000000101)
Example 1:  
```bash
```

**crc option:** `-crc=2FFE=1000-2FFD`  
In this example, CRC will be calculated for the range from 0x1000 to 0x2FFD and the result will be output to address 0x2FFE.  
When the **space** option has not been specified, **space=0xFF** is assumed for calculation of free areas within the target range.

**output option:** `-output=out.mot=1000-2FFF`  
Since the **space** option has not been specified, the free areas are not output to the **out.mot** file. 0xFF is used in CRC for calculation of the free areas, but will not be filled into these areas.

**Notes:**  
1. The address where the result of CRC will be output cannot be included in the target range.  
2. The address where the result of CRC will be output must be included in the output range specified with the **output** option.
-space=7F -crc=2FFE=1000-17FF,2000-27FF
-output=out.mot=1000-2FFF

After linkage | CRC | Setting for the output option | Output (out.mot)
---|---|---|---
0x1000 | P1 | Calculated as 0x7F | P1
Free
0x1800 | P2 | Free | P2
0x2000 | P3 | Calculated as 0x7F | P3
Free
0x2800 | Free | Address where the result will be output |
0x2FFF | Free | Result of CRC |

**crc option:** -crc=2FFE=1000-2FFD,2000-27FF
In this example, CRC will be calculated for the two ranges, 0x1000 to 0x17FF and 0x2000 to 0x27FF, and the result will be output to address 0x2FFE.

Two or more non-contiguous address ranges can be selected as the target range for CRC.

**space option:** -space=7F
The value of the **space** option (0x7F) is used for CRC in free areas within the target range.

**output option:** -output=out.mot=1000-2FFF
Since the **space** option has been specified, the free areas are output to the **out.mot** file. 0x7F will be filled into the free areas.

**Notes:**
1. The order that CRC is calculated for the specified address ranges is not the order that the ranges have been specified. CRC proceeds from the lowest to the highest address.
2. Even if you wish to use the **crc** and **space** options at the same time, the **space** option cannot be set as random or a value of 2 bytes or more. Only 1-byte values are valid.
Example 3: \texttt{o\textbackslash tlnk *.obj -form=stype -start=P1,P2/1000,P3/2000 -crc=1FFE=1000-1FFD,2000-2FFF -output=flmem.mot=1000-1FFF}

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|}
\hline
After linkage & CRC & Setting for the output option \\
\hline
0x1000 & P1 & P1 \\
0x2000 & P3 & P3 \\
Free & Calculated as 0xFF & Address where the result will be output \\
\hline
0x1FF & P1 & Target range (0x1000 to 0x1FFF) \\
0x1FFF & P2 & Result of CRC \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

**crc** option: \texttt{-crc=1FFE=1000-1FFD,2000-2FFF}

In this example, CRC will be calculated for the two ranges, 0x1000 to 0x1FFD and 0x2000 to 0x2FFF, and the result will be output to address 0x1FFE. When the **space** option has not been specified, **space=0xFF** is assumed for calculation of free areas within the target range.

**output** option: \texttt{-output=flmem.mot=1000-1FFF}

Since the **space** option has not been specified, the free areas are not output to the *flmem.mot* file. 0xFF is used in CRC for calculation of the free areas, but will not be filled into these areas.

**Remarks:**

This option is invalid when two or more absolute files have been selected.

This option is valid only when **form=\{hexadecimal | stype\}**.

When the **space** option has not been specified and the target range includes free areas that will not be output, the linkage editor assumes in CRC that 0xFF has been set in the free areas.

An error occurs if the target range includes an overlay area.
Sample Code: The sample code shown below is provided to check the result of CRC figured out by the **crc** option. The sample code program should match the result of CRC by **optlnk**.

When the selected polynomial expression is **CRC-CCITT**:

```c
typedef unsigned char uint8_t;
typedef unsigned short uint16_t;
typedef unsigned long uint32_t;

uint16_t CRC_CCITT(uint8_t *pData, uint32_t iSize)
{
    uint32_t ui32_i;
    uint8_t  *pui8_Data;
    uint16_t ui16_CRC = 0xFFFFu;

    pui8_Data = (uint8_t *)pData;

    for(ui32_i = 0; ui32_i < iSize; ui32_i++)
    {
        ui16_CRC = (uint16_t){(ui16_CRC >> 8u) | ((uint16_t)((uint32_t)ui16_CRC << 8u))};
        ui16_CRC ^= pui8_Data[ui32_i];
        ui16_CRC ^= (uint16_t)((ui16_CRC & 0xFFu) >> 4u);
        ui16_CRC ^= (uint16_t)((ui16_CRC << 8u) << 4u);
        ui16_CRC ^= (uint16_t)(((ui16_CRC & 0xFFu) << 4u) << 1u);
    }

    ui16_CRC = (uint16_t)( 0x0000FFFFul & ((uint32_t)~(uint32_t)ui16_CRC) );
    return ui16_CRC;
}
```
When the selected polynomial expression is **CRC-16**:

```c
#define POLYNOMIAL 0xa001 // Generated polynomial expression CRC-16

typedef unsigned char uint8_t;
typedef unsigned short uint16_t;
typedef unsigned long uint32_t;

uint16_t CRC16(uint8_t *pData, uint32_t iSize)
{
    uint16_t crcdData = (uint16_t)0;
    uint32_t data = 0;
    uint32_t i, cycLoop;

    for(i=0; i<iSize; i++)
    {
        data = (uint32_t)pData[i];
        crcdData = crcdData ^ data;
        for (cycLoop = 0; cycLoop < 8; cycLoop++)
        {
            if (crcdData & 1)
            {
                crcdData = (crcdData >> 1) ^ POLYNOMIAL;
            } else {
                crcdData = crcdData >> 1;
            }
        }
    }

    return crcdData;
}
```
PADDING  

Filling padding data at section end

Format:  
PADDING

Description:  
Fills in padding data at the end of a section so that the section size is a multiple of the boundary alignment of the section.

Examples:

- **start=P,C/0 -padding**
  
  When the boundary alignment of section P is 4 bytes, the size of section P is 0x06 bytes, the boundary alignment of section C is 1 byte, and the size of section C is 0x03 bytes, two bytes of padding data is filled in section P to make its size become 0x08 bytes and then linkage is performed.

- **start=P/0,C/7 -padding**
  
  When the boundary alignment of section P is 4 bytes, the size of section P is 0x06 bytes, the boundary alignment of section C is 1 byte, and the size of section C is 0x03 bytes, if two bytes of padding data is filled in section P to make its size become 0x08 bytes and then linkage is performed, error L2321 will be output because section P overlaps with section C.

Remarks:  
The value of the created padding data is 0x00.

Since padding is not performed to an absolute address section, the size of an absolute address section should be adjusted by the user.

This option is valid when the CPU type is SuperH Family or RX Family.
VECTN  Address Setting for Specified Vector Number

| Link/Library | <Output> | [Show entries for:] | [Address allocation on specific vector] |

**Format:**

\[ \text{VECTN} = \text{<suboption>\[,...\]} \]

\[ \text{<suboption>: \ <vector number> \ = \ {<symbol> \ | \ <address>}} \]

**Description:**

Assigns the specified address to the specified vector number in the variable vector table section.

When this option is specified, a variable vector table section is created and the specified address is set in the table even if there is no interrupt function in the source code.

Specify a decimal value from 0 to 255 for `<vector number>`.

Specify the external name of the target function for `<symbol>`.

Specify the desired hexadecimal address for `<address>`.

**Examples:**

\[ \text{-vectn=30=_f1,31=0000F100 ; Specifies the } _f1 \text{ address for vector number 30 and 0x0f100 for vector number 31} \]

**Remarks:**

This option is valid when the CPU type is RX Family, M16C Series, or R8C Family.

This option is ignored when the user creates a variable vector table section in the source program because the variable vector table is not automatically created in this case.
Address Setting for Unused Vector Area

Format: VECT={<symbol>|<address>}

Description: Assigns the specified address to the vector number to which no address has been assigned in the variable vector table section.

When this option is specified, a variable vector table section is created by the linkage editor and the specified address is set in the table even if there is no interrupt function in the source code.

Specify the external name of the target function for <symbol>.

Specify the desired hexadecimal address for <address>.

Remarks: This option is valid when the CPU type is RX Family, M16C Series, or R8C Family.

This option is ignored when the user creates a variable vector table section in the source program because the variable vector table is not automatically created in this case.

When the {<symbol>|<address>} specification is started with 0, the whole specification is assumed as an address.
UTL

UTL

**Format:**

UTL

**Description:**

Generates an external file (utl file) to be input to the tool (utl30) included with the compiler package.

The generated file is assigned a name <output file name>.utl.

**Examples:**

```
        tp.obj
        utl
        output=test.abs
```

Outputs inspector information from **tp.obj** to **test.utl**.

**Remarks:**

This option is valid only when the compiler for the M16C microcontrollers is used.

This option cannot be used when processing the abs files input to the linkage editor.

This option is invalid when **form={object | library}** is specified.
JUMP_ENTRIES_FOR_PIC  

Link/Library <Output> [Jump table]

Format:  JUMP_ENTRIES_FOR_PIC=<section name>[,...]

Description:  Outputs an assembly-language source for a jump table to branch to external definition symbols in the specified section.

This option is used for the PIC function of the RX family compilers.

The file name is <output file>.jmp.

Examples:

```
jump_entries_for_pic=sct2,sct3
output=test.abs
```

A jump table for branching to external definition symbols in the sections `sct2` and `sct3` is output to `test.jmp`.

[Example of a file output to `test.jmp`]

```
;OPTIMIZING LINKAGE EDITOR GENERATED FILE 2009.07.19
.glb _func01
.glb _func02
.SECTION P,CODE
_func01:
  MOV.L #1000H,R14
  JMP   R14
_func02:
  MOV.L #2000H,R14
  JMP   R14
.END
```

Remarks:  This option is invalid when `form={object | relocate| library}` or `strip` is specified.

This option is invalid when the CPU type is not the RX series.

The generated jump table is output to the P section.

Only the program section can be specified for the type of section in the section name.
4.2.3 List Options

Table 4.5 List Category Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Command Line Format</th>
<th>Dialog Menu</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>List file</td>
<td>LIst [ = &lt;file name&gt;]</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;List&gt;</td>
<td>Specifies the output of list file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[Generate list file]</td>
<td>[Contents :]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List contents</td>
<td>SHow [ = &lt;sub&gt;[,...]]</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;List&gt;</td>
<td>Symbol information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;sub&gt;: {SYmbol</td>
<td>Reference</td>
<td>Section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[Contents :]</td>
<td>[Content:]</td>
<td>Section information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cross-reference information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Total sizes of sections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Vector Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>All information</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LISt</th>
<th>List File</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Format:</td>
<td>LIst [&lt;file name&gt;]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description:</td>
<td>Specifies list file output and a list file name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If no list file name is specified, a list file with the same name as the output file (or first output file) is created, with the extension lbp when form=library or extract is specified, or map in other cases.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SHow</th>
<th>List Contents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Format:</td>
<td>SHow [&lt;sub&gt;[,...]]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description:</td>
<td>Specifies output contents of a list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Table 4.6 lists the suboptions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
For details of list examples, refer to section 7.3, Linkage List, and section 7.4, Library List in the user’s manual.

Table 4.6 Suboptions of show Option

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Output Format</th>
<th>Suboption Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>form=library or extract is specified.</td>
<td>symbol</td>
<td>Outputs a symbol name list in a module (when extract is specified)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>reference</td>
<td>Not specifiable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>section</td>
<td>Outputs a section list in a module (when extract is specified)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>xreference</td>
<td>Not specifiable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>total_size</td>
<td>Not specifiable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vector</td>
<td>Not specifiable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>all</td>
<td>Not specifiable (when extract is specified)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Outputs a symbol name list and a section list in a module (when form=library)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other than form=library and extract is not specified.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Output Format</th>
<th>Suboption Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>symbol</td>
<td>Outputs symbol address, size, type, and optimization contents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>reference</td>
<td>Outputs the number of symbol references.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>section</td>
<td>Not specifiable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>xreference</td>
<td>Outputs the cross-reference information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>total_size</td>
<td>Shows the total sizes of sections allocated to the ROM and RAM areas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vector</td>
<td>Outputs vector information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>all</td>
<td>If form=rel, the linkage editor outputs the same information as when show=symbol, xreference, or total_size is specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If form=rel and data_stuff have been specified, the linkage editor outputs the same information as when show=symbol or total_size is specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If form=abs, the linkage editor outputs the same information as when show=symbol, reference, xreference, or total_size is specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If form=hex, stype, or bin, the linkage editor outputs the same information as when show=symbol, reference, xreference, or total_size is specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If form=objc, all is not specifiable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Remarks: The following table shows whether suboptions will be valid or invalid by all possible combinations of options form, show, and/or show=all.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Xreference</th>
<th>Vector</th>
<th>Total_size</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>form=abs</td>
<td>show</td>
<td>Valid</td>
<td>Invalid</td>
<td>Invalid</td>
<td>Invalid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>show=all</td>
<td>Valid</td>
<td>Invalid</td>
<td>Valid</td>
<td>Valid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>form=lib</td>
<td>show</td>
<td>Valid</td>
<td>Invalid</td>
<td>Invalid</td>
<td>Invalid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>show=all</td>
<td>Valid</td>
<td>Invalid</td>
<td>Invalid</td>
<td>Invalid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>form=rel</td>
<td>show</td>
<td>Valid</td>
<td>Invalid</td>
<td>Invalid</td>
<td>Invalid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>show=all</td>
<td>Valid</td>
<td>Invalid</td>
<td>Invalid</td>
<td>Invalid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>form=obj</td>
<td>show</td>
<td>Valid</td>
<td>Invalid</td>
<td>Invalid</td>
<td>Invalid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>show=all</td>
<td>Valid</td>
<td>Invalid</td>
<td>Invalid</td>
<td>Invalid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>form=hex/bin/sty</td>
<td>show</td>
<td>Valid</td>
<td>Invalid</td>
<td>Invalid</td>
<td>Invalid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>show=all</td>
<td>Valid</td>
<td>Invalid</td>
<td>Valid*</td>
<td>Valid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The option is invalid if an absolute-format file is input.

Note the following limitations on output of the cross-reference information.

- When the relocatable format is specified for the output file and the data_stuff option is specified, no cross-reference information is output.

- When an absolute-format file is input, the referrer address information is not output.

- When -goptimize is not specified at assembly, information about branches to the same section within the same file is not output (only when an H8, H8S, H8SX Family CPU is specified).

- Information about references to constant symbols within the same file is not output.

- When optimization is specified at compilation, information about branches to immediate subordinate functions is not output.

- When optimization of access to external variables is specified, information about references to variables other than base symbols is not output (only when a SuperH Family or RX Family CPU is specified).

- When an offset value is directly specified in a #pragma tbr in the C source program, information about that function is not output (only when the SH-2A or SH2A-FPU is specified as the CPU).
• When optimization is specified at linkage and constants or literals are unified, information about references to these constants or literals is not output.

• Both `show=total_size` and `total_size` output the same information.

• `show=vector` can be used when the CPU type is RX Family, M16C Series, or R8C Family.

• When `show=reference` is valid, the number of references of the variable specified by `#pragma address` is output as 0 (only when a SuperH Family or RX Family CPU is specified).
### 4.2.4 Optimize Options

#### Table 4.7 Optimize Category Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Command Line Format</th>
<th>Dialog Menu</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Optimization</td>
<td>$\text{OPTimize} = \langle \text{sub}\rangle [...]$</td>
<td>Link/Library</td>
<td>Executes optimization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\langle \text{sub}\rangle:$ \langle \text{String unify}\rangle</td>
<td>&lt;Optimize&gt;</td>
<td>Unifies constants/string literals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>\langle \text{Symbol delete}\rangle</td>
<td>[Show entries for:]</td>
<td>Deletes unreferenced symbols.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>\langle \text{Register}\rangle</td>
<td>[Optimize items]</td>
<td>Provides optimization with register save/restore.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>\langle \text{SAME code}\rangle</td>
<td>[Optimize :]</td>
<td>Unifies same codes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>\langle \text{Branch}\rangle</td>
<td></td>
<td>Provides optimization for branches.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>\langle \text{Speed}\rangle</td>
<td></td>
<td>Provides optimization for speed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>\langle \text{SAFE}\rangle</td>
<td></td>
<td>Provides safe optimization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>\langle \text{NOOP}\rangle</td>
<td></td>
<td>No optimization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Same code size</td>
<td>$\text{SAMESize} = \langle \text{size}\rangle$ (default: $\text{size}=1e$)</td>
<td>Link/Library</td>
<td>Specifies the minimum size to unify same codes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;Optimize&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[Eliminated size :]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Profile information</td>
<td>$\text{PROFILE} = \langle \text{file name}\rangle$</td>
<td>Link/Library</td>
<td>Specifies a profile information file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;Optimize&gt;</td>
<td>(Dynamic optimization is provided.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[Include profile :]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cache size</td>
<td>$\text{CACHEsize}=\langle \text{sub}\rangle:$ \langle \text{size}\rangle</td>
<td>Link/Library</td>
<td>Specifies a cache size.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>\langle \text{Align}\rangle = \langle \text{line size}\rangle</td>
<td>&lt;Optimize&gt;</td>
<td>Specifies a cache line size.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(default: $\text{ca}=8, a=20$)</td>
<td>[Cache size :]</td>
<td>(for SuperH Family)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optimization partially</td>
<td>$\text{SYMBOL_forbid}=\langle \text{symbol name}\rangle[...]$</td>
<td>Link/Library</td>
<td>Specifies a symbol where unreferenced symbol deletion is disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disabled</td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;Optimize&gt;</td>
<td>Specifies a symbol where same code unification is disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\text{SAMECODE_forbid}=\langle \text{function name}\rangle[...]$</td>
<td>[Show entries for:]</td>
<td>Specifies a symbol where short absolute addressing mode is disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[Forbid item]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\text{VARIABLE_forbid}=\langle \text{symbol name}\rangle[...]$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\text{FUNCTION_forbid}=\langle \text{function name}\rangle[...]$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\text{SECTION_forbid}=\langle \text{sub}\rangle:$ \langle \text{file name}\rangle</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>\langle \text{module name}\rangle</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>\langle \text{section name}\rangle[...]]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\text{ABSOLUTE_forbid}=\langle \text{address}\rangle+[\langle \text{size}\rangle][...]$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
OPTimize, NOOPtimize

Link/Library <Optimize> [Show entries for :] [Optimize items] [Optimize :]

Format:     OPTimize [= <suboption>[, …] ]

NOOPtimize

<suboption>: { STring_unify | SYmbol_delete | Register | SAMe_code | Branch
               | SPeed | SAFe }

Description: Specifies whether the inter-module optimization is executed.

When optimize is specified, optimization is performed for the file specified with the goptimize option at compilation or assembly.

When nooptimize is specified, no optimization is executed for a module.

When this option is omitted, the default is optimize.

Table 4.8 shows the suboptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suboption</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| No parameter    | V.9.04 Release 01 or earlier  
                  | This suboption is the same as the following specifications:  
                  | optimize=string_unify, symbol_delete, register, same_code, branch  
                  | V.9.04 Release 02 or later  
                  | This suboption is the same as the following specifications:  
                  | optimize=string_unify, symbol_delete, same_code, branch |
| string_unify    | Unifies same-value constants having the const attribute. Constants having the const attribute are:  
                  | • Variables defined as const in C/C++ program  
                  | • Initial value of character string data  
                  | • Literal constant |
| symbol_delete   | Deletes variables/functions that are not referenced. Always be sure to specify #pragma entry at compilation or the entry option in the optimizing linkage editor. |
| register        | Investigates function calls, relocates registers and deletes redundant register save or restore codes. Always be sure to specify #pragma entry at compilation or the entry option in the optimizing linkage editor. |
| same_code       | Creates a subroutine for the same instruction sequence. |

Table 4.8 Suboptions of Optimize Option
### Suboption Descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suboption</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>branch</td>
<td>Optimizes branch instruction size according to program allocation information. Even if this option is not specified, it is performed when any other optimization is executed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speed</td>
<td>Executes optimizations other than those reducing object speed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>V.9.04 Release 01 or earlier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This suboption is the same as the following specifications: optimize=string_unify, symbol_delete, register, branch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>V.9.04 Release 02 or later</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This suboption is the same as the following specifications: optimize=string_unify, symbol_delete, branch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>safe</td>
<td>Executes optimizations other than those limited by variable or function attributes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>V.9.04 Release 01 or earlier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This suboption is the same as the following specifications: optimize=string_unify, register, branch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>V.9.04 Release 02 or later</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This suboption is the same as the following specifications: optimize=string_unify, branch</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Remarks:

- When `form={object | relocate | library}` or `strip` is specified, this option is unavailable.
- When optimization of access to external variables is specified at compilation, optimization with unification of constants/string literals (`optimize=string_unify`) is invalid.
- When the CPU is SH-2A or SH2A-FPU, the code size may increase due to the `optimize=register` function.
- When a start function with `#pragma entry` or `entry` is not specified, `optimize=symbol_delete` is invalid.
SAMesize

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Code Size</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Link/Library <Optimize> [Eliminated size :]

**SAMesize**

**Format:** \[ \text{SAMESize} = <size> \]

**Description:** Specifies the minimum code size for the optimization with the same-code unification (**optimize=same_code**). Specify a hexadecimal value from 8 to 7FF.

When this option is omitted, the default is \text{samesize}=1E.

**Remarks:** When **optimize=same_code** is not specified, this option is unavailable.
Profile Information

Format: \texttt{PROfile = <file name>}

Description: Specifies a profile information file.

Specifiable profile information files are those output from the High-performance Embedded Workshop Ver. 2.0 or later.

When a profile information file is specified, inter-module optimization according to dynamic information can be performed.

Table 4.9 shows optimizations influenced by a profile information input.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suboption</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Program to be Optimized$^4$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>variable_access</td>
<td>Allocates variables from those that are dynamically accessed more frequently.</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>function_call</td>
<td>Lowers the optimizing priority of functions that are dynamically accessed frequently.</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>branch</td>
<td>Allocates a function that is dynamically accessed frequently near the calling function.</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the SH program, the optimization with allocation is performed depending on the cache size specified using the \texttt{cachessize} option.

Notes: 1. SHC: C/C++ program for SuperH Family
        SHA: Assembly program for SuperH Family
        H8C: C/C++ program for H8, H8S, H8SX Family
        H8A: Assembly program for H8, H8S, H8SX Family

2. Movement is provided not in the function unit, but in the input file unit.

Remarks: When the \texttt{optimize} option is not specified, this option is unavailable.
Cachesize

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Link/Library &lt;Optimize&gt; [Cache size :]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Format:**

```
Cachesize = <suboption>
```

```
$suboption$: Size = <size> | Align = <line size>
```

**Description:**

Specifies a cache size and cache line size.

- When **profile** is specified, this option is used at the branch instruction optimization (**optimize=branch**).
- Specify the size in Kbytes and specify the line size in bytes in the hexadecimal notation.
- When this option is omitted, the default is **cachesize=size=8, align=20**.

**Remarks:**

If **profile** is not specified, this option is unavailable.
SYmbol_forbid, SAMECode_forbid, Variable_forbid, 
FUnction_forbid, SEcction_forbid, Absolute_forbid

Optimization Partially Disabled

Link/Library <Optimize> [Show entries for :) [Forbid item]

Format:
SYmbol_forbid = <symbol name> [,…]
SAMECode_forbid = <function name> [,…]
Variable_forbid = <symbol name> [,…]
FUnction_forbid = <function name> [,…]
SEction_forbid = <sub>[,…]
  <sub>: [<file name>|<module name>](<section name>[,…])
Absolute_forbid = <address> [+<size>] [,…]

Description: Enables optimization for the specified symbol, section, or address range. Specify an address or the size in the hexadecimal notation. For a C/C++ variable or C function name, add an underscore (_) at the head of the definition name in the program. For a C++ function, enclose the definition name in the program with double-quotes including the parameter strings. When the parameter is void, specify as "<function name>( )".

Table 4.10 shows the suboptions.
Table 4.10 Suboptions of Optimization Partially Disabling Option

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suboption</th>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>symbol_forbid</td>
<td>Function name</td>
<td>Disables optimization regarding unreferenced symbol deletion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>variable name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>samecode_forbid</td>
<td>Function name</td>
<td>Disables optimization regarding same-code unification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>variable_forbid</td>
<td>Variable name</td>
<td>Disables optimization regarding short absolute addressing mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>function_forbid</td>
<td>Function name</td>
<td>Disables optimization regarding indirect addressing mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>section_forbid</td>
<td>Section name</td>
<td>Disables optimization for the specified section. If an input file name or library module name is also specified, the optimization can be disabled for a specific file, not only the entire section.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>File name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Module name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>absolute_forbid</td>
<td>Address [+ size]</td>
<td>Disables optimization regarding address + size specification</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:
- `symbol_forbid="f(int)"
  ; Does not delete the C++ function f(int)
  ; even if it is not referenced.
- `section_forbid=(P1)
  ; Disables any optimization for section
  ; P1.
- `section_forbid=a.obj(P1,P2)
  ; Disables any optimization for sections
  ; P1 and P2 in a.obj.

Remarks:
If optimization is not applied at linkage, this option is ignored.
To disable optimization for an input file with its path name, type the path with the file name when specifying `section_forbid`. 

### 4.2.5 Section Options

#### Table 4.11 Section Category Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Command Line Format</th>
<th>Dialog Menu</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Section address</td>
<td>START = &lt;sub&gt;[…]</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Section&gt;</td>
<td>Specifies a section start address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;sub&gt;: ([{&lt;section name&gt;</td>
<td>Specifies a section start address</td>
<td><img src="image.png" alt="Image" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>][[:</td>
<td>, }&lt;section name&gt;[…]]][,...][/&lt;address&gt;]</td>
<td>[Show entries for :]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[Show entries for :]</td>
<td>[Section]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[Symbol file]</td>
<td>Outputs externally defined symbol addresses to a definition file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symbol address file</td>
<td>FSymbol = &lt;section name&gt;[…]</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Symbol&gt;</td>
<td>Outputs externally defined symbol addresses to a definition file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[Show entries for :]</td>
<td>Section alignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[Symbol file]</td>
<td>Changes the section alignment value to 16 bytes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section alignment</td>
<td>ALIGNED_SECTION = &lt;section name&gt;[…]</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Section&gt;</td>
<td>Changes the section alignment value to 16 bytes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specification</td>
<td></td>
<td>[Show entries for :]</td>
<td>Section alignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[Symbol file]</td>
<td>Section alignment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**STARt**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section Address</th>
<th>Link/Library &lt;Section&gt; [Show entries for :] [Section]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Format:</td>
<td>START = &lt;sub&gt; […]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;sub&gt;: [{&lt;section name&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description:</td>
<td>Specifies the start address of the section. Specify an address as the hexadecimal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The section name can be specified with wildcards “*”. Sections specified with wildcards are expanded according to the input order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Two or more sections can be allocated to the same address (i.e., sections are overlaid) by separating them with a colon “:”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sections specified at a single address are allocated in the specification order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sections to be overlaid can be changed by enclosing them by parentheses “()”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Objects in a single section are allocated in the specification order of the input file or the input library.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If no address is specified, the section is allocated at 0.

A section which is not specified with the start option is allocated after the last allocation address.

Examples: This example shows how sections are allocated when the objects are input in the following order (names enclosed by parentheses are sections in the objects).

```plaintext
tpl.obj(A,D1,E) -> tp2.obj(B,D3,F)) -> tp3.obj(C,D2,E,G) -> lib.lib(E)
```

(1) -start=A,B,E/400,C,D*:F:G/8000

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address</th>
<th>Sections</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0x400</td>
<td>A, B, E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x8000</td>
<td>C, D1, D3, D2, F, G</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

- Sections C, F, and G separated by colons are allocated to the same address.
- Sections specified with wildcards "*" (in this example, the sections whose names start with D) are allocated in the input order.
- Objects in the sections having the same name (E in this example) are allocated in the input order.
- An input library’s section having the same name (E in this example) as those of input objects is allocated after the input objects.

(2) -start=A,B,C,D1:D2,D3,E,F:G/400

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address</th>
<th>Sections</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0x400</td>
<td>A, B, C, D1, D2, D3, F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x800</td>
<td>E, G</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

- The sections that come immediately after the colons (A, D2, and G in this example) are selected as the start and allocated to the same address.

(3) -start=A,B,C,(D1:D2,D3),E,(F:G)/400

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address</th>
<th>Sections</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0x400</td>
<td>A, B, C, D1, D2, D3, E, F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x800</td>
<td>G</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

- When the sections to be allocated to the same address are enclosed by parentheses, the sections within parentheses are allocated to the address.
immediately after the sections that come before the parentheses (C and E in this example).

- The section that comes after the parentheses (E in this example) is allocated after the last of the sections enclosed by the parentheses.

Remarks: When `form={object | relocate | library}` or `strip` is specified, this option is unavailable.

Parentheses cannot be nested.

One or more colons must be written within parentheses. Parentheses cannot be written without a colon.

Colons cannot be written outside of parentheses.

When this option is specified with parentheses, optimization with the linkage editor is disabled.
FSymbol

Link/Library <Section> [Show entries for :][Symbol file]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Format</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FSymbol = &lt;section name&gt; [,...]</td>
<td>Outputs externally defined symbols in the specified section to a file in the assembler directive format. The file name is &lt;output file&gt;.fsy.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples:**
```
fSymbol = sct2, sct3
output=test.abs
```
Outputs externally defined symbols in sections sct2 and sct3 to test.fsy.

[Output example of test.fsy]
```
;OPTIMIZING LINKAGE EDITOR GENERATED FILE 1999.11.26
;fsymbol = sct2, sct3

;SECTION NAME = sct2
.export _f
_f: .equ h'00000000
.export _g
_g: .equ h'00000016

;SECTION NAME = sct3
.export _main
_main: .equ h'00000020
.end
```

**Remarks:**
When form={object | relocate | library} or strip is specified, this option is unavailable.

This option is available when the CPU type is H8, H8S, H8SX Family, SuperH Family, or RX Family.
### ALIGNED_SECTION

Changing Section Alignment to 16 bytes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Format</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ALIGNED_SECTION = &lt;section name&gt;[,...]</td>
<td>Changes the alignment value for the specified section to 16 bytes.</td>
<td>When form={object</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 4.2.6 Verify Options

#### Table 4.12 Verify Category Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Command Line Format</th>
<th>Dialog Menu</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Address check</td>
<td>CPu = { &lt;cpu information file name&gt;</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Verify&gt; [CPU information check :]</td>
<td>Specifies a specifiable allocation range for section addresses. The specified section will be divided.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical space overlap check</td>
<td>PS_check=&lt;sub&gt;[&lt;sub&gt;...</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Verify&gt; [Physical space overlap check :]</td>
<td>Specifies address ranges that may overlap each other in the physical space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;sub&gt;: &lt;LS&gt;,&lt;LS&gt;[...</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;LS&gt;: &lt;start address&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;end address&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not divide the specified section</td>
<td>CONTIGUOUS_SECTION = &lt;section name&gt;[...</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Verify&gt; [Not divide the specified section :]</td>
<td>The specified section will not be divided.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Verify [CPU information check:]

**Format:**

```
CPU=\{<cpu information file name> \\
| <memory type> = <address range> [...]
| STRIDE\}
```

- `<memory type>`: { ROM | RAM | XROM | XRAM | YROM | YRAM | FIX}
- `<address range>`: `<start address>` - `<end address>`

**Description:**

When `cpu=stride` is not specified, a section larger than the specified range of addresses leads to an error.

When `cpu=stride` is specified, a section larger than the specified range of addresses is allocated to the next area of the same memory type or the section is divided.

**[Example]**

When the `stride` suboption is not specified:

```
start=D1,D2/100
cpu=ROM=100-1FF,RAM=200-2FF
```

The result is normal when D1 and D2 are respectively allocated within the ranges from 100 to 1FF and from 200 to 2FF. If they are not allocated within the ranges, an error will be output.

**[Example]**

When the `stride` suboption is specified:

```
start=D1,D2/100
cpu=ROM=100-1FF,RAM=200-2FF,ROM=300-3FF
cpu=stride
```

The result is normal when D1 and D2 are allocated within the ROM area (regardless of whether the section is divided). A linkage error occurs when they are not allocated within the ROM area even though the section is divided.

`xrom` and `xram` specify the X memory areas and `yrom` and `yram` specify the Y memory areas in the DSP.

Specify an address range in which a section can be allocated in hexadecimal notation. The memory type attribute is used for the inter-module optimization.
**FIX** for `<memory type>` is used to specify a memory area where the addresses are fixed (e.g. I/O area).

If the address range of `<start>`-`<end>` specified for **FIX** overlaps with that specified for another memory type, the setting for **FIX** is valid.

When `<memory type>` is **ROM** or **RAM** and the section size is larger than the specified memory range, sub-option **STRIDE** can be used to divide a section and allocate them to another area of the same memory type. Sections are divided in module units.

[Example]
```
cpu=ROM=0-FFFF,RAM=10000-1FFFF
```
Checks that section addresses are allocated within the range from 0 to FFFF or from 10000 to 1FFFF.

Object movement is not provided between different attributes with the inter-module optimization.

```
cpu=ROM=100-1FF,ROM=400-4FF,RAM=500-5FF
```
```cpu=stride```
When section addresses are not allocated within the range from 100 to 1FF, the linkage editor divides the sections in module units and allocates them to the range from 400 to 4FF.

Remarks: When `form={object | relocate | library}` or `strip` is specified, this option is unavailable.

When `cpu=stride` and `memory=low` are specified, this option is unavailable.

Memory types `xrom`, `xram`, `yrom`, and `yram` are available only when the CPU is SHDSP, SH2DSP, SH3DSP or SH4ALDSP.

When `cpu=stride` and `optimize=register` are valid, error L2320 may be output. In such cases, disable `optimize=register`.

When section B is divided by `cpu=stride`, the size of section `CSBSEC` increases by `8 bytes × number of divisions` because this amount of information is required for initialization.
**PS_check**

Format:

\[
\text{PS\_check} = <\text{sub}>[::<\text{sub}>...]
\]

\[
<\text{sub}>: <\text{LS}>, <\text{LS}>[,...]
\]

\[
<\text{LS}>: <\text{start address}>-<\text{end address}>
\]

Description:

Specifies objects that may overlap each other when they are allocated to the memory.

Use this option to detect SH3 or SH4 objects that will overlap each other when they are allocated to the actual memory even if their virtual addresses do not overlap.

If an overlap is detected after this option setting, an error will be output and the linkage operation will be terminated.

Specify address ranges (\(<\text{LS}\>\) in the command line format) that may overlap each other in the memory.

To check multiple physical memory spaces, specify them by separation with a colon (\(:\)).

Examples:

In the SH4, the 4-Gbyte address space is mapped to the 512-Mbyte (29-bit address) external memory area when the MMU is disabled (the upper three bits of address for the 4-Gbyte space are ignored).

For example, when the **U0** area (00000000 to 0x7fffffff) that can be used in user mode is mapped to the external memory (512 Mbytes), overlapped objects can be detected through the following setting.

\[-\text{PS\_check}=00000000-1fffffff,20000000-3fffffff,40000000-5fffffff,60000000-7fffffff\]

This setting means that addresses 00000000, 20000000, 40000000, and 60000000 are allocated to the same location in the actual memory.

Remarks:

This option is only valid for the SuperH Family CPUs.
This option is invalid if object, relocate, or library is specified for the output format (form option).

This option is invalid when an absolute file is input.

For the address space specifications of the CPU, refer to the hardware manual of the target CPU.

**CONTIGUOUS_SECTION**

Not divide the specific section

Link/Library <Verify> [Not divide the specified section :]

Format: CONTIGUOUS_SECTION=<section name>[,...]

Description: Allocates the specified section to another available area of the same memory type without dividing the section when cpu=stride is valid.

Examples:

start=P,PA,PB/100

cpu=ROM=100-1FF,ROM=300-3FF,ROM=500-5FF

cpu=stride

contiguous_section=PA

Section P is allocated to address 100.

If section PA which is specified as contiguous_section is over address 1FF, section PA is allocated to address 300 without being divided.

If section PB which is not specified as contiguous_section is over address 3FF, section PB is divided and allocated to address 500.

Remarks: When cpu=stride is invalid, this option is unavailable.
### 4.2.7 Other Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Command Line Format</th>
<th>Dialog Menu</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>End code</td>
<td>S9</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Other&gt; [Miscellaneous options :] [Always output S9 record at the end]</td>
<td>Always outputs the S9 record.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stack information file</td>
<td>STACk</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Other&gt; [Miscellaneous options :] [Stack information output]</td>
<td>Outputs a stack use information file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debugging information compression</td>
<td>Compress</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Other&gt; [Miscellaneous options :] [Compress debug information]</td>
<td>Compresses debugging information Does not compress debugging information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memory occupancy reduction</td>
<td>MEMory = [ High</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Other&gt; [Miscellaneous options :] [Low memory use during linkage]</td>
<td>Specifies the memory occupancy when an input file is loaded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symbol name modification</td>
<td>REName = &lt;sub&gt;[,...] &lt;sub&gt;: {&lt;file name&gt; (&lt;name&gt;=[name][,...])</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;module name&gt; (&lt;name&gt;=[name][,...]) }</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Other&gt; [User defined options :]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symbol name deletion</td>
<td>DELete = &lt;sub&gt;[,...] &lt;sub&gt;: {&lt;module name&gt; [ &lt;file name&gt; (&lt;name&gt;=[name][,...]) ]</td>
<td></td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Other&gt; [User defined options :]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Module replacement</td>
<td>REPlace = &lt;sub&gt;[,...] &lt;sub&gt;: &lt;file&gt; [ (&lt;module&gt;[,...]) ]</td>
<td></td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Other&gt; [User defined options :]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Module extraction</td>
<td>EXTract = &lt;module&gt;[,...]</td>
<td></td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Other&gt; [User defined options :]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debugging information deletion</td>
<td>STRip</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Other&gt; [User defined options:]</td>
<td>Deletes debugging information in an absolute file or a library file.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Optimizing Linkage Editor Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Command Line Format</th>
<th>Dialog Menu</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Message level Change_message=&lt;sub&gt;[…] &lt;sub&gt;:</strong></td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Other&gt; [User defined options:]</td>
<td></td>
<td>Modifies message levels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local symbol name hide</td>
<td>Hide</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Other&gt; [User defined options:]</td>
<td>Deletes local symbol name information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Showing total sizes of sections</td>
<td>Total_size</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Other&gt; [Miscellaneous options:] [Displays total section size]</td>
<td>This newly added option sends total sizes of sections after linkage to standard output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information file for the emulator</td>
<td>RTs_file</td>
<td>Link/Library &lt;Other&gt; [Miscellaneous options:] [Rts information output]</td>
<td>Outputs an information file for the emulator (for SuperH Family).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### S9

**End Code**

**Format:** S9

**Description:** Outputs the S9 record at the end even if the entry address exceeds 0x10000.

**Remarks:** When `form=stype` is not specified, this option is unavailable.
### STACK

**Link/Library <Other>[Miscellaneous options :][Stack information output]**

**Format:** STACK

**Description:** Outputs a stack consumption information file.

The file name is `<output file name>.sni`.

**Remarks:** When `form={object | relocate | library | hexadecimal | stype | binary}` or `strip` is specified, this option is unavailable.

### COmpress, NOCOmpress

**Link/Library <Other>[Miscellaneous options :][Compress debug information]**

**Format:** COmpress

NOCOmpress

**Description:** Specifies whether debugging information is compressed.

- When `compress` is specified, the debugging information is compressed.
- When `nocompress` is specified, the debugging information is not compressed.

By compressing the debugging information, the debugger loading speed is improved. If the `nocompress` option is specified, the link time is reduced.

If this option is omitted, the default is `nocompress`.

**Remarks:** When `form={object | relocate | library | hexadecimal | stype | binary}` or `strip` is specified, the compress option is unavailable.
## MEMory

### Memory Occupancy Reduction

**Link/Library <Other>[Miscellaneous options :][Low memory use during linkage]**

| Format: | MEMory = [ High | Low ] |
|---------|-------------------------|

**Description:** Specifies the memory size occupied for linkage.

*When memory = high is specified, the processing is the same as usual.*

*When memory = low is specified, the linkage editor loads the information necessary for linkage in smaller units to reduce the memory occupancy. This increases file accesses and processing becomes slower when the occupied memory size is less than the available memory capacity.*

*memory = low is effective when processing is slow because a large project is linked and the memory size occupied by the linkage editor exceeds the available memory in the machine used.*

**Remarks:** When one of the following options is specified, the memory=low option is unavailable:

- *When form=absolute, hexadecimal, stype, or binary is specified:*
  - compress, delete, rename, map, stack, cpu=Stride, or list and show={reference | xreference} are specified in combination.

- *When form=library is specified:*
  - delete, rename, extract, hide, or replace

- *When form=object or relocate is specified:*
  - extract

*When the microcontroller is of a type that is not a member of the NC family and optimize is specified.*

Some combinations of this option and the input or output file format are unavailable. For details, refer to table 4.4 in section 4.2.2, Output Options.
### REName

**Symbol Name Modification**

**Format:**

```
REName = <suboption> [...]
```

<suboption>: 

- `[{<file>} (<name> = <name> [...])]
- `|[<module>] (<name> = <name> [...]) ]
```

**Description:**

Modifies a symbol name or a section name.

Symbol names or section names in a specific file or library in a module can be modified.

For a C/C++ variable name, add an underscore (_) at the head of the definition name in the program.

When a function name is modified, the operation is not guaranteed.

If the specified name matches both section and symbol names, the symbol name is modified.

If there are several files or modules of the same name, the priority depends on the input order.

**Examples:**

- `rename=(_sym1=data)` ; Modifies _sym1 to data.
- `rename=lib1(P=P1)` ; Modifies the section P to P1 in the library module lib1.

**Remarks:**

When `extract` or `strip` is specified, this option is unavailable.

When `form=absolute` is specified, the section name of the input library cannot be modified.
DELete Symbol Name Deletion

Link/Library <Other>[User defined options :]

Format:  DELete = <suboption> [...]

<suboption>: [{<file>} (<name> [...]) | <module}]

Description: Deletes an external symbol name or library module.

Symbol names or modules in the specified file can be deleted.

For a C/C++ variable name or C function name, add an underscore (_) at the head of the definition name in the program. For a C++ function name, enclose the definition name in the program with double-quotes including the parameter strings. If the parameter is `void`, specify as `"<function name>()"`. If there are several files or modules of the same name, the file that is input first is applied.

When a symbol is deleted using this option, the object is not deleted but the attribute is changed to the internal symbol.

Examples:

```
delete=(_sym1) ; Deletes the symbol _sym1 in all files.
delete=file1.obj(_sym2) ; Deletes the symbol _sym2 in the file file1.obj.
```

Remarks:

When `extract` or `strip` is specified, this option is unavailable.

When `form=library` has been specified, this option deletes modules.

When `form={absolute|relocate|hexadecimal|stype|binary}` has been specified, this option deletes external symbols.
REPlace

Module Replacement

**Format:**

\[ \text{REPlace} = \langle \text{suboption} \rangle \ [\ldots] \]

\[ \langle \text{suboption} \rangle: \langle \text{file name} \rangle \ [\ ( \langle \text{module name} \rangle \ [\ldots] \ ) \] \}

**Description:**

Replaces library modules.

Replaces the specified file or library module with the module of the same name in the library specified with the `library` option.

**Examples:**

```
replace=file1.obj ; Replaces the module `file1`
; with the module `file1.obj`.
replace=lib1.lib(mdl1) ; Replaces the module `mdl1` with
; the module `mdl1` in the input library
; file `lib1.lib`.
```

**Remarks:**

When `form={object | relocate | absolute | hexadecimal | stype | binary}`, `extract`, or `strip` is specified, this option is unavailable.
EXTract  Module Extraction

Link/Library <Other>[User defined options :]

Format: EXTract = <module name> [,…]

Description: Extracts library modules.

Extracts the specified library module from the library file specified using the library option.

Examples: extract=file1 ; Extracts the module file1.

Remarks: When form={absolute | hexadecimal | stype | binary} or strip is specified, this option is unavailable.

When form=library has been specified, this option deletes modules.

When form={absolute|relocate|hexadecimal|stype|binary} has been specified, this option deletes external symbols.

STRip  Debugging Information Deletion

Link/Library <Other>[User defined options :]

Format: STRip

Description: Deletes debugging information in an absolute file or library file.

When the strip option is specified, one input file should correspond to one output file.

Examples: input=file1.abs file2.abs file3.abs strip

Deletes debugging information of file1.abs, file2.abs, and file3.abs, and outputs this information to file1.abs, file2.abs, and file3.abs, respectively. Files before debugging information is deleted are backed up in file1.abk, file2.abk, and file3.abk.

Remarks: When form={object | relocate | hexadecimal | stype | binary} is specified, this option is unavailable.
### CHange_message

**Message Level**

| Link/Library <Other> | [User defined options :]| |

**Format:**

\[
\text{CHange\_message = <suboption> [,…]} \\
\text{<suboption>: <error level> [= <error number> [-<error number>] [,…] ]} \\
\text{<error level>: \{Information | Warning | Error}\}
\]

**Description:**
Modifies the level of information, warning, and error messages.

Specifies the execution continuation or abort at the message output.

**Examples:**

- `change_message=warning=2310`
  
  Modifies L2310 to the warning level and specifies execution continuation at L2310 output.

- `change_message=error`
  
  Modifies all information and warning messages to error level messages.
  
  When a message is output, the execution is aborted.

### Hide

**Local Symbol Name Hide**

| Link/Library <Other> | [User defined options :]| |

**Format:**

\[
\text{Hide}
\]

**Description:**
Deletes local symbol name information from the output file. Since all the name information regarding local symbols is deleted, local symbol names cannot be checked even if the file is opened with a binary editor. This option does not affect the operation of the generated file.

Use this option to keep the local symbol names secret.

The following types of symbol names are hidden:

- **C source:** Variable or function names specified with the `static` qualifiers
- **C source:** Label names for the `goto` statements
- **Assembly source:** Symbol names of which external definition (reference) symbols are not declared

**Note:** The entry function name is not hidden.
Examples: The following is a C source example in which this option is valid:

```c
int g1;
int g2=1;
const int g3=3;
static int s1; //<- The static variable name will be hidden.
static int s2=1; //<- The static variable name will be hidden.
static const int s3=2; //<- The static variable name will be hidden.

static int sub1() //<- The static function name will be hidden.
{
    static int s1; //<- The static variable name will be hidden.
    int ll;

    s1 = ll; ll = s1;
    return(ll);
}

int main()
{
    sub1();
    if (g1==1)
        goto L1;
    g2=2;

    L1: //<- The label name of the goto statement
         // will be hidden.

    return(0);
}
```

Remarks: This option is available only when the output file format is specified as absolute, relocate, or library.

When the input file was compiled or assembled with the goptimize option specified, this option is unavailable if the output file format is specified as relocate or library.

To use this option with the external variable access optimization, do not use this option for the first linkage, and use it only for the second linkage.

The symbol names in the debugging information are not deleted by this option.
### Total_size

Showing total sizes of sections

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Format:</th>
<th>Total_size</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Description:** Sends total sizes of sections after linkage to standard output. The sections are categorized as follows, with the overall size of each being output.

- Executable program sections
- Non-program sections allocated to the ROM area
- Sections allocated to the RAM area

This option makes it easy to see the total sizes of sections allocated to the ROM and RAM areas.

**Remarks:** The `show=total_size` option must be used if total sizes of sections are to be output in the linkage listing.

When the ROM-support function (rom option) has been specified for a section, the section will be used by both the source (ROM) and destination (RAM) of the transfer. The sizes of sections of this type will be added to the total sizes of sections in both ROM and RAM.
RTs_file Information File for the Emulator

Format: RTs_file

Description: This option creates a return address information file (.rts file) for the emulator. For usage of this option, refer to the user’s manual for the emulator in use. This option is not available in some types of emulators.

The name of the return address information file is <load module name>.rts. If the file to be output is test.abs as specified with the output option, for example, its file will be created as test.rts. The return address information file is created under the same directory where the load module has been created.

Remarks: This option is invalid when form={object | relocate | library} has been specified.

This option is invalid when an absolute file is selected as an input file.

For usage of this option, refer to the user’s manual for the emulator in use. This option is not available in some types of emulators.

This option can be used when the CPU type is SuperH Family.
4.2.8 Subcommand File Options

Table 4.14 Subcommand Tab Option

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Command Line Format</th>
<th>Dialog Menu</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Subcommand file</td>
<td>Subcommand = &lt;file name&gt;</td>
<td>Link/Library&lt;br&gt;Subcommand file&lt;br&gt;[Use external subcommand file]</td>
<td>Specifies options with a subcommand file</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**SUbjectmand**<br>

Link/Library <Subcommand file> [Use external subcommand file]

**Format:**

SUbjectmand = <file name>

**Description:** Specifies options with a subcommand file.

The format of the subcommand file is as follows:

<option> { = | \Delta } [ <suboption> [... ] ] [ \Delta & ] [:<comment>]

The option and suboption are separated by an “=” sign or a space.

For the **input** option, suboptions are separated by a space.

One option is specified per line in the subcommand file.

If a subcommand description exceeds one line, the description can be allowed to
overflow to the next line by using an ampersand (&).

The **subcommand** option cannot be specified in the subcommand file.

**Examples:**

Command line specification:

```bash
optlnk file1.obj -sub=test.sub file4.obj
```

Subcommand specification:

```bash
input file2.obj file3.obj ; This is a comment.
library lib1.lib, & ; Specifies line continued.
lib2.lib
```

Option contents specified with a subcommand file are expanded to the location at
which the subcommand is specified on the command line and are executed.

The order of file input is **file1.obj, file2.obj, file3.obj, and file4.obj.**
4.2.9 CPU Option

Table 4.15 CPU Tab Option

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Command Line Format</th>
<th>Dialog Menu</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SBR address</td>
<td>SBr = { &lt;SBR address&gt;</td>
<td>CPU</td>
<td>Specifies the start address of the 8-bit absolute area (for H8SX Family).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specification</td>
<td></td>
<td>[Specify SBR address :]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SBr

SBR Address Specification

Format: SBr = { <address> | User }

Description: Specifies the SBR address.

When the SBR address is specified in this option, optimization using the abs8 area is available. When user is specified in this option, optimization for the abs8 area is disabled.

Remarks: This option is available only when the CPU is H8SX Family.

If more than one SBR address is specified within the source or by tool options, the optimizing linkage editor assumes that user is specified regardless of this option setting.
### 4.2.10 Options Other Than Above

**Table 4.16 Options Other Than Above**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Command Line Format</th>
<th>Dialog Menu</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Copyright</td>
<td>LOgo</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NOLOgo</td>
<td>(NOLOgo is always valid)</td>
<td>Not output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continuation</td>
<td>END</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Executes option strings already input, inputs continuing option strings and continues processing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Termination</td>
<td>EXIT</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Specifies the termination of option input.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LOgo, NOLOgo**

**Copyright**

None (nologo is always available.)

**Format:**

- LOgo
- NOLOgo

**Description:** Specifies whether the copyright is output.

- When the **logo** option is specified, the copyright is displayed.
- When the **nologo** option is specified, the copyright display is disabled.
- When this option is omitted, the default is **logo**.
END

Format: END

Description: Executes option strings specified before END. After the linkage processing is terminated, option strings that are specified after END are input and the linkage processing is continued.

This option cannot be specified on the command line.

Examples:

```plaintext
input=a.obj,b.obj ; Processing (1)
start=P,C,D/100,B/8000 ; Processing (2)
output=a.abs ; Processing (3)
end
ing=a.abs ; Processing (4)
form=stype ; Processing (5)
output=a.mot ; Processing (6)
```

Executes the processing from (1) to (3) and outputs a.abs. Then executes the processing from (4) to (6) and outputs a.mot.
**EXIT**

**Termination Processing**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Format:</th>
<th>EXIT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Description:</td>
<td>Specifies the end of the option specifications. This option cannot be specified on the command line.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Examples:      | Command line specification: 
  `optlnk -sub=test.sub -nodebug`  
  test.sub:  
  `input=a.obj,b.obj` ; Processing (1)  
  `start=P,C,D/100,B/8000` ; Processing (2)  
  `output=a.abs` ; Processing (3)  
  `exit`  
  Executes the processing from (1) to (3) and outputs a.abs.  
  The **nodebug** option specified on the command line after `exit` is executed is ignored. |
Section 5  Standard Library Generator Operating Method

5.1  Option Specifications

The format of the command line is as follows:

`lbgsh [σ<option string>...]`

`<option string>:-<option>[=<suboption>[,...]]`

5.2  Option Descriptions

Options and suboptions of the standard library generator are based on the compiler options. The following section describes the difference between the options and suboptions of the standard library generator and those of the compiler. For details on compiler options, refer to section 2, Compiler Options.

In the command line format, uppercase letters indicate abbreviations. The format of the dialog menus that correspond to the integrated development environment is as follows: Category name [Item].
### 5.2.1 Additional Options

Table 5.1 shows additional options.

#### Table 5.1 Additional Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Command Line Format</th>
<th>Dialog Menu</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Header file</strong></td>
<td>Head = &lt;sub&gt;[…] { ALL</td>
<td>Library</td>
<td>Specifies a configuration file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{ RUNTIME } { CTYPE</td>
<td>[Category:]</td>
<td>All library functions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{ MATH } { MATHF</td>
<td></td>
<td>Runtime routine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{ STDARG } { STDOUT</td>
<td></td>
<td>ctype.h + runtime routine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{ STDLIB } { STRING</td>
<td></td>
<td>math.h + runtime routine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{ IOS } { NEW</td>
<td></td>
<td>mathf.h + runtime routine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{ COMPLEX } { CPPSTRING</td>
<td></td>
<td>stdarg.h + runtime routine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>} }</td>
<td></td>
<td>stdio.h + runtime routine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>string.h + runtime routine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ios + runtime routine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>new + runtime routine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>complex + runtime routine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>string + runtime routine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Output file</strong></td>
<td>OUTPut = &lt;file name&gt;</td>
<td>Object</td>
<td>Specified an output library file name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[Output file:]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Simple I/O function</strong></td>
<td>NOFLoat</td>
<td>Object</td>
<td>Creates simple I/O function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[Simple I/O function:]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reentrant library</strong></td>
<td>REent</td>
<td>Object</td>
<td>Creates reentrant library.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[Generate reentrant library:]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Head

Library [Category:]

- Command Line Format
  
  `Head = <sub>[,...]`  
  
  `<sub>:{ ALL`  
  
  `| RUNTIME`  
  
  `| CTYPE`  
  
  `| MATH`  
  
  `| MATHF`  
  
  `| STDARG`  
  
  `| STDIO`  
  
  `| STDLIB`  
  
  `| STRING`  
  
  `| IOS`  
  
  `| NEW`  
  
  `| COMPLEX`  
  
  `| CPPSTRING }`  

- Description

  Specifies a configuration file with a header file name. For relationships between header files and library functions, refer to section 10.4, C/C++ Library. The runtime routine is always configured. The default of this option is `head=all`.

- Example

  `lbosh -output=sh2.lib -head=mathf -cpu=sh2`

  Compiles library functions defined by mathf.h and runtime routine with option: `-cpu=sh2`, and outputs library file `sh2.lib`. 
OUTPut

Object [Output file:]

- Command Line Format
  OUTPut = <File name>

- Description
  Specifies an output file name. The default of this option is output=stdlib.lib.

- Example
  lbgsh -output=sh2.lib -optimize -speed -goptimize -cpu=sh2

NOFLoat

Object [Simple I/O function:]

- Command Line Format
  NOFLoat

- Description
  Selects the creation of simple I/O functions that do not support the conversion of floating point numbers (%f, %e, %E, %g, %G). When inputting or outputting files that do not require the conversion of floating point numbers, ROM can be saved.

  Target functions: fprintf, fscanf, printf, scanf, sprintf, sscanf, vfprintf, vprintf, and vsprintf

- Remarks
  When a floating-point number is specified in I/O functions, linkages of library that are created by this option will not operate correctly on the floating-point number thus specified.

REent

Object [Generate reentrant library:]

- Command Line Format
  REent

- Description
  Creates reentrant functions. Note that the rand and srand functions are not reentrant functions.
• Remarks

When reentrant functions are linked, use #define statements to define macro names (\#define _REENTRANT) or use the define option to define _REENTRANT at compilation before including standard include files in the program.

5.2.2 Options Not Available for the Standard Library Generator

Table 5.2 shows options that cannot be specified for the standard library generator. If any of the options listed in Table 5.2 are specified, these specifications are ignored.

Table 5.2 Options Not Available for Standard Library Generator

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Compiler Interpretation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Include file directory</td>
<td>include</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inter-file inline expansion directory specification</td>
<td>file_inline_path</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macro name definition</td>
<td>define</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message output control</td>
<td>message</td>
<td>nomessage</td>
<td>No output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preprocessor inline output</td>
<td>preprocessor</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restriction for output at preprocessor expansion</td>
<td>noline</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Object type</td>
<td>code</td>
<td>code = machinecode</td>
<td>Outputs machine code program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debugging information</td>
<td>debug</td>
<td>nodebug</td>
<td>No output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Object file output</td>
<td>objectfile</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template instance generation</td>
<td>template</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>No template function used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Listing file</td>
<td>listfile</td>
<td>nolistfile</td>
<td>No output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Listing format</td>
<td>show</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inter-file inline expansion</td>
<td>file_inline</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item</td>
<td>Option</td>
<td>Compiler Interpretation</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comment nesting</td>
<td>comment</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>No comment nesting function used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAC register</td>
<td>mcsave</td>
<td>mcsave = 1</td>
<td>Contents of MACH and MACL registers are guaranteed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message level</td>
<td>change_message</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selecting C or C++ language</td>
<td>lang</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Determined by an extension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable of Copyright output</td>
<td>logo</td>
<td>nologo</td>
<td>Copyright output disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Character code select in string literals</td>
<td>euc</td>
<td>sjsi</td>
<td>No character code used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japanese character conversion within object code</td>
<td>outcode</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>No character code used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TBR relative function call</td>
<td>tbr</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disposition of variables in $G0/$G1</td>
<td>stuff_gbr</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preventing expansion of C++ inline functions</td>
<td>cpp_noinline</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optimization considering alias type of object indicated by pointer</td>
<td>alias=noansi</td>
<td>alias=noansi</td>
<td>Optimization in consideration of types of objects indicated by pointers in compliance with the ANSI standard is not performed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.2.3 Notes on Specifying Options

When options are specified, follow the rules below:

(1) Specify the same options as in compiling for options `cpu`, `division`, `endian`, `fpu`, `round`, `denormalize`, `pic`, `double=float`, `rtti`, and `pack`.

(2) When `#pragma global_register` is used, specify a header file that includes the `#pragma global_register` declaration with the `preinclude` option. When the integrated development environment is used, specify it with `Other[User defined options:]`. 
Section 6  Operating CallWalker

6.1  Overview

The CallWalker displays the stack amount by reading the stack information file (*.sni) output by the optimizing linkage editor or the profile information file (*.pro) output by the simulator debugger.

For the stack amount of the assembly program (assembled by the assembler of V6 or earlier) that cannot be output in the stack information file, the information can be added or modified by using the edit function. In addition, the stack amount of whole systems can be calculated.

The information on the edited stack amount can be saved and read as the call information file (*.cal).

6.2  Starting the CallWalker

To start the CallWalker, select [Run...] from the start menu of Windows® and specify Call.exe for execution.

When the Renesas High-Performance Embedded Workshop is used, select [Program] from the start menu of Windows®, select the Renesas High-Performance Embedded Workshop menu, and then select Call Walker.

After the Renesas High-Performance Embedded Workshop is started, the CallWalker can also be started from the [Tools] menu.

For details on operation, refer to the help of the CallWalker.
Section 7 Environment Variables

7.1 Environment Variable List

Environment variables are listed in table 7.1.

Table 7.1 Environment Variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment Variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>path</td>
<td>Specifies a storage directory for the execution file. Specification format: C&gt; path = &lt;execution file path name&gt;; [&lt;previous path name&gt;;...]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHC_LIB</td>
<td>Specifies a directory at which compiler load modules exist. This environment variable must be specified for compilation from the command prompt. Specification format: C&gt; set SHC_LIB = &lt;execution file path name&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 7.1 Environment Variables (cont)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment Variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SHCPU</td>
<td>Specifies the CPU type by the <code>cpu</code> option of the compiler or assembler using environment variables. The following is specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;CPU&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SH1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SH2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SH2E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SH2A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SH2AFPU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SH2DSP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SH3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SH3DSP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SH4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SH4A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SH4ALDSP</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the specification of CPU by the SHCPU environment variable and the `cpu` options differ, a warning message is displayed and the `cpu` option has priority over the SHCPU specification.

When SHDSP is specified for the compiler, SH2DSP is assumed.

Specification format: C> set SHCPU = <CPU>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment Variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SHC_INC*</td>
<td>Specifies a directory at which a system include file of the compiler exists. A system include file is searched for at a directory specified by the <code>include</code> option, SHC_INC specified directory, and system directory (SHC_LIB) in this order. User include files are searched for at the current directory, a directory specified by the <code>include</code> option, SHC_INC specified directory, and system directory (SHC_LIB) in this order. If this option is not specified, no value is set. Specification format: C&gt; set SHC_INC = &lt;include path name&gt; [:&lt;include path name&gt;; ...]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHC_TMP</td>
<td>Specifies a directory for a temporary file generated by the compiler. This environment variable must be specified for compilation from the command prompt. Specification format: C&gt; set SHC_TMP = &lt;temporary file path name&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 7.1 Environment Variables (cont)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment Variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| HLNK_LIBRARY1        | Specifies a default library name for the optimizing linkage editor. Libraries which are specified by a `library` option are linked first. Then, if there is an unresolved symbol, the default libraries are searched in the order 1, 2, 3. Specification format:  
  C> set HLNK_LIBRARY1 = <library name 1>  
  C> set HLNK_LIBRARY2 = <library name 2>  
  C> set HLNK_LIBRARY3 = <library name 3> |
| HLNK_TMP             | Specifies a directory in which the optimizing linkage editor creates temporary files. If HLNK_TMP is not specified, the temporary files are created in the current directory. Specification format:  
  C> set HLNK_TMP = <temporary file path name> |
| HLNK_DIR*            | Specifies an input file storage directory for the optimizing linkage editor. The order of searching for files specified by the `input` or `library` option is the current directory then the directory specified as HLNK_DIR. However, when a wild card is used in the file specification, only the current directory is searched. Specification format:  
  C> set HLNK_DIR = <input file path name>  
  [::<input file path name >;...] |

Note: More than one directory can be specified by using semicolons (;) or commas (,) to demarcate the directory names.
## 7.2 Compiler Implicit Declaration

The following implicit `#define` declarations are made by the compiler according to the option specification and the version.

### Table 7.2 Compiler Implicit Declaration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Implicit Declaration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cpu=sh1</td>
<td><code>#define _SH1</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cpu=sh2</td>
<td><code>#define _SH2</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cpu=sh2e</td>
<td><code>#define _SH2E</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cpu=sh2a</td>
<td><code>#define _SH2A</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cpu=sh2afpu</td>
<td><code>#define _SH2AFPU</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cpu=sh2dsp</td>
<td><code>#define _SH2DSP</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cpu=sh3</td>
<td><code>#define _SH3</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cpu=sh3dsp</td>
<td><code>#define _SH3DSP</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cpu=sh4</td>
<td><code>#define _SH4</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cpu=sh4a</td>
<td><code>#define _SH4A</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cpu=sh4aldsp</td>
<td><code>#define _SH4ALDSP</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pic=1</td>
<td><code>#define _PIC</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>endian=big</td>
<td><code>#define _BIG</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>endian=little</td>
<td><code>#define _LIT</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>double=float</td>
<td><code>#define _FLT, #define _FLT_</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fpu=single</td>
<td><code>#define _FPS</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fpu=double</td>
<td><code>#define _FPD</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>denormalize=on</td>
<td><code>#define _DON</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>round=nearest</td>
<td><code>#define _RON</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dspc</td>
<td><code>#define _DSPC</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fixed_const</td>
<td><code>#define _FXD</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>#define __HITACHI_VERSION__</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>#define __HITACHI__</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>#define __SH2</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>#define __RENESAS_VERSION__</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>#define __RENESAS__</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Notes:

1. The value of `__HITACHI_VERSION__` and `__RENESAS_VERSION__` is referenced as follows:
   - C source program: `__HITACHI_VERSION__ == aabb`
     - aa: version
     - bb: revision
   - Example definition in the compiler:
     - `#define __HITACHI_VERSION__ 0x0701 //V.7.1.00`
     - `#define __HITACHI_VERSION__ 0x0900 //V.9.00.00`
     - `#define __RENESAS_VERSION__ 0x0900 //V.9.00.00`

2. Always defined.
Section 8  File Specifications

8.1  Naming Files

A standard file extension is automatically added to the name of a compiled file when omitted. The standard file extensions used by the integrated development environment are shown in table 8.1.
### Table 8.1 Standard File Extensions Used by the Integrated Development Environment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>File Extension</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>Source program file written in C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>cpp, cc, cp</td>
<td>Source program file written in C++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>Include file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>lst</td>
<td>C source program listing file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>lpp</td>
<td>C++ source program listing file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>C source program preprocessor expansion file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>pp</td>
<td>C++ source program preprocessor expansion file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>src</td>
<td>Assembly source program file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>exp</td>
<td>Assembly program preprocessor expansion file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>lis</td>
<td>Assembly program listing file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>obj</td>
<td>Relocatable object program file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>rel</td>
<td>Relocatable load module file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>abs</td>
<td>Absolute load module file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>map</td>
<td>Linkage map listing file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>lib</td>
<td>Library file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>lbp</td>
<td>Library listing file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>mot</td>
<td>S-type format file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>hex</td>
<td>HEX format file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>bin</td>
<td>Binary file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>fsy</td>
<td>Symbol address file for optimizing linkage editor output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>sni</td>
<td>Stack information file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>pro</td>
<td>Profile information file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>dbg</td>
<td>DWARF2-format debugging information file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>rti</td>
<td>Object file including definition that was specified by a file with extension td</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>cal</td>
<td>Information file to be called</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>bls</td>
<td>Information file for external symbol allocation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Filenames beginning with `rti_` are reserved for the system; do not use those files.
Table 8.2 lists the extensions for files that are output under the tpldir folder generated by each project.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>File Extension</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>td</td>
<td>Tentative-defined variable information file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>ti</td>
<td>Template information file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>pi</td>
<td>Parameter information file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>ii</td>
<td>Instance information file</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For details on naming files, refer to the user's manual of the host computer because naming rules vary according to each host computer.
8.2 Compiler Listings

This section covers the contents and format of the compiler formats.

8.2.1 Structure of Compiler Listings

Table 8.3 shows the structure and contents of compiler listings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Creating List</th>
<th>Contents</th>
<th>Suboption *1</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source listing information</td>
<td>Source program listing</td>
<td>show=source, show=nosource</td>
<td>No output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Source program listing after include file expansion</td>
<td>show=include, show=noinclude</td>
<td>No output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Source program listing after macro expansion</td>
<td>show=expansion, show=noexpansion</td>
<td>No output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Object information</td>
<td>Machine code used in object programs and the</td>
<td>show=object, show=noobject</td>
<td>Output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statistics information</td>
<td>Total number of errors, number of source program</td>
<td>show=statistics, show=nostatistics</td>
<td>Output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command specification</td>
<td>Displays file names and options specified by the</td>
<td></td>
<td>Output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command specification</td>
<td>information</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:  
1. All options are valid when listfile option is specified.  
2. Source program listings are included in the object information when show=object suboption is specified.  
3. The source program listing after include file expansion and macro expansion is valid only when show=source is specified.
8.2.2 Source Listing

The source listing may be output in two ways. When show=noinclude, noexpansion is specified, the unpreprocessed source program is output. When show=include, expansion is specified, the preprocessed source program is output. Figures 8.1 and 8.2 show these output formats, respectively. In addition, figure 8.2 shows the differences between them with bold characters.

************* SOURCE LISTING *************

FILE NAME: m0260.c

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Seq</th>
<th>File</th>
<th>Line</th>
<th>0----+----1----+----2----+----3----+----4----+----5---</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>m0260.c 1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>#include &quot;header.h&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>m0260.c 2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>m0260.c 3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>int sum2(void)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>m0260.c 4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>{ int j;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>m0260.c 5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>m0260.c 6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>#ifdef SMALL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>m0260.c 7</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>j=SML_INT;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>m0260.c 8</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>#else</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>m0260.c 9</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>j=LRG_INT;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>m0260.c 10</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>#endif</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>m0260.c 11</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>m0260.c 12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>return j;/* continue123456789012345678901234567890 */</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>m0260.c 13</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 8.1 Source Listing Output for show = noinclude, noexpansion
*************** SOURCE LISTING ***************

FILE NAME: m0260.c

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Seq</th>
<th>File</th>
<th>Line</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>m0260.c</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>#include &quot;header.h&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>header.h</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>#define SML_INT 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>header.h</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>#define LRG_INT 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>m0260.c</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>m0260.c</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>int sum2(void)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>m0260.c</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>{ int j;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>m0260.c</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>m0260.c</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>#ifdef SMALL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>m0260.c</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>X (5) j=SML_INT;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>m0260.c</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>#else</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>m0260.c</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>E (6) j=100;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>m0260.c</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>#endif</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>m0260.c</td>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>m0260.c</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>return j;/* continue continue continue continue */</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>m0260.c</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 8.2  Source Listing Output for show=include, expansion

Description:

(1) Listing line number
(2) Source program file name or include file name
(3) Line number in source program or include file
(4) Source program lines resulting from an include file expansion when show=include is specified.
(5) Source program lines that are not to be compiled due to conditional compile directives such as #ifdef and #elif being marked with an X when show=expansion is specified.
(6) Source program lines containing a macro expansion #define directives being marked with an E when show=expansion is specified.
(7) If a source program line is longer than the maximum listing line, the continuation symbol (+) is used to indicate that the source program line is extended over two or more listing lines.
### 8.2.3 Object Listing

Figure 8.3 shows an example of object listing.

```
*************** OBJECT LISTING ***************

FILE NAME: m0251.c

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCT</th>
<th>OFFSET</th>
<th>CODE</th>
<th>C LABEL</th>
<th>INSTRUCTION OPERAND</th>
<th>COMMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>(4)</td>
<td>(5)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m0251.c</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>extern int multipli(int);</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m0251.c</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>int multipli(int x)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>00000000</td>
<td>_multipli:</td>
<td>;function: multipli</td>
<td>;frame size=16</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

00000000 4F22 STS.L PR,R15
00000002 7FF4 ADD #12,R15
00000004 1F42 MOV.L R4,@(8,R15)
  m0251.c 4 {                      
  m0251.c 5 | int i;                     
  m0251.c 6 | int j;                      
  m0251.c 7 |
  m0251.c 8 | j=1;                       
00000006 E201 MOV #1,R2
00000008 2F22 MOV.L R2,@R15
  m0251.c 9 | for(i=1;i<=x;i++){            
0000000A E301 MOV #1,R3
0000000C 1F31 MOV.L R3,@(4,R15)
0000000E A009 BRA L213
00000010 0009 NOP
00000012 L214:                   
  m0251.c 10 | j*=i;                       
00000012 50F1 MOV.L @(4,R15),R0
00000014 61F2 MOV @R15,R1
00000016 D30A MOV.L L216+2,R3  ; _multi
00000018 430B JSR @R3
      .       |
      .       |
```

Figure 8.3 Object Listing Output for show = source, object
Description:

(1) Section name (P, C, D, B, CSINIT, and CSVTBL) of each section
(2) Offset address relative to the beginning of each section
(3) Contents of the offset address of each section
(4) Assembly code corresponding to machine language
(5) Comments corresponding to the program
(6) Stack frame size in bytes
### 8.2.4 Statistics Information

Figure 8.4 shows an example of statistics information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Information</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>NUMBER OF ERRORS:</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NUMBER OF WARNINGS:</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NUMBER OF INFORMATIONS:</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>COMPILED SOURCE LINE:</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>PROGRAM SECTION(P):</td>
<td>0x000044 Byte(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CONSTANT SECTION(C):</td>
<td>0x000000 Byte(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DATA SECTION(D):</td>
<td>0x000000 Byte(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BSS SECTION(B):</td>
<td>0x000000 Byte(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TOTAL PROGRAM SECTION:</td>
<td>0x000044 Byte(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TOTAL CONSTANT SECTION:</td>
<td>0x000000 Byte(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TOTAL DATA SECTION:</td>
<td>0x000000 Byte(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TOTAL BSS SECTION:</td>
<td>0x000000 Byte(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TOTAL PROGRAM SIZE:</td>
<td>0x000044 Byte(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4)</td>
<td>NUMBER OF EXTERNAL REFERENCE SYMBOLS:</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NUMBER OF EXTERNAL DEFINITION SYMBOLS:</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NUMBER OF INTERNAL/EXTERNAL SYMBOLS:</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Description:

(1) Total number of messages by the level
(2) Number of compiled lines from the source file
(3) Size of each section and total size of sections
(4) Number of external reference symbols, number of external definition symbols, and total number of internal and external labels

Note:  NUMBER OF INFORMATIONs in messages by the level ((1) above) is not output when message option is not specified.  Section size information (3) and label information (4) are not output if the noobject option has been specified or if an error-level error or a fatal-level error has occurred.  In addition, section size information (3) is output (indicated as "1") or not output (indicated as "0") according to its specification when code=asmcode option is specified.

8.2.5 Command Line Specification

The file names and options specified on the command line when the compiler is invoked are displayed.  Figure 8.5 shows an example of command line specification information.

*** COMMAND PARAMETER ***

-listfile test.c

Figure 8.5 Command Line Specification
8.3 Assembly Listings

This section covers the contents and format of the assembly listing.

8.3.1 Structure of Assembly Listing

Table 8.4 shows the structure and contents of the assembly listing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Creating List</th>
<th>Contents</th>
<th>Option*</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source list information</td>
<td>Specifies the source program</td>
<td>source</td>
<td>Output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>information</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cross reference list</td>
<td>Specifies the source-program</td>
<td>cross_reference</td>
<td>Output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>information</td>
<td>symbol information</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section information list</td>
<td>Specifies the source-program section</td>
<td>section</td>
<td>Output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>information</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: All the options above are enabled when list option is specified.

8.3.2 Source List Information

The source list information is output. Figure 8.6 shows an example of the source list information.
<p>| | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>.HEADING</td>
<td>&quot;&quot;SAMPLE&quot;&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>POINT</td>
<td>.ASSIGNA 16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Parm1</td>
<td>.REG (R0)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Parm2</td>
<td>.REG (R1)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>WORK1</td>
<td>.REG (R2)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>WORK2</td>
<td>.REG (R3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>WORK3</td>
<td>.REG (R4)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>WORK4</td>
<td>.REG (R5)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>FIX_MUL:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>DIVOS Parm1,Parm2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>MOVT WORK1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>CMP/PZ Parm1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>BT MUL01</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>NEG Parm1,Parm1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 8.6  Source Program Listing
Description:

(1) Line numbers (in decimal)
(2) The value of the location counter (in hexadecimal)
(3) The object code (in hexadecimal). The size of the reserved area in bytes is listed for areas reserved with the .RES, .SRES, .SRESC, .SRESZ, and .FRES.
(4) Source line numbers (in decimal)
(5) Expansion type. Whether the statement is expanded by file inclusion, conditional assembly function, or macro function is listed.
   In: File inclusion (n indicates the nest level).
   C: Satisfied conditional assembly, performed iterated expansion, or satisfied conditional iterated expansion
   M: Macro expansion
(6) The source statements
(7) The header setup with the .HEADING assembler directive.
(8) The literal pool
(9) The total number of errors and warnings. Error messages are listed on the line following the source statement that caused the error.
### 8.3.3 Cross Reference Listing

The cross reference information is output. Figure 8.7 shows an example of the cross reference information listing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>SECTION</th>
<th>ATTR</th>
<th>VALUE</th>
<th>SEQUENCE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FIX_DIV</td>
<td>SAMPLE</td>
<td>00000088</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIX_MUL</td>
<td>SAMPLE</td>
<td>00000000</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUL01</td>
<td>SAMPLE</td>
<td>0000000A</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUL02</td>
<td>SAMPLE</td>
<td>00000010</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>28*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUL03</td>
<td>SAMPLE</td>
<td>00000082</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>89*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parm1</td>
<td>REG</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>28</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>32</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>59</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parm2</td>
<td>REG</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>28</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>38</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>48</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Figure 8.7 Cross Reference Listing**

**Description:**

1. The symbol name
2. The name of the section that includes the symbol (first eight characters)
3. The symbol attribute
   - EXPT: Export symbol
   - IMPT: Import symbol
   - SCT: Section name
   - REG: Symbol defined with the .REG assembler directive
   - FREG: Symbol defined with the .FREG assembler directive
   - ASGN: Symbol defined with the .ASSIGN assembler directive
   - EQU: Symbol defined with the .EQU assembler directive
   - MDEF: Symbol defined two or more times
   - UDEF: Undefined symbol
No symbol attribute (blank): A symbol other than those listed above

(4) The value of symbol (in hexadecimal)

(5) The list line numbers (in decimal) of the source statements where the symbol is defined or referenced. The line number marked with an asterisk is the line where the symbol is defined.

### 8.3.4 Section Information Listing

The section information is output. Figure 8.8 shows an example of the section information output.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SECTION</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE</th>
<th>SIZE</th>
<th>START</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SAMPLE</td>
<td>REL-CODE</td>
<td>000000190</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 8.8 Section Information Listing**

**Description:**

(1) The section name
(2) The section type
   - REL: Relative address section
   - ABS: Absolute address section
   - CODE: Code section
   - DATA: Data section
   - STACK: Stack section
   - DUMMY: Dummy section
(3) The section size (in hexadecimal, byte units)
(4) The start address of absolute address sections
8.4 Linkage List

This section covers the contents and format of the linkage list output by the optimizing linkage editor.

8.4.1 Structure of Linkage List

Table 8.5 shows the structure and contents of the linkage list.
### Table 8.5  Structure and Contents of Linkage List

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Output Information</th>
<th>Contents</th>
<th>When show Option* is Specified</th>
<th>When show Option is not Specified</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Option information</td>
<td>Option strings specified by a command line or subcommand</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Error information</td>
<td>Error messages</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Linkage map information</td>
<td>Section name, start/end addresses, size, and type</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Symbol information</td>
<td>Static definition symbol name, address, size, and type in the order of address</td>
<td>show = symbol</td>
<td>Not output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>When show=reference is specified: Symbol reference count and optimization information in addition to the above information</td>
<td>show =reference</td>
<td>Not output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Symbol deletion optimization information</td>
<td>Symbols deleted by optimization</td>
<td>show = symbol</td>
<td>Not output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Cross-reference information</td>
<td>Symbol reference information</td>
<td>show = xreference</td>
<td>Not output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Total section size</td>
<td>Total sizes of RAM, ROM, and program sections</td>
<td>show = total_size</td>
<td>Not output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Vector information</td>
<td>Vector numbers and address information</td>
<td>show = vector</td>
<td>Not output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>CRC information</td>
<td>CRC calculation result and output addresses</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Always output when the CRC option is specified</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: \* The show option is valid when the list option is specified.
8.4.2 Option Information

The option strings specified by a command line or a subcommand file are output. Figure 8.9 shows an example of option information output when `optlnk -sub=test.sub -list -show` is specified.

```
(test.sub contents)
INPUT test.obj

*** Options ***
-sub=test.sub
INPUT test.obj (2)
-list
-show
```

Figure 8.9 Example of Option Information Output (Linkage List)

(1) Outputs option strings specified by a command line or a subcommand in the specified order.
(2) Subcommand in the `test.sub` subcommand file

8.4.3 Error Information

Error messages are output. Figure 8.10 shows an example of error information output.

```
*** Error Information ***
** L2310 (E) Undefined external symbol "strcmp" referred to in "test.obj" ??? {1}
```

Figure 8.10 Example of Error Information Output (Linkage List)

(1) Outputs an error message.
8.4.4 Linkage Map Information

The start and end addresses, size, and type of each section are output in the order of address. Figure 8.11 shows an example of linkage map information output.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SECTION</th>
<th>START (2)</th>
<th>END (3)</th>
<th>SIZE (4)</th>
<th>ALIGN (5)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>00001000</td>
<td>00001000</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>00001004</td>
<td>00001007</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D_2</td>
<td>00001008</td>
<td>000014dd</td>
<td>4d6</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B_2</td>
<td>000014de</td>
<td>000050b3</td>
<td>3bd6</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 8.11 Example of Linkage Map Information Output (Linkage List)

(1) Section name
(2) Start address
(3) End address
(4) Section size
(5) Section boundary alignment value
8.4.5 Symbol Information

When `show=symbol` is specified, the addresses, sizes, and types of externally defined symbols or static internally defined symbols are output in the order of address. When `show=reference` is specified, the symbol reference counts and optimization information are also output. Figure 8.12 shows an example of symbol information output.

```
*** Symbol List ***
SECTION=(1)  FILE=(2)  START (3)  END (4)  SIZE (5)
 SYMBOL  ADDR (6)  SIZE (7)  INFO (8)  COUNTS (9)  OPT (10) (11)
SECTION=P
FILE=test.obj
  _main  00000000 00000428     428
  _malloc 00000000        2 func ,g      0
FILE=mvn3
  $MVN#3 000000428 00000490      68
  none 00000428 0 none ,g      0
```

Figure 8.12  Example of Symbol Information Output (Linkage List)

(1) Section name  
(2) File name  
(3) Start address of a section included in the file indicated by (2) above  
(4) End address of a section included in the file indicated by (2) above  
(5) Section size of a section included in the file indicated by (2) above  
(6) Symbol name  
(7) Symbol address  
(8) Symbol size  
(9) Symbol type as shown below

Data type:
- `func` Function name  
- `data` Variable name  
- `entry` Entry function name  
- `none` Undefined (label, assembler symbol)
8.4.6 Symbol Deletion Optimization Information

The size and type of symbols deleted by symbol deletion optimization (\texttt{optimize=symbol\_delete}) are output. Figure 8.13 shows an example of symbol deletion optimization information output.

```
*** Delete Symbols ***

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SYMBOL</th>
<th>SIZE</th>
<th>INFO</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>_Version</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>data, g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

Figure 8.13 Example of Symbol Deletion Optimization Information Output (Linkage List)

(1) Deleted symbol name
(2) Deleted symbol size
(3) Deleted symbol type as shown below

Data type: func Function name
data Variable name

Declaration type: g External definition
l Internal definition
8.4.7 Cross-Reference Information

The symbol reference information (cross-reference information) is output if show=xreference is specified. Figure 8.14 shows an example of cross-reference information output.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No</th>
<th>Unit Name</th>
<th>Global Symbol</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>External Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>(4)</td>
<td>(5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0001</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>_func</td>
<td>00000100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>_func1</td>
<td>00000116</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>_main</td>
<td>0000012c</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>_g</td>
<td>00000136</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SECTION=P</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>_a</td>
<td>00000190</td>
<td>0001(00000140:P)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0002(00000178:P)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0003(0000018c:P)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0002</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>_func01</td>
<td>00000154</td>
<td>0001(00000148:P)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>_func02</td>
<td>00000166</td>
<td>0001(00000150:P)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0003</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>_func03</td>
<td>00000184</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 8.14 Example of Cross-Reference Information Output (Linkage List)

1. Unit number, which is an identification number in object units
2. Object name, which specifies the input order at linkage
3. Symbol name output in ascending order of allocation addresses for every section
4. Symbol allocation address, which is a relative value from the beginning of the section when form=relocate is specified
5. Address of an external symbol that has been referenced

Output format: <Unit number> (<address or offset in section>:<section name>)
8.4.8 Total Section Size

The total sizes of ROM, RAM, and program sections are output. Figure 8.15 shows an example of total section size output.

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>RAMDATA SECTION :</th>
<th>00000660 Byte(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) Total size of RAM data sections</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ROMDATA SECTION :</td>
<td>00000174 Byte(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) Total size of ROM data sections</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PROGRAM SECTION :</td>
<td>00016d6 Byte(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3) Total size of program sections</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

Figure 8.15 Example of Total Section Size Output (Linkage List)

(1) Total size of RAM data sections
(2) Total size of ROM data sections
(3) Total size of program sections

8.4.9 Vector Information

The contents of the variable vector table are output if show=vector is specified. Figure 8.16 shows an example of vector information output.

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO.</th>
<th>SYMBOL/ADDRESS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>$fdummy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>$fa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>$fdummy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>$fa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>00ff8800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>$fdummy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<Omitted>
```

Figure 8.16 Example of Vector Output (Linkage List)

(1) Vector number
(2) Symbol. When no symbol is defined for the vector number, the address is output.
8.4.10 CRC Information

The CRC calculation result and output address are output when the CRC option is specified.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>*** CRC Code ***</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CODE : cb0b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADDRESS : 00007ffe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 8.17 Example of CRC Information Output (Linkage List)

(1) CRC calculation result
(2) Address where the CRC calculation result is output
8.5 Library Listings

This section covers the contents and format of the library listing output by the optimizing linkage editor.

8.5.1 Structure of Library Listing

Table 8.6 shows the structure and contents of the library listing.

Table 8.6 Structure and Contents of Library Listing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Creating List</th>
<th>Contents</th>
<th>Suboption*</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Option information</td>
<td>Displays option strings specified by a command line or subcommand</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error information</td>
<td>Displays error messages</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library information</td>
<td>Displays library information</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information of module, section, and symbol within library</td>
<td>Displays module within the library</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Output</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When `show=symbol` is specified, displays a list of symbol names in a module within the library

When `show=section` is specified, displays lists of section names and symbol names in a module within the library

Note: The suboptions above are enabled only when `list` option is specified.
8.5.2 Option Information

Option information displays option strings specified by a command line or a subcommand file. Option information is output as shown in figure 8.17 when `optlnk -sub = test.sub -list -show` is specified.

```plaintext
(test.sub contents)
form   library
in     adhry.obj
output test.lib
```

```plaintext
*** Options ***
-sub = test.sub
form   library
in     adhry.obj
output test.lib
-list
-show
```

Figure 8.17 Option Information Output Example (Library Listing)

Description:

(1) Outputs option strings specified by a command line or a subcommand in the specified order.
(2) Subcommand in the test.sub subcommand file
8.5.3 Error Information

Error information outputs an error message as shown in figure 8.18.

*** Error information ***
** L1200 (W) Backed up file "main.lib" into "main.lbk"   (1)

Figure 8.18 Error Information Output Example (Library Listing)

Description:
(1) Outputs an error message.

8.5.4 Library Information

Library information outputs library type in the format shown in figure 8.19.

*** Library Information ***
LIBRARY NAME = test.lib   (1)
CPU = SuperH   (2)
ENDIAN = Big   (3)
ATTRIBUTE = system   (4)
NUMBER OF MODULE = 1   (5)

Figure 8.19 Library Information Output Example (Library Listing)

Description:
(1) Library name
(2) CPU name
(3) Endian type
(4) Library file attribute either system library or user library
(5) Number of modules within the library
8.5.5 Module, Section, and Symbol Information within Library

This information lists modules within the library.

When `show=symbol` is specified, symbol names in a module within the library are listed. When `show=section` is specified, section names and symbol names in a module within the library are listed.

Figure 8.20 shows an output example of module, section, and symbol information within a library.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MODULE</th>
<th>LAST UPDATE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adhry</td>
<td>29-Feb-2000 12:34:56</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 8.20 Module, Section, and Symbol Information Output Example (Library Listing)**

**Description:**

(1) Module name
(2) Module definition date
   If the module is updated, the latest module update date is displayed.
(3) Section name within a module
(4) Symbol within a section
9.1 Program Structure

9.1.1 Sections

Each of the regions for execution instructions and data of the object programs output by the compiler or assembler comprises a section. A section is the smallest unit for data placement in memory. Sections have the following properties.

- **Section attributes**
  - code: Stores execution instructions
  - data: Stores data
  - stack: Stack area

- **Format type**
  - Relative-address format: A section that can be relocated by the optimizing linkage editor.
  - Absolute-address format: A section of which the address has been determined; it cannot be relocated by the optimizing linkage editor.

- **Initial values**
  - Specifies whether there are initial values at the start of program execution. Data which has initial values and data which does not have initial values cannot be included in the same section. If there is even one initial value, the area without initial values is initialized to zero.

- **Write operations**
  - Specifies whether write operations are or are not possible during program execution.

- **Boundary alignment**
  - Corrections to addresses assigned to sections. The optimizing linkage editor corrects addresses so that they are multiples of the boundary alignment.
### 9.1.2 C/C++ Program Sections

The correspondence between memory areas and sections for C/C++ programs and the standard library is described in table 9.1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Format</th>
<th>Write Operations</th>
<th>Alignment</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Program area</td>
<td>P*1</td>
<td>code</td>
<td>Relative</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Stores machine code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constant area</td>
<td>C<em>1</em>5</td>
<td>data</td>
<td>Relative</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Stores const-type data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initialized data area</td>
<td>D<em>1</em>5</td>
<td>data</td>
<td>Relative</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Stores data with initial values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initialized data area</td>
<td>D<em>1</em>5</td>
<td>data</td>
<td>Relative</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Stores data with initial values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uninitialized data area</td>
<td>B<em>1</em>5</td>
<td>data</td>
<td>Relative</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Stores data without initial values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X memory constant</td>
<td>$XC</td>
<td>data</td>
<td>Relative</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Stores const-type data in X memory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y memory constant</td>
<td>$YC</td>
<td>data</td>
<td>Relative</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Stores const-type data in Y memory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X memory initialized data</td>
<td>$XD</td>
<td>data</td>
<td>Relative</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Stores data with initial values in X memory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y memory initialized data</td>
<td>$YD</td>
<td>data</td>
<td>Relative</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Stores data with initial values in Y memory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X memory uninitialized data</td>
<td>$XB</td>
<td>data</td>
<td>Relative</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Stores data without initial values in X memory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Initial Values</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y memory uninitialized data area</td>
<td>$YB data</td>
<td>Relative No 4</td>
<td>Stores data without initial values in Y memory</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GBR section $G0$</td>
<td>Relative Yes 4</td>
<td>Stores data with initial values specified by #pragma gbr_base. If data does not have initial values, 0 is stored.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GBR section $G1$</td>
<td>Relative Yes 4</td>
<td>Stores data with initial values specified by #pragma gbr_base1. If data does not have initial values, 0 is stored.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C++ initial processing/postprocessing data area</td>
<td>C$INIT data</td>
<td>Relative Yes 4</td>
<td>Stores addresses of constructors and destructors called for global class objects</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C++ virtual function table area</td>
<td>C$VTBL data</td>
<td>Relative Yes 4</td>
<td>Stores data for calling the virtual function when a virtual function exists in the class declaration</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stack area S</td>
<td>Relative No 4</td>
<td>Area necessary for program execution (see section 9.2.1 (2), Dynamic Memory Allocation)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heap area</td>
<td>Relative Yes 4</td>
<td>Area used by library functions malloc, realloc, calloc, and new (see section 9.2.1 (2), Dynamic Memory Allocation)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 9.1 Summary of Memory Area Types and Their Properties (cont)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Format</th>
<th>Initial Values</th>
<th>Alignment</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Attribute</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Write Operations</td>
<td>bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TBR table area</td>
<td>$TBR</td>
<td>data</td>
<td>Relative</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absolute address</td>
<td>$ADDRESS</td>
<td>data</td>
<td>Absolute</td>
<td>Yes/No*4</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>variable area</td>
<td>$&lt;section&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$&lt;address&gt;*3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
1. Section names can be switched in the `section` option or extension `#pragma section`.
2. Becomes 16 bytes when the `align16` option is specified, or 32 bytes when the `align32` option is specified.
3. `<section>` is a C, D, or B section name, and `<address>` is an absolute address.
4. The initial value and write operation depend on the attribute of the `<section>`.
5. The stuff option divides sections up so that alignment is on one-, two-, or four-byte boundaries. Refer to the description of the stuff option in section 2.2.2, Object Options for details on the individual sections.
6. The stuff_gbr option divides sections up so that alignment is on one-, two-, or four-byte boundaries. Refer to the description of the stuff_gbr option in section 2.2.2, Object Options for details on the individual sections.
Example 1: A program example is used to demonstrate the correspondence between a C program and the compiler-generated sections.

```
int a=1;
char b;
const int c=0;
void main(){
...
}
```

C program

```
Program area (main() {...})
```

Section name

```
D

Initialized data area (a)
```

```
B

Uninitialized data area (b)
```

Example 2: A program example is used to demonstrate the correspondence between a C++ program and the compiler-generated sections.

```
class A{
  int m;
  A(int p);
  ~A();
};
A a(1);
int b;
extern const char c='a';
int d=1;
void f(){...
```

C++ program

```
Program area (f() {...})
```

```
C

Constant area (c)
```

```
D

Initialized data area (d)
```

```
B

Uninitialized data areas (a, b)
```

```
C$INIT

Initial processing/postprocessing data areas (&A::A, &A::~A)
```

Areas generated by the compiler and stored data
9.1.3 Assembly Program Sections

In assembly programs, .SECTION is used to begin sections and declare attributes and format types. The format for declaration of .SECTION is given below. For details, refer to section 11.4, Assembler Directives.

```assembly
.SECION <section name>[, <section attribute>[, <format type>]]
```

- `<format type>`: In the case of a relative address section, ALIGN=<boundary alignment>
- In the case of an absolute address section, LOCATE=<address value>`
Example: An example of an assembly program section declaration appears below.

```assembly
.CPU       SH2
.OUTPUT    DBG
SIZE:      .EQU     8

.SECTION   A, CODE, ALIGN=4 ; (1)
START:
  MOV.L    LITERAL,R0
  MOV.L    LITERAL+4,R1
  MOV.L    #$SIZE,R2
LOOP:
  CMP/PL   R2
  BF       EXIT
  MOV.B    @R0+,R3
  MOV.B    R3, @R1
  ADD       #1, R1
  ADD       #1, R1
  BRA       LOOP
  NOP
EXIT:
  SLEEP
  NOP
LITERAL:
  .DATA.L   CONST
  .DATA.L   DATA
;
  .SECTION   B, DATA, LOCATE=$00002000 ; (2)
CONST:
  .DATA.B   H'01, H'02, H'03, H'04, H'05, H'06, H'07, H'08
;
  .SECTION   C, STACK, ALIGN=4 ; (3)
DATA:
  .RES.B    8
.END
```
(1) Declares a code section with section name A, boundary alignment 4, and relative address format.

(2) Declares a data section with section name B, allocated address H'2000, and absolute address format.

(3) Declares a stack section with section name C, boundary alignment 4, and relative address format.

9.1.4 Linking Sections

The optimizing linkage editor links the same sections within input object programs, and allocates addresses specified by the `start` option.

(1) The same section names in different files are allocated continuously in the order of file input.
(2) Sections with the same name but different boundary alignments are linked after alignment. Section alignment uses the larger of the section alignments.

"file1.obj"                        "file2.obj"

Section A                        Section A
(align=2, size=0x6D)              (align=4, size=0x100)

Options specified at linkage

input file1.obj file2.obj
start A/1000

0x1000  file1. section A

Alignment = 4  Size = 0x170

0x1070  file2. section A

(3) When sections with the same name include both absolute-address and relative-address formats, relative-address objects are linked following absolute-address objects. Even when relocatable file output is specified (form=relocate), the section in question becomes an absolute-address section.

"file1.obj"                        "file2.obj"

Section A                        Section A
(align=4, size=0x100)             (locate=0x1000, size=0x6D)

Options specified at linkage

input file1.obj file2.obj

0x1000  file2. section A

Absolute-address section  Size = 0x170

0x1070  file1. section A
(4) Rules for the order of linking objects within the same section name are as follows.

a. Order specified by the **input** option or input files on the command line

b. Order specified for the user library by the **library** option and order of input of modules within the library

c. Order specified for the system library by the **library** option and order of input of modules within the library

d. Order specified for libraries by environment variables (HLNK_LIBRARY1 to HLNK_LIBRARY3) and order of input of modules within the library

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section A</th>
<th>Module 1 (Section A)</th>
<th>Module 2 (Section A)</th>
<th>Module 5 (Section A)</th>
<th>Module 6 (Section A)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;file1.obj&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;file2.obj&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section A</th>
<th>Module 3 (Section A)</th>
<th>Module 4 (Section A)</th>
<th>Module 7 (Section A)</th>
<th>Module 8 (Section A)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;usr1.lib&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;usr2.lib&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment variables</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HLNK_LIBRARY1=syslib2.lib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HLNK_LIBRARY2=usr2.lib</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Options specified at linkage**

```
input  file1.obj  file2.obj
library  syslib1.lib  usr1.lib
Start   A/1000
```

**Environment variables**

```
0x1000
```

```
file1. section A
file2. section A
Module1. section A
Module2. section A
Module5. section A
Module6. section A
Module7. section A
Module8. section A
Module3. section A
Module4. section A
```
9.2 Creation of Initial Setting Programs

Here methods of installing embedded programs for systems employing the SuperH RISC engine microcomputers are explained.

To install an embedded program in a system, the following preparations are necessary.

- Memory allocation
  Each section, the stack area, and the heap area must be allocated to system ROM and RAM.

- Settings for the program execution environment
  Processing to set the program execution environment includes register initialization, memory initialization, and program startup.

In addition, when using I/O and other C/C++ library functions, the library must be initialized during preparation of the execution environment. In particular, when using I/O (stdio.h, ios, streambuf, istream, ostream) and memory allocation (stdlib.h, new), low-level I/O routines and memory allocation routines must be prepared.

When using C library functions for program termination (exit, atexit, abort functions), these functions must be prepared separately according to the user system.

In section 9.2.1, the method used to determine addresses for program memory is explained, and actual examples are used to describe the method for specifying options in the optimizing linkage editor for determining addresses.

In section 9.2.2, execution environment settings are explained, and an actual example of a program to set the execution environment is described.

Library function initialization processing, preparation of low-level interface routines, and examples of preparation of functions for termination processing are also explained.
9.2.1 Memory Allocation

To install an object program generated by the compiler on a system, determine the size of each memory area, and allocate the areas appropriately to the memory addresses.

Some memory areas, such as the area used to store machine code and the area used to store data declared using external definitions or static data members, are allocated statically. Other memory areas, such as the stack area, are allocated dynamically.

This section describes how to allocate each area in memory.

(1) Static Memory Allocation
   (a) Contents of static memory
       Sections other than the stack area and heap area are allocated statically.
       Each of the sections in a C/C++ program (program area, constant area, initialized data area,
       uninitialized data area, C++ initial processing/postprocessing data area, and C++ virtual
       function table area) is allocated statically.
   (b) Calculation of size
       The size of static memory is the sum of the sizes of the object programs generated by the
       compiler and assembler and the sizes of the library functions used by the C/C++ program.
       After linking object programs, the sizes of each section, including libraries, are output to
       the linkage map information within the linkage listing, and so the size of static memory can
       be determined.
       Figure 9.1 shows an example of linkage map information within the linkage listing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SECTION</th>
<th>START</th>
<th>END</th>
<th>SIZE</th>
<th>ALIGN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>00000000</td>
<td>000004d6</td>
<td>4d6</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>000004d6</td>
<td>00000533</td>
<td>5d</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>00000534</td>
<td>0000053c</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>0000053c</td>
<td>00004112</td>
<td>3bd6</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 9.1 Example of Linkage Map Information within the Linkage Listing**

Section sizes of compilation units and assembly units are output to the compile list
statistics information and assembly list section information. An example of compile list
statistics information is shown in figure 9.2, and an example of assembly list section
information is shown in figure 9.3.
******* SECTION SIZE INFORMATION ********
PROGRAM SECTION (P) : 0x00004A Byte(s)
CONSTANT SECTION (C) : 0x000018 Byte(s)
DATA SECTION (D) : 0x000004 Byte(s)
BSS SECTION (B) : 0x000004 Byte(s)

TOTAL PROGRAM SECTION : 0000040A Byte(s)
TOTAL CONSTANT SECTION : 00000018 Byte(s)
TOTAL DATA SECTION : 00000004 Byte(s)
TOTAL BSS SECTION : 00000004 Byte(s)

TOTAL PROGRAM SIZE: 0x00006A Byte(s)

---

Figure 9.2  Example of Compile List Statistics Information

*** SECTION DATA LIST

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SECTION</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE</th>
<th>SIZE</th>
<th>START</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>REL-CODE</td>
<td>000000604</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>REL-DATA</td>
<td>000000008</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>REL-DATA</td>
<td>00000005D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>REL-DATA</td>
<td>000003BD6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Figure 9.3  Example of Assembly List Section Information

When not using a standard library, the total of section sizes for files is the size of the static area.

If a standard library is used, add the memory area used by the library functions to the memory area size of each section. Among the standard libraries provided by the compiler are, in addition to C library functions stipulated by the C language specifications and C++ class libraries for embedding, routines to perform arithmetic calculations (runtime routines) used for program execution. Accordingly, the standard library may be necessary even if library functions are not used in the C/C++ source program.

The runtime routines used by the C/C++ programs are output as external reference symbols in the assembly programs generated by the compiler (code=asmcode). The user can see the runtime routine names used in the C/C++ programs through the external reference symbols. Specific examples are presented below.
• C/C++ program

```c
f( int a, int b )
{
    a /= b;
    return a;
}
```

• Assembly program output by the C compiler

```asm
.IMPORT _ _divls ;(External reference declaration of runtime routine)
.EXPORT _f
.SECTION P, CODE, ALIGN=4
_f: ;function: f
    ;frame size=4
    STS.L PR, @-R15
    MOV R5, R0
    MOV.L L218, R3  ; _ _divls
    JSR @R3
    MOV R4, R1
    LDS.L @R15+, PR
    RTS
    NOP
L218:
.DATA.L _ _divls
.END
```

(c) ROM, RAM allocation
When preparing a program for systems with ROM, whether sections are allocated to RAM or to ROM is determined by whether there are initial values and whether write operations are enabled.

When preparing the sections of a C/C++ program for systems with ROM, sections are allocated to ROM or to RAM as follows.

- Program area (section P) ROM
- Constant areas (sections C, SG0, SG1*) ROM
- Uninitialized data areas (sections B, SG0, SG1*) RAM
- Initialized data areas (sections D, SG0, SG1*) ROM, RAM (see (d) below)
- Initial processing/postprocessing data area*1(section CSINIT) ROM
- Virtual function table area*2 (section CSVTBL) ROM
Notes:
1. Generated by the compiler when a C++ program has a global class object.
2. Generated by the compiler when a C++ program has a virtual function declaration.
3. $G0$ and $G1$ can be assigned to only one of the above areas.

(d) Allocation of initialized data areas

Sections which have initial values and can be altered on program execution, such as initialized data areas, are placed in ROM at linkage and copied to RAM at the start of program execution. Hence the `rom` option of the optimizing linkage editor must be used to reserve the same memory area both in ROM and in RAM. For an example of this, refer to "(e) Example of memory allocation and address specification at linkage" below. Initial settings for sections to be copied from ROM to RAM are explained in section 9.2.2 (2), Initialization (PowerON_Reset).

(e) Example of memory allocation and address specification at linkage

When creating an absolute load module, addresses of allocated areas are specified for each section using an optimizing linkage editor option or a subcommand. Below, examples of static memory allocation and address specification at linkage are explained.

Figure 9.4 shows an example of allocation of static memory areas.

![Figure 9.4 Example of Static Memory Allocation]

P, C, D, B: Default section names generated by the compiler.
R: Section name specified by ROM support function of the optimizing linkage editor.
When allocating memory as shown in figure 9.4, the following subcommands are specified at linkage.

ROM\(\Delta D=R\) \(\ldots[1]\)
STARTAP, C, D/400, R, B/20000 \(\ldots[2]\)

Explanation [1] Space for section R, of a size equal to section D, is allocated in the output load module. When symbols allocated to section D are referenced, relocation is performed as if the addresses are in section R. Section D and section R are the names of initialized data sections written to ROM and to RAM, respectively.

Explanation [2] Sections P, C, and D are allocated to continuous areas of memory in internal ROM starting from address 0x400. Sections R and B are allocated to continuous memory areas starting from RAM address 0x20000.

(2) Dynamic Memory Allocation
(a) Contents of dynamic memory
The following two types of dynamic memory areas are used in C/C++ programs:
- Stack area
- Heap area (for memory allocation of library functions)

(b) Calculation of stack area size
The maximum stack area size used by C/C++ programs and standard libraries can be calculated by specifying the `stack` option of the optimizing linkage editor to output a stack information file, and using the callwalker. For details of use of the callwalker, see section 6, Operating CallWalker.

The stack area used by an assembly program (assembled by the assembler of V6 or earlier) cannot be calculated by the callwalker. Instead, the stack usage of an assembly program should be computed by the method outlined below for calculating the stack usage of a C/C++ program, and the result should be added to the stack usage calculated by the callwalker.

- Stack Usage Calculation of the C/C++ Program
The stack area used in C/C++ programs is allocated each time a function is called and is deallocated each time a function is returned. The total stack area size is calculated based on the stack size used by each function and the nesting of function calls.
- Stack Area Used by Each Function
The object list (frame size) output by the compiler determines the stack size used by each function. The following example shows the object list, stack allocation, and stack size calculation method.
Example:
The following shows the object list and stack size calculation in a C program. The same calculation method is also applicable to C++ programs.

```c
extern int h(char, int *, double);
int h(char a, register int *b, double c)
{
    char *d;
    d= &a;
    h(*d,b,c);
}
```

************ OBJECT LISTING ************
FILE NAME: m0251.c
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCT</th>
<th>OFFSET</th>
<th>CODE</th>
<th>C LABEL</th>
<th>INSTRUCTION</th>
<th>OPERAND</th>
<th>COMMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>00000000</td>
<td>_h:</td>
<td>2FE6</td>
<td>MOV.L</td>
<td>R14,0-R15</td>
<td>;function: h ;frame size=20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>00000000</td>
<td>4F22</td>
<td>STS.L</td>
<td>PR,0-R15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```
The size of the stack area used by a function is equal to the frame size. Therefore, in the above example, the stack size used by function h is 20 bytes which is shown as frame size=20 in COMMENT of the object listing.

For details on the parameter allocated to the parameter area on the stack, refer to section 9.3.2 (4), Setting and Referencing Parameters and Return Values.

- Stack size calculation
  The following example shows a stack size calculation depending on the function call nesting.
  Example:
  Figure 9.5 shows the function call nestings and stack size for each function.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function Name</th>
<th>Stack Size (Bytes)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>main</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 9.5  Nested Function Calls and Stack Size
If function g is called via function f, the stack area size is calculated according to the formula listed in table 9.2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Call Route</th>
<th>Sum of Stack Size (Bytes)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>main(24) (\rightarrow) f(32) (\rightarrow) g(24)</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>main(24) (\rightarrow) g(24)</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As can be seen from table 9.2, the maximum size of stack area required for the longest function calling route should be determined (80 bytes in this example) and at least this size of memory should be allocated.

Note: If recursive calls are used in the C/C++ source program, first determine the stack area required for a recursive call, and then multiply the size with the maximum level of recursive calls.

(c) Heap Area

The total heap area required is equal to the sum of the areas to be allocated by memory management library functions (calloc, malloc, realloc, or new) in the C/C++ program. Four bytes must be added for one call because a 4-byte management area is used every time a memory management library function allocates an area.

The compiler controls heap area in units of the user-specified memory size (_sbrk_size). For the _sbrk_size specification, refer to section 9.2.2 (4), C/C++ library function initial settings (_INITLIB). The area size allocated for the heap area (HEAPSIZE) is calculated by the following formula:

\[
\text{HEAPSIZE} = \text{_sbrk_size} \times n \ (n \geq 1)
\]

(Area size allocated by the memory management library) + control area size \(\leq\) HEAPSIZE

An I/O library function uses memory management library functions for internal processing. The size of the area allocated in an I/O is determined by the following formula:

516 bytes \(\times\) (maximum number of simultaneously opened files)

Note: Areas released by the free or delete function, which is a memory management library function, can be reused. However, since these areas are often fragmented (separated from one another), a request to allocate a new area may be rejected even if the net size of the free areas is sufficient. To prevent this, take note of the following:

1. If possible, allocate the largest area first after program execution is started.
2. If possible, make the data area size to be reused constant.
• Rules for Allocating Dynamic Area
  The dynamic area is allocated to RAM.
  The stack area is determined by specifying the highest address of the stack to the vector table, and refer to it as SP (stack pointer). Since the interrupt operation of the SH-3, SH3-DSP, SH-4, SH-4A, and SH4AL-DSP differs from that of the SH-1, SH-2, SH-2E, SH-2A, SH2A-FPU, and SH2-DSP, interrupt handlers are necessary.
  The heap area is determined by the initial settings of the low-level interface routine (sbrk).
  For details on stack and heap areas, refer to section 9.2.2 (1), Vector table setting (VEC_TBL), and section 9.2.2 (6), Low-level interface routines, respectively.

9.2.2 Execution Environment Settings

Here, processing to prepare the environment for program execution is described. However, the environment for program execution will differ among user systems, and so a program to set the execution environment must be created according to the specifications of the user system.

Figure 9.6 shows an example of the structure of such a program.
Figure 9.6 Example of Program Structure

The components are explained below.

- **Vector Table Setting (VEC_TBL)**
  Sets the vector table to initiate the register initialization program (PowerON_Reset) and set the stack pointer (SP) at power-on reset. Since the interrupt operation of the SH-3, SH3-DSP, SH-4, SH-4A, and SH4AL-DSP differs from that of the SH-1, SH-2, SH-2E, SH-2A, SH2A-FPU, and SH2-DSP, interrupt handlers are necessary.

- **Initialization (PowerON_Reset)**
  Initializes registers and sequentially calls the initialization routines.

- **Section Initialization Tables (DTBL, BTBL)**
  Uses the section address operator to set the starting and ending addresses for the section used in the section initialization routine.

- **Initializing Sections (_INITSCT)*1**
  Initializes to zero any static variable area (uninitialized data area) for which no initial values are set. Also copies initial values of initialized data areas from ROM to RAM.
Global Class Object Initial Processing (_CALL_INIT)*1*2
Calls a constructor of a class object that is declared as global.

Global Class Object Postprocessing (_CALL_END)*1*2
Calls a destructor of a global class object after the main function is executed.

Initializing C/C++ Library Functions (_INITLIB)
Initializes library functions required to be initialized; especially, prepares standard I/O functions.

Closing Files (_CLOSEALL)
Closes all open files.

Low-Level Interface Routines
Routines providing an interface between the user system and library functions which are necessary when standard I/O (stdio.h, ios, streambuf, istream, and ostream) and memory management libraries (stdlib.h and new) are used.

Termination Processing Routine (exit, atexit, and abort)*3
Processing for terminating the program.

Notes: 1. Provided as a standard library.
2. Required when there is a declaration of a global class object in a C++ program.
3. When using the C library function exit, atexit, or abort to terminate a program, these functions must be created as appropriate to the user system.
   When using the C++ program or C library macro assert, the abort function must always be created.

Implementation of the above routines is described below.

(1) Vector table setting (VEC_TBL)
To call register initialization function PowerON_Reset at power-on reset, specify the starting address of function PowerON_Reset at address 0 in the vector table. Also to specify the SP, specify the highest address of the stack to address H'4. Since the interrupt operation of the SH-3, SH3-DSP, SH-4, SH-4A, and SH4AL-DSP differs from that of the SH-1, SH-2, SH-2E, SH-2A, SH2A-FPU, and SH2-DSP, interrupt handlers are necessary. When the user system implements interrupt handling, interrupt vector settings are also performed by this routine. The coding example of VEC_TBL is shown below.
Example 1  Vector Table for SH-1, SH-2, SH-2E, SH-2A, SH2A-FPU, and SH2-DSP:

```c
#pragma interrupt (IRQ0)
extern void Manual_Reset_PC(void);
extern void Manual_Reset_SP(void);

extern void IRQ0(void);

#pragma section VECTTBL /* Outputs the RESET_Vectors to the CVECTTBL section */
/* by #pragma section declaration */
/* Allocates the CVECTTBL section to address 0x0 */
/* by the start option at linkage */
void (*const RESET_Vectors[])(void)= {
    (void*) PowerON_Reset_PC,
    _secend("S"),
    (void*) Manual_Reset_PC,
};

#pragma section VECT2 /* Outputs the vec_table2 to the CVECT2 section */
/* by #pragma section declaration */
/* Allocates the CVECT2 section to the specified */
/* address by the starting address at linkage */
void (*const vec_table2[])(void)={IRQ0};
```

Example 2  Interrupt Handler when Bank 0 is Used in the Program (SH7708):

```assembly
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                         env.inc                                    ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
EXPEVT:
    .EQU H'FFFFFFD4
INTEVT:
    .EQU H'FFFFFFD8

;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                        vect.inc                                    ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
SR_Init:
    .EQU B'00000000000000000000000011110000

;<<VECTOR DATA START (POWER ON RESET)>>
;H'000 Power On Reset
.GLOBAL PowerON_Reset
;<<VECTOR DATA END (POWER ON RESET)>>
;<<VECTOR DATA START (MANUAL RESET)>>
;H'020 Manual Reset
.GLOBAL Manual_Reset
;<<VECTOR DATA END (MANUAL RESET)>>
;H'040 TLB miss/invalid (load)
.GLOBAL INT_TLBMiss_Load
;H'060 TLB miss/invalid (store)
```
.GLOBAL INT_TLBMiss_Store
;H'080 Initial page write
 .GLOBAL INT_TLBInitial_Page
;H'0A0 TLB protect (load)
 .GLOBAL INT_TLBProtect_Load
;H'0C0 TLB protect (store)
 .GLOBAL INT_TLBProtect_Store
;H'0E0 Address error (load)
 .GLOBAL INT_Address_load
;H'100 Address error (store)
 .GLOBAL INT_Address_store
;H'120 Reserved
 .GLOBAL INT_Reserved1
;H'140 Reserved
 .GLOBAL INT_Reserved2
;H'160 TRAPA
 .GLOBAL INT_TRAPA
;H'180 Illegal code
 .GLOBAL INT_Illegal_code
;H'1A0 Illegal slot
 .GLOBAL INT_Illegal_slot
;H'1C0 NMI
 .GLOBAL INT_NMI
;H'1E0 User breakpoint trap
 .GLOBAL INT_User_Break
;H'200 External hardware interrupt
 .GLOBAL INT_Extern_0000
;H'220 External hardware interrupt
 .GLOBAL INT_Extern_0001
;H'240 External hardware interrupt
 .GLOBAL INT_Extern_0010
;H'260 External hardware interrupt
 .GLOBAL INT_Extern_0011
;H'280 External hardware interrupt
 .GLOBAL INT_Extern_0100
;H'2A0 External hardware interrupt
 .GLOBAL INT_Extern_0101
;H'2C0 External hardware interrupt
 .GLOBAL INT_Extern_0110
;H'2E0 External hardware interrupt
 .GLOBAL INT_Extern_0111
;H'300 External hardware interrupt
 .GLOBAL INT_Extern_1000
;H'320 External hardware interrupt
 .GLOBAL INT_Extern_1001
;H'340 External hardware interrupt
 .GLOBAL INT_Extern_1010
;H'360 External hardware interrupt
 .GLOBAL INT_Extern_1011
;H'380 External hardware interrupt
 .GLOBAL INT_Extern_1100
;H'3A0 External hardware interrupt
.GLOBAL _INT_Extern_1101
;H'3C0 External hardware interrupt
.GLOBAL _INT_Extern_1110
;H'3E0 External hardware interrupt
.GLOBAL _INT_Extern_1111
;H'400 TMU0 TUNI0
.GLOBAL _INT_Timer_Under_0
;H'420 TMU1 TUNI1
.GLOBAL _INT_Timer_Under_1
;H'440 TMU2 TUNI2
.GLOBAL _INT_Timer_Under_2
;H'460 TMU2 TICPI2
.GLOBAL _INT_Input_Capture
;H'480 RTC ATI
.GLOBAL _INT_RTC_ATI
;H'4A0 RTC PRI
.GLOBAL _INT_RTC_PRI
;H'4C0 RTC CUI
.GLOBAL _INT_RTC_CUI
;H'4E0 SCI ERI
.GLOBAL _INT_SCI_ERI
;H'500 SCI RXI
.GLOBAL _INT_SCI_RXI
;H'520 SCI TXI
.GLOBAL _INT_SCI_TXI
;H'540 SCI TEI
.GLOBAL _INT_SCI_TEI
;H'560 WDT ITI
.GLOBAL _INT_WDT
;H'580 REF RCMI
.GLOBAL _INT_REF_RCMI
;H'5A0 REF ROVI
.GLOBAL _INT_REF_ROVI

;--------------------------------------------------------------------------
; \ vhandler.src                                 ;
;--------------------------------------------------------------------------

.IMASKclr:
.EQU H'FFFFFFF0F

.RBBLclr:
.EQU H'CFFFFFFF

.MD RBBLset:
.EQU H'70000000

.IMPORT RESET_Vectors
.IMPORT INT_Vectors
.IMPORT INT_MASK
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                   macro definition                               
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
.MACRO PUSH_EXP_BASE_REG
STC.L SSR,=R15 ; save SSR
STC.L SPC,=R15 ; save SPC
STS.L PR,=R15 ; save CONTEXT REGISTERS
STC.L R7_BANK,=R15
STC.L R6_BANK,=R15
STC.L R5_BANK,=R15
STC.L R4_BANK,=R15
STC.L R3_BANK,=R15
STC.L R2_BANK,=R15
STC.L R1_BANK,=R15
STC.L R0_BANK,=R15
.ENDM

;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                   macro definition                               
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
.MACRO POP_EXP_BASE_REG
LDC.L @R15+,R0_BANK ; RECOVER REGISTERS
LDC.L @R15+,R1_BANK
LDC.L @R15+,R2_BANK
LDC.L @R15+,R3_BANK
LDC.L @R15+,R4_BANK
LDC.L @R15+,R5_BANK
LDC.L @R15+,R6_BANK
LDC.L @R15+,R7_BANK
LDS.L @R15+,PR
LDC.L @R15+,SPC
LDC.L @R15+,SSR
.ENDM

;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                         reset                                    
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
.SECTION    RSTHandler,CODE
_ResetHandler:
  MOV.L #EXPEVT,R0
  MOV.L @R0,R0
  SHLR2 R0
  SHLR R0
  MOV.L #_RESET_Vectors,r1
  ADD R1,R0
  MOV.L @R0,R0
  JMP @R0
  NOP

;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                   exceptional interrupt                         
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
.SECTION INTHandler,CODE
.EXPORT INTHandlerPRG
INTHandlerPRG:
_ExpHandler:
PUSH_EXP_BASE_REG
;
    MOV.L #EXPEVT,R0 ; set event address
    MOV.L #R0,R1     ; set exception code
    MOV.L #_INT_Vectors,R0 ; set vector table address
    ADD  #-(H'40),R1  ; exception code - H'40
    SHLR2 R1
    SHLR R1
    MOV.L @(R0,R1),R3 ; set interrupt function addr
;
    MOV.L #_INT_MASK,R0 ; interrupt mask table addr
    SHLR2 R1
    MOV.B @(R0,R1),R1 ; interrupt mask
    EXTU.B R1,R1
;
    STC SR,R0          ; save SR
    MOV.L #(RBBLclr&IMASKclr),R2 ; RB,BL,mask clear data
    AND R2,R0          ; clear mask data
    OR  R1,R0          ; set interrupt mask
    LDC R0,SSR         ; set current status
;
    LDC.L R3,SPC
    MOV.L #__int_term,R0 ; set interrupt terminate
    LDS  R0,PR
    RTE               ; return
    NOP

POOL
;

;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                    Interrupt terminate                              
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
.ALIGN 4
__int_term:
    MOV.L #MDRBBLset,R0 ; set MD,BL,RB
    LDC.L R0,SR
;
        POP_EXP_BASE_REG
;
    RTE          ; return
    NOP
;
POOL
;
.ORG H'300
_TLBMissHandler:
    PUSH_EXP_BASE_REG
    MOV.L #EXPEVT,R0 ; set event address
    MOV.L @R0,R1 ; set exception code
    MOV.L #_INT_Vectors,R0 ; set vector table address
    ADD #-(H'40),R1 ; exception code - H'40
    SHLR R1
    SHLR R1
    MOV.L @(R0,R1),R3 ; set interrupt function addr
    ;
    MOV.L #_INT_MASK,R0 ; interrupt mask table addr
    SHLR2 R1
    MOV.B @(R0,R1),R1 ; interrupt mask
    EXTU.B R1,R1
    ;
    STC SR,R0 ; save SR
    MOV.L #(RBBLclr&IMASKclr),R2 ; RB,BL,mask clear data
    AND R2,R0 ; clear mask data
    OR R1,R0 ; set interrupt mask
    LDC R0,SSR ; set current status
    ;
    LDC.L R3,SPC
    MOV.L #__int_term,R0 ; set interrupt terminate
    LDS R0,PR
    ;
    RTE
    NOP
    ;
    .POOL
    ;

;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                          IRQ                                        
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
.ORG H'500
_IRQHandler:
PUSH_EXP_BASE_REG
 ;
MOV.L #INTEVT,R0 ; set event address
MOV.L @R0,R1 ; set exception code
MOV.L #_INT_Vectors,R0 ; set vector table address
ADD #-(H'40),R1 ; exception code - H'40
SHLR2 R1
SHLR R1
MOV.L @(R0,R1),R3 ; set interrupt function addr
;
MOV.L #_INT_MASK,R0 ; interrupt mask table addr
SHLR2 R1
MOV.B @(R0,R1),R1 ; interrupt mask
EXTU.B R1,R1

; STC SR,R0 ; save SR
MOV.L #RBBLclr&IMASKclr,R2 ; RB,BL,mask clear data
AND R2,R0 ; clear mask data
OR R1,R0 ; set interrupt mask
LDC R0,SSR ; set current status

; LDC.L R3,SPC
MOV.L #__int_term,R0 ; set interrupt terminate
LDS R0,PR

; RTE
NOP

; .POOL
.END

Note: Do not link the function for which #pragma interrupt has been specified.
(2) Initialization (PowerON_Reset)

When library functions are used, this function sequentially calls the initialization routine
_INITLIB and file closing routine _CLOSEALL. The coding example of PowerON_Reset is
shown below. Since the interrupt operation of the SH-3, SH3-DSP, SH-4, SH-4A, and
SH4AL-DSP differs from that of the SH-1, SH-2, SH-2E, SH-2A, SH2A-FPU, and SH2-DSP,
interrupt handlers are necessary.

Example:

```
#include <_h_c_lib.h>
#include <machine.h>

#pragma entry PowerON_Reset_PC
#pragma stacksize 0x100

#define SR_Init 0x000000F0
/* The initial value is 0x400000F0 when cpu=sh3, cpu=sh3dsp, cpu=sh4, cpu=sh4a, or
cpu=sh4aldsp is specified */
#define FPSCR_Init 0x00040001*
/* Only when cpu=sh2afpu, cpu=sh4, or cpu=sh4a is specified */
#define INT_OFFSET 0x10

extern unsigned int INT_Vectors;
extern void PowerON_Reset_PC();
extern void main();
#ifdef __cplusplus
extern "C" {
#endif
extern void _INIT_IOLIB();
extern void _INIT_OTHERLIB();
extern void _CLOSEALL();
#ifdef __cplusplus
}
#endif
```
void PowerON_Reset_PC() {
    set_vbr((void *)(INT_Vectors - INT_OFFSET));
    set_fpscr(FPSCR_Init);
    /* Set this value only when cpu=sh2afpu, cpu=sh4, or cpu=sh4a is specified */
    _INITSCT();
    _INIT_IOLIB();
    _INIT_OTHERLIB();
#ifndef __cplusplus
    _CALL_INIT();
#endif
    set_cr(SR_Init);
    main();
#ifndef __cplusplus
    _CALL_END();
#endif
    _CLOSEALL();
sleep();
}

Note *1:  Change the initial value for FPSCR in accord with option settings as described below. Refer to the hardware manual for details.
-When -fpu=double is specified, set the PR bit in FPSCR to 1. Otherwise, set this bit to 0.
-When -round=nearest is specified, set the RM bit in FPSCR to 00. Otherwise, set this bit to 01.
-When -cpu=sh4 or -cpu=sh4a is specified along with -denormalize=on, set the DN bit in FPSCR to 0. Otherwise, set this bit to 1.

(3) Tables for section initialization (DTBL, BTBL)

The section initialization routine (_INITSCT) initializes any uninitialized data sections to zero, and copies initialization data in ROM for initialized data sections to RAM. Here the start and end addresses of sections which use the _INITSCT function are set in the table for section initialization using the section address operator.
Section names in the section initialization table are declared, using C$BSEC for uninitialized data areas, and C$DSEC for initialized data areas.
A coding example is shown below.

```c
#pragma section $DSEC   //Section name must be C$DSEC.
static const struct {
  void *rom_s;        //Starting address member of the initialized data
  void *rom_e;        //End address member of the initialized data
  void *ram_s;        //Starting address member of the initialized data
} DTBL[] = {_sectop("D"), _sectend("D"), _sectop("R")};

#pragma section $BSEC   //Section name must be C$BSEC.
static const struct {
  void *b_s;          //Starting address member of the uninitialized data
  void *b_e;          //End address member of the uninitialized data
} BTBL[] = {_sectop("B"), _sectend("B")};
```

(4) C/C++ library function initial settings (_INITLIB)
Here, the method for setting initial values for C/C++ library functions is explained.

In order to set only those values which are necessary for the functions that are actually to be used, please refer to the following guidelines.

- When using the `<stdio.h>`, `<ios>`, `<streambuf>`, `<istream>`, or `<ostream>` functions or the `assert` macro, the standard I/O initial setting (_INIT_IOLIB) is necessary.
- When an initial setting is required in the prepared low-level interface routines, the initial setting (_INIT_LOWLEVEL) in accordance with the specifications of the low-level interface routines is necessary.
- When using the `rand` function or the `strtok` function, initial settings other than those for standard I/O (_INIT_OTHERLIB) are necessary.

An example of a program to perform initial library settings is shown below. FILE-type data is shown in figure 9.7.
```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#define IOSTREAM 3
const size_t _sbrk_size = 520; // Specifies the minimum unit of the size to define
const int _nfiles = IOSTREAM; // Specifies the number of I/O files (default: 20)
struct _iobuf _iob[IOSTREAM];
unsigned char _smo_buf[IOSTREAM];
extern char *_slptr;

#define _cplusplus
extern "C" {
#endif
void _INITLIB (void) {
_INIT_LOWLEVEL(); // Set initial setting for low-level interface routines
_INIT_IOLIB();    // Set initial setting for I/O library
_INIT_OTHERLIB(); // Set initial setting for rand function, strtok function
}
void _INIT_LOWLEVEL (void) {
    // Set necessary initial setting for low-level library
}
void _INIT_IOLIB(void) {
    FILE *fp;
    for(fp = _iob; fp < _iob + _nfiles; fp++)    // Set initial setting for FILE
    {
        fp->_bufptr = NULL;
        fp->_bufcnt = 0;
        fp->_buflen = 0;
        fp->_bufbase = NULL;
        fp->_ioflag1 = 0;
        fp->_ioflag2 = 0;
        fp->_iofd = 0;
    }
    if(freopen("stdin", "r", stdin)== NULL)    // Open standard input file
        stdin->_ioflag1 = 0xff;   // Forbid file access if open fails
    stdin->_ioflag1 |= _IOUNBUF;   // Disable data buffering
    if(freopen("stdout", "w", stdout)== NULL)  // Open standard output file
        stdout->_ioflag1 = 0xff;   // Forbid file access if open fails
    stdout->_ioflag1 |= _IOUNBUF;  // Disable data buffering
    if(freopen("stderr", "w", stderr)== NULL)  // Open standard error file
        stderr->_ioflag1 = 0xff;   // Forbid file access if open fails
    stderr->_ioflag1 |= _IOUNBUF;  // Disable data buffering
}
void _INIT_OTHERLIB(void) {
    srand(1); // Set initial setting if using rand function
    _slptr=NULL;  // Set initial setting if using strtok function
}
#endif
```
Notes: 1. Specify the filename for the standard I/O file. This name is used in the low-level interface routine "open".
2. In the case of a console or other interactive device, a flag is set to prevent the use of buffering.

```
/* File-type data declaration in C language */

struct _iobuf{
    unsigned char *bufptr; /* Pointer to buffer */
    long _bufcnt; /* Buffer counter */
    unsigned char *bufbase; /* Base pointer to buffer */
    long buflen; /* Buffer length */
    char _ioflag1; /* I/O flag */
    char _ioflag2; /* I/O flag */
    char _iofd; /* I/O flag */
};iob[_nfiles];
```

Figure 9.7 FILE-Type Data

(5) Closing files (_CLOSEALL)

Normally, output to files is held in a buffer area in memory, and when the buffer becomes full data is actually written to an external memory device. Hence if a file is not closed properly, it is possible that data output to a file may not actually be written to the external memory device.

In the case of a program intended for embedding in equipment, normally the program is not terminated. However, if the main function is terminated due to a program error or for some other reason, open files must all be closed.

This processing closes any files that are open at the time of termination of the main function.

An example of a program to close all open files is shown below.
When using standard I/O or memory management library functions in a C/C++ program, low-level interface routines must be prepared. Table 9.3 lists the low-level interface routines used by C library functions.

Table 9.3  List of Low-Level Interface Routines

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>open</td>
<td>Opens file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>close</td>
<td>Closes file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>Reads from file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>Writes to file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lseek</td>
<td>Sets the read/write position in a file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sbbrk</td>
<td>Allocates area in memory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sbbrk_ _X</td>
<td>Allocates area in X memory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sbbrk_ _Y</td>
<td>Allocates area in Y memory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>errno_addr*</td>
<td>Acquires errno address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wait_sem*</td>
<td>Defines semaphore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>signal_sem*</td>
<td>Releases semaphore</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: These routines are necessary when the reentrant library is used.

Initialization necessary for low-level interface routines must be performed on program startup. This initialization should be performed using the _INIT_LOWLEVEL function described in section 9.2.2 (4), C/C++ library function initial settings (_INITLIB).
Below, after explaining the basic approach to low-level I/O, the specifications for each interface routine are described.

Note: The function names open, close, read, write, lseek, sbrk, sbrk__X, sbrk__Y, errno_addr, wait_sem, and signal_sem are reserved for low-level interface routines. They should not be used in user programs.

(a) Approach to I/O
In the standard I/O library, files are managed by means of FILE-type data; but in low-level interface routines, positive integers are assigned in a one-to-one correspondence with actual files for management. These integers are called file numbers.
In the open routine, a file number is provided for a specified filename. The open routine must set the following information such that this number can be used for file input and output.
- The device type of the file (console, printer, disk file, etc.) (In the cases of special devices such as consoles or printers, special filenames must be set by the system and identified in the open routine.)
- When using file buffering, information such as the buffer position and size
- In the case of a disk file, the byte offset from the start of the file to the position for reading or writing
Based on the information set using the open routine, all subsequent I/O (read and write routines) and read/write positioning (lseek routine) is performed.
When output buffering is being used, the close routine should be executed to write the contents of the buffer to the actual file, so that the data area set by the open routine can be reused.

(b) Specifications of low-level interface routines
In this section, specifications for low-level interface routines are described. For each routine, the interface for calling the routine, its operation, and information for using the routine are described.
The interface for the routines is indicated using the following format. Low-level interface routines should always be given a prototype declaration. Add "extern C" to declare in the C++ program.
(Routine name)

Description  (A summary of the routine operations is given)

Return value Normal:  (The meaning of the return value on normal termination is explained)

Error:  (The return value when an error occurs is given)

Parameters  (Name)  (Meaning)

(The name of the parameter appearing in the interface)  (The meaning of the value passed as a parameter)

int open (char *name, int mode, int flg)

Description  Prepares for operations on the file corresponding to the filename of the first parameter. In the open routine, the file type (console, printer, disk file, etc.) must be determined in order to enable writing or reading at a later time. The file type must be referenced using the file number returned by the open routine each time reading or writing is to be performed.

The second parameter, mode, specifies processing to be performed when the file is opened. The meanings of each of the bits of this parameter are as follows:

```
15  14  13  12  11  10  9   8
   7   6   5   4   3   2   1   0
    |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
  O_RDONLY  O_WRONLY  O_RDWR  O_CREAT  O_TRUNC  O_APPEND
```


Table 9.4   Explanation of Bits in Parameter "mode" of open Routine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bit</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>O_RDONLY (bit 0)</td>
<td>When this bit is 1, the file is opened in read-only mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O_WRONLY (bit 1)</td>
<td>When this bit is 1, the file is opened in write-only mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O_RDWR (bit 2)</td>
<td>When this bit is 1, the file is opened for both reading and writing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O_CREAT (bit 3)</td>
<td>When this bit is 1, if a file with the filename given does not exist, it is created</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O_TRUNC (bit 4)</td>
<td>When this bit is 1, if a file with the filename given exists, the file contents are deleted and the file size is set to 0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| O_APPEND (bit 5) | Sets the position within the file for the next read/write operation  
  When 0: Set to read/write from the beginning of file  
  When 1: Set to read/write from file end |

When there is a contradiction between the file processing specified by mode and the properties of the actual file, error processing should be performed. When the file is opened normally, the file number (0 to 127) should be returned which should be used in subsequent read, write, lseek, and close routines. The correspondence between file numbers and the actual files must be managed by low-level interface routines. If the open operation fails, -1 should be returned.

Return value

- Normal: The file number for the successfully opened file
- Error: -1

Parameters

- name: Filename of the file
- mode: Specifies the type of processing when the file is opened
- flg: Specifies processing when the file is opened (always 0777)
int close (int fileno)

Description
The file number obtained using the open routine is passed as a parameter. The file management information area set using the open routine should be released to enable reuse. Also, when output file buffering is performed in low-level interface routines, the buffer contents should be written to the actual file.

When the file is closed successfully, 0 is returned; if the close operation fails, -1 is returned.

Return value
Normal: 0
Error: -1

Parameter
fileno File number of the file to be closed

int read (int fileno, char *buf, unsigned int count)

Description
Data is read from the file specified by the first parameter (fileno) to the area in memory specified by the second parameter (buf). The number of bytes of data to be read is specified by the third parameter (count).

When the end of the file is reached, only a number of bytes fewer than or equal to count bytes can be read.

The position for file reading/writing advances by the number of bytes read.

When reading is performed successfully, the actual number of bytes read is returned; if the read operation fails, -1 is returned.

Return value
Normal: Actual number of bytes read
Error: -1

Parameters
fileno File number of the file to be read
buf Memory area to store read data
count Number of bytes to read
### `int write (int fileno, char *buf, unsigned int count)`

**Description**

Writes data to the file indicated by the first parameter (fileno) from the memory area indicated by the second parameter (buf). The number of bytes to be written is indicated by the third parameter (count).

If the device (disk, etc.) of the file to be written is full, only a number of bytes fewer than or equal to count bytes can be written. It is recommended that, if the number of bytes actually written is zero a certain number of times in succession, the disk should be judged to be full and an error (-1) should be returned.

The position for file reading/writing advances by the number of bytes written. If writing is successful, the actual number of bytes written should be returned; if the write operation fails, -1 should be returned.

When the value of parameter count is 0, the return value must also be 0.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Return value</th>
<th>Normal:</th>
<th>Actual number of bytes written</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Error:</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fileno</td>
<td>File number to which data is to be written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buf</td>
<td>Memory area containing data for writing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>count</td>
<td>Number of bytes to write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
int lseek (int fileno, long offset, int base)

Description
Sets the position within the file, in byte units, for reading from and writing to the file.

The position within a new file should be calculated and set using the following methods, depending on the third parameter (base).

(1) When base is 0: Set the position at offset bytes from the file beginning

(2) When base is 1: Set the position at the current position plus offset bytes

(3) When base is 2: Set the position at the file size plus offset bytes

When the file is a console, printer, or other interactive device, when the new offset is negative, or when in cases (1) and (2) the file size is exceeded, an error occurs.

When the file position is set correctly, the new position for reading/writing should be returned as an offset from the file beginning; when the operation is not successful, -1 should be returned.

Return value
Normal: The new position for file reading/writing, as an offset in bytes from the file beginning
Error: -1

Parameters
fileno File number
offset Position for reading/writing, as an offset (in bytes)
base Starting-point of the offset
### `char *sbrk (int size)`

**Description**

The size of the memory area to be allocated is passed as a parameter.

When calling the `sbrk` routine several times, memory areas should be allocated in succession starting from lower addresses. If the memory area for allocation is insufficient, an error should occur. When allocation is successful, the address of the beginning of the allocated memory area should be returned; if unsuccessful, `(char *) -1` should be returned.

**Return value**

- Normal: Starting address of allocated memory
- Error: `(char *) -1`

**Parameter**

- `size` Size of area to be allocated

### `char __X *sbrk__X (int size)`

**Description**

The size of the X memory area to be allocated is passed as a parameter.

When calling the `sbrk__X` routine several times in a row, memory areas should be allocated in succession starting from lower addresses. If the memory area for allocation is insufficient, an error should occur. When allocation is successful, the address of the beginning of the allocated memory area should be returned; if unsuccessful, `(char __X *) -1` should be returned.

**Return value**

- Normal: Starting address of allocated memory
- Error: `(char __X *) -1`

**Parameter**

- `size` Size of area to be allocated
char __Y *sbrk__Y (int size)

Description The size of the Y memory area to be allocated is passed as a parameter.

When calling the sbrk__Y routine several times in a row, memory areas should be allocated in succession starting from lower addresses. If the memory area for allocation is insufficient, an error should occur. When allocation is successful, the address of the beginning of the allocated memory area should be returned; if unsuccessful, (char __Y *) -1 should be returned.

Return value Normal: Starting address of allocated memory
Error: (char __Y *) -1

Parameter size Size of area to be allocated

int *errno_addr (void)

Description Returns the address of the error number of the current task.

This routine is necessary when using a standard library, which was created by the standard library generator with the reent option specified.

Return value Address of the error number of the current task
int wait_sem (int semnum)

Description
Defines the semaphore specified by semnum.

When the semaphore has been defined normally, 1 must be returned.
Otherwise, 0 must be returned.

This routine is necessary when using a standard library, which was created
by the standard library generator with the reent option specified.

Return value
Normal: 1
Error: 0

Parameter
semnum Semaphore ID

int signal_sem (int semnum)

Description
Releases the semaphore specified by semnum.

When the semaphore has been released normally, 1 must be returned.
Otherwise, 0 must be returned.

This routine is necessary when using a standard library, which was created
by the standard library generator with the reent option specified.

Return value
Normal: 1
Error: 0

Parameter
semnum Semaphore ID
(c) Example of coding the low-level interface routines

```c
="#include <string.h>

/*  File Number  */
#define STDIN  0        /*  Standard input  (Console) */
#define STDOUT 1        /*  Standard output (Console) */
#define STDERR 2        /*  Standard error output (Console) */
#define FLMIN 0          /*  Minimum file number */
#define FLMAX 3          /*  Maximum number of files */

/*  File flags  */
#define O_RDONLY 0x0001   /*  Read only */
#define O_WRONLY 0x0002    /*  Write only */
#define O_RDWR 0x0004      /*  Read/Write */

/*  Special character code  */
#define CR 0x0d            /*  Carriage return */
#define LF 0x0a            /*  Line feed */

/*  Area size managed by sbrk  */
#define HEAPSIZE 1024

/*  Reference function declaration: */
extern void charput(char); /*  One character input processing */
extern char charget(void); /* One character output processing */

/*  Static variable definition: */
union HEAP_TYPE{
  long dummy;/*  Dummy for four-byte alignment */
  char heap[HEAPSIZE]; /* Declaration of area managed by sbrk */
};

static union HEAP_TYPE heap area;
static _ _X union HEAP_TYPE heap area _ _X;
static _ _Y union HEAP_TYPE heap area _ _Y;
static char *brk=(char*)&heap_area; /*  End address allocated by sbrk */
static _ _X char *brk _ _X=(char _ _X *)&heap_area _ _X;
static _ _Y char *brk _ _Y=(char _ _Y *)&heap_area _ _Y;
  /* End address allocated by sbrk _ _Y */
```
/*********** open: Open file ****************/
/*
 Return value: File Number (Normal) */
/*
  -1 (Error) */
/*****************************/
int open(char *name, /* File name */
 int mode) /* File mode */
{
 /* Check mode according to the file name, and return the file number */
 if (strcmp(name,"stdin")==0) { /* Standard input file */
 if ((mode&O_RDONLY)==0) {
 return (-1);
 }
 flmod[STDIN]=mode;
 return (STDIN);
 }
 else if (strcmp(name,"stdout")==0) { /* Standard output file */
 if ((mode&O_WRONLY)==0) {
 return (-1);
 }
 flmod(STDOUT)=mode;
 return (STDOUT);
 }
 else if (strcmp(name,"stderr")==0){ /* Standard error output file */
 if ((mode&O_WRONLY)==0) {
 return (-1);
 }
 flmod(STDERR)=mode;
 return (STDERR);
 }
 else {
 return (-1); /* Error */
 }
}

/**************************** close: Close file ****************************/
/*
 Return value 0 (Normal) */
/*
  -1 (Error) */
/*****************************/
int close(int fileno) /* File number */
{
 if (fileno<FLMIN || FLMAX<fileno) { /* Check file number range */
 return -1;
 }
 flmod[fileno]=0; /* Reset file mode */
 return 0;
}
/************************************************************************/
/*                                  read:  Read data                      */
/*                        Return value:  Read character count (Normal) */
/*                                        -1                  (Error)   */
************************************************************************/
int read(int fileno, /* File number */
         char *buf, /* Transfer destination buffer address */
         unsigned int count) /* Read character count */
{
    unsigned int i;
    /* Check mode according to file name, input one character each, */
    /* and store the characters to buffer */
    if (flmod[fileno]&O_RDONLY || flmod[fileno]&O_RDWR) {
        for (i=count; i>0; i--) {
            *buf=charget();
            if (*buf==CR) {  /* Replace line feed character */
                *buf=LF;
            }
            buf++;
        }
        return count;
    } else {
        return -1;
    }
}

/************************************************************************/
/*                                  write:  Write data                    */
/*                         Return value:  Written data count (Normal)    */
/*                                       -1                  (Error)     */
************************************************************************/
int write(int fileno, /* File number */
          char *buf, /* Transfer source buffer address */
          unsigned int count) /* Written character count */
{
    unsigned int i;
    char c;
    /* Check mode according to file name and output one character at a time */
    if (flmod[fileno]&O_WRONLY || flmod[fileno]&O_RDWR) {
        for (i=count; i>0; i--) {
            c=*buf++;
            charput(c);
        }
        return count;
    } else {
        return -1;
    }
/*******************************************************************************/ /*                       lseek: Set file read/write position                        */ /*    Return value: Offset from the beginning of file to be read/written (Normal) */ /*              -1 (Error)                                               */ /*                   (Console I/O does not support lseek)                */ /******************************************************************************/ long lseek(int fileno,  /*  File number  */     long offset,  /*  Read/write start position  */     int  base)      /*  Start of offset  */     { 
    return -1;
}

/*******************************************************************************/ /*                      sbrk: Memory area allocation                              */ /*             Return value:  Start address of allocated area (Normal)          */ /*                                     -1  (Error)                              */ /******************************************************************************/ char *sbrk(unsigned long size) /*  Size of area to be allocated */     { 
    char *p;
    /*  Check empty area  */
    if (brk+size>heap_area.heap+HEAPSIZE) { 
        return (char *)-1;
    } 
    p=brk;  /* Allocate area */
    brk+=size; /* Update end address */
    return p;
}

/*******************************************************************************/ /*                      sbrk_ _X: Memory area allocation                          */ /*             Return value:  Start address of allocated area (Normal)          */ /*                                     -1  (Error)                              */ /******************************************************************************/ __X char *sbrk_ _X(unsigned long size) /*  Size of area to be allocated */     { 
    __X char *p;
    /*  Check empty area  */
    if (brk_ _X+size>heap_area_ _X.heap+HEAPSIZE) { 
        return (char _ _X *)-1;
    } 
    p=brk_ _X;  /* Allocate area */
    brk_ _X+=size; /* Update end address */
    return p;
}
/*******************************************************/
/* sbrk_Y: Memory area allocation */
/* Return value: Start address of allocated area (Normal) */
/* -1 (Error) */
/************************************************************************/
char _Y *sbrk_Y(unsigned long size)
    /* Size of area to be allocated */
{
    _Y char *p;
    /* Check empty area */
    if (brk_Y+size>heap_area_Y.heap+HEAPSIZE) {
        return (char _Y *)-1;
    }
    p=brk_Y;  /* Allocate area */
    brk_Y+=size; /* Update end address */
    return p;
}

; ;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
; ;                                   lowlvl.src                        
; ;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;  SuperH RISC engine Series Simulator/Debugger Interface Routine 
; ; Input/Output one character 
; ;EXPORT  _charput
;EXPORT  _charget

SIM_IO:
.EQU  H'0000 ; Specify TRAP_ADDRESS

.SECTION  P, CODE, ALIGN=4
; ;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
; _charput: One character output 
; ; C program interface: charput(char) 
; ;EXPORT  _charput

; ;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
; _charput:
MOV.L O_PAR,R0  ; Set buffer address
MOV.B R4,8R0   ; Set parameter to buffer
MOV.L #O_PAR,R1 ; Set parameter block address
MOV.L #H'01220000,R0 ; Set function code (PUTC)
MOV.W #SIM_IO,R2 ; Set system call address
JSR  $R2
NOP
RTS
NOP

.OALIGN 4
O_PAR:      ;Parameter block area
 DATA.L OUT_BUF

R20UT0704EJ0102 Rev. 1.02  Page 291 of 1176
Mar 01, 2022
SuperH™ RISC engine C/C++ Compiler, Assembler,

Section 9   Programming

Programming Optimizing Linkage Editor

Page 292 of 1176  R20UT0704EJ0102  Rev. 1.02
Mar 01, 2022

;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;

;charget: One character input
;C program interface: char charget(void)
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;

.ALIGN 4
_charget:

MOV.L #I_PAR,R1 ; Set parameter block address
MOV.L #H'01210000,R0 ; Set function code (GETC)
MOV.W #SIM_IO,R2 ; Set system call address
JSR @R2
NOP

MOV.L I_PAR,R0 ; Set buffer address
MOV.B @R0,R0 ; Set the input data as the return value
RTS
NOP

.ALIGN 4
I_PAR: ; Parameter block area

.DATA.L IN_BUF

;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;

;Definition of I/O buffer
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;

.SECION B,DATA,ALIGN=4

OUT_BUF:
.RES.L 1 ; Output buffer

IN_BUF:
.RES.L 1 ; Input buffer

.END
(d) Example of low-level interface routine for reentrant library

The following shows an example of a low-level interface routine for a reentrant library. This routine is necessary when using a standard library, which was created by the standard library generator with the `reent` option specified.

When an error is returned from the `wait_sem` function or `signal_sem` function, set `errno` as follows to return from the library function.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bit Function</th>
<th><code>errno</code></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wait_sem</td>
<td>EMALRESM</td>
<td>Failed to allocate semaphore resources for malloc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ETOKRESM</td>
<td>Failed to allocate semaphore resources for <code>strtok</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EIOBRESM</td>
<td>Failed to allocate semaphore resources for <code>_iob</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>signal_sem</td>
<td>EMALFRSM</td>
<td>Failed to release semaphore resources for malloc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ETOKFRSM</td>
<td>Failed to release semaphore resources for <code>strtok</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EIOBFRSM</td>
<td>Failed to release semaphore resources for <code>_iob</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When an interrupt with a priority level higher than the current level is generated after semaphores have been defined, dead locks will occur if semaphores are defined again. Therefore, be careful for processes that share resources because they might be nested by interrupts.
#define MALLOC_SEM   1  /* Semaphore No. for malloc */
#define STRTOK_SEM   2  /* Semaphore No. for strtok */
#define FILE_TBL_SEM  3  /* Semaphore No. for fopen */
#define MALLOC_SEM_ _X  4  /* Semaphore No. for malloc_ _X */
#define MALLOC_SEM_ _Y  5  /* Semaphore No. for malloc_ _Y */
#define IOB_SEM    6  /* Semaphore No. for _iob */
#define SEMSIZE    26 /* IOB_SEM + nfiles (when _nfiles = 20) */
#define TRUE      1
#define FALSE     0
#define OK        1
#define NG        0

extern int *errno_addr(void);
extern int wait_sem(int);
extern int signal_sem(int);

int sem_errno;
int force_fail_signal_sem = FALSE;
static int semaphore[SEMSIZE];

/**********************
 /*
 /* errno_addr: Acquisition of errno address */
 /* Return value: errno address */
 ***************************/
int *errno_addr(void)
{
    /* Return the errno address of the current task */
    return (&sem_errno);
}

/**********************
 /*
 /* wait_sem: Defines the specified numbers of semaphores */
 /* Return value: OK (=1) (Normal) */
 /* NG (=0) (Error) */
 ***************************/
int wait_sem(int semnum) /* Semaphore ID */
{
    if((0 <= semnum) && (semnum < SEMSIZE)) {
        if(semaphore[semnum] == FALSE) {
            semaphore[semnum] = TRUE;
            return(OK);
        }
    }
    return(NG);
}

/*********************************************************************/
/*     signal_sem: Releases the specified numbers of semaphores      */
/*                   Return value: OK(=1) (Normal)                   */
/*                                 NG(=0) (Error)                    */
/*********************************************************************/
int signal_sem(int semnum) /* Semaphore ID */
{
    if(!force_fail_signal_sem) {
        if((0 <= semnum) && (semnum < SEMSIZE)) {
            if(semaphore[semnum] == TRUE ) {
                semaphore[semnum] = FALSE;
                return(OK);
            }
        }
    }
    return(NG);
}
(7) Termination processing routine

(a) Example of preparation of a routine for termination processing registration and execution

(atexit)

The method for preparation of the library function atexit to register termination processing is described.

The atexit function registers, in a table for termination processing, a function address passed as a parameter. If the number of functions registered exceeds the limit (in this case, the number that can be registered is assumed to be 32), or if an attempt is made to register the same function twice, NULL is returned. Otherwise, a value other than NULL (in this case, the address of the registered function) is returned.

A program example is shown below.

Example:

```c
#include <stdlib.h>
typedef void *atexit_t;

int _atexit_count=0;

atexit_t (*_atexit_buf[32])(void);

#ifdef __cplusplus
extern "C"
#endif
atexit_t atexit(atexit_t (*f)(void))
{
    int i;
    for(i=0; i<_atexit_count; i++) // Check whether it is already registered
        if(_atexit_buf[i]==f) return NULL;
    if(_atexit_count==32) // Check the limit value of number of registration
        return NULL;
    else {
        _atexit_buf[_atexit_count++]=f; // Register the function address
        return f;
    }
}
```
(b) Example of preparation of a routine for program termination (exit)

The method for preparation of an exit library function for program termination is described. Program termination processing will differ among user systems; refer to the program example below when preparing a termination procedure according to the specifications of the user system.

The exit function performs termination processing for a program according to the termination code for the program passed as a parameter, and returns to the environment in which the program was started. Here, the termination code is set to an external variable, and execution returned to the environment saved by the setjmp function immediately before the main function was called. In order to return to the environment prior to program execution, the following callmain function should be created, and instead of calling the function main from the PowerON_Reset initial setting function, the callmain function should be called.

A program example is shown below.
```c
#include <setjmp.h>
#include <stddef.h>

typedef void * atexit_t;
extern int _atexit_count;
extern atexit_t (*_atexit_buf[32])(void);
#ifdef __cplusplus
extern "C"
#endif
void _CLOSEALL(void);
int main(void);
extern jmp_buf _init_env;
int _exit_code;
#ifdef __cplusplus
extern "C"
#endif
void exit(int code)
{
    _exit_code=code;
    // Set the return code in _exit_code
    for(i=_atexit_count-1; i>=0; i--)
    // Execute in sequence the functions
    (_atexit_buf[i]());
    // registered by the atexit function
    _CLOSEALL();
    // Close all open functions
    longjmp(_init_env, 1);
    // Return to the environment saved by setjmp
}
#endif
#endif
void callmain(void)
{
    // Save the current environment using setjmp and call the main function
    if(!setjmp(_init_env))
    _exit_code=main();
    // On returning from the exit function,
    // terminate processing
}
```
(c) Example of creation of an abnormal termination (abort) routine

On abnormal termination, processing for abnormal termination must be executed in accordance with the specifications of the user system.

In a C++ program, the abort function will also be called in the following cases:

- When exception processing was unable to operate correctly.
- When a pure virtual function is called.
- When dynamic_cast has failed.
- When typeid has failed.
- When information could not be acquired when a class array was deleted.
- When the definition of the destructor call for objects of a given class causes a contradiction.

Below is shown an example of a program which outputs a message to the standard output device, then closes all files and begins an infinite loop to wait for reset.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#ifdef __cplusplus
extern "C"
#endif
void _CLOSEALL(void);
#ifdef __cplusplus
extern "C"
#endif
void abort(void)
{
    printf("program is abort !!\n");  // Output message
    _CLOSEALL();                      // Close all files
    while(1) ;                         // Begin infinite loop
}
```
9.3 Linking C/C++ Programs and Assembly Programs

Here the following matters to be born in mind when linking C/C++ programs and assembly programs are discussed.

- Method for mutual referencing of external names
- Interface for function calls

9.3.1 Method for Mutual Referencing of External Names

External names which have been declared in a C/C++ program can be referenced and updated in both directions between the C/C++ program and an assembly program. The compiler treats the following items as external names.

- Global variables which are not declared as static storage classes (C/C++ programs)
- Variable names declared as extern storage classes (C/C++ programs)
- Function names not declared as static memory classes (C programs)
- Non-member, non-inline function names not specified as static memory classes (C++ programs)
- Non-inline member function names (C++ programs)
- Static data member names (C++ programs)

(1) Method for referencing assembly program external names in C/C++ programs

In assembly programs, .EXPORT is used to declare external symbol names (preceded by an underscore (_)).

In C/C++ programs, symbol names (not preceded by an underscore) are declared using the extern keyword.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assembly program (definition)</th>
<th>C/C++ program (reference)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.EXPORT a, b</td>
<td>extern int a,b;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.SECTION D,DATA,ALIGN=4</td>
<td>void f()</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>_a: .DATA.L l</td>
<td>{</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>_b: .DATA.L l</td>
<td>a=b;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.END</td>
<td>}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(2) Method for referencing C/C++ program external names (variables and C functions) from assembly programs

A C/C++ program can define external variable names (without an underscore (_)).
In an assembly program, .IMPORT is used to declare an external name (preceded by an underscore).

C/C++ program (definition)

```c
int a;
```

Assembly program (reference)

```assembly
.IMPORT _a
.SECTION P, CODE, ALIGN=4
MOV.L A_a, R1
MOV.L @R1, R0
ADD $1, R0
RTS
MOV.L R0, @R1
.ALIGN 4
A_a: .DATA.L _a
.END
```

(3) Method for referencing C++ program external names (functions) from assembly programs

By declaring functions to be referenced from an assembly program using the extern "C" keyword, the function can be referenced using the same rules as in (2) above. However, functions declared using extern "C" cannot be overloaded.

C++ program (callee)

```c
extern "C"
void sub()
{
  
}
```
Assembly program (caller)

```
IMPORT   _sub
.SECTION P,CODE,ALIGN=4
    .

STS.L   PR, @-R15
MOV.L   R1, @(1,R15)
MOV      R3, R12
MOV.L   A_sub, R0
JSR      @R0
NOP
LDS.L   @R15+, PR
    .
A_sub:  .DATA.L  _sub
.END
```

9.3.2 Function Calling Interface

When either a C/C++ program or an assembly program calls the other, the assembly programs must be written using rules involving the following:

1. Stack pointer
2. Allocating and deallocating stack frames
3. Registers
4. Setting and referencing parameters and return values

(1) Stack Pointer

Valid data must not be stored in a stack area with an address lower than the stack pointer (in the direction of address H'0), since the data may be destroyed by an interrupt process.

(2) Allocating and Deallocation Stack Frames

In a function call (immediately after the JSR or the BSR instruction has been executed), the stack pointer indicates the lowest address of the stack used by the calling function. Allocating and setting data at addresses greater than this address must be done by the caller.
After the callee deallocates the area it has set with data, control returns to the caller usually with the RTS instruction. The caller then deallocates the area having a higher address (the return value address and the parameter area).

![Figure 9.8 Allocation and Deallocation of a Stack Frame](image-url)
(3) Registers
Some registers may change during a function call, while some may not. Table 9.5 shows the rules to save and restore registers.

**Table 9.5  Rules to Save and Restore Registers**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Registers Used in a Function</th>
<th>Notes on Programming</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Registers not guaranteed</td>
<td>R0 to R7, FR0 to FR11, DR0 to DR10, FPUL, FPSCR, R8 to R15, A0, A1, M0, M1, X0, X1, Y0, Y1, DSR, MOD, RS, RE</td>
<td>If registers used in a function contain valid data when a program calls the function, the caller must save the data onto the stack or into the register before calling the function. The callee function can use the registers without saving the contained data. However, when <strong>fpscr=SAFE</strong> is specified, the contents of <strong>FPSCR</strong> are guaranteed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Registers guaranteed</td>
<td>R8 to R14, MACH, MAACL, PR, FR12 to FR14</td>
<td>The data in registers used in functions is saved onto the stack at function entry, and restored from the stack at function exit. Note that data in the MACH and MAACL registers are not guaranteed if <strong>macsave=0</strong> is specified. When <strong>gbr=auto</strong> is specified, the contents of <strong>GBR</strong> are guaranteed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
2. Double-precision floating point registers for SH2A-FPU, SH-4, and SH-4A.
3. DSP registers for SH2-DSP, SH3-DSP, and SH4AL-DSP.
4. The precision modes at the start of functions are as follows.
   - When the **fpu=double** option is used, the mode is double-precision.
   - When the **fpu=single** option is used or when the fpu option is not used, the mode is single-precision. In the case of interrupt functions, the precision mode might need to be set since they might actually be called in double-precision mode. For details, see section 9.4.1 (6) Interrupt Functions When the CPU Type Is SH2A-FPU, SH4, or SH4A.
The following examples show the rules on registers.

- A subroutine in an assembly program is called by a C/C++ program

Assembly program (callee)

```assembly
.EXPORT _sub
.SECTION P, CODE, ALIGN=4
_sub:
    MOV.L R14, @R15
    MOV.L R13, @R15
    ADD   #8, R15

    ...
    ...

    ADD   #8, R15
    MOV.L @R15+, R13
    RTS
    MOV.L @R15+, R14
.END
```

Saves the registers used in the function.

Processing of the function
(The contents of R0 to R7 registers are not guaranteed, so the registers can be used without saving the contents in the function.)

Restores the saved registers.

C/C++ program (caller)

```c
#ifdef __cplusplus
extern "C"
#endif

void sub();

void f()
{
    sub();
}
```
• A function in a C/C++ program is called by an assembly program
  C/C++ program (callee)

```c
void sub()
{
    ...
    ...
}
```

Assembly program (caller)

```assembly
.import _sub
.section P, CODE, ALIGN=4
.
.
sts.l pr, @-R15
mov.l r1, @(1, r15)
mov r3, r12
mov.l A_sub, r0
jsr @r0
nop
ldh.l @r15+, pr
.
A_sub: .data.l _sub
.end
```

The called function name prefixed with (_) is declared by the .import (C).
The external name generated from the function declaration or
definition by the compiler is declared by the .import (C++).

Stores the PR register (return address storage
register) when calling the function.
  If registers R0 to R7 contain valid data,
  the data is pushed onto the stack or stored
  in unused registers.
  Calls function sub.
  Restores the PR register.

Address data of function sub.

Note: The compiler uses a rule to convert the external name
created by the function name or
static data member. When you need to know the external name
created by the compiler,
refer to the external name created by the compiler using
`code=asmcode` or the `listfile`
option. Defining a C++ function with extern "C" specified applies the same
generation rules as C functions to external names, although this
makes overloading of the function
impossible.

(4) Setting and Referencing Parameters and Return Values
This section explains how to set and reference parameters and
return values.
This section first explains the general rules concerning parameters and return values, and then
how the parameters are allocated, and how to set return values.
(a) General rules concerning parameters and return values

— Passing parameters
A function is called after parameters have been copied to a parameter area in registers or on
the stack. Since the caller does not reference the parameter area after control returns to it,
the caller is not affected even if the callee modifies the parameters.

— Rules on type conversion
Type conversion may be performed automatically when parameters are passed or a return
value is returned. The following explains the rules on type conversion.
• Type conversion of parameters whose types are declared
Parameters whose types are declared by a prototype declaration are converted to the
declared types.
• Type conversion of parameters whose types are not declared
Parameters whose types are not declared by a prototype declaration are converted
according to the following rules.
  — (signed) char, unsigned char, (signed) short, and unsigned short type parameters are
    converted to (signed) int type parameters.
  — float type parameters are converted to double type parameters.
  — Types other than the above are not converted.
• Type conversion of a return value
A return value is converted to the data type returned by the function.

Examples:

(1)  long f( );
    long f( )
    { float x;
      return x;  \rightarrow The return value is converted to long by a
    }  \rightarrow \text{a prototype declaration.}
    
(2)  void p ( int,... );
    void f ( )
    { char c;
      p ( 1.0, c );
    }
    \rightarrow c \text{ is converted to int because a type is not }
    \rightarrow \text{declared for the parameter.}
    \rightarrow 1.0 \text{ is converted to int because the type of }
    \rightarrow \text{the parameter is int.}
(b) Parameter area allocation

Parameters are allocated to registers, or when this is impossible, to a parameter area on the stack. Figure 9.9 shows the parameter area allocation. Table 9.6 lists general rules on the parameter area allocation. The **this** pointer to a nonstatic function member in a C++ program is assigned to R4.

![Parameter Area Allocation Diagram](image)

**Figure 9.9 Parameter Area Allocation**
### Table 9.6  General Rules on Parameter Area Allocation

#### Parameters Allocated to Registers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter Storage Registers</th>
<th>Target Type</th>
<th>Parameters Allocated to a Stack</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R4 to R7</td>
<td>char, unsigned char, bool, short, unsigned short, int, unsigned int, long, unsigned long, float (when CPU is other than SH-2E, SH2A-FPU, SH-4, or SH-4A), pointer, pointer to a data member, and reference</td>
<td>(1) Parameters whose types are other than target types for register passing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FR4 to FR11*1</td>
<td>For SH-2E</td>
<td>(2) Parameters of a function which has been declared by a prototype declaration to have variable-number parameters*3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(3) When other parameters are already allocated to R4 to R7.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For SH2A-FPU, SH-4, or SH-4A</td>
<td>(4) When other parameters are already allocated to FR4 (DR4) to FR11 (DR10).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(5) long long type and unsigned long type parameters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(6) _ _fixed type, long _ _fixed type, _ _accum type, and long _ _accum type parameters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DR4 to DR10*2</td>
<td>For SH2A-FPU, SH-4, or SH-4A</td>
<td>(1) Parameters whose types are other than target types for register passing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(2) Parameters of a function which has been declared by a prototype declaration to have variable-number parameters*3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(3) When other parameters are already allocated to FR4 (DR4) to FR11 (DR10).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(4) When other parameters are already allocated to FR4 (DR4) to FR11 (DR10).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(5) long long type and unsigned long type parameters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(6) _ _fixed type, long _ _fixed type, _ _accum type, and long _ _accum type parameters</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**
2. Double-precision floating-point registers for SH2A-FPU, SH-4, and SH-4A.
3. If a function has been declared to have variable parameters by a prototype declaration, parameters which do not have a corresponding type in the declaration and the immediately preceding parameter are allocated to a stack.

**Example:**

```c
int f2(int,int,int,int,...);
```

---

---

---
f2(a,b,c,x,y,z); ← x, y, and z are allocated to a stack.

(c) Parameter allocation

- Allocation to parameter storage registers

Following the order of their declaration in the source program, parameters are allocated to the parameter storage registers starting with the smallest numbered register. Figure 9.10 shows an example of parameter allocation to registers.

![Figure 9.10 Example of Allocation to Parameter Registers](image)

- Allocation to a stack parameter area

Parameters are allocated to the stack parameter area starting from lower addresses, in the order that they are specified in the source program.

Note: Regardless of the alignment determined by the structure type, union type, or class type, parameters are allocated using 4-byte alignment. Also, the area size for each parameter must be a multiple of four bytes. This is because the SuperH RISC engine microcomputer stack pointer is incremented or decremented in 4-byte units. Refer to section 9.3.3, Examples of Parameter Allocation, for examples of parameter allocation.

(d) Return value writing area

The return value is written to either a register or memory depending on its type. Refer to table 9.7 for the relationship between the return value type and area.

When a function return value is to be written to memory, the return value is written to the area indicated by the return value address. The caller must allocate the return value setting area in addition to the parameter area, and must set the address of the return value area in the return value address area before calling the function (see figure 9.11). The return value is not written if its type is void.
Table 9.7  Return Value Type and Setting Area

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Return Value Type</th>
<th>Return Value Area</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(signed) char, unsigned char, (signed) short, unsigned short, (signed) int, unsigned int, long, unsigned long, float, pointer, bool, reference, and pointer to a data member</td>
<td>R0: 32 bits&lt;br&gt;  The contents of the upper three bytes of (signed) char, or unsigned char and the contents of the upper two bytes of (signed) short or unsigned short are not guaranteed. However, when the <code>rtnext</code> option is specified, sign extension is performed for (signed) char or (signed) short type, and zero extension is performed for unsigned char or unsigned short type.&lt;br&gt; FR0: 32 bits&lt;br&gt;  (1) For SH-2E&lt;br&gt;  • Return value is float type.&lt;br&gt;  • Return value is double type and <code>double=float</code> is specified.&lt;br&gt;  (2) For SH2A-FPU, SH-4, or SH-4A&lt;br&gt;  • Return value is float type and <code>fpu=double</code> is not specified.&lt;br&gt;  • Return value is floating-point type and <code>fpu=single</code> is specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>double, long double, structure, union, class, and pointer to a function member</td>
<td>Return value setting area (memory)&lt;br&gt;  DR0: 64 bits&lt;br&gt;  For SH2A-FPU, SH-4, or SH-4A&lt;br&gt;  • Return value is double type and <code>fpu=single</code> is not specified.&lt;br&gt;  • Return value is floating-point type and <code>fpu=double</code> is specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(signed) long long and unsigned long long</td>
<td>Return value setting area (memory)&lt;br&gt;  _ _fixed, long _ _fixed, _ _accum, and long _ _accum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
9.3.3 Examples of Parameter Allocation

Example 1: Parameters passed by are allocated, in the order in which they are declared, to registers R4 to R7.

```c
int f(char, short, int, float);
:
f(1, 2, 3, 4.0);
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Register</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R4</td>
<td>Not guaranteed</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R5</td>
<td>Not guaranteed</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R6</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R7</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example 2: Parameters that cannot be allocated to registers are allocated to the stack. When the parameters are (unsigned) char or (unsigned) short types and are allocated to the parameter area in the stack, they are first extended to 4 bytes.

```c
int f(int, short, long, float, char);
:
f(1, 2, 3, 4.0, 5);
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Register</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R5</td>
<td>Not guaranteed</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R6</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R7</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Diagram:

![Diagram of parameter allocation](image)

Figure 9.11 Return Value Setting Area Used When Return Value Is Written to Memory
Example 3: Parameters of types that cannot be allocated to registers are allocated to the stack.

```c
struct s{int x,y;}a;
int f(int,struct s,int);
:
f(1,a,3);
```

Example 4: When declared in a prototype declaration as a function with a variable parameters, the parameters without corresponding types and the immediately preceding parameter are allocated to the stack in the order in which they are declared.

```c
int f(double, int, int...);
:
f(1.0, 2, 3, 4);
```

Example 5: When the type returned by a function is more than 4 bytes, or a class, the return value address is set immediately before the parameter area. If the size of the class is not a multiple of 4 bytes, unused space is padded.

```c
struct s{char x,y,z;}a;
double f(struct s);
:
f(a);
```
Example 6: When the CPU is SH-2E, float type parameters are allocated to the FPU registers.

```c
int f(char, float, short, float, double);
: f(1, 2.0, 3, 4.0, 5.0);
```

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter area (stack)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>↑ Lower address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>↓ Higher address</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

Example 7: When the CPU is SH2A-FPU, SH-4, or SH-4A, float and double type parameters are allocated to the FPU registers.

```c
int f(char, float, double, float, short);
: f(1, 2.0, 4.0, 5.0, 3);
```

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter area (stack)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>↑ Lower address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>↓ Higher address</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter area (stack)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>↑ Lower address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>↓ Higher address</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```
9.3.4 Using the Registers and Stack Area

This section describes how the compiler uses registers and stack areas. Registers and stack areas in functions are controlled by the compiler and the user is not required to have any particular understanding of how these areas are used. Figure 9.12 shows how the registers and stack areas are used.

![Figure 9.12 Using Registers and Stack Areas](image)

Figure 9.12 Using Registers and Stack Areas

FR0 (DR0)  R0
FR1
FR2 (DR2)  R2
FR3
FR4 (DR4)  R4
FR5
FR6 (DR6)  R6
FR7
FR8 (DR8)  R8
FR9
FR10 (DR10)  R10
FR11
FR12 (DR12)  R12
FR13
FR14 (DR14)  R14
FR15  R15 (SP)

FR0 to FR15: For variables and temporary storage (DR0) (DR14) (intermediate results of operations)
FR4 to FR11: For storing arguments. Indicated by [ ].
FR10 to FR14: For variables and temporary storage (intermediate results of operations)
R0 to R14: For variables and temporary storage (intermediate results of operations)
R4 to R7: For storing arguments. Indicated by [ ].
9.4 Important Information on Programming

In this section, important information on writing program code for the compiler, and matters to bear in mind during development of a program from compiling through debugging, are discussed.

9.4.1 Important Information on Program Coding

(1) Functions with float Type Parameters

Functions must declare prototypes or change float type to double type when receiving and passing float type parameters. Data values cannot be guaranteed when a float type parameter without a prototype declaration receives data.

Example:

```c
void f (float);
void g ()
{
    float a;
    ...
    f (a);
}
void f (float x)
{
    .
    .
    .
}
```

Function f has a float type parameter. Therefore, a prototype must be declared.
(2) Expressions whose Evaluation Order is not Specified by the C/C++ Language

The effect of the execution is not guaranteed in a program whose execution results differ depending on the evaluation order.

Example:

\[ a[i]=a[++i]; \]
\[ \text{The value of } i \text{ on the left side differs depending on whether the right side of the assignment expression is evaluated first.} \]

\[ \text{sub}(++i, i); \]
\[ \text{The value of } i \text{ for the second parameter differs depending on whether the first function parameter is evaluated first.} \]

(3) Overflow Operation and Zero Division

An error message is not output if an operation leading to an overflow or floating-point division by zero is performed at run time. However, error messages will be output for any of the following operations.

- Integer constants of the `unsigned long long` type for which the absolute values are out of range
- Floating-point constants of the `float` type where the values have the suffix `f` or `F` and are out of range
- Floating-point constants of the `double` type where the values have no suffix or the suffix `l` or `L` and are out of range
- Division by Zero performed with integer constants or floating-point constants

Example:

```c
unsigned long long la,lb,lc,ld,le=0;
float fa,fb,fc,fd,fe=0.0f;
double da,db,dc,dd,de=0.0;
void main()
{
```
la = 32767;
fa = 3.5e+37f;
da = 1.8e+307;

lb = 18446744073709551616; /*(W) Overflow of an integer */
    /* constant will be detected. */
fb = 3.5e+38f;    /*(W) Overflow of a floating- */
    /* point constant will be */
    /* detected. */
db = 1.8e+308;    /*(W) Overflow of a floating- */
    /* point constant will be */
    /* detected. */

lc = la + 18446744073709551615; /* No message is output. */
fc = fa + 3.4e+38f;    /* No message is output. */
dc = da + 1.7e+308;    /* No message is output. */

ld /= 0;          /*(W) Division by zero of an */
    /* integer constant will be */
    /* detected. */
fd /= 0.0f;       /*(W) Division by zero of a */
    /* floating-point constant will */
    /* be detected. */
dd /= 0.0;        /*(W) Division by zero of a */
    /* floating-point constant will */
    /* be detected. */

ld /= le;         /* No message is output. */
fd /= fe;         /* No message is output. */
dd /= de;         /* No message is output. */
}
(4) Assignment to const Variables

Even if a variable is declared with const type, if assignment is done to a non-constant variable converted from const type or if a program compiled separately uses a parameter of a different type, the compiler cannot detect the error.

Example:

```c
const char *p;          /* Because the first parameter p in library */
  /* function strcat is a pointer for char, */
  /* the area indicated by the parameter p */
strcat(p, "abc");       /* may change. */
```

```c
file 1
const int i;

file 2
extern int i;         /* In file 2, parameter i is not declared as */
  /* const, therefore assignment to it in */
i=10;                 /* file 2 is not an error */
```

(5) Precision of Mathematical Function Libraries

For functions acos(x) and asin(x), an error is large around x=1. Therefore, precautions must be taken. Note the error range below.

- Absolute error for `acos(1.0 - ε)`
  - double precision: $2^{-39} (ε = 2^{-33})$
  - single precision: $2^{-21} (ε = 2^{-19})$

- Absolute error for `asin(1.0 - ε)`
  - double precision: $2^{-29} (ε = 2^{-28})$
  - single precision: $2^{-21} (ε = 2^{-16})$
(6) Interrupt Functions When the CPU Type is SH2A-FPU, SH4, or SH4A

In a CPU with floating-point precision mode (SH2A-FPU, SH4 or SH4A), when the fpu option is not specified or when fpu=single is specified, floating-point operation code is generated assuming that the precision mode is single-precision mode (the PR bit of the FPSCR register is 0) at the start of all functions. However, in the case of interrupt functions, they might actually be called in double-precision mode. Therefore, for an interrupt function that performs single-precision floating-point operation, be sure to make the following settings for FPSCR in the function. The settings are not required when fpu=double is specified.

When the fpu option is not specified
Set the precision mode of FPSCR to single precision (0) at the entrance of the interrupt function.

Setting example:

```c
set_fpscr(get_fpscr()&0xFFF7FFFF);
```

When fpu=single is specified
Save the state of the PR bit of FPSCR, and then set the precision mode to single precision (0) at the entrance of the interrupt function. Then, restore the PR bit to the original state at the exit of the interrupt function.

Setting example:

At the entrance of the function

```c
int original_fpscr = get_fpscr();
set_fpscr(original_fpscr&0xFFF7FFFF); // Set to single precision
```

At the exit of the function

```c
set_fpscr(original_fpscr); // Restore the precision to original precision
return;
```

However, a program with fpu=single specification can enter double-precision mode only during execution of a standard library function that satisfies both of the following conditions.
- fprintf(), printf(), sprintf(), vfprintf(), vprintf(), or vsprintf() function
- In any of the functions above, format specification uses %g, %G, %f, %e, or %E.

If the program does not use a library function that satisfies these conditions, the above settings are not required even if there is an interrupt function that performs single-precision floating-point operation.
9.4.2 Important Information on Compiling a C Program with the C++ Compiler

(1) Function prototype declarations
Before using a function, a prototype declaration is necessary. At this time, the types of parameters should also be declared.

```
extern void func1();
void g()
{
    func1(1); // Error
}

extern void func1(int);
void g()
{
    func1(1); // OK
}
```

(2) Linkage of const objects
Whereas in C programs const objects are linked externally, in C++ programs they are linked internally. In addition, const objects require initial values.

```
const cvalue1;
    // Error

const cvalue2 = 1;
    // Internal

extern const cvalue2 = 1;
    // Links externally
    // as a C program

const cvalue1=0;
    // Gives initial value
```

(3) Assignment of void*
In C++ programs, if explicit casting is not used, assignment of pointers to other objects (excluding pointers to functions and to members) is not possible.

```
void func(void *ptrv, int *ptri)
{
    ptri = ptrv;  // Error
}

void func(void *ptrv, int *ptri)
{
    ptri = (int *)ptrv;  //OK
}
```
9.4.3 Important Information on Program Development

Important information for program development, from program creation through debugging, is described below.

(1) Information concerning selection of the CPU
   (a) The same CPU type should be specified at compilation time and assembly time.
      The CPU type specified using the `cpu` option at compilation time and assembly time must always be the same. If object programs created for different CPU types are linked, operation of the object program at runtime is not guaranteed.
   (b) The same CPU type at compilation time should be specified at assembly time.
      When assembling an assembly program generated by the compiler, the `cpu` option should be used to specify the same CPU type specified by the CPU at compilation time.
   (c) At linkage, the standard library appropriate to the CPU type should be linked.
      A library appropriate to the CPU type should always be specified. Operation in the event that an inappropriate library is linked is not guaranteed.

(2) Important information on options
   The options listed below should always be the same at compile time and when building libraries. If object programs created using different options are linked, operation of the object program at runtime is not guaranteed.
   — endian = big | little (SH-3, SH3-DSP, SH-4, SH-4A, or SH4AL-DSP)
   — pic = 0 | 1 (excluding SH-1)
   — fpu = single | double (SH2A-FPU, SH-4, or SH-4A)
   — fpscr = safe | aggressive (SH2A-FPU, SH-4, or SH-4A)
   — round = zero | nearest (SH2A-FPU, SH-4, or SH-4A)
   — denormalize = on | off (SH-4 or SH-4A)
   — double = float (excluding SH2A-FPU, SH-4, and SH-4A)
   — exception | noexception
   — rtti = on | off
   — pack = 1 | 4
   — rttnext | nortnext
   — macsave
   — gbr = auto | user
   — bit_order = left | right
   — auto_enum
Section 10  C/C++ Language Specifications

10.1 Language Specifications

10.1.1 Compiler Specifications

The following shows compiler specifications for the implementation-defined items which are not prescribed by language specifications.

(1) Environment

Table 10.1 Environment Specifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Compiler Specifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Purpose of actual argument for the &quot;main&quot; function</td>
<td>Not stipulated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Structure of interactive I/O devices</td>
<td>Not stipulated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2) Identifiers

Table 10.2 Identifier Specifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Compiler Specifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Number of valid letters in non externally-linked identifiers (internal names)</td>
<td>Up to 8189 letters in both external and internal names</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Number of valid letters in externally-linked identifiers (external names)</td>
<td>Up to 8191 letters in both external and internal names</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Distinction of uppercase and lowercase letters in externally-linked identifiers (external names)</td>
<td>Uppercase and lowercase letters are distinguished</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### (3) Characters

#### Table 10.3 Character Specifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Compiler Specifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Elements of source character sets and execution environment character sets</td>
<td>Source program character sets and execution environment character sets are both ASCII character sets. However, string literals and character constants can be written in shift JIS or EUC Japanese character code, or Latin1 code.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Shift states used in coding multi-byte characters</td>
<td>Shift states are not supported.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Number of bits in characters in character sets in program execution</td>
<td>8-bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Relationship between source program character sets in character constants and string literals and characters in execution environment character sets</td>
<td>Corresponds to same ASCII characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Values of integer character constants that include characters or extended notation which are not stipulated in language specifications</td>
<td>Characters and extended notations which are not stipulated in the language specifications are not supported.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Values of character constants that include two or more characters, and wide character constants that include two or more multi-byte characters</td>
<td>The first two characters of character constants are valid. Wide character constants are not supported. Note that a warning error message is output if you specify more than one character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Specifications of locale used for converting multi-byte characters to wide characters</td>
<td>Locale is not supported.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>char type value</td>
<td>Same value range as signed char type.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(4) Integers

Table 10.4 Integer Specifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Compiler Specifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Representation and values of integers</td>
<td>See table 10.5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Values when integers are converted to shorter signed integer types or unsigned integers are converted to signed integer types of the same size (when a converted value cannot be represented as the target type)</td>
<td>After conversion, the integer value becomes the value of the eight lower-order bytes (when the size of the post-conversion type is eight bytes), four lower-order bytes (when the size of the post-conversion type is four bytes), two lower-order bytes (when the size of the post-conversion type is two bytes), or the lowest-order byte (when the size of the post-conversion type is one byte).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Result of bit-wise operations on signed integers</td>
<td>Signed value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Remainder sign in integer division</td>
<td>Same sign as dividend.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Result of right shift of signed integral types with a negative value</td>
<td>Maintains sign bit.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 10.5 Range of Integer Types and Values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value Range</th>
<th>Data Size</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>char</td>
<td>-128 to 127</td>
<td>1 byte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>signed char</td>
<td>-128 to 127</td>
<td>1 byte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>unsigned char</td>
<td>0 to 255</td>
<td>1 byte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>short</td>
<td>-32768 to 32767</td>
<td>2 bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>unsigned short</td>
<td>0 to 65535</td>
<td>2 bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>int</td>
<td>-2147483648 to 2147483647</td>
<td>4 bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>unsigned int</td>
<td>0 to 4294967295</td>
<td>4 bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>long</td>
<td>-2147483648 to 2147483647</td>
<td>4 bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>unsigned long</td>
<td>0 to 4294967295</td>
<td>4 bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>long long</td>
<td>-9223372036854775808 to 9223372036854775807</td>
<td>8 bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>unsigned long long</td>
<td>0 to 18446744073709551615</td>
<td>8 bytes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### (5) Floating-point numbers

**Table 10.6 Floating-Point Number Specifications**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Compiler Specifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Representation and values of floating-point type</td>
<td>There are three types of floating-point numbers: float, double, and long double types. See section 10.1.3, Floating-Point Number Specifications, for the internal representation of floating-point types and specifications for their conversion and operation. Table 10.7 shows the limits of floating-point type values that can be expressed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Method of truncation when integers are converted into floating-point numbers that cannot accurately represent the actual value</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Methods of truncation or rounding when floating-point numbers are converted into shorter floating-point numbers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 10.7 Limits of Floating-Point Type Values**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Limits</th>
<th>Decimal Notation*</th>
<th>Hexadecimal Notation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Maximum value of float type</td>
<td>3.4028235677973364e+38f (3.4028234663852886e+38f)</td>
<td>7f7fffff</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Minimum positive value of float type</td>
<td>1.00000000000000000000E-45f (1.4012984643248171e-45f)</td>
<td>00000001</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Maximum values of double type and long double type</td>
<td>1.7976931348623158e+308 (1.7976931348623157e+308)</td>
<td>7efffffffffffffff</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Minimum positive values of double type and long double type</td>
<td>4.9406564584124655e−324 (4.9406564584124654e−324)</td>
<td>0000000000000001</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes: 1. The limits for decimal notation are the maximum value smaller than infinity and the minimum value greater than 0. Values in parentheses are theoretical values.
2. If `double=float` is specified, double type is treated as float type. If `fpu=single` is specified, double and long double types are treated as float type. If `fpu=double` is specified, float type is treated as double type.
(6) Arrays and Pointers

Table 10.8  Array and Pointer Specifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Compiler Specifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Integer type (size_t) required to hold maximum array size</td>
<td>unsigned long type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Conversion from pointer type to integer type (pointer type size &gt;= integer type size)</td>
<td>Value of least significant byte of pointer type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Conversion from pointer type to integer type (pointer type size &lt; integer type size)</td>
<td>Zero extension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Conversion from integer type to pointer type (integer type size &gt;= pointer type size)</td>
<td>Value of least significant byte of integer type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Conversion from integer type to pointer type (integer type size &lt; pointer type size)</td>
<td>Sign extension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Integer type (ptrdiff_t) required to hold difference between pointers to members in the same array</td>
<td>int type</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(7) Registers

Table 10.9  Register Specifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Compiler Specifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Maximum number of variables that can be assigned to registers</td>
<td>7: char, unsigned char, bool, short, unsigned short, int, unsigned int, long, unsigned long, pointer 4: float<em>2 2: double</em>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Types of variables that can be assigned to registers</td>
<td>char, unsigned char, bool, short, unsigned short, int, unsigned int, long, unsigned long, float<em>2, double</em>3, pointer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes: 1. When register is assigned to variables, it does not matter whether or not the register-storage class has been declared. If enable_register is specified, however, variables for which the register-storage class has been declared will be preferentially assigned to registers.
2. When the CPU is SH-2E, SH2A-FPU, SH-4, or SH-4A.
3. When the CPU is SH2A-FPU, SH-4, or SH-4A.
(8) Class, Structure, Union, and Enumeration Types, and Bit Fields

Table 10.10  Class, Structure, Union, and Enumeration Types, and Bit Field Specifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Compiler Specifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Referencing members in union type accessed by members of another type</td>
<td>Can be referenced but value cannot be guaranteed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Boundary alignment of class and structure members</td>
<td>The maximum data size of the class and structure members is used as the boundary alignment value. For details on assignment, see section 10.1.2 (2), Compound Type (C), Class Type (C++).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Sign of bit fields of simple int types</td>
<td>signed int type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Order of bit fields within int type size</td>
<td>Assigned from most significant bit.*1 *2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Method of assignment when the size of a bit field assigned after a bit field is assigned within an int type size exceeds the remaining size in the int type</td>
<td>Assigned to next int type area.*1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Permissible type specifiers in bit fields</td>
<td>char, unsigned char, bool, short, unsigned short, int, unsigned int, long, unsigned long, enum, long long, unsigned long long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Integer type representing value of enumeration type</td>
<td>int type</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: 1. For details of assignment of bit fields, see section 10.1.2 (3), Bit Fields.
2. Specifying the bit_order=right option assigns bit fields from the least significant bit.

(9) Qualifiers

Table 10.11  Qualifier Specifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Compiler Specifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Types of volatile data access</td>
<td>Not stipulated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(10) Declarations

Table 10.12 Declaration Specifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Compiler Specifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Number of declarations modifying basic types</td>
<td>16 max.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(arithmetic types, structure types, union types)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following shows examples of counting the number of types modifying basic types.

i. int a; Here, a has an int type (basic type) and the number of types modifying the basic type is 0.

ii. char *f(); Here, f has a function type returning a pointer type to a char type (basic type), and the number of types modifying the basic type is 2.

(11) Statements

Table 10.13 Statement Specifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Compiler Specifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Number of case labels that can be declared in one switch statement</td>
<td>2,147,483,646 max.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(12) **Preprocessor**

**Table 10.14 Preprocessor Specifications**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Compiler Specifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Relationship between single-character character constants in constant expressions in a conditional compile, and character sets in the execution environment</td>
<td>Preprocessor statement character constants are the same as the execution environment character set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Method of reading include files</td>
<td>Files enclosed in &quot;&lt;&quot; and &quot;&gt;&quot; are read from the directory specified in the include option. If the specified file is not found, the directory specified in environment variable SHC_INC is searched, followed by the system directory (SHC_LIB).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Support for include files enclosed in double quotation marks</td>
<td>Supported. Include files are read from the current directory. If not found in the current directory, the file is searched for as described in 2, above.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Space characters in string literals after a macro is expanded</td>
<td>A string of space characters are expanded as one space character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Operation of #pragma statements</td>
<td>See section 10.3.1, #pragma Extension Specifiers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td><strong>DATE</strong> and <strong>TIME</strong> value</td>
<td>A value is specified based on the host computer's timer at the start of compiling.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
10.1.2 Internal Data Representation

This section explains the data type and the internal data representation. The internal data representation is determined according to the following four items:

1. Size
   Shows the memory size necessary to store the data.
2. Boundary alignment
   Restricts the addresses to which data is allocated. There are three types of alignment; 1-byte alignment in which data can be allocated to any address, 2-byte alignment in which data is allocated to even byte addresses, and 4-byte alignment in which data is allocated to addresses of multiples of four bytes.
3. Data range
   Shows the range of data of scalar type (C) or basic type (C++).
4. Data allocation example
   Shows an example of assignment of element data of compound type (C) or class type (C++).
(1) Scalar Type (C), Basic Type (C++)

Table 10.15 shows internal representation of scalar type data in C and basic type data in C++.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data Type</th>
<th>Size (bytes)</th>
<th>Alignment (bytes)</th>
<th>Sign</th>
<th>Data Range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>char</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Used</td>
<td>$-2^7$ ($-128$) to $2^7 - 1$ (127)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>signed char</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Used</td>
<td>$-2^7$ ($-128$) to $2^7 - 1$ (127)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unsigned char</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Unused</td>
<td>0 to $2^8 - 1$ (255)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>short</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Used</td>
<td>$-2^{15}$ ($-32768$) to $2^{15} - 1$ (32767)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unsigned short</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Unused</td>
<td>0 to $2^{16} - 1$ (65535)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Used</td>
<td>$-2^{31}$ ($-2147483648$) to $2^{31} - 1$ (2147483647)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unsigned int</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Unused</td>
<td>0 to $2^{32} - 1$ (4294967295)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Used</td>
<td>$-2^{31}$ ($-2147483648$) to $2^{31} - 1$ (2147483647)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unsigned long</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Unused</td>
<td>0 to $2^{32} - 1$ (4294967295)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long long</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Used</td>
<td>$-2^{63}$ to $2^{63} - 1$ (-9223372036854775808 to 9223372036854775807)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enum*1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Used</td>
<td>$-2^{31}$ ($-2147483648$) to $2^{31} - 1$ (2147483647)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>float</td>
<td>4*4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Used</td>
<td>$-\infty$ to $+\infty$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>double, long double</td>
<td>8*2, +4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Used</td>
<td>$-\infty$ to $+\infty$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pointer</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Unused</td>
<td>0 to $2^{32} - 1$ (4294967295)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bool*3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Unused</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference*3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Unused</td>
<td>0 to $2^{32} - 1$ (4294967295)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pointer to a data member*3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Used</td>
<td>0 to $2^{32} - 1$ (4294967295)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pointer to a member function*3, +5</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Notes:
1. The size of enum type is variable if `auto_enum` has been specified.
2. The size of double type is 4 bytes if `double=float` has been specified.
3. These data types are valid for C++ compilation only.
4. If `cpu=sh2afpu`, `cpu=sh4`, or `cpu=sh4a` and `fpu=single` have been specified, double type and long double type are treated as 4 bytes (float type). If `cpu=sh2afpu`, `cpu=sh4`, or `cpu=sh4a` and `fpu=double` have been specified, float type is treated as 8 bytes (double type).
5. Pointers to function and virtual member functions are represented by classes in the following data structure.

```cpp
class _PMF{
public:
  long d; //Object offset value.
  long i; //Index in the virtual
    //function table when
    //the target function is the
    //virtual function.

union{
  void (*f)(); //Address of a function when
    //the target function is a
    //non-virtual function.
  long offset; //Object offset value of the
    //virtual function table
    //when the target function
    //is the virtual function.
};
};
```
(2) Compound Type (C), Class Type (C++)

This section explains internal representation of array type, structure type, and union type data in C and class type data in C++.

Table 10.16 shows internal representation of compound type and class type data.

**Table 10.16 Internal Representation of Compound Type and Class Type Data**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data Type</th>
<th>Alignment (bytes)</th>
<th>Size (bytes)</th>
<th>Data Allocation Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Array</td>
<td>Array element alignment</td>
<td>Number of array elements × element size</td>
<td>char a[10]; &lt;br&gt;Alignment: 1 byte &lt;br&gt;Size: 10 bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structure</td>
<td>Maximum structure member alignment</td>
<td>Total size of members. Refer to Structure Data Allocation, below.</td>
<td>struct { &lt;br&gt;char a,b; &lt;br&gt;}; &lt;br&gt;Alignment: 1 byte &lt;br&gt;Size: 2 bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Union</td>
<td>Maximum union member alignment</td>
<td>Maximum size of member. Refer to Union Data Allocation, below.</td>
<td>union { &lt;br&gt;char a,b; &lt;br&gt;}; &lt;br&gt;Alignment: 1 byte &lt;br&gt;Size: 1 byte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>1. Always 4 if a virtual function is included &lt;br&gt;2. Other than 1 above: maximum member alignment</td>
<td>Sum of data members, pointer to the virtual function table, and pointer to the virtual base class. Refer to Class Data Allocation, below.</td>
<td>class B:public A { &lt;br&gt;virtual void f(); &lt;br&gt;}; &lt;br&gt;Alignment: 4 bytes &lt;br&gt;Size: 8 bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>class A { &lt;br&gt;char a; &lt;br&gt;}; &lt;br&gt;Alignment: 1 byte &lt;br&gt;Size: 1 byte</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In the following examples, a rectangle indicates four bytes. The diagonal line represents blank area for alignment.

**Structure Data Allocation:**

- When structure members are allocated, an unused area may be generated between structure members to align them to boundaries.

  ```c
  struct {
    char a;
    int b;
  } obj
  ```

  ![Diagram of obj.a and obj.b](image)

- If a structure has 4-byte alignment and the last member ends at an 1-, 2-, or 3-byte address, the following three, two, or one byte is included in this structure.

  ```c
  struct {
    int a;
    char b;
  } obj
  ```

  ![Diagram of obj.a and obj.b](image)
Union Data Allocation:

- When an union has 4-byte alignment and its maximum member size is not a multiple of four, the remaining bytes up to a multiple of four is included in this union.

```c
union {
    int a;
    char b[7];
} o;
```

Class Data Allocation:

- For classes having no base class or virtual functions, data members are allocated according to the allocation rules of structure data.

```c
class A{
    char data1;
    int data2;
    public:
    A();
    int getData1(){return data1;}
}obj;
```
• If a class is derived from a base class of 1-byte alignment and the start member of the derived class is 1-byte data, data members are allocated without unused areas.

```c
class A{
    char data1;
};
class B:public A{
    char data2;
    short data3;
} obj;
```

| obj.data1 | obj.data2 | obj.data3 |

• For a class having a virtual base class, a pointer to the virtual base class is allocated.

```c
class A{
    short data1;
};
class B: virtual protected A{
    char data2;
} obj;
```

Pointer to the virtual base class (generated by the compiler)
For a class having virtual functions, the compiler creates a virtual function table and allocates a pointer to the virtual function table.

```cpp
class A{
    char data1;
    public:
    virtual int getData1();
};
```

![Diagram showing pointer to virtual function table and virtual function table entries.

- `obj.data1`: Pointer to the virtual function table (generated by the compiler)
- Virtual function table (generated by the compiler)
- 0
- `A::getData1`
• An example is shown for class having virtual base class, base class, and virtual functions.

```cpp
class A{
    char data1;
    virtual short getData1();
};
class B:virtual public A{
    char data2;
    char getData2();
    short getData1();
};
class C:virtual protected A{
    int data3;
};
class D:virtual public A,public B,public C{
    public:
    int data4;
    short getData1();
}obj;
```
Pointer to the virtual function table (generated by the compiler)

Pointer to the virtual base class (generated by the compiler)

Pointer to the virtual base class (generated by the compiler)

Pointer to the virtual function table (generated by the compiler)

Virtual function table (generated by the compiler)

-18
A::getData1

Virtual function table (generated by the compiler)

0
B::getData1
• For an empty class, a 1-byte dummy area is assigned.

```c
class A{
  void fun();
} obj;
```

```
One byte

Dummy area
```

• For an empty class having an empty class as its base class, the dummy area is 1 byte.

```c
class A{
  void fun();
};
class B: A{
  void sub();
} obj;
```

```
One byte

Dummy area
```
• Dummy areas shown in the above two examples are allocated only when the class size is 0. No dummy area is allocated if a base class or a derived class has a data member or has a virtual function.

```c
class A{
    void fun();
};
class B: A{
    char data1;
} obj;
```

![Diagram showing allocation of a one-byte dummy area for class data member.]
(3) Bit Fields

A bit field is a member allocated with a specified size in a structure, union, or class. This part explains how bit fields are allocated.

**Bit Field Members:** Table 10.17 shows the specifications of bit field members.

**Table 10.17 Bit Field Member Specifications**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Specifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type specifier allowed for bit fields</td>
<td>(signed) char, unsigned char, bool*¹ (signed) short, unsigned short, enum (signed) int, unsigned int (signed) long, unsigned long (signed) long long, unsigned long long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to treat a sign when data is extended to the declared type*⁴</td>
<td>A bit field with no sign (unsigned is specified for type): Zero extension<em>³ A bit field with a sign (unsigned is not specified for type): Sign extension</em>⁴</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes: 1. The bool type is only valid at C++ compilation.
2. To use a bit field member, data in the bit field is extended to the declared type. One-bit field data with a sign is interpreted as the sign, and can only indicate 0 and −1. To indicate 0 and 1, bit field data must be declared with unsigned.
3. Zero extension: Zeros are written to the upper bits to extend data.
4. Sign extension: The most significant bit of a bit field is used as a sign and the sign is written to all higher-order bits to extend data.
**Bit Field Allocation:** Bit field members are allocated according to the following five rules:

- Bit field members are placed in an area beginning from the left, that is, the most significant bit.

```c
struct b1 {
  int a:2;
  int b:3;
} x;
```

- Consecutive bit field members having type specifiers of the same size are placed in the same area as much as possible.

```c
struct b1 {
  long           a:2;
  unsigned int   b:3;
} y;
```

- Bit field members having type specifiers with different sizes are allocated to separate areas.

```c
struct b1 {
  int    a:5;
  char   b:4;
} z;
```
• If the number of remaining bits in an area is less than the next bit field size, though the type specifiers indicate the same size, the remaining area is not used and the next bit field is allocated to the next area.

```c
struct b2 {
    char   a:5;
    char   b:4;
} v;
```

![Diagram of bit allocation]

• If a bit field member with a bit field size of 0 is declared, the next member is allocated to the next area.

```c
struct b2 {
    char   a:5;
    char    :0;
    char   c:3;
} w;
```

![Diagram of bit allocation]

Note: It is also possible to place bit field members from the lower bit. For details, refer to the description on the `bit_order` option in section 2.2, Interpretation of Options, and the description on `#pragma bit_order` in section 10.3.1, #pragma Extension Specifiers.
(4) Memory Allocation in Little Endian
In little endian, data are allocated in the memory as follows:

**One-byte data ((signed) char, unsigned char, and bool types):** The order of bits in one-byte data for the big endian and the little endian is the same.

**Two-byte data ((signed) short and unsigned short types):** The upper byte and the lower byte will be reversed in two-byte data between the big endian and the little endian.

**Example:** When two-byte data 0x1234 is allocated at address 0x100:

- **Big endian:**
  - Address 0x100: 0x12
  - Address 0x101: 0x34
- **Little endian:**
  - Address 0x100: 0x34
  - Address 0x101: 0x12

**Four-byte data ((signed) int, unsigned int, (signed) long, unsigned long, and float types):** The order of bytes will be reversed in four-byte data between the big endian and the little endian.

**Example:** When four-byte data 0x12345678 is allocated at address 0x100:

- **Big endian:**
  - Address 0x100: 0x12
  - Address 0x101: 0x34
  - Address 0x102: 0x56
  - Address 0x103: 0x78
- **Little endian:**
  - Address 0x100: 0x78
  - Address 0x101: 0x56
  - Address 0x102: 0x34
  - Address 0x103: 0x12

**Eight-byte data ((signed) long long, unsigned long long, and double types):** The order of bytes will be reversed in eight-byte data between the big endian and the little endian.

**Example:** When eight-byte data 0x123456789abcdef is allocated at address 0x100:

- **Big endian:**
  - Address 0x100: 0x01
  - Address 0x101: 0x23
  - Address 0x102: 0x45
  - Address 0x103: 0x67
  - Address 0x104: 0x89
  - Address 0x105: 0xab
  - Address 0x106: 0xcd
  - Address 0x107: 0xef
- **Little endian:**
  - Address 0x100: 0xef
  - Address 0x101: 0xcd
  - Address 0x102: 0xab
  - Address 0x103: 0x89
  - Address 0x104: 0x67
  - Address 0x105: 0x45
  - Address 0x106: 0x23
  - Address 0x107: 0x01

**Compound-type and class-type data:** Members of compound-type and class-type data will be allocated in the same way as that of the big endian. However, the order of byte data of each member will be reversed according to the rule of data size.
Example: When the following function exists at address 0x100:

```c
struct {
    short a;
    int b;
} z = {0x1234, 0x56789abc};
```

Big endian:  Address 0x100: 0x12 Little endian:  Address 0x100: 0x34
Address 0x101: 0x34 Address 0x101: 0x12
Address 0x102: Empty area Address 0x102: Empty area
Address 0x103: Empty area Address 0x103: Empty area
Address 0x104: 0x56 Address 0x104: 0xbc
Address 0x105: 0x78 Address 0x105: 0x9a
Address 0x106: 0x9a Address 0x106: 0x78
Address 0x107: 0xbc Address 0x107: 0x56

Bit field: Bit fields will be allocated in the same way as that of the big endian. However, the order of byte data in each area will be reversed according to the rule of data size.

Example: When the following function exists at address 0x100:

```c
struct {
    long a:16;
    unsigned int b:15;
    short c:5;
} y = {1,1,1};
```

Big endian:  Address 0x100: 0x00 Little endian:  Address 0x100: 0x02
Address 0x101: 0x01 Address 0x101: 0x00
Address 0x102: 0x00 Address 0x102: 0x01
Address 0x103: 0x02 Address 0x103: 0x00
Address 0x104: 0x08 Address 0x104: 0x00
Address 0x105: 0x00 Address 0x105: 0x08
Address 0x106: Empty area Address 0x106: Empty area
Address 0x107: Empty area Address 0x107: Empty area
10.1.3 Floating-Point Number Specifications

(1) Internal Representation of Floating-Point Numbers

Floating-point numbers handled by this compiler are internally represented in the standard IEEE format. This section outlines the internal representation of floating-point numbers in the IEEE format.

(a) Format for internal representation

float types are represented in the IEEE single-precision (32-bit) format, while double types and long double types are represented in the IEEE double-precision (64-bit) format.

(b) Structure of internal representation

Figure 10.1 shows the structure of the internal representation of float, double, and long double types.

```
float type
31 30 23 22 0
  Exponent (8 bits)  Mantissa (23 bits)
  Sign (1 bit)

double type and long double type
63 62 52 51 0
  Exponent (11 bits)  Mantissa (52 bits)
  Sign (1 bit)
```

Note: When the -double=float option is specified, double types are internally represented in the same format as float types. When the cpu=sh2afpu or cpu=sh4 and fpu=single options are specified, double types and long double types are internally represented in the same format as float types. When the cpu=sh2afpu or cpu=sh4 and fpu=double options are specified, float types are internally represented in the same format as double types.

**Figure 10.1 Structure of Internal Representation of Floating-Point Numbers**

The internal representation format consists of the following parts:

i. Sign

  Shows the sign of the floating-point number. 0 is positive, and 1 is negative.

ii. Exponent

  Shows the exponent of the floating-point number as a power of 2.

iii. Mantissa

  Shows the data corresponding to the significant digits (fraction) of the floating-point number.
(c) Types of represented values of floating-point number

In addition to the normal real numbers, floating-point numbers can also represent values such as infinity. The following describes the types of values represented by floating-point numbers.

i. Normalized number
   Represents a normal real value; the exponent is not 0 or not all bits are 1.

ii. Denormalized number
   Represents real a value having a small absolute number; the exponent is 0 and the mantissa is other than 0.

iii. Zero
   Represents the value 0.0; the exponent and mantissa are 0.

iv. Infinity
   Represents infinity; all bits of the exponent are 1 and the mantissa is 0.

v. Not-a-number
   Represents the result of operation such as "0.0/0.0", "∞/∞", or "∞-∞", which does not correspond to a number or infinity; all bits of the exponents are 1 and the mantissa is other than 0.

Table 10.18 shows the types of values represented as floating-point numbers.

Table 10.18 Types of Values Represented as Floating-Point Numbers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exponent</th>
<th>Mantissa</th>
<th>Not 0 or not all bits are 1</th>
<th>All bits are 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Normalized number</td>
<td>Infinity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other than 0</td>
<td>Denormalized number</td>
<td></td>
<td>Not-a-number</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Denormalized numbers are floating-point numbers of small absolute values that are outside the range represented by normalized numbers. There are fewer valid digits in a denormalized number than in a normalized number. Therefore, if the result or intermediate result of a calculation is a denormalized number, the number of valid digits in the result cannot be guaranteed. When `cpu=sh4` or `cpu=sh4a` and `de-normalize=off` are specified, denormalized numbers are processed as 0. When `cpu=sh4` or `cpu=sh4a` and `de-normalize=on` are specified, denormalized numbers are processed as denormalized numbers.
(2) float type

float types are internally represented by a 1-bit sign, an 8-bit exponent, and a 23-bit mantissa.

i. Normalized numbers

The sign indicates the sign of the value, either 0 (positive) or 1 (negative). The exponent is between 1 and 254 \( (2^{8} - 2) \). The actual exponent is gained by subtracting 127 from this value. The range is between \(-126 \) and 127. The mantissa is between 0 and \( 2^{23} - 1 \). The actual mantissa is interpreted as the value of which \( 2^{23} \)rd bit is 1 and this bit is followed by the decimal point. Values of normalized numbers are as follows:
\[
(-1)^{sign} \times 2^{exponent-127} \times (1+(mantissa) \times 2^{-23})
\]
Example:

```
31 30 23 22 0
1|10000000|1100000000000000000000000
```

Sign: -
Exponent: \( 10000000_{(2)} - 127 = 1 \), where \( (2) \) indicates binary
Mantissa: \( 1.11_{(2)} = 1.75 \)
Value: \(-1.75 \times 2^{1} = -3.5\)

ii. Denormalized numbers

The sign indicates the sign of the value, either 0 (positive) or 1 (negative). The exponent is 0 and the actual exponent is \(-126 \). The mantissa is between 1 and \( 2^{23} - 1 \), and the actual mantissa is interpreted as the value of which \( 2^{23} \)rd bit is 0 and this bit is followed by the decimal point. Values of denormalized numbers are as follows:
\[
(-1)^{sign} \times 2^{-126} \times ((mantissa) \times 2^{-23})
\]
Example:

```
31 30 23 22 0
0|00000000|1100000000000000000000000
```

Sign: +
Exponent: \(-126\)
Mantissa: \( 0.11_{(2)} = 0.75 \), where \( (2) \) indicates binary
Value: \(0.75 \times 2^{-126}\)
iii. Zero
   The sign is 0 (positive) or 1 (negative), indicating +0.0 or −0.0, respectively. The exponent and mantissa are both 0.
   +0.0 and −0.0 are both the value 0.0. See section 10.1.3 (4), Floating-Point Operation Specifications, for the functional differences deriving from the sign used with zero.

iv. Infinity
   The sign is 0 (positive) or 1 (negative), indicating +∞ or −∞, respectively.
   The exponent is 255 (2^8−1).
   The mantissa is 0.

v. Not-a-number
   The exponent is 255 (2^8−1).
   The mantissa is a value other than 0.

Note: When the CPU is SH-2E, SH2A-FPU, SH-4, or SH-4A, not-a-number is called a qNaN when the MSB of the mantissa is 0, or sNaN when the MSB of the mantissa is 1. There are no specifications regarding the values of other mantissa fields or the sign.
(3) double types and long double types

double types and long double types are internally represented by a 1-bit sign, an 11-bit exponent, and a 52-bit mantissa.

i. Normalized numbers

The sign indicates the sign of the value, either 0 (positive) or 1 (negative). The exponent is between 1 and 2046 \( (2^{11}-2) \). The actual exponent is gained by subtracting 1023 from this value. The range is between \(-1022\) and 1023. The mantissa is between 0 and \(2^{52}-1\). The actual mantissa is interpreted as the value of which \(2^{52}\)nd bit is 1 and this bit is followed by the decimal point. Values of normalized numbers are as follows:

\[
(-1)^{\text{sign}} \times 2^{\text{exponent}-1023} \times (1+(\text{mantissa})\times 2^{-52})
\]

Example:

\[
\begin{array}{c|c}
63 & 62 \\
52 & 51 \\
0 & 0
\end{array}
\]

Sign: +

Exponent: 1111111111\(_{(2)}\) -1023 = 0, where \(_{(2)}\) indicates binary

Mantissa: 1.111\(_{(2)}\) = 1.875

Value: \(1.875 \times 2^0 = 1.875\)

ii. Denormalized numbers

The sign indicates the sign of the value, either 0 (positive) or 1 (negative). The exponent is 0 and the actual exponent is -1022. The mantissa is between 1 and \(2^{52}-1\), and the actual mantissa is interpreted as the value of which \(2^{52}\)nd bit is 0 and this bit is followed by the decimal point. Values of denormalized numbers are as follows:

\[
(-1)^{\text{sign}} \times 2^{-1022} \times ((\text{mantissa}) \times 2^{-52})
\]

Example:

\[
\begin{array}{c|c}
63 & 62 \\
52 & 51 \\
0 & 0
\end{array}
\]

Sign: -

Exponent: -1022

Mantissa: 0.111\(_{(2)}\) = 0.875, where \(_{(2)}\) indicates binary

Value: \(0.875 \times 2^{-1022}\)
iii. Zero
   The sign is 0 (positive) or 1 (negative), indicating +0.0 or −0.0, respectively. The exponent
   and mantissa are both 0.
   +0.0 and −0.0 are both the value 0.0. See section 10.1.3 (4), Floating-Point Operation
   Specifications, for the functional differences deriving from the sign used with zero.
iv. Infinity
   The sign is 0 (positive) or 1 (negative), indicating +∞ or −∞, respectively. The exponent is
   2047 (2^{11}−1).
   The mantissa is 0.
v. Not-a-number
   The exponent is 2047 (2^{11}−1).
   The mantissa is a value other than 0.

Note: When the CPU is SH-2E, SH2A-FPU, SH-4, or SH-4A, not-a-number is called a qNaN
when the MSB of the mantissa is 0, or sNaN when the MSB of the mantissa is 1. There are
no specifications regarding the values of other mantissa fields or the sign.
(4) Floating-Point Operation Specifications

This section describes the specifications for arithmetic operations on floating-point numbers in C/C++, and for conversion between the decimal representation of floating-point numbers and their internal representation during compilation and in library processing.

(a) Specifications for arithmetic operations

i. Rounding of results

When the result of arithmetic operations on floating-point numbers exceeds the number of valid limit in the mantissa in internal representation, the result is rounded according to the following rules:

a. For results of single-precision arithmetic when the CPU is SH-2E, any portion that exceeds the number of valid digits is truncated.

b. When the CPU is SH2A-FPU, SH-4, or SH-4A, and \texttt{round = zero} is specified, the portion that exceeds the valid digits is rounded toward zero.

c. Other than in the above cases, the result is rounded toward the closer of the two possible internal representations of the approximating floating-point number.

When the result is exactly equidistant from the two approximating floating-point numbers, it is rounded to the floating-point number for which the last digit of the mantissa is 0.

ii. Processing of overflows, underflows, and illegal operations

The following is performed in the event of an overflow, underflow, or illegal operation.

a. In the case of an overflow, the result is a positive or negative infinity, depending on the sign of the result.

b. In the case of an underflow, the result is as follows depending on the setting in the CPU.

\begin{itemize}
  \item[b-1] In the SH-2E, the float-type result is a positive or negative zero depending on the sign of the result, and the double-type or long double-type result is a denormalized number.
  \item[b-2] In the SH2A-FPU, the result is a positive or negative zero depending on the sign of the result.
  \item[b-3] In the SH-4 or SH-4A, the result is a denormalized number when \texttt{denormalize=on} is specified or a positive or negative zero depending on the sign of the result when \texttt{denormalize=off} is specified.
  \item[b-4] In the other CPUs, the result is a denormalized number.
\end{itemize}

c. In the case of an illegal operation, in which infinity values of the opposite sign have been added, in which an infinity has been subtracted from another infinity of the same sign, in which zero has been multiplied by infinity, in which zero is divided by zero, or in which infinity is divided by infinity, the result is a not-a-number.
d. If an overflow results from conversion of a floating-point number to an integer, the result is not guaranteed.

Note: Operations are performed on constant expressions during compilation. If an overflow, underflow, or illegal operation occurs, a warning level error message is output.

iii. Notes on operations on special values

The following are notes on operations on special values (zero, infinity, and not-a-number).

a. The sum of a positive zero and a negative zero is a positive zero.

b. The difference between two zeros of the same sign is a positive zero.

c. The result of operations that include not-a-number in one or both operands is always a not-a-number.

d. In comparative operations, positive zeros and negative zeros are processed as equal.

e. The result of comparative operations or equivalence operations where either one or both operands are not-a-number is true for "!=" and false in all other cases.

(b) Conversion between decimal and internal representation

This section describes the specifications for conversions between floating-point numbers in a source program and internal representation, and conversion by library functions between the decimal representation of floating-point numbers in ASCII strings and their internal representation.

i. When converting from decimal to internal representation, the decimal value is first converted to its normalized form. The normalized form of a decimal value is

\[ \pm M \times 10^N, \]

where M and N are in the following range:

a. Normalized form of float types

\[ 0 \leq M \leq 10^9-1 \]
\[ 0 \leq N \leq 99 \]

b. Normalized form of double and long double types

\[ 0 \leq M \leq 10^{17}-1 \]
\[ 0 \leq N \leq 999 \]
If a decimal value cannot be converted to its normalized form, an overflow or underflow occurs. If the decimal representation contains more valid numerals than the normalized form, the trailing digits are truncated. In this case, a warning level error message is output when compiling and the corresponding error number is set in `errno` when the program is executed. For conversion to its normalized form, the original decimal representation must, in the form of ASCII strings, be within 511 characters. If not, an error occurs when compiling and the corresponding error number is set in `errno` when the program is executed. When converting from internal representation to decimal, the value is first converted to the normalized decimal form, then converted to ASCII strings according to the specified format.

ii. Conversion between normalized form of decimals and internal representation

When converting from the normalized form of decimals to internal representation, and vice versa, errors cannot be avoided when the exponent is large or small. The following describes the range within which conversion is accurate, and the error limits when the values are outside that range.

a. Range for accurate conversion

The rounding shown in (a) i, “Rounding of results” is correctly applied for floating-point numbers within the ranges shown below. No overflow or underflow will occur within these ranges.

1. float types: $0 \leq M \leq 10^9 - 1$, $0 \leq N \leq 13$
2. double and long double types: $0 \leq M \leq 10^{17} - 1$, $0 \leq N \leq 27$

b. Error limits

The difference between the error that occurs when converting values that do not fall in the ranges shown in a. above and the error that occurs when rounding is correctly performed does not exceed 0.47 times the smallest digit of the valid numerals. If the value exceeds the ranges shown in a. above, an overflow or underflow may occur during conversion. In this case, a warning level error message is output during compilation, and the corresponding error number is set in `errno` when the program is executed.
10.1.4 Operator Evaluation Order

If an expression includes multiple operators, the evaluation order of these operators is determined according to the precedence and the associativity indicated by right or left.

Table 10.19 shows each operator precedence and associativity.

Table 10.19 Operator Precedence and Associativity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Precedence</th>
<th>Operators</th>
<th>Associativity</th>
<th>Applicable Expression</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>++ -- (postfix) ( ) [ ] - &gt; .</td>
<td>Left</td>
<td>Postfix expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>++ -- (prefix) ! ~ + - * &amp; sizeof</td>
<td>Right</td>
<td>Monomial expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>(Type name)</td>
<td>Right</td>
<td>Cast expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>* / %</td>
<td>Left</td>
<td>Multiplicative expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>+ -</td>
<td>Left</td>
<td>Additive expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>&lt;&lt; &gt;&gt;</td>
<td>Left</td>
<td>Shift expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>&lt;= &gt;=</td>
<td>Left</td>
<td>Relational expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>== !=</td>
<td>Left</td>
<td>Equality expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>&amp;</td>
<td>Left</td>
<td>Bitwise AND expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>^</td>
<td>Left</td>
<td>Bitwise XOR expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>&amp;&amp;</td>
<td>Left</td>
<td>Logical AND operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>?:</td>
<td>Right</td>
<td>Conditional expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>= += -= *= /= %= &lt;&lt;= &gt;&gt;= &amp;=</td>
<td>= ^=</td>
<td>Right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>,</td>
<td>Left</td>
<td>Comma expression</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
10.2 DSP-C Specifications

This section describes the compiler specifications of the DSP-C language, which can be used when the `dspc` option is specified.

10.2.1 Fixed-Point Data Types

Table 10.20 Internal Representation of the Fixed-Point Data Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Size (Size in Memory)</th>
<th>Alignment (byte)</th>
<th>Data Range</th>
<th>Suffix of Constant</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>_ _fixed</td>
<td>16 bits (16 bits)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-1.0</td>
<td>1.0\times 2^{-15}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(0.999969482421875)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long _ _fixed</td>
<td>32 bits (32 bits)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-1.0</td>
<td>1.0\times 2^{-31}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(0.99999999953433871</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>26922607421875)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>_ _accum</td>
<td>24 bits (32 bits)*</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-256.0</td>
<td>256.0\times 2^{-15}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(255.999999999534338</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>7126922607421875)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long _ _accum</td>
<td>40 bits (64 bits)*</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-256.0</td>
<td>256.0\times 2^{-31}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(255.9999999999534338</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>7126922607421875)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The number of bits is right-aligned in the memory. The sign bit is extended through the higher-order bits.
Example:
(i) (_ _accum)128.5a: 00 40 40 00
(ii) (long _ _accum)(-256.0A): FF FF FF 80 00 00 00 00

10.2.2 Qualifiers

(1) Memory Qualifiers
The following qualifiers are used to explicitly specify storage in either the X or Y memory.

- _ _X: The data is stored in the X memory.
- _ _Y: The data is stored in the Y memory.

Table 10.21 shows the relationship between memory qualifiers and sections.
Table 10.21 Specifications of Memory Qualifiers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Constant area</td>
<td>$XC</td>
<td>const-type data (stored in the X memory)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$YC</td>
<td>const-type data (stored in the Y memory)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initialized data area</td>
<td>$XD</td>
<td>Data with an initial value (stored in the X memory)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$YD</td>
<td>Data with an initial value (stored in the Y memory)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uninitialized data area</td>
<td>$XB</td>
<td>Data without an initial value (stored in the X memory)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$YB</td>
<td>Data without an initial value (stored in the Y memory)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes: 1. Do not specify two memory qualifiers for the same variable. An error message is displayed.
2. For the variable with a memory qualifier, no section is switched by specifying #pragma section.
3. A memory qualifier cannot change the function where the memory is stored.
4. When a memory qualifier has been specified for a local variable which has not been specified as static, a warning message is displayed and the specification of the memory qualifier becomes invalid. However, it is valid to specify a pointer to the data with the memory qualifier.

The following shows examples of storage in memory when qualifiers $X$ and $Y$ are used.

- $X$ int a; //Stored in the X memory.
- int $X$ b; //Stored in the X memory.
- $Y$ int *c; //A pointer to an int-type variable in the Y memory (memory area is undefined).
- int $Y$ *d; //A pointer to an int-type variable in the Y memory (memory area is undefined).
- int *$Y$ c; //A pointer (stored in the Y memory) to an int-type variable.
- $X$ int *$Y$ f; //A pointer (stored in the Y memory) to int-type variables in the X memory.
(2) Saturation Qualifier
The following qualifier is used to specify saturation arithmetic.

- `_sat`

The `_sat` qualifier can only be used with the `_fixed` and long `_fixed` data types. An error will occur if this qualifier is specified with any other type.

When there is at least one `_sat` specification in an expression, saturation arithmetic will be applied in the operation.

Example:
```
_fixed a;
_sat _fixed b;
_fixed c;

a = -0.75r;
b = -0.75r;
c = a + b;      //c = -1.0r
```

(3) Circular Qualifier
The following qualifier is used to specify modulo addressing.

- `_circ`

Modulo addressing can only be specified for `_fixed`-type one-dimensional arrays or pointers for which memory qualifiers have been specified (_X or _Y). If such qualifiers are specified when other conditions apply, an error will occur.

The targets of modulo addressing are one-dimensional arrays or pointers between intrinsic functions `set_circ_x()` or `set_circ_y()` and `clr_circ()`. For the specifications of the intrinsic functions, refer to section 10.3.3, Intrinsic Functions.

Operation is not guaranteed if multiple arrays are specified for modulo addressing at the same time or an array or a pointer with the `_circ` specification is referred to outside the above combinations of intrinsic functions.

Operations for which negative modulo addressing is specified are not guaranteed.
Data for modulo addressing should be arranged such that the upper 16 bits of the addresses are the same at linkage.

Content of an array cannot be directly referred to.

Note: Operations are not guaranteed in any of the following cases (a warning message may be displayed):

- Specifies optimize = 0.
- Specifies the _ circ pointer as other than the local variable.
- Specifies volatile as the _ circ pointer.
- Only updates the _ circ pointer; not referred to.
- Calls a function between set_circ_x() / set_circ_y() and clr_circ() intrinsic functions.

10.2.3 Constants

Attaching a suffix of a constant (table 10.20) to a numeric value explicitly indicates that the value is a fixed-point constant.

However, constants with suffixes r and R are processed as _ accum and long _ accum when their numeric values include integer sections.

When a suffix of a constant is omitted, the value is processed as a double-type constant. When the fixed_const option is specified, the value is processed as a fixed-point constant.

Although no fixed-point constant is the saturation type, explicit conversion of the type enables saturation arithmetic.

Example:

```c
    _fixed a;
    _fixed b;
    a = -0.75r;
    b = a + (_sat _fixed) (-0.75r); // b = -1.0r
```

Since a unary negation operator cannot be part of a fixed-point constant, -1.0r is not valid as a _ fixed type; it should be described as (-0.5r-0.5r) (In this manual, –1.0r is simply described as –1.0 of _ fixed type).

When the limits on precision for the decimal fraction are exceeded or the integer section without a sign exceeds 255 which is the maximum value of _ accum or long _ accum, a warning message
is displayed and the decimal fraction above the precision is rounded down. For the integer section, the least significant bit of the overflow is processed as a sign bit and the other bits are discarded.

### 10.2.4 Type Conversion

Table 10.22 shows the rules used in type conversion.

**Table 10.22 Rules Used in Type Conversion**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conversion</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>_fixed → long _fixed</td>
<td>The 16 lower-order bits are padded with zeroes. The value is not changed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>_accum → long _accum</td>
<td>The 16 lower-order bits are discarded. Precision of the decimal fraction is lowered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long _fixed → _fixed</td>
<td>The 16 lower-order bits are discarded. Precision of the decimal fraction is lowered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long _accum → _accum</td>
<td>Sign extension to fill the eight higher-order bits. The value is not changed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>_fixed → long _accum</td>
<td>Sign extension to fill the eight higher-order bits. The 16 lower-order bits are padded with zeroes. The value is not changed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long _fixed → long _fixed</td>
<td>Sign extension to fill the eight higher-order bits. The 16 lower-order bits are discarded. Precision of the decimal fraction is lowered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>_accum → _fixed</td>
<td>The eight higher-order bits are discarded. The sign is assigned to the ninth bit. When the integer section is 0, the value is not changed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long _accum → long _fixed</td>
<td>The eight higher-order bits are discarded. The sign is assigned to the ninth bit. When the integer section is 0, the value is not changed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>_accum → long _fixed</td>
<td>The eight higher-order bits are discarded. The sign is assigned to the ninth bit. When the integer section is 0, the value is not changed. Precision of the decimal fraction is lowered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long _accum → _fixed</td>
<td>The eight higher-order bits are discarded. The 16 lower-order bits are discarded. The sign is assigned to the ninth bit. When the integer section is 0, the value is not changed. Precision of the decimal fraction is lowered.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 10.22 Rules Used in Type Conversion (cont)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conversion</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>_fixed → signed integer</td>
<td>–1 for –1.0r and –1.0R; 0 in other cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long _fixed → signed integer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>_accum → signed integer</td>
<td>The value of the decimal fraction is discarded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long _accum → signed integer</td>
<td>The value after conversion is an integer in the range from -256 to 255.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>_fixed → unsigned integer</td>
<td>The maximum value of the target type for –1.0r and –1.0R. 0 in other cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long _fixed → unsigned integer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>_accum → unsigned integer</td>
<td>The decimal fraction is discarded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long _accum → unsigned integer</td>
<td>For a positive value, the value after conversion is an integer in the range from 0 to 255. For a negative value: (value before conversion + 1 + maximum value of the target type).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>signed integer → _fixed</td>
<td>The most significant bit before conversion is changed as the most significant bit after conversion. All other bits become 0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>signed integer → long _fixed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>signed integer → _accum</td>
<td>The nine lower-order bits of the value become the integer section.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>signed integer → long _accum</td>
<td>The decimal fraction is 0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unsigned integer → _fixed</td>
<td>All bits after conversion become 0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unsigned integer → long _fixed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unsigned integer → _accum</td>
<td>The nine lower-order bits of the value become the integer section.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unsigned integer → long _accum</td>
<td>The decimal fraction is 0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fixed point → floating point</td>
<td>If the pre-conversion value can be expressed in the floating-point type, the value remains the same. If the same value cannot be expressed, it is rounded off to the nearest value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>floating point → fixed point</td>
<td>The specification for the decimal fraction is the same as for ‘fixed point → floating point’ conversion. The specification for the integer section is the same as for ‘floating point → integer’ conversion. When the integer section is in the range that can be expressed as a fixed-point value, the original value will be kept. When the integer section is outside that range, the least-significant bit of the portion that overflowed becomes the sign bit. Saturation operation is not applied, even if it has been specified for the target type.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
10.2.5 Arithmetic Conversion

When two operands differ in type, calculation is done in accordance with the type that is higher in the hierarchy of figure 10.2.

An error occurs if a calculation includes types that are neither above nor below each other in this hierarchy (e.g., between integer type and fixed-point type, or between _accum and long__fixed). When calculation is required in such cases, explicit cast should be applied to adjust the types.

However, for the sake of efficiency and convenience, the above rules for conversion may be ignored when a result is guaranteed.

![Figure 10.2 Hierarchy of Arithmetic Conversion](image-url)

**Figure 10.2 Hierarchy of Arithmetic Conversion**
10.2.6 Pointer Conversion

(a) __circ Qualifier
When a pointer with the __circ qualifier is converted to a pointer without the __circ qualifier, a warning message is displayed and modulo addressing is not applicable.

When __circ is specified for a pointer without the __circ qualifier, a warning message is not displayed. However, modulo addressing is still not applicable.

(b) Memory Qualifier (__X or __Y)
An attempt to assign a memory qualifier to a variable already declared with another qualifier will cause an error.

10.2.7 Operators

The following operators cannot be specified for the fixed-point type; if specified, an error will occur.

- Operator for the 1’s complement (~)
- Bitwise AND operator (& or &=)
- Bitwise OR operator (| or |=)
- Bitwise XOR operator (^ or ^=)
- Shift operator (<<, >>, <<=, or >>=)
- Remainder operator (% or %=)

Table 10.23 shows the values returned by the sizeof operator.

### Table 10.23 Values Returned by the sizeof Operator

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>__fixed</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long __fixed</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>__accum</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long __accum</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
10.2.8 Libraries

(a) fixed.h
The include-file <fixed.h> defines the limit values of the fixed-point type. For details, refer to section 10.4.1, Standard C Libraries.

(b) stdio.h
Table 10.24 shows the conversion specifiers for fixed-point values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conversion Specifier</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>%r</td>
<td>_ _fixed value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%lr</td>
<td>long _ _fixed value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%a</td>
<td>_ _accum value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%la</td>
<td>long _ _accum value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%P</td>
<td>_ _circ pointer value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The conversion of fixed-point values is based on the %f conversion (floating-point conversion). The %P is converted in the same way as %p (pointer conversion).
Table 10.25 shows the functions for the handling of fixed-point values. For details, refer to section 10.4.1, Standard C Libraries.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Function Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>String-value conversion</td>
<td>long _ _fixed atofixed(const char * nptr);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>long _ _accum atolaccum(const char * nptr);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>long _ _fixed strtofixed(const char * nptr, char ** endptr);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>long _ _accum strtolaccum(const char * nptr, char ** endptr);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage-area management</td>
<td>void _ <em>X *calloc</em> _X(size_t nelem, size_t elsize);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void free_ _X(void _ _X *ptr);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void _ <em>X *malloc</em> _X(size_t size);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void _ <em>X *realloc</em> _X(void _ _X *ptr, size_t size);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void _ <em>Y *calloc</em> _Y(size_t nelem, size_t elsize);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void free_ _Y(void _ _Y *ptr);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void _ <em>Y *malloc</em> _Y(size_t size);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void _ <em>Y *realloc</em> _Y(void _ _Y *ptr, size_t size);</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The user should also prepare a low-level interface routine for the _ _X or _ _Y memory:
char _ _X *sbrk_ _X(int size);
char _ _Y *sbrk_ _Y(int size);
For details, refer to section 9.2.2 (6), Low-level interface routines.
(d) string.h

Table 10.26 shows the functions for the handling of fixed-point values. For details, refer to section 10.4.1, Standard C Libraries.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Function Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Storage-area</td>
<td>void _X * memcpy__X__X(void _X * s1, const void _X * s2, size_t n);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>copy</td>
<td>void _X * memcpy__X__Y(void _X * s1, const void _Y * s2, size_t n);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void _Y * memcpy__Y__X(void _Y * s1, const void _X * s2, size_t n);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void _Y * memcpy__Y__Y(void _Y * s1, const void _Y * s2, size_t n);</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(e) DSP Library

When the `dspc` option is specified, fixed-type arrays and pointers can be specified instead of short-type arrays and pointer parameters. For details, refer to section 10.4.5, DSP Library.
10.3 Extended Specifications

The compiler supports the following extended specifications:

- `#pragma` extension specifiers
- Section address operators
- Intrinsic functions

10.3.1 `#pragma` Extension Specifiers

Tables 10.27 to 10.29 list `#pragma` extension specifiers. Note that conditions apply to the application of some `#pragma` directives which are related to optimization, i.e. some may not be applicable. Check the output code to see whether or not the optimization has actually been performed.

Table 10.27 Extended Specifications Relating to Memory Allocation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><code>#pragma</code> Extension Specifier</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>#pragma section</code></td>
<td>Switches sections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>#pragma abs16</code></td>
<td>Specifies address range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>#pragma abs20</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>#pragma abs28</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>#pragma abs32</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>#pragma stacksize</code></td>
<td>Creates stack section</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 10.28 Extended Specifications Relating to Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>#pragma Extension Specifier</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>#pragma interrupt</td>
<td>Creates an interrupt function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#pragma inline</td>
<td>Performs inline expansion of functions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#pragma inline_asm</td>
<td>Expands an assembly-language description function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#pragma regsave,</td>
<td>Generates or does not generate save and restore code at the start and end of functions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#pragma noregsave,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#pragma nogralloc</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#pragma entry</td>
<td>Creates an entry function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#pragma ifunc</td>
<td>Suppresses saving and restoring of the floating-point registers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#pragma tbr</td>
<td>Calls functions by using TBR relative addresses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#pragma align4</td>
<td>Branch destination addresses in the specified function are placed on 4-byte boundaries</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 10.29 Other Extended Specifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>#pragma Extension Specifier</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>#pragma global_register</td>
<td>Allocates global variables to registers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#pragma gbr_base,</td>
<td>Specifies GBR base variables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#pragma gbr_base1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#pragma bit_order</td>
<td>Switches the order of bit assignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#pragma pack,</td>
<td>Specifies the boundary alignment value for structures, unions, and classes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#pragma unpack</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#pragma address</td>
<td>Specifies absolute addresses for variables</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For some of the extended functions above, data members and member functions can be specified. Specification format is (class name::member name). For the specifiable member types, see the format of each function.

(1) Extended Specifications Related to Memory Allocation

#pragma section

Description Format: #pragma section [{<name> | <numeric value>}] |

Description: Switches the section to be output by the compiler. Table 10.30 lists the default section names and section names after switching sections.
Table 10.30  Section Switching and Section Name

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Target Area</th>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Default Section Name</th>
<th>After Switching Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Program area</td>
<td>#pragma section &lt;xx&gt;</td>
<td>P'</td>
<td>P&lt;xx&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constant area</td>
<td></td>
<td>C'</td>
<td>C&lt;xx&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initialized data area</td>
<td></td>
<td>D'</td>
<td>D&lt;xx&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uninitialized data area</td>
<td></td>
<td>B'</td>
<td>B&lt;xx&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The default section name can be modified by the `section` option. If `<name>` and `<number>` are not specified, the default section names will be used.

Example:

```c
#pragma section abc
int a;     /* a is assigned to section Babc */
const int c=1;    /* c is assigned to section Cabc */
void f(void)    /* f is assigned to section Pabc */
{
    a=c;
}
```

```c
int b;     /* b is assigned to section B */
void g(void)    /* g is assigned to section P */
{
    b=c;
}
```

Remarks:
1. `#pragma section` can be declared only outside the function definition.
2. Up to 2045 section names can be declared for each of `#pragma section` in one file.
3. When specified together with a memory specifier (`_X` or `_Y`), the specification of `#pragma section` will be invalid.
#pragma abs16
#pragma abs20
#pragma abs28
#pragma abs32

Description Format: #pragma abs16 [(]<identifier> […… ] [)]
#pragma abs20 [(]<identifier> […… ] [)]
#pragma abs28 [(]<identifier> […… ] [)]
#pragma abs32 [(]<identifier> […… ] [)]

Description: The variable or function declared with #pragma abs16, abs20, abs28, or abs32 is treated as being allocated in the memory area shown in table 10.31. Then, program size can be reduced. For the identifier, a variable, a global function, a static data member, and a member function can be specified.

Table 10.31 Address Ranges

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>#pragma Extension</th>
<th>Address Range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abs16</td>
<td>Beginning: 0x00000000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>End: 0x00007FFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0xFFFFF8000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abs20</td>
<td>0x00000000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0x0007FFFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0xFFF80000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0xFFFFFFFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abs28</td>
<td>0x00000000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0x07FFFF7F*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0xF8000000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0xFFFFFFFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abs32</td>
<td>0x00000000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0x0FFFFFF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Be aware that the end of the range is 0x07FFFF7F.

Remarks:
1. #pragma abs16, abs20, abs28, or abs32 cannot be used to specify an automatic object or non-static data member.
2. Variables and functions declared using #pragma abs16, abs20, abs28, or abs32 must be allocated in the corresponding address range shown above.
3. Multiple address ranges cannot be specified for a single identifier.
4. When #pragma abs16, abs20, abs28, or abs32 is specified together with the abs16, abs20, abs28, or abs32 option, the #pragma specification becomes valid.
   #pragma abs16, abs20, abs28, or abs32 is invalid when it is specified together with #pragma gbr_base or gbr_base1.
#pragma stacksize

Description Format: #pragma stacksize <constant>

Description: Creates a stack section of size <constant> for the section with name S.

Example: #pragma stacksize 100

<Example of code expansion>
.SECTION S, STACK, ALIGN=4
.RES.B 100

Remarks: The size, <constant>, must always be specified as a multiple of four. #pragma stacksize can only be specified once in a file.
(2) Extended Specifications Related to Functions

#pragma interrupt

Description Format: #pragma interrupt [(<function name>[(interrupt specification)]][…][)]

Description: Declares an interrupt function. Global functions and static member functions can be specified for the function name. Table 10.32 lists interrupt specifications.
### Table 10.32 Interrupt Specifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Options</th>
<th>Specifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stack switching</td>
<td>sp=</td>
<td>(&lt;variable&gt;</td>
<td>The address of a new stack is specified with a variable or a constant. &lt;variable&gt;: Variable (pointer type) &amp;&lt;variable&gt;: Variable (object type) address &lt;constant&gt;: Constant value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&lt;variable&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;constant&gt; +</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&lt;variable&gt;</td>
<td>&amp;&lt;constant&gt;+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trap-instruction return</td>
<td>tn=</td>
<td>&lt;constant&gt;</td>
<td>The interrupt function exits with the TRAPA instruction. &lt;constant&gt;: Constant value (trap vector number)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Register bank</td>
<td>resbank</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Output of code for saving the following registers is suppressed. R0 to R14, GBR, MACH, MACL, PR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Register bank switching and</td>
<td>sr_rts</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>The interrupt function exits with the RTS instruction. The code for saving only the registers used in the function is output. The RB and BL bits of the SR are set at the end of the function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTS-instruction return</td>
<td>rts</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>The interrupt function exits with the RTS instruction. Output of the code for saving the SSR, SPC, or R0 to R7 is suppressed. The code for saving the other registers used in the function is generated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

An interrupt function will guarantee register values before and after processing (all registers used by the function are pushed onto and popped from the stack when entering and exiting the function). The **RTE** instruction directs the function to return. However, if the trap-instruction return is specified, the **TRAPA** instruction is executed at the end of the function. An
interrupt function with no specifications is processed in the usual procedure. The stack switching specification and the trap-instruction return specification can be specified together.

Example:

```c
extern int STK[100];
#pragma interrupt(f(sp = STK+100, tn = 10), A::g)
class A{
public:
    static void g();
};
```

Explanation:

(a) Stack switching specification: STK+100 is set as the stack pointer used by interrupt function f.

(b) Trap-instruction return specification: After the interrupt function has completed its processing, TRAPA #H'10 is executed. The SP at the beginning of trap exception processing is shown in figure 10.3. After the previous PC (program counter) and SR (status register) are popped from the stack by the RTE instruction in the trap routine, control is returned from the interrupt function.

(c) The member function that can be specified in C++ program is a static member function. In the example, static member function g of class A is specified as an interrupt function. Note that nonstatic member functions cannot be specified.
Figure 10.3  Stack Processing by an Interrupt Function
Nested interrupt functions can be created through the `sr_rts` and `bank` settings and the `sr_jsr()` intrinsic function.

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>

// Handling function declaration
#pragma interrupt (func(bank))
void func();

// Interrupt processing function declaration
#pragma interrupt (sub(sr_rts))
void sub();
void func() {
    sr_jsr(sub,8);  // Calls sub()
    // with RB = 0, BL = 0, and
    // interrupt level = 8
}

void sub() {
    
}
```
func:

\[ \text{MOV.L R14, @R15} \]
\[ \text{STS.L PR, @R15} \]
\[ \text{STC SSR, @R15} \]
\[ \text{STC SPC, @R15} \]
\[ \text{STC SR, R6} \]
\[ \text{MOV.L L12+6, R1} \quad \text{H'CFFFFF0F} \]
\[ \text{MOV \#-128, R4} \quad \text{H'FFFFFF80} \]
\[ \text{EXTU.B R4, R4} \]
\[ \text{MOV.L L12+10, R14} \quad \text{_sub} \]
\[ \text{AND R1, R6} \]
\[ \text{OR R4, R6} \]
\[ \text{LDC R6, SR} \]
\[ \text{JSR @R14} \]
\[ \text{NOP} \]

\[ \text{LDC @R15+, SPC} \]
\[ \text{LDC @R15+, SSR} \]
\[ \text{LDS.L @R15+, PR} \]
\[ \text{MOV.L @R15+, R14} \]
\[ \text{RTE} \]
\[ \text{NOP} \]

_sub:

\[ \text{MOV.L R0, @R15} \]
\[ \text{MOV.L R1, @R15} \]

RB = 1, BL = 1
Saves the registers used in the function, SPC, and SSR, except R0 to R7.

RB = 0, BL = 0, and IMASK = 8.
Calls the sub() function. Execution will return with the settings changed to RB = 1 and BL = 1.

RB = 0, BL = 0, and IMASK = 8.
Saves the registers used in the function, SPC, and SSR, except R0 to R7.

RB = 0, BL = 0, and IMASK = 8.
Restores the registers used in the function, SPC, and SSR, except R0 to R7.
Changes the setting to IMASK = 8.
STC    SR,R0
MOV.L   L12+2,R1 ; H'30000000
OR     R1,R0
MOV.L   @R15+,R1
LDC    R0,SR
RTS
LDC.L   @R15+,R0_BANK

Changes the settings to RB = 1 and BL = 1, and restores the registers used in the function.

Because the setting has been changed to RB = 1.

An efficient interrupt function using register banks can be created through the rts and bank settings.

Example:
#include <machine.h>

// Handling function declaration
#pragma interrupt (func(bank))
void func();

// Interrupt processing function declaration
#pragma interrupt (sub(rts)
void sub();
void func() {
    ;
    sub();
    ;
}

void sub() {
    ;
}
_func:

STS.L PR,@-R15

: MOV.L L12,R14; _sub
JSR @R14
NOP

: LDS.L @R15+,PR
RTE
NOP

_RB = 1 and BL = 1
Saves the registers used in the
function except R0 to R7.

_Restores the registers used in
the function except R0 to R7.

_sub:

MOV.L R14,@-R15
MOV.L R13,@-R15

: MOV.L @R15+,R13
RTS
MOV.L @R15+,R14

Saves the registers used in the
function except R0 to R7.

Restores the registers used in
the function except R0 to R7.

Remarks:

1. resbank is only valid when _cpu = sh2a or sh2afpu is specified.

2. Register bank usage must be enabled before an interrupt for the function
with resbank specification occurs.

3. When both resbank and tn are specified, neither register saving code nor
RESBANK instruction is output. In this case, generate a RESBANK
instruction in the trap routine.

4. When returning from the function with the resbank specification,
the value of the variable specified with #pragma global_register is
restored to its original value before the interrupt even when it is modified
during interrupt processing.

5. The interrupt operation in the SH-3, SH3-DSP, SH-4, SH-4A, and
SH4AL-DSP is different from that in the SH-1, SH-2, SH-2E, SH-2A,
SH2A-FPU, and SH2-DSP, and requires interrupt handlers. When the
same function is specified for #pragma interrupt and #pragma
noregsave, in the SH-3, SH3-DSP, SH-4, SH-4A, and SH4AL-DSP, only
the contents of callee-save registers used within the function are saved and restored.

6. When the **repeat** option is specified, the contents of the RS and RE registers are saved and restored.
   When the **dspe** option is specified, the contents of the DSP registers (X0, X1, Y0, Y1, M0, M1, A0, A0G, A1, and A1G), DSR register, and MOD register are saved and restored.

7. Functions that can be specified for an interrupt function definition are the global function (in C/C++ program) and static member function (in C++ program).

The function must return only void data. The return statement cannot have a return value. If attempted, an error is output.

Example:

```c
#pragma interrupt(f1(sp=100),f2)
void f1(){...} ....................... (a)
int f2(){...}  ....................... (b)
```

Description:  
(a) is a correct declaration. 
(b) returns type that is not void, thus (b) is an incorrect declaration. An error will occur.

8. **sr_rts**, **bank**, and **rts** are valid when `cpu=sh3|sh3dsp|sh4|sh4a|sh4aldsp` is specified. The following shows the combinations of **sr_rts**, **bank**, or **rts** and other interrupt specifications that can be set together.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>#pragma interrupt</th>
<th>#pragma noregsave</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sp</td>
<td>tn</td>
<td>sr_rts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sr_rts</td>
<td>Error</td>
<td>Error</td>
<td>Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bank</td>
<td>Valid</td>
<td>Error</td>
<td>Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rts</td>
<td>Error</td>
<td>Error</td>
<td>Error</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
An error will be output in the following cases.

- A function with the sr_rts setting is called from a function other than the sr_jsr() intrinsic function.
- A function with the bank setting is called.
- A function with the rts setting is called from a function without bank or rts setting.

9. A function declared as an interrupt function cannot be called within the program. If attempted, an error will occur. However, if the function is called within a program which does not have a declaration of the interrupt function, an error does not occur but correct program execution is not guaranteed.

Example 1 (An interrupt function is declared):
```c
#pragma interrupt(f1)
void f1(){...}
int f2(){ f1();} ............. (a)
```

Description: Function f1 cannot be called in the program because it is declared as an interrupt function. An error occurs at (a).

Example 2 (An interrupt function is not declared):
```c
int f1();
int f2(){ f1();} ............. (b)
```

Description: Because function f1 is not declared as an interrupt function, an object is generated as a non-interrupt function, int f1();. If function f1 is declared as an interrupt function in another file, correct program execution cannot be guaranteed.

Note: In a CPU with floating-point precision mode (SH2A-FPU, SH4, or SH4A), when the fpu option is not specified or when fpu=single is specified, the precision mode might need to be set to perform single-precision floating-point operation in an interrupt function. For details, see section 9.4.1 (6) Interrupt Functions When the CPU Type Is SH2A-FPU, SH4, or SH4A.
#pragma inline

Description Format: #pragma inline [(<function name>, …)][[<function name>]]

Description: Declares a function for which inline expansion is performed.
A name of a global function or a static member function can be specified as a
function name.
A function specified by #pragma inline or a function with specifier inline
(C++) will be expanded where the function is called.

Example: Source Program

```c
#pragma inline (func)
static int func (int a, int b)
{
    return (a+b)/2;
}
int x;
main ()
{
    x = func(10,20);
}
```

Inline Expansion Image

```c
int x;
main( )
{
    int func_result;
    {
        int a_1 = 10, b_1 = 20;
        func_result = (a_1+b_1)/2;
    }
    x = func_result;
}
```
Remarks:

1. A function will not be expanded in the following cases:
   — a function definition exists before the `#pragma inline` specification
   — a function has variable parameters
   — a parameter address is referenced in a function
   — an address of a function to be expanded is used to call the function
   — recursive calls are used

2. Specify `#pragma inline` before defining a function.

3. When a program file includes the definition of a function to be inlined, be sure to specify `static` before the function declaration because an external definition is generated for a function specified by `#pragma inline`. If `static` is specified, an external definition will not be created. External definition will not be created for functions for which inline (C++) is specified.

4. Also, when a `scope` option is specified, inline expansion may not be performed.
#pragma inline_asm

Description Format: #pragma inline_asm [()]<function name>[size=<numeric value>][,...][)]

Description: Performs inline expansion for the functions written in assembly language declared by #pragma inline_asm.

Parameters of a function that is written in an assembly language are referenced from an inline_asm function because they are stacked or stored in registers in the same way as general function calls. The return value of an inline function written in an assembly language should be set in R0. When the cpu is SH-2E, SH2A-FPU, SH-4, or SH-4A, return values of single-precision floating-point type should be set in FR0. When the cpu is SH2A-FPU, SH-4, or SH-4A, return values of double-precision floating-point type should be set in DR0. A different register may be used depending on the combination of options. For details, see table 9.7.

The length of an inline function written in an assembly language can be specified by (size=<numeric value>).

Example: Source program
```
#pragma inline_asm(rot1)
static int rotl (int a)
{
  ROTL R4
  MOV R4,R0
}

int x;
main(
{
  x = 0x55555555;
  x = rotl(x);
}
```
Output result (partial):

```
main ;function main
;frame size = 4
    MOV.L R14,@-R15
    MOV.L L220+2,R14 ;_x
    MOV.L L220+6,R3 ;H'55555555
    MOV.L R3,R14
    MOV R3,R4
    BRA L219
    NOP
L220:
    .RES.W 1
    .DATA.L _x
    .DATA.L H'55555555
L219:
    ROTL R4
    MOV R4,R0
    .ALIGN 4
    MOV.L R0,@R14
    RTS
    MOV.L @R15+,R14
    .SECTION B,DATA,ALIGN=4
_x: ;static: x
    .RES.L 1
    .END
```
Remarks:

1. Specify `#pragma inline_asm` before the definition of a function. External definition will be created for functions specified by `#pragma inline_asm`.

2. Be sure to use local labels in a function written in an assembly language.

3. When the registers whose values are saved and restored at the start and end of a function (see table 9.5) are used in a function written in an assembly language, the contents of these registers must be saved and restored at the start and end of the function. Also, when registers FR12 to FR15 (if CPU is SH-2E, SH2A-FPU, SH-4, or SH-4A) are used, or when registers DR12 to DR14 (if CPU is SH2A-FPU, SH-4, or SH-4A) are used, the contents of these registers must be saved and restored at the start and end of the inline function written in the assembly language.

4. Do not use RTS at the end of a function written in an assembly language.

5. When `#pragma inline_asm` is used, be sure to compile programs by specifying `code=asmcode` to generate assembly code.

6. When specifying a number by `(size=<numeric value>)`, specify a number larger than the actual object size. If a value smaller than the actual object size is specified, correct operation is not guaranteed. If a floating point or a numeric value less than 0 is specified, an error will occur.

7. Even when a register specified by the `#pragma global_register` function is used, the contents of this register must be saved and restored at the start and end of the inline function written in an assembly language.

8. A member function cannot be specified for the function name.

9. Do not use a statement that generates a literal pool. (`MOV.L #100000, R0 etc.`)
#pragma regsave
#pragma noregsave
#pragma noregalloc

Description Format: 
#pragma regsave [()]<function name>[…][)]
#pragma noregsave [()]<function name>[…][)]
#pragma noregalloc [()]<function name>[…][)]

Description: 
1. Global functions and member functions can be specified as the function name.
2. Functions specified by #pragma regsave save and restore the contents of callee-save registers (see table 9.5) at the start and end of the functions, respectively. Inside the function specified by #pragma regsave, callee-save registers (R8 to R14, and FR12 to FR15 if CPU is SH-2E, SH2A-FPU, SH-4, or SH-4A) will not carry a value over a child function call.
3. Functions specified by #pragma noregsave do not save or restore the contents of callee-save registers at the start and end of the functions.
4. Functions specified by #pragma noregalloc do not save or restore the contents of callee-save registers at the start and end of the functions. Inside the function specified by #pragma noregalloc, callee-save registers (R8 to R14, and FR12 to FR15 if CPU is SH-2E, SH2A-FPU, SH-4, or SH-4A) will not carry a value over a child function call.
5. #pragma regsave and #pragma noregalloc can specify the same function at the same time. In this case, the contents of registers R8 to R14 (and FR12 to FR15 if CPU is SH-2E, SH2A-FPU, SH-4, or SH-4A) are saved and restored at the start and end of the function if they are used. Inside the function specified by #pragma regsave, callee-save registers (R8 to R14, and FR12 to FR15 if CPU is SH-2E, SH2A-FPU, SH-4, or SH-4A) will not carry a value over a child function call.
6. Functions specified by #pragma noregsave can be used in the following conditions: 
   a. A function is the first function activated and is not called from any other function.
   b. A function is called from a function that is specified by #pragma regsave.
   c. A function is called from a function that is specified by #pragma regsave via #pragma noregalloc.
Example:

```c
#pragma noregsave(f, A::j)
#pragma noregalloc(g)
#pragma regsave(h)
class A{
    public:
        static void j();
    }
void f();
void g();
void h();
void h(){
    g();
    f(); /* Function f declared with #pragma regsave */
    /* noregsave is directly called by h */
} /* declared with #pragma regsave */

void g(){
    f(); /* Functions f and A::j declared with */
    /* #pragma noregsave are indirectly called */
    /* by h via g declared with #pragma */
    /* noregalloc */
    A::j();
}

void f()
{
}
```

Remarks: The result of a call of a function declared with `#pragma noregsave` is not guaranteed if it is called in a way other than that shown above.
#pragma entry

Description Format: #pragma entry [(<function name>[(sp=<constant>)])]

Description: Handles the function specified in <function name> as an entry function. The entry function is created without any code to save and restore the contents of registers. When SH-3, SH3-DSP, SH-4, SH-4A, or SH4AL-DSP is specified as the CPU and sp=<constant> is specified, or #pragma stacksize is declared, the code that makes the initial setting of the stack pointer will be output at the beginning of the function.

Example 1:  
#pragma entry INIT(sp=0x10000)  
void INIT() {  
  ;  
}  
<Example of code expansion>  
  .SECTION P, CODE  
_INIT:  
    MOV.L  L1, R15  
    ;  
L1:  .DATA.L H'00010000  
  ;

Example 2:  
#pragma stacksize 100  
#pragma entry INIT  
void INIT() {  
  ;  
}  
<Example of code expansion>  
  .SECTION S, STACK  
  .RES.B 100  
  .SECTION P, CODE  
_INIT:  
    MOV.L  L1, R15  
    ;  
L1:  .DATA.L STARTOF S + SIZEOF S  
  ;
Remarks:  

#pragma entry must be specified before the function is declared. Only one 
entry function can be specified in a single load module. Always specify 
<constant> as a multiple of four. 
When cpu=sh1, sh2, sh2e, sh2a, sh2afpu, or sh2dsp has been specified, the 
specification of sp=<constant> will be invalid.

#pragma ifunc

Description Format: #pragma [(]ifunc <function name>[)]

Description: Suppresses saving and restoring of the floating-point registers during 
execution of the function specified by <function name>.

Remarks:  
#pragma ifunc must be specified before the function is declared. It is only 
valid when cpu=sh2e, cpu=sh2afpu, cpu=sh4, or cpu=sh4a is specified. If a 
floating-point number is used in the function specified in #pragma ifunc, 
an error will occur.

Example:  

float f;  
#pragma ifunc(func)  
void func(void) {  
    f=0.0f; /* Error */  
}
#pragma tbr

Description Format: 
#pragma tbr [(]<function name> [([sn=<section name> | ov=<offset>])]
[,...][)]

Description: Declares functions to be called by using TBR relative addresses. See the following detailed specifications.

(a) #pragma tbr <function name>

The function specified by <function name> is called by using an TBR relative address.
When there is a definition of <function name>, the address of func is output in $TBR section.

Example
#pragma tbr func
void func() {}
#pragma section AA
void func2() {
    func();
}

<Example of code expansion>
_func:
    RTS/N
_func2:
    STS.L PR,@-R15
    JSR/N @@($_func-(START OF $TBR),TBR)
    LDS.L @R15+,PR
    RTS/N

    .SECTION $TBR,DATA,ALIGN=4
$_func:
    .DATA.L _func

(b) #pragma tbr <function name> (sn=<section name>)
The function specified by <function name> is called by using an TBR relative address.
When there is a definition of <function name>, the address of func is output in $TBR<section name> section.
Example

```c
#pragma tbr func(sn=_A)
void func() {} 
#pragma section AA
void func2() {
    func();
}
```

<Example of code expansion>

```assembly
_func:
    RTS/N
_func2:
    STS.L PR,@-R15
    JSR/N @($_func-(START OF $TBR_A),TBR)
    LDS.L @R15+,PR
    RTS/N

.SECTION $TBR_A,DATA,ALIGN=4
$_func:
    .DATA.L $_func
```

(c) #pragma tbr <function name> (ov=<offset>)

The function specified by <function name> is called by using an TBR relative address.
A multiple of 4 within the range from 0 to 1020 should be specified for <offset>.
The compiler outputs no TBR address table.

Example

```c
#pragma tbr func(ov=32)
void func() {} 
#pragma section AA
void func2() {
    func();
}
```

<Example of code expansion>

```assembly
_func:
    RTS/N
```
Remarks:

#pragma tbr is only valid when cpu=sh2a or sh2afpu is specified. 
#pragma tbr overrides the tbr option if they are specified simultaneously. 
When pic=1 is specified, #pragma tbr is invalid. 
If both sn and ov are specified for a single function, the first specification is valid. 
Before calling the specified function, the start address of the corresponding section must be specified in TBR by using intrinsic function set_tbr().
Up to 255 functions can be specified by #pragma tbr in each section.

#pragma align4

Command Line Format:  #pragma align4 [()]<function name>=<type>[,...][n]]

Description:  This directive aligns the branch destination address of the function specified as <function name> to the 4-byte boundary. Table 10.33 shows the selectable types.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>all</td>
<td>Aligns all branch destination addresses within the specified function to the 4-byte boundary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loop</td>
<td>Aligns the start addresses of all loops within the specified function to the 4-byte boundary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inmostloop</td>
<td>Aligns the start addresses of the innermost loops within the specified function to the 4-byte boundary.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remarks:  
When #pragma align4 is specified for a function, the start address of the function is always aligned to a 4-byte boundary. All functions with #pragma align4 will not be optimized at linkage. When align4 and #pragma align4 are specified at the same time, the type specified with #pragma align4 will be valid. When align16 or align32 and #pragma align4 are specified at the same time, branch destination addresses within a function will be aligned with four-byte boundaries. The address
where a function starts is aligned with a four-byte boundary if it is immediately preceded by a function for which `#pragma align4` was specified, but otherwise is aligned with a 16- or 32-byte boundary.

(3) Other Extended Specifications

`#pragma global_register`

Description Format: `#pragma global_register [(<variable name>=<register name>[, ...])]

Description: Allocates the global variable specified in `<variable name>` to the register specified in `<register name>`. Global variables and static data members can be specified as the variable name.

Example: `#pragma global_register(a = R8, A::b = R9)

```cpp
class A {
    public:
    static int b;
};
int a;
void g()
{
    a = A::b;
}
```
Remarks:

1. This function is used for a simple or pointer type variable in the global variable; it cannot be used for an (unsigned) long long type variable. If CPU is other than SH2A-FPU, SH-4, or SH-4A, a double type variable can be specified only when double=float is specified.

2. Only use registers R8 to R14, FR12 to FR15 (if CPU is SH-2E, SH2A-FPU, SH-4, or SH-4A) and DR12 to DR14 (if CPU is SH2A-FPU, SH-4, or SH-4A).

3. The initial value cannot be set. In addition, the address of the specified variable cannot be referenced.

4. The reference of the specified variable from outside of the file is not guaranteed.

5. Static data members can be specified. Nonstatic data members cannot be specified.

- Type of variables that can be set in FR12 to FR15:
  
  **For SH-2E CPU**
  
  float type variables
  
  double type variables (when double=float is specified)
  
  **For SH2A-FPU, SH-4, or SH-4A CPU**
  
  float type variables (when fpu=double is not specified)
  
  double type variables (when fpu=single is specified)

- Type of variables that can be set in DR12 to DR14:
  
  **For SH2A-FPU, SH-4, or SH-4A CPU**
  
  float type variables (when fpu=double is specified)
  
  double type variables (when fpu=single is not specified)
#pragma gbr_base
#pragma gbr_base1

Description Format:  
#pragma gbr_base [(variable name[,...])]  
#pragma gbr_base1 [(variable name[,...])]  

Description:  Specifies variables to be accessed using a GBR register and an offset value.  For the variable name, variables and static data members can be specified.

The variable specified by #pragma gbr_base is assigned to section $G0, and the variable specified by #pragma gbr_base1 is assigned to section $G1.

#pragma gbr_base specifies that the variable is located in an offset of 0 to 127 bytes from the address specified by the GBR register.  #pragma gbr_base1 specifies that the variable is located in an offset of 128 or more bytes from the address specified by the GBR register, that is, a variable is in a range beyond the range specified by #pragma gbr_base.  An offset value is 255 bytes at maximum for a char or unsigned char type, 510 bytes at maximum for a short or unsigned short, and 1020 bytes at maximum for an int, unsigned int, long, unsigned long, float, or double type.  Based on the above specification, the compiler generates an object program in a GBR relative addressing mode that is optimized according to variable reference and settings.

The compiler also generates an optimized bit instruction in the GBR indirect addressing to char or unsigned char type data in the $G0 section.
Remarks:

1. If the total data size after the linker gathers sections $G0$ exceeds 128 bytes, the correct operation is not guaranteed. In addition, if there is data that has an offset value exceeding those specified above for `#pragma gbr_base` in section $G1$, correct operation is not guaranteed.

2. Section $G1$ must be allocated immediately after 128 bytes of section $G0$ in linkage.

3. In using these `#pragma`'s, be sure to set the start address of section $G0$ in the GBR register at the start of program execution.

4. Static data members can be specified, but non-static data members cannot be specified.

5. When `gbr=auto` is specified, the specification of `#pragma gbr_base` or `#pragma gbr_base1` will be invalid.
#pragma bit_order

Description Format: #pragma bit_order [{left|right}]

Description: Switches the order of bit field assignment.

When left is specified, bit field members are assigned from the upper-bit side. When right is specified, members are assigned from the lower-bit side.

The default is left.

If left or right is omitted, follow the options.

Example:

```c
#pragma bit_order left
typedef struct{
  unsigned char a;2;
  unsigned char b;3;
} x;

#pragma bit_order right
typedef struct{
  unsigned char a;2;
  unsigned char b;3;
} y;
```

// Different size

```c
#pragma bit_order right
typedef struct{
  unsigned short a;3;
  unsigned char b;4;
} z;
```

// Large size

```c
#pragma bit_order right
typedef struct{
  unsigned char a;5;
  unsigned char b;4;
} v;
```

Remarks: The specified order of assignment is valid until it is switched again. For details of bit fields, refer to section 10.1.2 (3), Bit Fields.
#pragma pack
#pragma unpack

Description Format: #pragma pack {1|4}
#pragma unpack

Description: Specifies the boundary alignment value for structure, union, and class members after #pragma pack is specified in the source program.

The boundary alignment value specified by the pack option is used for structure, union, and class members declared when this extension has not been specified or after #pragma unpack has been specified. Table 10.34 shows #pragma pack specifications and the corresponding boundary alignment values.

Table 10.34 #pragma pack Specifications and Corresponding Member Alignment Values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Extension and Member Type</th>
<th>#pragma pack 1</th>
<th>#pragma pack 4</th>
<th>#pragma unpack or No Extension Specified</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[unsigned] char</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[unsigned] short, and long _ _fixed</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Value specified by pack option</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[unsigned] int, [unsigned] long, [unsigned] long, long _ _fixed, _ _accum, long _ _accum, floating-point type, and pointer type</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Value specified by pack option</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structure, union, and class of boundary alignment value of 1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structure, union, and class of boundary alignment value of 2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Value specified by pack option</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structure, union, and class of boundary alignment value of 4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Value specified by pack option</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

```c
#pragma pack 1
struct S1 {
    char a; /* offset:0 */
    int b; /* offset:1 */
    char c; /* offset:5 */
} S1;

#pragma pack 4
struct S2 {
```

Remarks:

1. The structure, union, and class member for which `pack=1` or
   `#pragma pack 1` is specified cannot be accessed using a pointer
   (including an access within a member function using a pointer).
   If the address of a structure member is used in an assignment statement,
   as an actual argument, or as a return value, a warning message will be
   output.

Example

```c
#pragma pack 1
struct st {  
    char x;  
    int y;  
} ST;
```

```c
int *p=&ST.y; /* The ST.y address may be an odd value. */
```

```c
void func(void) {
    ST.y=1; /* Can be accessed correctly. */
    *p=1; /* Cannot be accessed correctly in some cases. */
}
```

2. The boundary alignment value for structure, union, and class members
   can also be specified by the `pack` option. When both the option and
   `#pragma` extension are specified together, the `#pragma` extension takes
   priority.

3. A single structure, union or class cannot include members with
   different numbers of bytes for boundary alignment. If code includes
   such a case, a warning is output.
struct X {
    int m;
} x;

#pragma pack 1
Struct S {
    char c;
    struct X a[2]; // Alignment is 4 byte →
    // a warning is output
};

4. When the iodefine.h file created by the Renesas High-Performance Embedded Workshop is in use, if #pragma or an option is used to set the alignment value to 1, the members of I/O register structures will not specify the correct addresses. To avoid this problem, place #pragma pack 4 at the start of iodefine.h and place #pragma unpack at the end of iodefine.h.

In addition, when having accessed using a pointer for the member of the structure, the union, and the class, or when having accessed using a pointer within a member function, please keep in mind that warning may not be outputted at the time of compile.
### #pragma address

**Description Format:**

`#pragma address [(<variable name>=<absolute address>[,...])]]`

**Description:**

Allocates specified variables to specified addresses. The compiler assigns a section for each specified variable, and the variable is allocated to the specified absolute address during linkage. If variables are specified for contiguous addresses, these variables are assigned to a single section.

**Example 1:**

**Scalar variable**

```c
#pragma address A=0x100
int A;
void func() {
    A=0;
}
```

**Example of code expansion**

```assembly
_func:
    MOV   #1,R2
    SHLL8 R2
    MOV   #0,R4
    RTS
    MOV.L R4,@R2

.SECION $ADDRESS$B100,DATA,LOCATE=H’100
_A:
    .RES.L 1
```

**Example 2:**

**Structure**

```c
#pragma address ST=0x100
struct {
    int a;
    int b;
} ST;
void func() {
    ST.b=0;
}
```

**Example of code expansion**

```assembly
_func:
```
Example 3: Allocating multiple variables to contiguous area
#pragma address A=0x100,B=0x104
int A,B;
void func() {
    A=0;
    B=0;
}

<Example of code expansion>
_func:
    MOV   #1,R2
    SHLL8 R2
    MOV   #0,R4
    RTS
    MOV.L R4,@(4,R2)

    .SECTION $ADDRESS$B100,DATA,LOCATE=H’100
    _ST:
    .RES.L 2

Example 4: Allocating multiple variables to non-contiguous areas
#pragma address A=0x100,B=0x108
int A,B;
void func() {
    A=0;
    B=0;
Example 5: Allocating multiple variables with different attributes to contiguous area
#pragma address A=0x100,B=0x104
int A;
const int B=0;
void func() {
    A=0;
}

<Example of code expansion>
_func:
     MOV   #1,R2
     SHLL8 R2
     MOV   #0,R4
     MOV.L R4,@R2
     RTS
     MOV.L R4,@(8,R2)

    .SECTION $ADDRESS$B100,DATA,LOCATE=H’100
    _A:
       .RES.L 1

    .SECTION $ADDRESS$B108,DATA,LOCATE=H’108
    _B:
       .RES.L 1
.SECTION $ADDRESS$C104,DATA,LOCATE=H’104

_B:

.DATA.L H’00000000

Remarks:

1. #pragma address must be specified before variables are declared.

2. If a compound-type member or an object other than a variable is specified, an error will occur.

3. If an odd address is specified for a variable or structure with boundary alignment value 2 or if an address which is not a multiple of 4 is specified for a variable or structure with boundary alignment value 4, an error will occur.

4. If #pragma address is specified for a single variable more than one time, an error will occur.

5. If a single address is specified for different variables or if specified variable addresses overlap each other, an error will occur.

6. If any one of the following #pragma extensions is specified together with #pragma address for a single variable, an error will occur.
   
   #pragma section
   #pragma abs16, abs20, abs28, or abs32
   #pragma gbr_base or gbr_base1
   #pragma global_register
10.3.2 Section Address Operator

_sectop
_sectend
_secsize

Description Format: 

_sectop("<section name>")
_sectend("<section name>")
_secsize("<section name>")

Description: This function refers to the start address of the <section name> specified by _sectop.
This function refers to the end address of the <section name> specified by _sectend.
This function generates the size of the <section name> specified by _secsize.

Example:

<_sectop, _sectend>
#include <machine.h>
#pragma section $DSEC
static const struct {
    void *rom_s; /* Start address of initialized data */
    /* section in ROM */
    void *rom_e; /* End address of initialized data */
    /* section in ROM */
    void *ram_s; /* Start address of initialized data */
    /* section in RAM */
} DTBL[]={_sectop("D"), _sectend("D"),
    _sectop("R")};
#pragma section $BSEC
static const struct {
    void *b_s; /* Start address of uninitialized */
    /* data section */
    void *b_e; /* End address of uninitialized data */
    /* section */
} BTBL[]={_sectop("B"), _sectend("B")};
#pragma section
#pragma stacksize 0x100
#pragma entry INIT
void main(void);
void INIT(void)
{
    INITSCT();
    main();
    sleep();
}

<__secsize>
unsigned int size = __secsize("NAME");
↓
__size:
    .DATA.L SIZEOF NAME
10.3.3 Intrinsic Functions

The compiler provides the following functions that cannot be written in C/C++, as intrinsic functions.

- Setting and referencing the status register
- Setting and referencing the vector base register
- I/O functions using the global base register
- System instructions which do not compete with register sources in C/C++ language
- Multimedia instructions using the floating-point unit and setting and referencing control registers

Intrinsic functions can be written in the same call format as regular functions.

Table 10.35 lists intrinsic functions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Specifications</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Status register (SR)</td>
<td>void set_cr(int cr)</td>
<td>Writes to SR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int get_cr(void)</td>
<td>Reads SR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void set_imask(int mask)</td>
<td>Writes to the interrupt mask bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int get_imask(void)</td>
<td>Reads the interrupt mask bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vector base register (VBR)</td>
<td>void set_vbr(void *base)</td>
<td>Writes to VBR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void *get_vbr(void)</td>
<td>Reads VBR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Global base register (GBR)</td>
<td>void set_gbr(void *base)</td>
<td>Writes to GBR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void *get_gbr(void)</td>
<td>Reads GBR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>unsigned char</td>
<td>Reads a GBR-based byte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gbr_read_byte(int offset)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>unsigned short</td>
<td>Reads a GBR-based word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gbr_read_word(int offset)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>unsigned short</td>
<td>Reads a GBR-based longword</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gbr_read_long(int offset)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void gbr_write_byte</td>
<td>Writes a GBR-based byte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(int offset, unsigned char data)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void gbr_write_word</td>
<td>Writes a GBR-based word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(int offset, unsigned short data)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 10.35  Intrinsic Functions (cont)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Global base register (GBR) (cont)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>void gbr_write_long</td>
<td>(int offset, unsigned long data)</td>
<td>Writes a GBR-based longword</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>void gbr_and_byte</td>
<td>(int offset, unsigned char mask)</td>
<td>ANDs a GBR-based byte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>void gbr_or_byte</td>
<td>(int offset, unsigned char mask)</td>
<td>ORs a GBR-based byte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>void gbr_xor_byte</td>
<td>(int offset, unsigned char mask)</td>
<td>XORs a GBR-based byte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int gbr_tst_byte</td>
<td>(int offset, unsigned char mask)</td>
<td>Tests a GBR-based byte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special instructions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>void sleep(void)</td>
<td></td>
<td>SLEEP instruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int tas(char *addr)</td>
<td></td>
<td>TAS instruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int trapa(int trap_no)</td>
<td></td>
<td>TRAPA instruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int trapa_svc</td>
<td>(int trap_no, int code, type1 para1, type2 para2, type3 para3, type4 para4)</td>
<td>OS system call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>void prefetch (void *)</td>
<td></td>
<td>PREF instruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>void trace(long v)</td>
<td></td>
<td>TRACE instruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>void ldtlb(void)</td>
<td></td>
<td>LDTLB instruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>void nop(void)</td>
<td></td>
<td>NOP instruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64-bit multiplication</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long dmuls_h(long data1, long data2)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Upper 32 bits of the numbers for a signed 64-bit multiplication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unsigned long dmuls_l(long data1, long data2)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lower 32 bits of the numbers for a signed 64-bit multiplication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unsigned long dmulu_h(unsigned long data1, unsigned long data2)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Upper 32 bits of the numbers for an unsigned 64-bit multiplication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unsigned long dmulu_l(unsigned long data1, unsigned long data2)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lower 32 bits of the numbers for an unsigned 64-bit multiplication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exchange of upper and lower bits of data</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unsigned short swapb(unsigned short data)</td>
<td></td>
<td>SWAP.B instruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unsigned long swapw(unsigned long data)</td>
<td></td>
<td>SWAP.W instruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unsigned long end_cnvl(unsigned long data)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reverses the byte order inside 4-byte data</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 10.35 Intrinsic Functions (cont)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Multiply and accumulate operation</td>
<td>int macw(short *ptr1, short *ptr2, unsigned int count)</td>
<td>MAC.W instruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int macwl(short *ptr1, short *ptr2, unsigned int count, unsigned int mask)</td>
<td>MAC.L instruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int macl(int *ptr1, int *ptr2, unsigned int count)</td>
<td>MA C.L instruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int macll(int *ptr1, int *ptr2, unsigned int count, unsigned int mask)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floating-point unit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void set_fpscr(int cr)</td>
<td>Sets FPSCR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int get_fpscr()</td>
<td>Refers to FPSCR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Single-precision floating-point vector operation</td>
<td>float fipr(float vect1[4], float vect2[4])</td>
<td>FIPR instruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void ftrv(float vect1[4], float vect2[4])</td>
<td>FTRV instruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void ftrvadd(float vect1[4], float vect2[4], float vect3[4])</td>
<td>Transforms 4-dimensional vector by 4×4 matrix, and adds the result to 4-dimensional vector</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void ftrvsub(float vect1[4], float vect2[4], float vect3[4])</td>
<td>Transforms 4-dimensional vector by 4×4 matrix, and subtracts 4-dimensional vector from the result</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Single-precision floating-point vector operation</td>
<td>void add4(float vect1[4], float vect2[4], float vect3[4])</td>
<td>Performs addition of 4-dimensional vectors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void sub4(float vect1[4], float vect2[4], float vect3[4])</td>
<td>Performs subtraction of 4-dimensional vectors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void mtrx4mul(float mat1[4][4], float mat2[4][4])</td>
<td>Performs multiplication of 4×4 matrices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void mtrx4muladd(float mat1[4][4], float mat2[4][4], float mat3[4][4])</td>
<td>Performs multiplication and addition of 4×4 matrices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void mtrx4mulsub(float mat1[4][4], float mat2[4][4], float mat3[4][4])</td>
<td>Performs multiplication and subtraction of 4×4 matrices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access to extension register</td>
<td>void ld_ext(float mat[4][4])</td>
<td>Loads mat (4×4 matrix) to extension register</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void st_ext(float mat[4][4])</td>
<td>Stores contents of extension register to mat (4×4 matrix)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 10.35 Intrinsic Functions (cont)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DSP instructions</td>
<td>long _ _fixed pabs_lf(long _ _fixed data)</td>
<td>Computes the absolute value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>long _ _accum pabs_la (long _ _accum data)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>_ _fixed pdmsb_lf(long _ _fixed data)</td>
<td>Detects the MSB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>_ _fixed pdmsb_la(long _ _accum data)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>long _ _fixed psha_lf(long _ _fixed data, int count)</td>
<td>Shifts data arithmetically</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>long _ _accum psha_la (long _ _accum data, int count)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>_ _accum rndtoa(long _ _accum data)</td>
<td>Rounds data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>_ _fixed rndtof(long _ _fixed data)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>long _ _fixed long_as_lfixe_lf(long data)</td>
<td>Copies a bit pattern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>long _ _fixed_as_long (long _ _fixed data)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void set_circ_x (_ _X _ _circ _ _fixed array[], size_t size)</td>
<td>Specifies modulo addressing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void set_circ_y (_ _Y _ _circ _ _fixed array[], size_t size)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void clr_circ(void)</td>
<td>Cancels modulo addressing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void set_cs(unsigned int mode)</td>
<td>Specifies the CS bit value (DSR register)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sine and cosine</td>
<td>void fsca(long angle, float *sinv, float *cosv)</td>
<td>Computes the sine and cosine values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inverse of square root</td>
<td>float fsrra(float data)</td>
<td>Computes the inverse of the square root</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instruction cache invalidation</td>
<td>void icbi(void *p)</td>
<td>Invalidates the instruction cache block</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cache block operation</td>
<td>void ocbi(void *p)</td>
<td>Invalidates the cache block</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void ocbp(void *p)</td>
<td>Purges the cache block</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void ocbwb(void *p)</td>
<td>Writes back the cache block</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instruction cache prefetch</td>
<td>voidprefi(void *p)</td>
<td>Prefetches instructions into the instruction cache</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 10.35 Intrinsic Functions (cont)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>System synchronization</td>
<td>void synco(void)</td>
<td>Synchronizes data operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T bit reference and setting</td>
<td>int movt(void)</td>
<td>Refers to T bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void clrt(void)</td>
<td>Clears T bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void sett(void)</td>
<td>Sets T bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Midsection extract from</td>
<td>unsigned long xtrct(unsigned long data1, unsigned long data2)</td>
<td>Extracts middle 32 bits from contiguous 64 bits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>combined registers</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Addition with carry</td>
<td>long addc(long data1, long data2)</td>
<td>Adds two values and T bit, and sets the carry to T bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int ovf_addc(long data1, long data2)</td>
<td>Adds two values and T bit, and refers to the carry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>long addv(long data1, long data2)</td>
<td>Adds two values, and sets the carry to T bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int ovf_addv(long data1, long data2)</td>
<td>Adds two values, and refers to the carry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subtraction with borrow</td>
<td>long subc(long data1, long data2)</td>
<td>Subtracts data2 and T bit from data1, and sets the borrow to T bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int unf_subc(long data1, long data2)</td>
<td>Subtracts data2 and T bit from data1, and refers to the borrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>long subv(long data1, long data2)</td>
<td>Subtracts data2 from data1, and sets the borrow to T bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int unf_subv(long data1, long data2)</td>
<td>Subtracts data2 from data1, and refers to the borrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sign inversion</td>
<td>long negc(long data)</td>
<td>Subtracts data and T bit from 0, and sets the borrow to T bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-bit division</td>
<td>unsigned long div1(unsigned long data1, unsigned long data2)</td>
<td>Performs division data1/data2 for one step, and sets the result to T bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int div0s(long data1, long data2)</td>
<td>Performs initial settings for signed division data1/data2, and refers to T bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void div0u(void)</td>
<td>Performs initial settings for unsigned division</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 10.35 Intrinsic Functions (cont)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rotation</strong></td>
<td><strong>Item</strong></td>
<td><strong>Function</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>unsigned long rotl(unsigned long data)</td>
<td>Rotates data to left by one bit, and sets the bit pushed out of the operand to T bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>unsigned long rotr(unsigned long data)</td>
<td>Rotates data to right by one bit, and sets the bit pushed out of the operand to T bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>unsigned long rotcl(unsigned long data)</td>
<td>Rotates data including T bit to left by one bit, and sets the bit pushed out of the operand to T bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>unsigned long rotcr(unsigned long data)</td>
<td>Rotates data including T bit to right by one bit, and sets the bit pushed out of the operand to T bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Shift</strong></td>
<td>unsigned long shll(unsigned long data)</td>
<td>Shifts data to left by one bit, and sets the bit pushed out of the operand to T bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>unsigned long shlr(unsigned long data)</td>
<td>Shifts data logically to right by one bit, and sets the bit pushed out of the operand to T bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>long shar(long data)</td>
<td>Shifts data arithmetically to right by one bit, and sets the bit pushed out of the operand to T bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Saturation operation</strong></td>
<td>long clipsb(long data)</td>
<td>Performs signed saturation operation for 1-byte data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>long clipsw(long data)</td>
<td>Performs signed saturation operation for 2-byte data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>unsigned long clipub(unsigned long data)</td>
<td>Performs unsigned saturation operation for 1-byte data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>unsigned long clipuw(unsigned long data)</td>
<td>Performs unsigned saturation operation for 2-byte data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TBR setting and reference</strong></td>
<td>void set_tbr(void *data)</td>
<td>Sets data to TBR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void *get_tbr(void)</td>
<td>Refers to TBR value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nested interrupts</strong></td>
<td>void sr_isr(void *func, int imask);</td>
<td>Clears the RB and BL bits of SR to 0, sets the imask value in the I0 to I3 bits of SR, and calls the func function.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 10.35 Intrinsic Functions (cont)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Manipulate bits in memory</td>
<td>void bset(unsigned char *addr, unsigned char bit_num);</td>
<td>Sets 1 to the specified bit (bit_num) of the specified address (addr).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void bclr(unsigned char *addr, unsigned char bit_num);</td>
<td>Sets 0 to the specified bit (bit_num) of the specified address (addr).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void bnotcopy(unsigned char *from_addr, unsigned char from_bit_num, unsigned char *to_addr, unsigned char to_bit_num);</td>
<td>Sets the inverted value of bit [1] (from_bit_num) of address [1] (from_bit_num) to bit T and bit [2] (to_bit_num) of address [2] (to_addr).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<machine.h>, <umachine.h>, or <smachine.h> must be specified when intrinsic functions are used.

<machine.h> is divided into <umachine.h> and <smachine.h> as shown in Table 10.36 to correspond to the SH-3, SH3-DSP, SH-4, SH-4A, or SH4AL-DSP execution mode:

### Table 10.36 Dividing <machine.h>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Include File</th>
<th>Contents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;machine.h&gt;</td>
<td>Overall intrinsic functions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;smachine.h&gt;</td>
<td>Intrinsic functions that can be used in the privileged mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;umachine.h&gt;</td>
<td>Intrinsic functions other than those in &lt;smachine.h&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
void set_cr(int cr)

Description: Sets cr (32 bits) to the status register (SR).

Header: <machine.h> or <smachine.h>

Parameters: cr Setting value

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
void main(void)
{
    set_cr(0x60000000); /* Supervisor,RBank=1,BL=0,Imask=0 */
}
```

int get_cr(void)

Description: Reads the status register (SR).

Header: <machine.h> or <smachine.h>

Return value: Status register value

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
void main(void)
{
    set_cr(get_cr() | 0x1000000); /* Set BL bit */
}
```
**void set_imask(int mask)**

Description: Sets **mask** (4 bits) to the interrupt mask bits (4 bits).

Header: `<machine.h> or <smachine.h>`

Parameters: `mask` Setting value (4 bits)

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
void main(void)
{
    set_imask(15);
}
```

**int get_imask(void)**

Description: Reads the interrupt mask bits (4 bits).

Header: `<machine.h> or <smachine.h>`

Return value: Value of the interrupt mask bits

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
void main(void)
{
    int mask;
    mask = get_imask();
}
```
void set_vbr(void base)

Description: Sets base (32 bits) to the vector base register (VBR).

Header: <machine.h> or <smachine.h>

Parameters: base Setting value

Example:
#include <machine.h>
#define VBR 0x0000FC00
void main(void)
{
    set_vbr((void *)VBR);
}

void *get_vbr(void)

Description: Reads the vector base register (VBR).

Header: <machine.h> or <smachine.h>

Return value: Value of the vector base register

Example:
#include <machine.h>
void main(void)
{
    void *vbr;
    vbr = get_vbr();
}
void set_gbr(void *base)

Description: Sets base (32 bits) to the global base register (GBR).

Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters: base Setting value

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
#define IOBASE 0x05fffec0
void main(void)
{
    set_gbr((void *)IOBASE);
}
```

Remarks: As GBR is a control register whose contents are not guaranteed by all functions in this compiler, take care when changing GBR settings. This function is invalid when gbr=auto is specified.

void *get_gbr(void)

Description: Reads the global base register (GBR).

Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Return value: Value of the global base register

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
void main(void)
{
    void *gbr;
    gbr = get_gbr();
}
```

Remarks: This function is invalid when gbr=auto is specified.
unsigned char gbr_read_byte (int offset)

Description: Reads a byte (8 bits) at the address indicated by adding GBR and the offset specified.

Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Return value: Byte data (8 bits) reference value

Parameter: offset  Offset address

Example:
#include <machine.h>
#define BDATA 0
void main(void)
{
    if(gbr_read_byte(BDATA) !=0)
    :
}

Remarks: 1. offset must be a constant.
2. The specifiable range for offset is +255 bytes.
3. This function is invalid when gbr=auto is specified.
unsigned short gbr_read_word (int offset)

Description: Reads a word (16 bits) at the address indicated by adding GBR and the offset specified.

Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Return value: Word data (16 bits) reference value

Parameter: offset Offset address

Example:
#include <machine.h>
#define WDATA 0
void main(void)
{
    if(gbr_read_word(WDATA) !=0)
    ;
}

Remarks:
1. offset must be a constant.
2. The specifiable range for offset is +510 bytes.
3. This function is invalid when gbr=auto is specified.
**unsigned long gbr_read_long (int offset)**

**Description:** Reads a longword (32 bits) at the address indicated by adding GBR and the offset specified.

**Header:** `<machine.h>` or `<umachine.h>`

**Return value:** Longword data (32 bits) reference value

**Parameter:**

- `offset` Offset address

**Example:**

```c
#include <machine.h>
#define LDATA 0
void main(void)
{
    if (gbr_read_long(LDATA) !=0)
    :
}
```

**Remarks:**

1. `offset` must be a constant.
2. The specifiable range for `offset` is +1020 bytes.
3. This function is invalid when `gbr=auto` is specified.
void gbr_write_byte(int offset, unsigned char data)

Description: Sets a byte (8 bits) at the address indicated by adding GBR and the offset specified.

Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameter:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>offset</td>
<td>Offset address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>data</td>
<td>Setting value (8 bits)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

```c
#include <machine.h>
#define BDATA 0
void main(void)
{
    gbr_write_byte(BDATA, 0);
}
```

Remarks:

1. `offset` must be a constant.
2. The specifiable range for `offset` is +255 bytes.
3. This function is invalid when `gbr=auto` is specified.
void gbr_write_word(int offset, unsigned short data)

Description: Sets a word (16 bits) at the address indicated by adding GBR and the offset specified.

Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameter:
- offset  Offset address
- data    Setting value (16 bits)

Example:
#include <machine.h>
#define WDATA 0
void main(void)
{
    gbr_write_word(WDATA, 0);
}

Remarks:
1. offset must be a constant.
2. The specifiable range for offset is +510 bytes.
3. This function is invalid when gbr=auto is specified.
void gbr_write_long(int offset, unsigned long data)

Description: Sets a longword (32 bits) at the address indicated by adding GBR and the offset specified.

Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameter: offset Offset address
data Setting value (32 bits)

Example:
#include <machine.h>
#define LDATA 0
void main(void)
{
    gbr_write_long(LDATA,0);
}

Remarks: 1. offsets must be a constant.
2. The specifiable range for offset is +1020 bytes.
3. This function is invalid when gbr=auto is specified.
void gbr_and_byte(int offset, unsigned char mask)

Description: ANDs mask and a byte (8 bits) at the address indicated by adding GBR and the offset specified, and stores the result to the address indicated by adding GBR and the specified offset.

Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameter:  offset      Offset address  
            mask         Data (8 bits)

Example:    #include <machine.h>
            #define BDATA 0
            void main(void)
            {
                gbr_and_byte(BDATA, 0x01);
            }

Remarks:    1. offsets must be a constant.  
            2. The specifiable range for offset is +255 bytes.  
            3. The specifiable range for mask is 0 to +255.  
            4. This function is invalid when gbr=auto is specified.
void gbr_or_byte(int offset, unsigned char mask)

Description: ORs mask and a byte (8 bits) at the address indicated by adding GBR and the offset specified, and stores the result to the address indicated by adding GBR and the specified offset.

Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameter: 
- offset  Offset address
- mask    Data (8 bits)

Example:
```
#include <machine.h>
#define BDATA 0
void main(void)
{
    gbr_or_byte(BDATA, 0x01);
}
```

Remarks:
1. offsets must be a constant.
2. The specifiable range for offset is +255 bytes.
3. The specifiable range for mask is 0 to +255.
4. This function is invalid when gbr=auto is specified.
void gbr_xor_byte(int offset, unsigned char mask)

Description: Exclusively ORs `mask` and a byte (8 bits) at the address indicated by adding GBR and the offset specified, and stores the result to the address indicated by adding GBR and the specified offset.

Header: `<machine.h>` or `<umachine.h>`

Parameter:
- offset  Offset address
- mask    Data (8 bits)

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
#define BDATA 0
void main(void)
{
    gbr_xor_byte(BDATA, 0x01);
}
```

Remarks:
1. `offsets` must be a constant.
2. The specifiable range for `offset` is +255 bytes.
3. The specifiable range for `mask` is 0 to +255.
4. This function is invalid when `gbr=auto` is specified.
int gbr_tst_byte(int offset, unsigned char mask)

Description: ANDs mask and a byte (8 bits) at the address indicated by adding GBR and the offset specified, checks whether the result is 0 or not, and sets the T bit according to the result of the check.

Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameter: offset Offset address
mask Data (8 bits)

Example:
#include <machine.h>
#define BDATA 0
int a;
void main(void)
{
    if(gbr_tst_byte(BDATA, 0))
        a = 0;
}

Remarks: 1. mask must be a constant.
2. The specifiable range for offset is +255 bytes.
3. The specifiable range for mask is 0 to +255.
4. This function is invalid when gbr=auto is specified.

GBR Intrinsic Function Example:
#include <machine.h>
#define CDATA1 0
#define CDATA2 1
#define CDATA3 2
#define SDATA1 4
#define IDATA1 8
#define IDATA2 12

struct{
    char cdata1; /* offset 0 */
    char cdata2; /* offset 1 */
    char cdata3; /* offset 2 */
    short sdata1; /* offset 4 */
}
int idata1;  /* offset 8  */
int idata2;  /* offset 12  */
} table;

void f();

void f()
{
    set_gbr( &table); /* Sets the start address of */
        /* table to GBR. */
    gbr_write_byte( CDATA2, 10);
        /* Sets 10 to table.cdata2. */
    gbr_write_long( IDATA2, 100);
        /* Sets 100 to table.idata2. */

    if(gbr_read_byte( CDATA2) != 10)
       /* Reads table.cdata2. */
        gbr_and_byte( CDATA2, 10);
            /* ANDs 10 and table.cdata2, */
            /* and sets it in table.cdata2.*/
        gbr_or_byte( CDATA2, 0x0F);
            /* ORs 0x0F and table.cdata2, */
            /* and sets it in table.cdata2.*
        sleep(); /* Expanded to the SLEEP */
            /* instruction */
}
Effective Use of GBR Intrinsic Functions:

1. Allocate a frequently accessed object to memory and set the start address of the object to GBR.

2. Byte data that frequently uses logical operations should be declared within 128 bytes of the start address of the structure.
   As a result, the load instruction of start address for accessing a structure can be reduced and load/store instructions necessary for performing logical operation can be reduced.

void sleep(void)

Description: Expanded to the \texttt{SLEEP} instruction, which makes the CPU enter the low-power consumption mode.

Header: \texttt{<machine.h>} or \texttt{<smachine.h>}

Example:

```
#include <machine.h>
void main(void)
{
    sleep();
}
```

int tas(char *addr)

Description: Expanded to the \texttt{TAS.B@Rn} instruction.

Header: \texttt{<machine.h>} or \texttt{<umachine.h>}

Parameters: addr Address specified in the TAS instruction

Example:

```
#include <machine.h>
char a;
void main(void)
{
    tas(&a);
}
```
int trapa(int trap_no)

Description: Expanded to TRAPA #trap_no.

Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters: trap_no Trap number

Example:
#include <machine.h>
void main(void)
{
    trapa(0);
}

Remarks: trap_no should be a constant from 0 to 255.

int trapa_svc(int trap_no, int code, type1 para1, type2 para2, type3 para3, type4 para4)

Description: Enables executing HI7000 and other OS system calls. When trapa_svc is executed, code is specified in R0, and para1 to para4 in R4 to R7, respectively. Then, TRAPA #trap_no is executed.

Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters: trap_no Trap number
            code Function code
            para1 to para4 Parameters (0 to 4 variables)

Types type1 to type4 are integer type or pointer type.

Example:
#include <machine.h>
#define SIG_SEM 0xffc8
void main(void)
{
    trapa_svc(63, SIG_SEM, 0x05);
}

Remarks: trap_no should be a constant from 0 to 255.
void prefetch(void *p)

Description: An area indicated by the pointer (16-byte data from (int)p&0xffffffff) is written to the cache memory.

Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters: p Prefetch address

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
char a[1200];
void main(void)
{
  char *pa = a;
  prefetch(pa);
}
```

Remarks: This function is valid only when cpu=sh2a, sh2afpu, sh3, sh3dsp, sh4, sh4a, or sh4aldsp is specified. This function does not affect the operation of the program.

void trace(long v)

Description: Supports the software trace function provided by some emulators.

Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters: v Variable to be specified

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
void main(void)
{
  long v;
  trace(v);
}
```

Remarks: This function is valid only when other than cpu=sh1 is specified. For details of the software trace function, refer to the user's manual of the target emulator. This function is available only during debugging with an emulator connected. Do not use this function when no emulator is connected.
void ldtlb(void)

Description: Expanded to the LDTLB instruction.

Header: <machine.h> or <smachine.h>

Example:
```
#include <machine.h>
void main(void)
{
    ldtlb();
}
```

Remarks: This function is only valid when cpu=sh3, sh3dsp, sh4, sh4a, or sh4aldsp is specified.

void nop(void)

Description: Expanded to the NOP instruction.

Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Example:
```
#include <machine.h>
void main(void)
{
    int a;
    if (a) {
        nop();
    }
}
```
long dmuls_h(long data1, long data2)

Description: Multiplies a pair of signed 32-bit data to produce a signed 64-bit data, and refers to the upper 32 bits of the product.

Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
extern long data1, data2;
extern long result;
void main(void)
{
    result = dmuls_h(data1, data2);
}
```

Remarks: This function is invalid when `cpu=sh1` is specified.

unsigned long dmuls_l(long data1, long data2)

Description: Multiplies a pair of signed 32-bit data to produce a signed 64-bit data, and refers to the lower 32 bits of the product.

Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
extern long data1, data2;
extern unsigned long result;
void main(void)
{
    result = dmuls_l(data1, data2);
}
```

Remarks: This function is invalid when `cpu=sh1` is specified.
unsigned long dmulu_h(unsigned long data1, unsigned long data2)

Description: Multiplies a pair of unsigned 32-bit data to produce an unsigned 64-bit data, and refers to the upper 32 bits of the product.

Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Example:
#
include <machine.h>
extern unsigned long data1, data2;
extern unsigned long result;
void main(void)
{
    result = dmulu_h(data1, data2);
}

Remarks: This function is invalid when cpu=sh1 is specified.

unsigned long dmulu_l(unsigned long data1, unsigned long data2)

Description: Multiplies a pair of unsigned 32-bit data to produce an unsigned 64-bit data, and refers to the lower 32 bits of the product.

Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Example:
#
include <machine.h>
extern unsigned long data1, data2;
extern unsigned long result;
void main(void)
{
    result = dmulu_l(data1, data2);
}

Remarks: This function is invalid only when cpu=sh1 is specified.
unsigned short swapb(unsigned short data)

Description: Exchanges the upper byte and the lower byte in the two-byte data.

Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
extern unsigned short data;
extern unsigned short result;
void main(void)
{
    result = swapb(data);
    /* For example, when data=0x1234,
       the results will be result=0x3412 */
}
```

unsigned long swapw(unsigned long data)

Description: Exchanges the upper two bytes and the lower two bytes in the four-byte data.

Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
extern unsigned long data;
extern unsigned long result;
void main(void)
{
    result = swapw(data);
    /* For example, when data=0x12345678
       the results will be result=0x56781234 */
}
```
unsigned long end_cnvl(unsigned long data)

Description: Reverses the order of bytes in the four-byte data.

Header: `<machine.h>` or `<umachine.h>`

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
extern unsigned long data;
extern unsigned long result;
void main(void)
{
    result = end_cnvl(data);
    /* For example, when data=0x12345678 */
    /* the results will be result=0x78563412 */
}
```
int macw(short *ptr1, short *ptr2, unsigned int count)
int macwl(short *ptr1, short *ptr2, unsigned int count, unsigned int mask)

Description: Multiplies and accumulates the contents of two data tables.

Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Return value: Operation result

Parameters:
- ptr1: Start address of data to be multiplied or accumulated
- ptr2: Start address of data to be multiplied or accumulated
- count: Number of times the operation is performed
- mask: Address mask that corresponds to the ring buffer

Example:
```
#include <machine.h>
short tbl1[]={a1,a2,a3,a4};
short tbl2[]={b1,b2,b3,b4};
int result1,result2;
void main(void)
{
    result1=macw(tbl1,tbl2,3);
        /* Executes a1*b1 + a2*b2 */
        /* + a3*b3 */
    result2=macwl(tbl1,tbl2,4,0xfffffffb);
        /* Executes a1*b1 + a2*b2 */
        /* + a3*b1 + a4*b2 */
}
```

Remarks: This function does not check parameters. Therefore, keep the following in mind:

a. Tables indicated by ptr1 and ptr2 must be aligned on the boundaries of multiples of 2 bytes.
b. The table indicated by ptr2 in macwl must be aligned on the boundary of a multiple of (ring buffer mask \times 2).
int macl(int *ptr1, int *ptr2, unsigned int count)
int macll(int *ptr1, int *ptr2, unsigned int count, unsigned int mask)

Description: Multiplies and accumulates contents of two data tables.

Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Return value: Operation result

Parameters:
ptr1 Start address of data to be multiplied or accumulated
ptr2 Start address of data to be multiplied or accumulated
count Number of times the operation is performed
mask Address mask that corresponds to the ring buffer

Example:
#include <machine.h>
short tbl1[] = {a1, a2, a3, a4};
short tbl2[] = {b1, b2, b3, b4};
int result1, result2;
void main(void)
{
    result1 = macl(tbl1, tbl2, 3);
    /* Executes a1*b1 + a2*b2    */
    /* + a3*b3                   */
    result2 = macll(tbl1, tbl2, 4, 0xffffffff7);
    /* Executes a1*b1 + a2*b2    */
    /* + a3*b1 + a4*b2           */
}

Remarks:
1. This function is invalid when the cpu=sh1 is specified.
2. This function does not check parameters. Therefore, keep the following in mind:
   a. Tables indicated by ptr1 and ptr2 must be aligned on the boundaries of multiples of 4 bytes.
   b. The table indicated by ptr2 in macll must be aligned on the boundary of a multiple of (ring buffer mask × 2).
void set_fpscr(int cr)

Description: Sets cr (32 bits) to the floating-point status control register FPSCR.

Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters: cr Setting value (32 bits)

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
void main(void)
{
    set_fpscr(0);
}
```

Remarks: This function is valid only when cpu=sh2e, sh2afpu, sh4, or sh4a is specified.

int get_fpscr (void)

Description: Refers to the floating-point status control register FPSCR.

Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Return value: FPSCR value

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
int cr;
void main(void)
{
    cr = get_fpscr();
}
```

Remarks: This function is valid only when cpu=sh2e, sh2afpu, sh4, or sh4a is specified.
float fipr(float vect1[4], float vect2[4])

Description: Calculates inner product of two vectors.

Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Return value: Operation result

Parameters:

vect1 Vector

vect2 Vector

Example:

#include <machine.h>
extern float data1[4], data2[4];
float result;
void main(void)
{
    result=fipr(data1, data2);
}

Remarks: This function is valid only when cpu=sh4 or sh4a is specified.

float ftrv(float vec1[4], float vec2[4])

Description: Transforms vec1 (vector) by tbl (4×4 matrix), and stores the result to vec2 (vector). Note that tbl needs to be loaded using intrinsic function ld_ext().

Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters:

vec1 Vector

vec2 Vector

Example:

#include <machine.h>
extern float tbl[4][4];
extern float data1[4], data2[4];
void main(void)
{
    ld_ext(tbl);
    ftrv(data1, data2);
    /* As i=0,1,2,3 the result in data2 will be as */
    /* follows: data2[i]=data1[0]*tbl[0][i]+ */
Remarks:

1. This function is valid only when `cpu=sh4` or `sh4a` is specified.
2. Intrinsic functions `ld_ext()` and `st_ext()` change the floating-point register bank bit (FR) of the floating-point status control register (FPSCR) to access the extension registers. Therefore, when using intrinsic function `ld_ext()` or `st_ext()` in an interrupt function, change the interrupt mask before and after the vector operation intrinsic function as shown in the following example.

Example

```c
extern float mat1[4][4];
extern float vec1[4], vec2[4];
#pragma interrupt (intfunc)
void intfunc()
{
    ld_ext();
    ...
}
void normfunc()
{
    int maskdata=get_imask();
    set_imask(15);
    ld_ext(mat1);
    ftrv(vec1, vec2);
    set_imask(maskdata);
    ...
}
```
void ftrvadd(float vec1[4], float vec2[4], float vec3[4])

Description: Transforms vec1 (vector) by tbl (4×4 matrix), adds the result to vec2 (vector), then stores the sum to vec3 (vector). Note that tbl needs to be loaded using intrinsic function ld_ext().

Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters:
- vec1   Vector
- vec2   Vector
- vec3   Vector

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
extern float tbl[4][4];
extern float data1[4];
extern float data2[4];
extern float data3[4];
void main(void)
{
  ld_ext(tbl);
  ftrvadd(data1, data2, data3);
  /* data3 = data1 × tbl + data2 */
  /* As i=0,1,2,3 the result in data3 will be as */
  /* follows: data3[i]=data1[0]×tbl[0][i] */
  /* +data1[1]×tbl[1][i] */
  /* +data2[i] */
}
```

Remarks: This function is valid only when cpu=sh4 or sh4a is specified.
void ftrvsub(float vec1[4], float vec2[4], float vec3[4])

Description: Transforms `vec1` (vector) by `tbl` (4×4 matrix), subtracts `vec2` (vector) from the result, then stores the difference to `vec3` (vector). Note that `tbl` needs to be loaded using intrinsic function `ld_ext()`.

Header: `<machine.h>` or `<umachine.h>`

Parameters:
- `vec1` Vector
- `vec2` Vector
- `vec3` Vector

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
extern float tbl[4][4];
extern float data1[4];
extern float data2[4];
extern float data3[4];
void main(void)
{
    ld_ext(tbl);
    ftrvsub(data1, data2, data3);
    /* data3 = data1 x tbl - data2 */
    /* As i=0,1,2,3 the result in data3 will be as */
    /* follows: data3[i]=data1[0]*tbl[0][i] */
    /*          +data1[1]*tbl[1][i] */
    /*          +data1[2]*tbl[2][i] */
    /*          +data1[3]*tbl[3][i] */
    /*          -data2[i] */
}
```

Remarks: This function is valid only when `cpu=sh4` or `sh4a` is specified.
void add4(float vec1[4], float vec2[4], float vec3[4])
Description: Stores the sum of vec1 (vector) and vec2 (vector) to vec3 (vector).
Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>
Parameters: vec1 Vector
vec2 Vector
vec3 Vector
Example: #include <machine.h>
extern float data1[4];
extern float data2[4];
extern float data3[4];
void main(void)
{
    add4(data1,data2,data3);   /* data3 = data1 + data2 */
}
Remarks: This function is valid only when cpu=sh2afpu, sh4, or sh4a is specified.

void sub4(float vec1[4], float vec2[4], float vec3[4])
Description: Stores the difference between vec1 (vector) and vec2 (vector) to vec3 (vector).
Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>
Parameters: vec1 Vector
vec2 Vector
vec3 Vector
Example: #include <machine.h>
extern float data1[4];
extern float data2[4];
extern float data3[4];
void main(void)
{
    sub4(data1,data2,data3);   /* data3 = data1 - data2 */
}
Remarks: This function is valid only when cpu=sh2afpu, sh4, or sh4a is specified.
void mtrx4mul(float mat1[4], float mat2[4])

Description: Transforms \texttt{mat1} (4×4 matrix) by \texttt{tbl} (4×4 matrix), and stores the result to \texttt{mat2}.

Note that \texttt{tbl} needs to be loaded using intrinsic instruction \texttt{ld\_ext()}. 

Header: \texttt{<machine.h>} or \texttt{<umachine.h>}

Parameters: 
- \texttt{mat1} 4×4 matrix
- \texttt{mat2} 4×4 matrix

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
extern float tbl[4][4];
extern float tbl1[4][4];
extern float tbl2[4][4];
void main(void)
{
    ld\_ext(tbl);
    mtrx4mul(tbl1,tbl2); /* tbl2 = tbl1 \times tbl */
}
```

Remarks: This function is valid only when \texttt{cpu=sh4 or sh4a} is specified.

This function is 4×4 matrix operation and therefore is not commutative.

Example
```c
extern float matA[][];
extern float matB[][];
int judge(){
    float data1[4][4], data2[4][4];
    set\_imask(15);
    ld\_ext(matA);
    mtrx4mul(matB,data1); /* data1=matB \times matA */
    ld\_ext(matB);
    mtrx4mul(matA,data2); /* data2=matA \times matB */
    /* elements of data1[][] and data2[][] do */
    /* not necessarily match. */
}
```
void mtrx4muladd(float mat1[4], float mat2[4], float mat3[4])

Description: Transforms \textit{mat1} (4\times4 matrix) by \textit{tbl} (4\times4 matrix), adds the result of \textit{mat2} (4\times4 matrix), and stores the sum to \textit{mat3} (4\times4 matrix).
  
Note that \textit{tbl} needs to be loaded using intrinsic instruction \texttt{ld_ext()}.

Header: \texttt{<machine.h> or <umachine.h>}

Parameters:  
  - \texttt{mat1} \hspace{1em} 4\times4 matrix  
  - \texttt{mat2} \hspace{1em} 4\times4 matrix  
  - \texttt{mat3} \hspace{1em} 4\times4 matrix

Example:  
  
```c
#include <machine.h>
extern float tbl1[4][4];
extern float tbl1[4][4];
extern float tbl2[4][4];
extern float tbl3[4][4];
void main(void)
{
    ld_ext(tbl1);
    mtrx4muladd(tbl1, tbl2, tbl3);  
    /* tbl3 = tbl1 x tbl + tbl2 */
}
```

Remarks: This function is valid only when \texttt{cpu=sh4} or \texttt{sh4a} is specified.

This function is 4\times4 matrix operation and therefore is not commutative.
void mtrx4mulsub(float mat1[4], float mat2[4], float mat3[4])

Description: Transforms mat1 (4×4 matrix) by tbl (4×4 matrix), subtracts mat2 (4×4 matrix) from the result, and stores the difference to mat3 (4×4 matrix). Note that tbl needs to be loaded using intrinsic instruction ld_ext().

Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters: mat1 4×4 matrix
mat2 4×4 matrix
mat3 4×4 matrix

Example: #include <machine.h>
extern float tbl1[4][4];
extern float tbl1[4][4];
extern float tbl2[4][4];
extern float tbl3[4][4];
void main(void)
{
    ld_ext(tbl);
    mtrx4mulsub(tbl1, tbl2, tbl3);
    /* tbl3 = tbl1 x tbl - tbl2 */
}

Remarks: This function is valid only when cpu=sh4 or sh4a is specified.
This function is 4×4 matrix operation and therefore is not commutative.
void ld_ext(float mat[4] [4])

Description: Loads mat (4×4 matrix) to extension register.

Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters: mat 4×4 matrix

Example:
#include <machine.h>
extern float tbl[4][4];
void main(void)
{
    ld_ext(tbl);
}

Remarks:
1. This function is valid only when cpu=sh4 or sh4a is specified.
2. Intrinsic function ld_ext() changes the floating-point register bank bit (FR) of the floating-point status control register (FPSCR) to access extension register. Therefore, when this function is used in an interrupt function, change the interrupt mask before and after the vector operation intrinsic function.

void st_ext(float mat[4] [4])

Description: Stores contents of extension register to mat (4×4 matrix).

Header: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters: mat 4×4 matrix

Example:
#include <machine.h>
extern float tbl[4][4];
void main(void)
{
    st_ext(tbl);
}
Remarks:

1. This function is valid only when `cpu=sh4` or `sh4a` is specified.
2. Intrinsic function `st_ext()` changes the floating-point register bank bit (FR) of the floating-point status control register (FPSCR) to access the extension register. Therefore, when this function is used in an interrupt function, change the interrupt mask before and after the vector operation intrinsic function.

`long __fixed pabs_lf (long __fixed data)`
`long __accum pabs_la (long __accum data)`

Description: Computes the absolute value of a number.

Header file: `<machine.h>` or `<umachine.h>`

Return values: Operation result

Parameters: data Data of which absolute value is to be computed

Example:
```
#include <machine.h>
long __fixed result;
long __fixed ptr;
void main(void)
{
    result=pabs_lf(ptr);
}
```

Remarks: This function is valid only when `cpu=sh2dsp, sh3dsp, sh4aldsp, and dspe` are specified.

If the result cannot be expressed as a type of return value (long __fixed or long __accum), correct operation is not guaranteed.
_fixed pdmsb_lf (long _fixed data)
_fixed pdmsb_la (long _accum data)

Description: Detects the MSB (computes the shift count necessary to normalize data).

Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Return values: Operation result

Parameters: data Data of which MSB is to be detected

Example:
#include <machine.h>
_fixed result;
long _fixed ptr;
void main(void)
{
    result=pdmsb_lf(ptr);
}

Remarks: This function is valid only when cpu= sh2dsp, sh3dsp, sh4aldsp, and dspe are specified.
long _ _fixed psha_lf (long _ _fixed data, int count)
long _ _accum psha_la (long _ _accum data, int count)

Description: Shifts data arithmetically.

Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Return values: Operation result

Parameters: data Data to be shifted arithmetically
count Shift count

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
long _ _fixed result;
long _ _fixed ptr;
int count;
void main(void)
{
    result=psha_lf(ptr, count);
}
```

Remarks: This function is valid only when cpu= sh2dsp, sh3dsp, sh4aldsp, and dspe are specified.
The specifiable range for count is -32 to +32. When a positive value is specified, data is shifted to the left. When a negative value is specified, data is shifted to the right up to its absolute value. If the specified value is out of range, the behavior is not guaranteed.
long _ _fixed long_as_lfixed (long data)
long lfixed_as_long (long _ _fixed data)

Description: Copies a bit pattern (copy between a general register and a DSP register).

Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Return values: Copy result

Parameters: data Data to be copied

Example:
#include <machine.h>
long _ _fixed result;
long  ptr;
void main(void)
{
    result=long_as_lfixed(ptr);
}

Remarks: This function is valid only when cpu= sh2dsp, sh3dsp, sh4aldsp, and dspe are specified.

__accum rndtoa (long __accum data)
__fixed rndtof (long __fixed data)

Description: Rounds data.

Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Return values: Operation result

Parameters: data Data to be rounded

Example:
#include <machine.h>
__accum result;
long __accum ptr;
void main(void)
{
    result=rndtoa(ptr);
}
void set_circ_X ( _ _X_ _circ _ _fixed array[], size_t size)
void set_circ_Y ( _ _Y_ _circ _ _fixed array[], size_t size)

Description: Specifies modulo addressing.

Header file: <machine.h> or <smachine.h>

Parameters: array[] Data to which modulo addressing is to be applied
size Data size

Example:
#include <machine.h>
_ _circ _ _X _ _fixed input[4] = {0.0r, 0.25r, 0.5r, 0.25r};
_ _Y_ _fixed output[8];
void main(void)
{
    int i;
    set_circ_X(input, sizeof(input)); /* Specifies modulo addressing. */
    for (i = 0; i < 8; i++) {
        output[i] = input[i];
    }
    clr_circ(); /* Cancels modulo addressing. */
}

Remarks: This function is valid only when cpu= sh2dsp, sh3dsp, sh4aldsp, and dspe are specified.
void clr_circ ()

Description: Cancels modulo addressing.
Clears SR bits 10 and 11 counted from the right to zero.

Header file: <machine.h> or <smachine.h>

Example:
#include <machine.h>

  _ circ _ X _ fixed input[4] = {0.0r, 0.25r, 0.5r, 0.25r};
  _ Y _ fixed output[8];

  void main(void)
  {
    int i;
    set_circ_x(input, sizeof(input)); /* Specifies modulo addressing. */
    for (i = 0; i < 8; i++) {
      output[i] = input[i];
    }
    clr_circ(); /* Cancels modulo addressing. */
  }

Remarks: This function is valid only when cpu= sh2dsp, sh3dsp, sh4aldsp, and dspe are specified.
void set_cs (unsigned int mode)

Description: Specifies the CS bit value.

Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters: mode Mode to be specified (0 to 5)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Specified Value</th>
<th>Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Carry/borrow mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Negative mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Zero mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Overflow mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Signed greater mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Signed equal or greater mode</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

```c
#include <machine.h>
#define MODE 1
void main(void)
{
    set_cs(MODE);
}
```

Remarks: This function is valid only when cpu= sh2dsp, sh3dsp, sh4aldsp, and dspe are specified.
```c
void fsca(long angle, float *sinv, float *cosv)
```

**Description:** Computes the approximate values of the sine and cosine from the angle specified by `angle` and stores the results in an area specified by `sinv` and `cosv`.

**Header file:** `<machine.h>` or `<umachine.h>`

**Parameters:**
- `angle` Angle from which the sine and cosine are to be obtained
  (Specify a bit image for `angle` when a long-type 32-bit area is expressed as the fixed-point data with a decimal point at the right of `2^16` bits.)
- `sinv` Address to store the obtained sine value
- `cosv` Address to store the obtained cosine value

**Example:**
```
#include <machine.h>
long angle = (45<<16)/360; /* 45 degrees */
float sinv;
float cosv;
void main(void)
{
    fsca(angle, &sinv, &cosv);
}
```

**Remarks:** This function is valid only when `cpu=sh4a` is specified.
float fsrra (float data)

Description: Computes the approximate values of the inverse of the square root of a value.

Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters: data Data of which inverse of the square root is to be computed

Return values: Operation result

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
float data;
float result;
void main(void)
{
    result=fsrra(data);
}
```

Remarks: This function is valid only when cpu=sh4a is specified.

void icbi (void *p)

Description: Invalidates the instruction cache.

Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters: p Address of a variable or a function

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
extern int *p;
void main(void)
{
    icbi(p);
}
```

Remarks: This function is valid only when cpu=sh4a or sh4aldsp is specified.
void ocbi (void *p)
void ocbp (void *p)
void ocbwb (void *p)

Description: Operates the cache block.

  ocbi: Invalidates the cache block
  ocbp: Purges the cache block
  ocbwb: Writes back the cache block

Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters: p Address of a variable or a function

Example:
#include <machine.h>
extern int *p;
void main(void)
{
  ocbi(p);
}

Remarks: This function is valid only when cpu=sh4, sh4a, or sh4aldsp is specified.
void pref (void *p)

Description: Reads a 32-byte instruction block located at a 32-byte boundary into the instruction cache.

Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters: p Prefetch address

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
void *pa;
void main(void)
{
    pref(pa);
}
```

Remarks: This function is valid only when cpu=sh4a or sh4aldsp is specified.

void synco (void)

Description: This function is expanded into a SYNCO instruction. A SYNCO instruction synchronizes data operation so that the instructions issued before the SYNCO instruction are completed before the instructions after the SYNCO instruction are started.

Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
void main(void)
{
    synco();
}
```

Remarks: This function is valid only when cpu=sh4a or sh4aldsp is specified.
int movt (void)
Description: Refers to the value of T bit in SR.
Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>
Return values: T bit value
Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
extern int sr_t;
void main(void)
{
    sr_t = movt();
}
```

void clrt (void)
Description: Clears the T bit in SR.
Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>
Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
void main(void)
{
    clrt();
}
```

void sett (void)
Description: Sets the T bit in SR.
Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>
Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
void main(void)
{
    sett();
}
```
unsigned long xtrct (unsigned long data1, unsigned long data2)

Description: Extracts middle 32 bits from 64-bit data obtained by combining data1 and data2.

Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters: 
- data1: Upper 32 bits of data
- data2: Lower 32 bits of data

Return values: (lower 16 bits of data1):(upper 16 bits of data2)

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
extern unsigned long result, data1, data2;
void main(void)
{
    result = xtrct(data1, data2);
}
```

long addc (long data1, long data2)

Description: Adds data1, data2, and T bit, and sets the carry to the T bit.

Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters: 
- data1: Data 1 for addition
- data2: Data 2 for addition

Return values: Addition result

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
extern long result, data1, data2;
void main()
{
    result = addc(data1, data2);
}
```
Remarks: As this function refers to the T bit value, it must be ensured that the T bit value is correct immediately before this function. If a comparison or shift operation is written immediately before this function, the T bit reflects the operation result and this function cannot be executed correctly.

```c
if (a) {...} /* Sets comparison result to T bit */
```

```c
result[1] = addc(data1[1], data2[1]); /* Adds comparison result */
```

```c
result[0] = addc(data1[0], data2[0]); /* Reflects previous operation result */
```

```c

int ovf_addc (long data1, long data2)

Description: Adds data1, data2, and T bit, and refers to the carry.

Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters: data1 Data 1 for addition
data2 Data 2 for addition

Return values: Carry

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
extern long result, data1, data2;
void main()
{
    if (ovf_addc(data1, data2)) {
        result = 0;
    }
}
```

Remarks: As this function refers to the T bit value, it must be ensured that the T bit value is correct immediately before this function. If a comparison or shift operation is written immediately before this function, the T bit reflects the operation result and this function cannot be executed correctly.

```c
if (a) {...} /* Sets comparison result to T bit */
```

```c
if (ovf_addc(data1, data2)) { /* Adds comparison result */
```
long addv (long data1, long data2)

Description: Adds data1 and data2, and sets the carry to the T bit.

Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters:
- data1 Data 1 for addition
- data2 Data 2 for addition

Return values: Addition result

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
extern long result, data1, data2;
void main()
{
    result = addv(data1, data2);
}
```

int ovf_addv (long data1, long data2)

Description: Adds data1 and data2, and refers to the carry.

Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters:
- data1 Data 1 for addition
- data2 Data 2 for addition

Return values: Carry

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
extern long result, data1, data2;
void main()
{
    if (ovf_addv(data1, data2)) {
        result = 0;
    }
}
```
long subc (long data1, long data2)

Description: Subtracts data2 and T bit from data1, and sets the borrow to the T bit.

Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters:  
  data1 Data 1 for subtraction  
  data2 Data 2 for subtraction

Return values: Subtraction result

Example:
```
#include <machine.h>
extern long result, data1, data2;
void main()
{
    result = subc(data1, data2);
}
```

Remarks: As this function refers to the T bit value, it must be ensured that the T bit value is correct immediately before this function. If a comparison or shift operation is written immediately before this function, the T bit reflects the operation result and this function cannot be executed correctly.
```
if (a) {...} /* Sets comparison result to T bit */
result[0] = subc(data1[0], data2[0]); /* Subtracts comparison result */
result[1] = subc(data1[1], data2[1]); /* Reflects previous operation result */
```
int unf_subc (long data1, long data2)

Description: Subtracts data2 and T bit from data1, and refers to the borrow.

Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters:
- data1: Data 1 for subtraction
- data2: Data 2 for subtraction

Return values: Borrow

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
extern long result, data1, data2;
void main()
{
    if (unf_subc(data1, data2)) {
        result = 0;
    }
}
```

Remarks: As this function refers to the T bit value, it must be ensured that the T bit value is correct immediately before this function. If a comparison or shift operation is written immediately before this function, the T bit reflects the operation result and this function cannot be executed correctly.

```c
if (a) {...} /* Sets comparison result to T bit */
if (unf_subc(data1, data2)) { /* Subtracts comparison result */
```
long subv (long data1, long data2)

Description: Subtracts data2 from data1, and sets the borrow to the T bit.

Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters: 
data1 Data 1 for subtraction
data2 Data 2 for subtraction

Return values: Subtraction result

Example:
#include <machine.h>
extern long result, data1, data2;
void main()
{
    result = subv(data1, data2);
}

int unf_subv (long data1, long data2)

Description: Subtracts data2 from data1, and refers to the borrow.

Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters: 
data1 Data 1 for subtraction
data2 Data 2 for subtraction

Return values: Borrow

Example:
#include <machine.h>
extern long result, data1, data2;
void main()
{
    if (unf_subv(data1, data2)) {
        result = 0;
    }
}
long negc (long data)

Description: Subtracts data and T bit from 0, and sets the borrow to the T bit.

Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters: data Data

Return values: Sign inversion result

Example:
#include <machine.h>
extern long result, data;
void main()
{
    result = negc(data);
}

Remarks: As this function refers to the T bit value, it must be ensured that the T bit
value is correct immediately before this function. If a comparison or shift
operation is written immediately before this function, the T bit reflects the
operation result and this function cannot be executed correctly.

if (a) {...
    result[0] = negc(data[0]); /* Subtracts comparison result */
    result[1] = negc(data[1]); /* Reflects previous operation result */
unsigned long div1 (unsigned long data1, unsigned long data2)

Description: Performs division data1/data2 for one step, and sets the result to the T bit.

Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters: 
- data1: Dividend
- data2: Divisor

Return values: Updated dividend value

Example:
```
#include <machine.h>
extern unsigned long data1, data2;
void main(void)
{
    div0u();
    data1 = div1(data1, data2);
}
```

Remarks: Division can be implemented by repeating this function, but the M, Q, and T bits must not be modified during the repeat (note that a comparison or shift operation will modify the T bit). Execute div0s() or div0u() immediately before this function to initialize the M, Q, and T bits.
int div0s (long data1, long data2)

Description: Performs initial settings for signed division data1/data2, and refers to the T bit.

Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters:
- data1: Dividend
- data2: Divisor

Return values: T bit value

Example:
```
#include <machine.h>
extern long data1, data2;
void main(void)
{
    (void)div0s(data1, data2);
    data1 = div1(data1, data2);
}
```

void div0u (void)

Description: Performs initial settings for unsigned division.

Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Example:
```
#include <machine.h>
extern unsigned long data1, data2;
void main(void)
{
    div0u();
    data1 = div1(data1, data2);
}
```
**unsigned long rotl (unsigned long data)**

Description: Rotates data to left by one bit, and sets the bit pushed out of the operand to the T bit.

Header file: `<machine.h>` or `<umachine.h>`

Parameters: data Data

Return values: Result of 1-bit left rotation

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
extern unsigned long result, data;
void main()
{
    result = rotl(data);
}
```

**unsigned long rotr (unsigned long data)**

Description: Rotates data to right by one bit, and sets the bit pushed out of the operand to the T bit.

Header file: `<machine.h>` or `<umachine.h>`

Parameters: data Data

Return values: Result of 1-bit right rotation

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
extern unsigned long result, data;
void main()
{
    result = rotr(data);
}
```
unsigned long rotcl (unsigned long data)

Description: Rotates data including the T bit to left by one bit, and sets the bit pushed out of the operand to the T bit.

Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters: data Data

Return values: Result of 1-bit left rotation

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
extern unsigned long result, data;
void main()
{
    result = rotcl(data);
}
```

Remarks: As this function refers to the T bit value, it must be ensured that the T bit value is correct immediately before this function. If a comparison or shift operation is written immediately before this function, the T bit reflects the operation result and this function cannot be executed correctly.

```c
if (a) {...} /* Sets comparison result to T bit */
result[1] = rotcl(data[1]); /* Rotates comparison result */
```
unsigned long rotcr (unsigned long data)

Description: Rotates data including the T bit to right by one bit, and sets the bit pushed out of the operand to the T bit.

Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters: data Data

Return values: Result of 1-bit right rotation

Example:
```
#include <machine.h>
extern unsigned long result, data;
void main()
{
    result = rotcr(data);
}
```

Remarks: As this function refers to the T bit value, it must be ensured that the T bit value is correct immediately before this function. If a comparison or shift operation is written immediately before this function, the T bit reflects the operation result and this function cannot be executed correctly.
```
if (a) {...} /* Sets comparison result to T bit */
result[1] = rotcr(data[1]); /* Rotates comparison result */
```

unsigned long shll (unsigned long data)

Description: Shifts data to left by one bit, and sets the bit pushed out of the operand to the T bit.

Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters: data Data

Return values: Result of 1-bit left shift

Example:
```
#include <machine.h>
extern unsigned long result, data;
void main()
{
    result = shll(data);
}
```
unsigned long shlr (unsigned long data)

Description: Shifts data logically to right by one bit, and sets the bit pushed out of the operand to the T bit.

Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters: data Data

Return values: Result of 1-bit right shift

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
extern unsigned long result, data;
void main()
{
    result = shlr(data);
}
```

long shar (long data)

Description: Shifts data arithmetically to right by one bit, and sets the bit pushed out of the operand to the T bit.

Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters: data Data

Return values: Result of 1-bit right shift

Example:
```c
#include <machine.h>
extern long result, data;
void main()
{
    result = shar(data);
}
```
long clipsb (long data)

Description: Returns the value of data when data is in the range from –128 to 127, or returns the upper limit or lower limit when data is outside the range.

Header file: `<machine.h>` or `<umachine.h>`

Parameters: data Data

Return values:
- –128 (data < –128)
- data (–128 <= data <= 127)
- 127 (127 < data)

Example:
```
#include <machine.h>
extern long result, data;
void main()
{
    result = clipsb(data);
}
```

Remarks: This function is only valid when `cpu = sh2a` or `sh2afpu`.

long clipsw (long data)

Description: Returns the value of data when data is in the range from –32768 to 32767, or returns the upper limit or lower limit when data is outside the range.

Header file: `<machine.h>` or `<umachine.h>`

Parameters: data Data

Return values:
- –32768 (data < –32768)
- data (–32768 <= data <= 32767)
- 32767 (32767 < data)

Example:
```
#include <machine.h>
extern long result, data;
void main()
{
    result = clipsw(data);
}
```
Remarks: This function is only valid when cpu = sh2a or sh2afpu.

unsigned long clipub (unsigned long data)

Description: Returns the value of data when data is in the range from 0 to 255, or returns the upper limit when data is outside the range.

Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters: data Data

Return values: data (data <= 255)
255 (255 < data)

Example: #include <machine.h>
extern unsigned long result, data;
void main()
{
    result = clipub(data);
}

Remarks: This function is only valid when cpu = sh2a or sh2afpu.

unsigned long clipuw (unsigned long data)

Description: Returns the value of data when data is in the range from 0 to 65535, or returns the upper limit when data is outside the range.

Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters: data Data

Return values: data (data <= 65535)
65535 (65535 < data)

Example: #include <machine.h>
extern unsigned long result, data;
void main()
{
    
}
result = clipuw(data);
}

Remarks: This function is only valid when CPU = sh2a or sh2afpu.

void set_tbr (void *data)

Description: Sets data to TBR.

Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameters: data Data

Example:
#include <machine.h>
void *data;
void main(void)
{
    set_tbr(data);
}

Remarks: This function is only valid when CPU = sh2a or sh2afpu.

void *get_tbr (void)

Description: Refers to the TBR value.

Header file: <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Return values: TBR value

Example:
#include <machine.h>
void *result;
void main(void)
{
    result = get_tbr();
}

Remarks: This function is only valid when CPU = sh2a or sh2afpu.
void *sr_jsr (void *func, int imask)

Description: Clears the RB and BL bits in the SR, sets the imask value as the interrupt mask, and then calls the func function. A value from 0 to 15 can be specified for imask. When 0 is specified for imask, the interrupt mask is not set and only the RB and BL bits are cleared.

Header file: <machine.h> or <smachine.h>

Return values: None

Example:
#include <machine.h>
#pragma interrupt func1(bank)
extern void func2(void);
void func1(void)
{
    sr_jsr(func2, 15);
}

_func1:
    MOV.L R14, @-R15
    STS.L PR, @-R15
    STC SSR, @-R15
    STC SPC, @-R15
    STC SR, R4
    MOV.L L11, R1 ; H'FFFFF0F
    MOV #-16, R5 ; H'FFFFFF0
    AND R1, R4 ; Clears the RB and BL bits.
    EXTU.B R5, R5
    MOV.L L11+4, R14 ; _func2
    OR R5, R4 ; Sets the interrupt mask to 15.
    LDC R4, SR
    JSR @R14
    NOP
    LDC @R15+, SPC
    LDC @R15+, SSR
    LDS.L @R15+, PR
    MOV.L @R15+, R14
    RTE
    NOP
void bset(unsigned char *addr, unsigned char bit_num)  
Manipulate bits in memory

Description:  Sets 1 to the specified bit (bit_num) of the specified address (addr). The values specifiable for bit_num are 0 to 7.

Header:  <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameter:  
addr  Address
bit_num  Bit

Example:
#include <machine.h>
void func1(void)
{
    bset((unsigned char *)(0xfffe3886),0);
}

After compilation:
MOVI20  #-116602,R14   ; H'FFFE3886
BSET.B  #0,@(0,R14)

Remarks:  This function is only valid when cpu = sh3, sh3dsp, sh4, sh4a, or sh4aldsp is specified.
void bclr(unsigned char *addr, unsigned char bit_num)  \--- Manipulate bits in memory

Description:  Sets 0 to the specified bit (bit_num) of the specified address (addr). The values specifiable for bit_num are 0 to 7.

Header:  <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameter:  
*addr  Address
bit_num  Bit

Example:  
#include <machine.h>
void func1(void)
{
    bclr((unsigned char *)(0xfffe3886),0);
}

After compilation:
MOVI20  #-116602,R14   ; H'FFFE3886
BCLR.B  #0,@(0,R14)

Remarks:  This function is only valid when cpu= sh2a | sh2afpu is specified.
void bcopy(unsigned char *from_addr, unsigned char from_bit_num, unsigned char *to_addr, unsigned char to_bit_num)  Manipulate bits in memory

Description:  Sets the value of bit [1] (from_bit_num) of address [1] (from_addr) to bit T and bit [2] (to_bit_num) of address [2] (to_addr). The values specifiable for from_bit_num and to_bit_num are 0 to 7.

Header:  <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameter:  *from_addr  Address [1] (origin)
from_bit_num  Bit [1] (origin)
*to_addr  Address [2] (destination)
to_bit_num  Bit [2] (destination)

Example:  To copy the values of different bits at different addresses:
#include <machine.h>
void func1(void)
{
    bcopy((unsigned char *)(0xfffe3886), 0,
          (unsigned char *)(0xfffd3886), 1);
}

After compilation:
MOVI20     #-116602,R14   ; H'FFFE3886
BLD.B      #0,@(0,R14)
MOVI20     #-182138,R14   ; H'FFFD3886
BST.B      #1,@(0,R14)
RTS/N

To copy the values of different bits at the same address:
#include <machine.h>
void func1(void)
{
    bcopy((unsigned char *)(0xfffe3886), 0,
          (unsigned char *)(0xfffe3886), 1);
}
After compilation:

- MOV120  #−116602,R14  ; H'FFFE3886
- BLD.B   #0,@(0,R14)
- MOV120  #−182138,R14  ; H'FFFD3886
- BST.B   #1,@(0,R14)
- RTS/N

Remarks: This function is only valid when `cpu= sh2a | sh2afpu` is specified.
void bnotcopy(unsigned char *from_addr, unsigned char from_bit_num, unsigned char *to_addr, unsigned char to_bit_num) Manipulate bits in memory

Description:  Sets the inverted value of bit [1] (from_bit_num) of address [1] (from_addr) to bit [2] (to_bit_num) of address [2] (to_addr). The values specifiable for from_bit_num and to_bit_num are 0 to 7.

Header:  <machine.h> or <umachine.h>

Parameter:  *from_addr  Address [1] (origin)
   from_bit_num  Bit [1] (origin)
   *to_addr  Address [2] (destination)
   to_bit_num  Bit [2] (destination)

Example:  To copy the inverted values of different bits at different addresses:
   #include <machine.h>
   void func1(void)
   {
      bnotcopy((unsigned char *)(0xfffe3886),
               0,
               (unsigned char *)(0xffffd3886),
               1);
   }

   After compilation:
   MOVI20   #-116602,R14   ; H'FFFE3886
   BLDNOT.B #0,@(0,R14)
   MOVI20   #-182138,R14   ; H'FFFD3886
   BST.B    #1,@(0,R14)
   RTS/N

   To copy the inverted values of specific bits:
   #include <machine.h>
   void func1(void)
   {
      bnotcopy((unsigned char *)(0xfffe3886),
               1,
               (unsigned char *)(0xfffe3886),
               1);
   }
After compilation:

\begin{verbatim}
MOVI20    #-116602,R14 ; H'FFFE3886
BLDNOT.B  #1,@(0,R14)
BST.B     #1,@(0,R14)
RTS/N
\end{verbatim}

Remarks: This function is only valid when cpu= \texttt{sh2a} | \texttt{sh2afpu} is specified.
10.4 C/C++ Libraries

10.4.1 Standard C Libraries

Overview of Libraries

This section describes the specifications of the C library functions, which can be used generally in C/C++ programs. This section gives an overview of the library configuration, and describes the layout and the terms used in this library function description.

(1) Library Types

A library implements standard processing such as input/output and string manipulation in the form of C/C++ language functions. Libraries can be used by including standard include files for each unit of processing.

Standard include files contain declarations for the corresponding libraries and definitions of the macro names necessary to use them.

Table 10.37 shows the various library types and the corresponding standard include files.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Library Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Standard Include Files</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Program diagnostics</td>
<td>Outputs program diagnostic information.</td>
<td>&lt;assert.h&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Character handling</td>
<td>Handles and checks characters.</td>
<td>&lt;ctype.h&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mathematics</td>
<td>Performs numerical calculations such as trigonometric functions.</td>
<td>&lt;math.h&gt; &lt;mathf.h&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-local jumps</td>
<td>Supports transfer of control between functions.</td>
<td>&lt;setjmp.h&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Variable arguments</td>
<td>Supports access to variable arguments for functions with such arguments.</td>
<td>&lt;stdarg.h&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Input/output</td>
<td>Performs input/output handling.</td>
<td>&lt;stdio.h&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General utilities</td>
<td>Performs C program standard processing such as storage area management.</td>
<td>&lt;stdlib.h&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>String handling</td>
<td>Performs string comparison, copying, etc.</td>
<td>&lt;string.h&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In addition to the above standard include files, standard include files consisting solely of macro name definitions, shown in table 10.38, are provided to improve programming efficiency.

**Table 10.38 Standard Include Files Comprising Macro Name Definitions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard Include File</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;stddef.h&gt;</td>
<td>Defines macro names used by the standard include files.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;float.h&gt;</td>
<td>Defines various limit values relating to the internal representation of floating-point numbers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;limits.h&gt;</td>
<td>Defines various limit values relating to compiler internal processing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;errno.h&gt;</td>
<td>Defines the value to set in errno when an error is generated in a library function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;fixed.h&gt;</td>
<td>Defines various limit values relating to the internal representation of fixed-point numbers.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2) Organization of Library Part

The organization of the library part of this manual is described below.

Library functions are categorized for each standard include file, and descriptions are given for each standard include file. For each category, there is first a description relating to the macro names and function declarations defined in the standard include file (figure 10.4), followed by a description of each function (figure 10.5).

Figure 10.4 shows the standard include file description layout, and figure 10.5, the function description layout.

<standard include file name>

- Summarizes the overall function of this standard include file.
- Describes names defined or declared in this standard include file according to the name categories such as [Type], [Constant], [Variable], and [Function]. For macro names, (macro) is always attached beside the name category or name description.
- Adds description if implementation-defined specifications are included or notes common to the functions declared in this standard include file are given.

**Figure 10.4 Layout of Standard Include File Description**
### Function name

**Description:** Describes the library function.

**Header file:** Shows the name of standard include file to be declared.

**Return value:**
- **Normal:** Shows the return value when the library function ends normally.
- **Abnormal:** Shows the return value when the library function ends abnormally.

**Parameters:** Indicates the meanings of the parameters.

**Example:** Describes the calling procedure.

**Error conditions:**
- Conditions for the occurrence of errors that cannot be
determined from the return value in library function processing.
- If such an error occurs, the value defined in each compiler for the error type is set in `errno`.

**Remarks:** Details the library function specifications.

**Implementation define:**
- The compiler processing method.

---

#### Figure 10.5 Layout of Function Description

Note: `errno` is a variable that stores the error type if an error occurs during execution of a library function. See section 10.4.1, descriptions for `<stddef.h>`, for details.

### (3) Terms Used in Library Function Descriptions

(a) Stream input/output

In data input/output, it would lead to poor efficiency if each call of an input/output function, which handles a single character, drove the input/output device and the OS functions. To solve this problem, a storage area called a buffer is normally provided, and the data in the buffer is input or output at one time.

From the viewpoint of the program, on the other hand, it is more convenient to call input/output functions for each character.

Using the library functions, character-by-character input/output can be performed efficiently without awareness of the buffer status within the program by automatically performing buffer management.
Those library functions enable a programmer to write a program considering the input/output as a single data stream, making the programmer be able to implement data input/output efficiently without being aware of the detailed procedure. Such capability is called stream input/output.

(b) FILE structure and file pointer

The buffer, and other information, required for the stream input/output described above are stored in a single structure, defined by the name FILE in the <stdio.h> standard include file. In stream input/output, all files are handled as having a FILE structure data structure. Files of this kind are called stream files. A pointer to this FILE structure is called a file pointer, and is used to specify an input/output file.

The file pointer is defined as

```c
FILE *fp;
```

When a file is opened by the `fopen` function, etc., the file pointer is returned. If the open processing fails, NULL is returned. Note that if a NULL pointer is specified in another stream input/output function, that function will end abnormally. When a file is opened, the file pointer value must be checked to see whether the open processing has been successful.

(c) Functions and macros

There are two library function implementation methods: functions and macros.

A function has the same interface as an ordinary user-written function, and is incorporated during linkage. A macro is defined using a `#define` statement in the standard include file relating to the function.

The following points must be noted concerning macros:

(i) Macros are expanded automatically by the preprocessor, and therefore a macro expansion cannot be invalidated even if the user declares a function with the same name.

(ii) If an expression with a side effect as a macro parameter (assignment expression, increment, decrement) is specified, its result is not guaranteed.

Example: Macro definition of MACRO that calculates the absolute value of a parameter, is as follows

```c
#define MACRO(a)  (a) >= 0 ? (a) : -(a)
```

If the following definition is made:

```c
X = MACRO(a++)
```

is in the program, the macro will be expanded as follows:

```c
X = (a++) >= 0 ? (a++) : -(a++)
```

a will be incremented twice, and the resultant value will be different from the absolute value of the initial value of a.
(d) EOF
   In functions such as `getc`, `getchar`, and `fgetc`, which input data from a file, EOF is the
   value returned at end-of-file. The name EOF is defined in the `<stdio.h>` standard include
   file.

(e) NULL
   This is the value when a pointer is not pointing at anything. The name NULL is defined in
   the `<stddef.h>` standard include file.

(f) Null character
   The end of a string literal in C is indicated by the characters `\0`. String parameters in
   library functions must also conform to this convention. The characters `\0` indicating the
   end of a string are called null characters.

(g) Return code
   With some library functions, a return value is used to determine the result (such as whether
   the specified processing succeeded or failed). In this case, the return value is called as the
   return code.

(h) Text files and binary files
   Many systems have special file formats to store data. To support this facility, library
   functions have two file formats: text files and binary files.

   (i) Text files
      A text file is used to store ordinary text, and consists of a collection of lines. In text file
      input, the new-line designator (`\n`) is input as a line separator. In output, output of the
      current line is terminated by outputting the new-line designator (`\n`). Text files are used
      to input/output files that store standard text for each system. With text files, characters
      input or output by a library function do not necessarily correspond to a physical stream
      of data in the file.

   (ii) Binary files
      A binary file is configured as a row of byte data. Data input or output by a library
      function corresponds to a physical list of data in the file.

(i) Standard input/output files
   Files that can be used as standard by input/output library functions by default without
   preparations such as opening file are called standard input/output files. Standard
   input/output files comprise the standard input file (stdin), standard output file (stdout), and
   standard error output file (stderr).

   (i) Standard input file (stdin)
      Standard file to be input to a program.

   (ii) Standard output file (stdout)
      Standard file to be output from a program.
(iii) Standard error output file (stderr)

Standard file for storing output of error messages, etc., from a program.

(j) Floating-point numbers

Floating-point numbers are numbers represented by approximation of real-numbers. In a C source program, floating-point numbers are represented by decimal numbers, but inside the computer they are normally represented by binary numbers.

In the case of binary numbers, the floating-point representation is as follows:

\[ 2^n \times m \] (n: integer, m: binary fraction)

Here, n is called the exponent of the floating-point number, and m is called the mantissa. The number of bits to represent n and m is normally fixed so that a floating-point number can be represented using a specific data size.

Some terms relating to floating-point numbers are explained below.

(i) Radix

An integer value indicating the number of distinct digits in the number system used by a floating-point number (10 for decimal, 2 for binary, etc.). The radix is normally 2.

(ii) Rounding

Rounding is performed when an intermediate result of an operation of higher precision than a floating-point number is stored as a floating-point number. There is rounding up, rounding down, and half-adjust rounding (i.e., rounding up fractions over 1/2 and rounding down fractions under 1/2; or, in binary representation, rounding down 0 and rounding up 1).

(iii) Normalization

When a floating-point number is represented in the form \( 2^n \times m \), the same number can be represented in different ways.

Example: The following two expressions represent the same value.

\[ 2^5 \times 1.0 \] \( (2) \) \( (\text{indicates a binary number}) \)

\[ 2^6 \times 0.1 \] \( (2) \)

Usually, a representation in which the leading digit is not 0 is used, in order to secure the number of valid digits. This is called a normalized floating-point number, and the operation that converts a floating-point number to this kind of representation is called normalization.
(iv) Guard bit

When saving an intermediate result of a floating-point operation, data one bit longer than the actual floating-point number is normally provided in order for rounding to be carried out. However, this alone does not permit an accurate result to be achieved in the event of digit dropping, etc. For this reason, the intermediate result is saved with an extra bit, called a guard bit.

(k) File access mode

This is a string that indicates the kind of processing to be carried out on a file when it is opened. There are 12 different strings, as shown in table 10.39.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Access Mode</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'r'</td>
<td>Open text file for reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'w'</td>
<td>Open text file for writing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'a'</td>
<td>Open text file for addition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'rb'</td>
<td>Open binary file for reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'wb'</td>
<td>Open binary file for writing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ab'</td>
<td>Open binary file for addition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'r+'</td>
<td>Open text file for reading and updating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'w+'</td>
<td>Open text file for writing and updating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'a+'</td>
<td>Open text file for addition and updating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'r+b'</td>
<td>Open binary file for reading and updating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'w+b'</td>
<td>Open binary file for writing and updating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'a+b'</td>
<td>Open binary file for addition and updating</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(l) Implementation definition

Definitions differ by compilers.

(m) Error indicator and end-of-file indicator

The following two data items are held for each stream file: (1) an error indicator that indicates whether or not an error has occurred during file input/output, and (2) an end-of-file indicator that indicates whether or not the input file has ended.

These data items can be referenced by the `ferror` function and the `feof` function, respectively.
With some functions that handle stream files, error occurrence and end-of-file information cannot be obtained from the return value alone. The error indicator and end-of-file indicator are useful for checking the file status after execution of such functions.

(n) File position indicator
Stream files that can be read or written at any position within the file, such as disk files, have an associated data item called a file position indicator that indicates the current read/write position within the file.

File position indicators are not used with stream files that do not permit the read/write position within the file to be changed, such as terminals.

(4) Notes on use of libraries
(a) The contents of macros defined in a library differ for each compiler.

When a library is used, the behavior is not guaranteed if the contents of these macros are redefined.

(b) With libraries, errors are not detected in all cases. The behavior is not guaranteed if library functions are called in a form other than those shown in the descriptions in the following sections.

<stddef.h>

Defines macro names used in common in the standard include file.

The following macro names are all implementation-defined.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type (macro)</td>
<td>ptrdiff_t</td>
<td>Indicates the type of the result of subtracting two pointers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t</td>
<td>Indicates the type of the result of an operation using the sizeof operator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constant (macro)</td>
<td>NULL</td>
<td>Indicates the value when a pointer is not pointing at anything. This value is such that the result of a comparison with 0 using the equality operator (==) is true.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Variable (macro)</td>
<td>errno</td>
<td>If an error occurs during library function processing, the error code defined in the respective library is set in errno. By setting 0 in errno before calling a library function and checking the error code set in errno after the library function processing has ended, it is possible to check whether an error occurred during the library function processing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macro (type, member)</td>
<td>offsetof</td>
<td>Obtains the offset in bytes from the beginning of a structure to a structure member.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Implementation Define

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Compiler Specifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Value of macro NULL</td>
<td>The pointer type value 0 is set to void.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contents of macro ptdiff_t</td>
<td>int type</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

`<assert.h>`

Adds diagnostics into programs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Function (macro)</td>
<td>assert</td>
<td>Adds diagnostics into programs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To invalidate the diagnostics defined by `<assert.h>`, define macro name NDEBUG with a `#define` statement (`#define NDEBUG`) before including `<assert.h>`.

Note: If a `#undef` statement is used for macro name assert, the result of subsequent assert calls is not guaranteed.

**void assert (int expression)**

Description: Adds diagnostics into programs.

Header file: `<assert.h>`

Parameters: expression Expression to be evaluated.

Example:

```c
#include <assert.h>
int expression;
assert (expression);
```

Remarks: When the expression is true, the assert macro terminates processing without returning a value. If the expression is false, it outputs diagnostic information to the standard error file in the form defined by the compiler, and then calls the `abort` function.

The diagnostic information includes the parameter's program text, source file name, and source line numbers.
Implementation define:

The following message is output when the expression is false in \texttt{assert (expression)}:

\texttt{ASSERTION FAILED:\textbackslash n expression\textbackslash n FILE\textbackslash n <file name>, line\textbackslash n <line number>}

\texttt{<ctype.h>}

Performs type determination and conversion for characters.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>isalnum</td>
<td>Tests for an alphabetic character or a decimal digit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>isalpha</td>
<td>Tests for an alphabetic character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iscntrl</td>
<td>Tests for a control character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>isdigit</td>
<td>Tests for a decimal digit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>isgraph</td>
<td>Tests for a printing character except space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>islower</td>
<td>Tests for a lowercase letter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>isprint</td>
<td>Tests for a printing character, including space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ispunct</td>
<td>Tests for a special character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>isspace</td>
<td>Tests for a space character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>isupper</td>
<td>Tests for an uppercase letter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>isxdigit</td>
<td>Tests for a hexadecimal digit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tolower</td>
<td>Converts an uppercase letter to lowercase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>toupper</td>
<td>Converts a lowercase letter to uppercase.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the above functions, if the input parameter value is not within the range that can be represented by the unsigned char type and is not EOF, the operation of the function is not guaranteed. Character types are listed in table 10.40.
Table 10.40 Character Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Uppercase letter</td>
<td>Any of the following 26 characters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'P', 'Q', 'R', 'S', 'T', 'U', 'V', 'W', 'X', 'Y', 'Z'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lowercase letter</td>
<td>Any of the following 26 characters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e', 'f', 'g', 'h', 'i', 'j', 'k', 'l', 'm', 'n',</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'o', 'p', 'q', 'r', 's', 't', 'u', 'v', 'w', 'x', 'y', 'z'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alphabetic character</td>
<td>Any uppercase or lowercase letter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decimal digit</td>
<td>Any of the following 10 characters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'0', '1', '2', '3', '4', '5', '6', '7', '8', '9'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Printing character</td>
<td>A character, including space (&quot; &quot;) that is displayed on the screen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(corresponding to ASCII codes 0x20 to 0x7E)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control character</td>
<td>Any character except a printing character</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White-space character</td>
<td>Any of the following 6 characters</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|                        | Space (" "), form feed (''), new-line ('
'), carriage return (''),   |
|                        | horizontal tab ('\t'), vertical tab ('\v')                                |
| Hexadecimal digit      | Any of the following 22 characters                                          |
|                        | '0', '1', '2', '3', '4', '5', '6', '7', '8', '9', 'A', 'B', 'C', 'D', 'E', |
|                        | 'F', 'a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e', 'f'                                         |
| Special character      | Any printing character except space (" "), an alphabetic character, or a   |
|                        | decimal digit                                                              |

Implementation Define

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Compiler Specifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The character set inspected by the isalnum function, isalpha function, iscntrl function,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>islower function, isprint function, and isupper functions</td>
<td>Character set represented by the unsigned char type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Table 10.41 shows the character set that results in a true return value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 10.41 True Character

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function Name</th>
<th>True Characters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>isalnum</td>
<td>'0' to '9', 'A' to 'Z', 'a' to 'z'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isalpha</td>
<td>'A' to 'Z', 'a' to 'z'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iscntrl</td>
<td>'\x00' to '\x1f', '\x7f'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>islower</td>
<td>'a' to 'z'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isprint</td>
<td>'\x20' to '\x7E'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isupper</td>
<td>'A' to 'Z'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

int isalnum (int c)

Description: Tests for an alphabetic character or a decimal digit.

Header file: `<ctype.h>`

Return values: If character c is an alphabetic character or a decimal digit: Nonzero
If character c is not an alphabetic character or a decimal digit: 0

Parameters: c Character to be tested

Example:
```c
#include <ctype.h>
int c, ret;
ret=isalnum(c);
```
int isalpha(int c)

Description: Tests for an alphabetic character.

Header file: <ctype.h>

Return values: If character \( c \) is an alphabetic character: Nonzero
If character \( c \) is not an alphabetic character: 0

Parameters: \( c \) Character to be tested

Example:
```c
#include <ctype.h>
int c, ret;
ret=isalpha(c);
```

int iscntrl(int c)

Description: Tests for a control character.

Header file: <ctype.h>

Return values: If character \( c \) is a control character: Nonzero
If character \( c \) is not a control character: 0

Parameters: \( c \) Character to be tested

Example:
```c
#include <ctype.h>
int c, ret;
ret=iscntrl(c);
```
int isdigit (int c)

Description: Tests for a decimal digit.

Header file: <ctype.h>

Return values: If character \( c \) is a decimal digit: Nonzero
If character \( c \) is not a decimal digit: 0

Parameters: c Character to be tested

Example:
```c
#include <ctype.h>
int c, ret;
ret=isdigit(c);
```

int isgraph (int c)

Description: Tests for any printing character except space (‘ ’).

Header file: <ctype.h>

Return values: If character \( c \) is a printing character except space: Nonzero
If character \( c \) is not a printing character except space: 0

Parameters: c Character to be tested

Example:
```c
#include <ctype.h>
int c, ret;
ret=isgraph(c);
```
int islower (int c)

Description: Tests for a lowercase letter.

Header file: <ctype.h>

Return values: If character \( c \) is a lowercase letter: Nonzero
If character \( c \) is not a lowercase letter: 0

Parameters: \( c \) Character to be tested

Example:
```c
#include <ctype.h>
int c, ret;
ret=islower(c);
```

int isprint (int c)

Description: Tests for a printing character, including space (‘ ’).

Header file: <ctype.h>

Return values: If character \( c \) is a printing character, including space: Nonzero
If character \( c \) is not a printing character, including space: 0

Parameters: \( c \) Character to be tested

Example:
```c
#include <ctype.h>
int c, ret;
ret=isprint(c);
```
int ispunct (int c)

Description: Tests for a special character.

Header file: <ctype.h>

Return values: If character c is a special character: Nonzero
If character c is not a special character: 0

Parameters: c Character to be tested

Example: #include <ctype.h>
int c, ret;
ret=ispunct(c);

int isspace (int c)

Description: Tests for a white-space character.

Header file: <ctype.h>

Return values: If character c is a white-space character: Nonzero
If character c is not a white-space character: 0

Parameters: c Character to be tested

Example: #include <ctype.h>
int c, ret;
ret=isspace(c);
int isupper (int c)
Description: Tests for an uppercase letter.
Header file: <ctype.h>
Return values: If character c is an uppercase letter: Nonzero
If character c is not an uppercase letter: 0
Parameters: c Character to be tested
Example: #include <ctype.h>
int c, ret;
ret=isupper(c);

int isxdigit (int c)
Description: Tests for a hexadecimal digit.
Header file: <ctype.h>
Return values: If character c is a hexadecimal digit: Nonzero
If character c is not a hexadecimal digit: 0
Parameters: c Character to be tested
Example: #include <ctype.h>
int c, ret;
ret=isxdigit(c);
int tolower (int c)

Description: Converts an uppercase letter to the corresponding lowercase letter.

Header file: <ctype.h>

Return values: If character c is an uppercase letter: Lowercase letter corresponding to character c If character c is not an uppercase letter: Character c

Parameters: c Character to be converted

Example:
#include <ctype.h>
int c, ret;
ret=tolower(c);

int toupper (int c)

Description: Converts a lowercase letter to the corresponding uppercase letter.

Header file: <ctype.h>

Return values: If character c is a lowercase letter: Uppercase letter corresponding to character c If character c is not a lowercase letter: Character c

Parameters: c Character to be converted

Example:
#include <ctype.h>
int c, ret;
ret=toupper(c);

<float.h>

Defines various limits relating to the internal representation of floating-point numbers.

The following macro names are all implementation-defined.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Definition Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Constant</td>
<td>FLT_RADIX</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Indicates the radix in exponent representation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(macro)</td>
<td>FLT_ROUNDS</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Indicates whether or not the result of an add operation is rounded off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The meaning of this macro definition is as follows:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(1) When result of add operation is rounded off: Positive value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(2) When result of add operation is rounded down: 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(3) When nothing is specified: –1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The rounding-off and rounding-down methods are implementation-defined.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FLT_GUARD</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Indicates whether or not a guard bit is used in multiply operations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The meaning of this macro definition is as follows:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(1) When guard bit is used: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(2) When guard bit is not used: 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FLT_NORMALIZE</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Indicates whether or not floating-point values are normalized.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The meaning of this macro definition is as follows:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(1) When normalized: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(2) When not normalized: 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FLT_MAX</td>
<td>3.4028235677973364e+38F</td>
<td>Indicates the maximum value that can be represented as a float type floating-point value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DBL_MAX</td>
<td>1.7976931348623158e+308</td>
<td>Indicates the maximum value that can be represented as a double type floating-point value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LDBL_MAX</td>
<td>1.7976931348623158e+308</td>
<td>Indicates the maximum value that can be represented as a long double type floating-point value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FLT_MAX_EXP</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>Indicates the power-of-radix maximum value that can be represented as a float type floating-point value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DBL_MAX_EXP</td>
<td>1023</td>
<td>Indicates the power-of-radix maximum value that can be represented as a double type floating-point value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Definition Name</td>
<td>Definition Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constant (macro)</td>
<td>LDBL_MAX_EXP</td>
<td>1023</td>
<td>Indicates the power-of-radix maximum value that can be represented as a long double type floating-point value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FLT_MAX_10_EXP</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>Indicates the power-of-10 maximum value that can be represented as a float type floating-point value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DBL_MAX_10_EXP</td>
<td>308</td>
<td>Indicates the power-of-10 maximum value that can be represented as a double type floating-point value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LDBL_MAX_10_EXP</td>
<td>308</td>
<td>Indicates the power-of-10 maximum value that can be represented as a long double type floating-point value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLT_MIN</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Indicates the minimum positive value that can be represented as a float type floating-point value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● When `-cpu=sh4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● Other cases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.4012984643248171 e-45F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DBL_MIN</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Indicates the minimum positive value that can be represented as a double type floating-point value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● When `-cpu=sh4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● Other cases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4.9406564584124654 e-324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDBL_MIN</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Indicates the minimum positive value that can be represented as a long double type floating-point value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● When `-cpu=sh4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● Other cases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4.9406564584124654 e-324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLT_MIN_EXP</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Indicates the power-of-radix minimum value of a floating-point value that can be represented as a float type positive value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● When `-cpu=sh4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● Other cases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Definition Name</td>
<td>Definition Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constant</td>
<td>DBL_MIN_EXP</td>
<td></td>
<td>Indicates the power-of-radix minimum value of a floating-point value that can be represented as a double type positive value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LDBL_MIN_EXP</td>
<td></td>
<td>Indicates the power-of-radix minimum value of a floating-point value that can be represented as a long double type positive value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FLT_MIN_10_EXP</td>
<td></td>
<td>Indicates the power-of-10 minimum value of a floating-point value that can be represented as a float type positive value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DBL_MIN_10_EXP</td>
<td></td>
<td>Indicates the power-of-10 minimum value of a floating-point value that can be represented as a double type positive value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LDBL_MIN_10_EXP</td>
<td></td>
<td>Indicates the power-of-10 minimum value of a floating-point value that can be represented as a long double type positive value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FLT_DIG</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Indicates the maximum number of digits in float type floating-point value decimal-precision.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DBL_DIG</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Indicates the maximum number of digits in double type floating-point value decimal-precision.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LDBL_DIG</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Indicates the maximum number of digits in long double type floating-point value decimal-precision.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Definition Name</td>
<td>Definition Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constant (macro)</td>
<td>FLT_MANT_DIG</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>Indicates the maximum number of mantissa digits when a float type floating-point value is represented in the radix.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DBL_MANT_DIG</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>Indicates the maximum number of mantissa digits when a double type floating-point value is represented in the radix.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LDBL_MANT_DIG</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>Indicates the maximum number of mantissa digits when a long double type floating-point value is represented in the radix.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FLT_EXP_DIG</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Indicates the maximum number of exponent digits when a float type floating-point value is represented in the radix.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DBL_EXP_DIG</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>Indicates the maximum number of exponent digits when a double type floating-point value is represented in the radix.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LDBL_EXP_DIG</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>Indicates the maximum number of exponent digits when a long double type floating-point value is represented in the radix.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FLT_POS_EPS</td>
<td>5.9604648328104311e−8F</td>
<td>Indicates the minimum floating-point value (x) for which (1.0 + x \neq 1.0) in float type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DBL_POS_EPS</td>
<td>1.1102230246251567e−16</td>
<td>Indicates the minimum floating-point value (x) for which (1.0 + x \neq 1.0) in double type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LDBL_POS_EPS</td>
<td>1.1102230246251567e−16</td>
<td>Indicates the minimum floating-point value (x) for which (1.0 + x \neq 1.0) in long double type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FLT_NEG_EPS</td>
<td>2.9802324164052156e−8F</td>
<td>Indicates the minimum floating-point value (x) for which (1.0 - x \neq 1.0) in float type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DBL_NEG_EPS</td>
<td>5.5511151231257834e−17</td>
<td>Indicates the minimum floating-point value (x) for which (1.0 - x \neq 1.0) in double type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LDBL_NEG_EPS</td>
<td>5.5511151231257834e−17</td>
<td>Indicates the minimum floating-point value (x) for which (1.0 - x \neq 1.0) in long double type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FLT_POS_EPS_EX</td>
<td>-23</td>
<td>Indicates the minimum integer (n) for which (1.0 + (\text{radix})^n \neq 1.0) in float type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DBL_POS_EPS_EX</td>
<td>-52</td>
<td>Indicates the minimum integer (n) for which (1.0 + (\text{radix})^n \neq 1.0) in double type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Definition Name</td>
<td>Definition Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constant (macro)</td>
<td>LDBL_POS_EPS_E</td>
<td>−52 XP</td>
<td>Indicates the minimum integer (n) for which (1.0 + (\text{radix})^n \neq 1.0) in long double type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FLT_NEG_EPS_EX</td>
<td>−24 P</td>
<td>Indicates the minimum integer (n) for which (1.0 - (\text{radix})^n \neq 1.0) in float type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DBL_NEG_EPS_EX</td>
<td>−53 P</td>
<td>Indicates the minimum integer (n) for which (1.0 - (\text{radix})^n \neq 1.0) in double type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LDBL_NEG_EPS_E</td>
<td>−53 XP</td>
<td>Indicates the minimum integer (n) for which (1.0 - (\text{radix})^n \neq 1.0) in long double type.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
<limits.h>

Defines various limits relating to the internal representation of integer type data.
The following macro names are all implementation-defined.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Definition Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Constant (macro)</td>
<td>CHAR_BIT</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Indicates the number of bits of which char type is composed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CHAR_MAX</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>Indicates the maximum value that a char type variable can have as a value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CHAR_MIN</td>
<td>−128</td>
<td>Indicates the minimum value that a char type variable can have as a value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SCHAR_MAX</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>Indicates the maximum value that a signed char type variable can have as a value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SCHAR_MIN</td>
<td>−128</td>
<td>Indicates the minimum value that a signed char type variable can have as a value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>UCHAR_MAX</td>
<td>255U</td>
<td>Indicates the maximum value that an unsigned char type variable can have as a value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SHRT_MAX</td>
<td>32767</td>
<td>Indicates the maximum value that a short type variable can have as a value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SHRT_MIN</td>
<td>−32768</td>
<td>Indicates the minimum value that a short type variable can have as a value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>USHRT_MAX</td>
<td>65535U</td>
<td>Indicates the maximum value that an unsigned short type variable can have as a value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>INT_MAX</td>
<td>217483647</td>
<td>Indicates the maximum value that an int type variable can have as a value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>INT_MIN</td>
<td>−2147483647−1</td>
<td>Indicates the minimum value that an int type variable can have as a value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>UINT_MAX</td>
<td>4294967295U</td>
<td>Indicates the maximum value that an unsigned int type variable can have as a value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LONG_MAX</td>
<td>217483647L</td>
<td>Indicates the maximum value that a long type variable can have as a value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LONG_MIN</td>
<td>−2147483647L−1L</td>
<td>Indicates the minimum value that a long type variable can have as a value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ULONG_MAX</td>
<td>4294967295U</td>
<td>Indicates the maximum value that an unsigned long type variable can have as a value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Definition Name</td>
<td>Definition Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constant</td>
<td>LLONG_MAX</td>
<td>922337203685477L</td>
<td>Indicates the maximum value that a long long type variable can have as a value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LLONG_MIN</td>
<td>-922337203685477L</td>
<td>Indicates the minimum value that a long long type variable can have as a value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ULLONG_MAX</td>
<td>184467440737095L</td>
<td>Indicates the maximum value that an unsigned long long type variable can have as a value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
<errno.h>

Defines the value to set in `errno` when an error is generated in a library function.
The following macro names are all implementation-defined.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Variable (macro)</td>
<td>errno</td>
<td>int type variable. An error number is set when an error is generated in a library function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constant (macro)</td>
<td>ERANGE</td>
<td>Refer to section 12.3, Standard Library Error Messages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EDOM</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ESTRN</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PTRERR</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EBASEPATH</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ETLN</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EEXP</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EEXPNN</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EFLOATOO</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EFLOATUU</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EDBLO</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EDBLU</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ELDBLO</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ELDBLU</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NOTOPN</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EBADF</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ECSPEC</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EFIXEDO</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EFIXEDU</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Definition Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constant</td>
<td>EACCUMO</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(macro)</td>
<td>EACCUMU</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ELFIXEDO</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ELFIXEDU</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ELACCUMO</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ELACCUMU</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EMALRESM</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EMALFRSM</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ETOKRESM</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ETOKFRSM</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EIOBRESM</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EIOBFRSM</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
<fixed.h>

Defines various limits relating to the internal representation of fixed-point numbers.

The following macro names are all implementation-defined.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Definition Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Constant</td>
<td>FIXED_BIT</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>Indicates the number of bits in a _ _fixed type value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FIXED_MIN</td>
<td>(-0.5r-0.5r)</td>
<td>Indicates the minimum value that can be represented by a _ _fixed type variable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FIXED_MAX</td>
<td>0.999969482421875r</td>
<td>Indicates the maximum value that can be represented by a _ _fixed type variable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FIXED_EPSILON</td>
<td>0.000030517578125r</td>
<td>Indicates the difference between 0.0r and the minimum value that is greater than 0.0r and can be represented as a _ _fixed type variable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long</td>
<td>LFIXED_BIT</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>Indicates the number of bits in a long _ _fixed type value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LFIXED_MIN</td>
<td>(-0.5R-0.5R)</td>
<td>Indicates the minimum value that can be represented by a long _ _fixed type variable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LFIXED_MAX</td>
<td>0.99999999534338712 6922607421875R</td>
<td>Indicates the maximum value that can be represented by a long _ _fixed type variable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LFIXED_EPSILON</td>
<td>0.0000000000465661287 3077392578125R</td>
<td>Indicates the difference between 0.0R and the minimum value that is greater than 0.0R and can be represented as a long _ _fixed type variable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accum</td>
<td>ACCUM_BIT</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>Indicates the number of bits in an _ _accum type value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ACCUM_MIN</td>
<td>(-128.0a-128.0a)</td>
<td>Indicates the minimum value that can be represented by an _ _accum type variable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ACCUM_MAX</td>
<td>255.999969482421875a</td>
<td>Indicates the maximum value that can be represented by an _ _accum type variable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ACCUM_EPSILON</td>
<td>0.000030517578125a</td>
<td>Indicates the difference between 0.0a and the minimum value that is greater than 0.0a and can be represented as an _ _accum type value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Definition Name</td>
<td>Definition Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constant</td>
<td>LACCUM_BIT</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>Indicates the number of bits in a long _accum type value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LACCUM_MIN</td>
<td>(-128.0A-128.0A)</td>
<td>Indicates the minimum value that can be represented by a long _accum type variable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LACCUM_MAX</td>
<td>255.99999999953433871 26922607421875A</td>
<td>Indicates the maximum value that can be represented by a long _accum type variable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LACCUM_EPSILON</td>
<td>0.0000000004656612873 077392578125A</td>
<td>Indicates the difference between 0.0A and the minimum value that is greater than 0.0A and can be represented as a long _accum type value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
<math.h>

Performs various mathematical operations.
The following macro names are all implementation-defined.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Constant</td>
<td>EDOM</td>
<td>Indicates the value to be set in errno if the value of an parameter input to a function is outside the range of values defined in the function.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ERANGE</td>
<td>Indicates the value to be set in errno if the result of a function cannot be represented as a double type value, or if overflow or underflow occurs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HUGE_VAL</td>
<td>Indicates the value for the function return value if the result of a function overflows.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>acos</td>
<td>Computes the arc cosine of a floating-point number.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>asin</td>
<td>Computes the arc sine of a floating-point number.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>atan</td>
<td>Computes the arc tangent of a floating-point number.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>atan2</td>
<td>Computes the arc tangent of the result of a division of two floating-point numbers.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cos</td>
<td>Computes the cosine of a floating-point radian value.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sin</td>
<td>Computes the sine of a floating-point radian value.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tan</td>
<td>Computes the tangent of a floating-point radian value.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cosh</td>
<td>Computes the hyperbolic cosine of a floating-point number.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sinh</td>
<td>Computes the hyperbolic sine of a floating-point number.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tanh</td>
<td>Computes the hyperbolic tangent of a floating-point number.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>exp</td>
<td>Computes the exponential function of a floating-point number.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>frexp</td>
<td>Breaks a floating-point number into a ([0.5, 1.0)) value and a power of 2.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ldexp</td>
<td>Multiplies a floating-point number by a power of 2.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>log</td>
<td>Computes the natural logarithm of a floating-point number.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>log10</td>
<td>Computes the base-ten logarithm of a floating-point number.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>modf</td>
<td>Breaks a floating-point number into integral and fractional parts.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pow</td>
<td>Computes a power of a floating-point number.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sqrt</td>
<td>Computes the positive square root of a floating-point number.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ceil</td>
<td>Computes the smallest integral value not less than or equal to the given floating-point number.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fabs</td>
<td>Computes the absolute value of a floating-point number.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>floor</td>
<td>Computes the largest integral value not greater than or equal to the given floating-point number.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fmod</td>
<td>Computes the floating-point remainder of division of two floating-point numbers.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Operation in the event of an error is described below.

(1) Domain error
A domain error occurs if the value of a parameter input to a function is outside the domain over which the mathematical function is defined. In this case, the value of EDOM is set in \texttt{errno}. The function return value depends on the compiler.

(2) Range error
A range error occurs if the result of a function cannot be represented as a double type value. In this case, the value of ERANGE is set in \texttt{errno}. If the result overflows, the function returns the value of HUGE\_VAL, with the same sign as the correct value of the function. If the result underflows, 0 is returned as the return value.

Notes

1. If there is a possibility of a domain error resulting from a \texttt{<math.h>} function call, it is dangerous to use the resultant value directly. The value of \texttt{errno} should always be checked before using the result in such cases.

Example:

```
 1   x=asin(a);
 2   if (errno==EDOM)
 3          printf("error\n");
 4   else
 5          printf("result is : %lf\n",x);
```

In line 1, the arc sine value is computed using the \texttt{asin} function. If the value of parameter \texttt{a} is outside the domain of the \texttt{asin} function \([-1.0, 1.0]\), the EDOM value is set in \texttt{errno}. Line 2 determines whether a domain error has occurred. If a domain error has occurred, error is output in line 3. If there is no domain error, the arc sine value is output in line 5.
2. Whether or not a range error occurs depends on the internal representation format of floating-point number determined by the compiler. For example, if an internal representation format that allows infinity to be represented as a value is used, `<math.h>` library functions can be implemented without causing range errors.

3. In the following cases, `errno` will not be set even though an error has occurred in the function.
   - (1) `cpu=sh2afpu, cpu=sh4, or cpu=sh4a` is specified and `fabs` and `sqrt` functions are used.
   - (2) `cpu=sh2e` and `double=float` are specified and `fabs` function is used.

### Implementation Define

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Compiler Specifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Value returned by a mathematical function if an input</td>
<td>A not-a-number is returned. For details on the format of not-a-numbers, refer to section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parameter is out of the range</td>
<td>10.1.3, Floating-Point Number Specifications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whether <code>errno</code> is set to the value of macro <code>ERANGE</code> if an</td>
<td>Not specified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>underflow error occurs in a mathematical function</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whether a range error occurs if the second argument in</td>
<td>A range error occurs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the <code>fmod</code> function is 0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**double acos (double d)**

Description: Computes the arc cosine of a floating-point number.

Header file: `<math.h>`

Return values: Normal: Arc cosine of \(d\)

Abnormal: In case of domain error: Returns not-a-number.

Parameters: \(d\) Floating-point number for which arc cosine is to be computed

Example:
```
#include <math.h>
double d, ret;
ret=acos(d);
```

Error conditions:
A domain error occurs for a value of \(d\) not in the range \([-1.0, +1.0]\).

Remarks: The `acos` function returns the arc cosine in the range \([0, \pi]\) by the radian.

**double asin (double d)**

Description: Computes the arc sine of a floating-point number.

Header file: `<math.h>`

Return values: Normal: Arc sine of \(d\)

Abnormal: In case of domain error: Returns not-a-number.

Parameters: \(d\) Floating-point number for which arc sine is to be computed

Example:
```
#include <math.h>
double d, ret;
ret=asin(d);
```

Error conditions:
A domain error occurs for a value of \(d\) not in the range \([-1.0, +1.0]\).

Remarks: The `asin` function returns the arc sine in the range \([-\pi/2, +\pi/2]\) by the radian.
**double atan (double d)**

Description: Computes the arc tangent of a floating-point number.

Header file: `<math.h>`

Return values: Arc tangent of `d`

Parameters: `d` Floating-point number for which arc tangent is to be computed

Example:
```
#include <math.h>

double d, ret;
ret = atan(d);
```

Remarks: The `atan` function returns the arc tangent in the range (−π/2, +π/2) by the radian.
double atan2 (double y, double x)

Description: Computes the arc tangent of the division of two floating-point numbers.

Header file: <math.h>

Return values: Normal: Arc tangent value when y is divided by x
Abnormal: In case of domain error: Returns not-a-number.

Parameters:
x Divisor
y Dividend

Example:
#include <math.h>
double x, y, ret;
ret=atan2(y, x);

Error conditions: A domain error occurs if the values of both x and y are 0.0.

Remarks: The atan2 function returns the arc tangent in the range (-π, +π] by the radian. The meaning of the atan2 function is illustrated in figure 10.6. As shown in the figure, the result of the atan2 function is the angle between the X-axis and a straight line passing through the origin and point (x, y). If y = 0.0 and x is negative, the result is -π. If x = 0.0, the result is ±π/2, depending on whether y is positive or negative. Depending on the MCU setting, however, this may lead to a zero division exception.

![Figure 10.6 Meaning of atan2 Function](image-url)
double cos (double d)

Description: Computes the cosine of a floating-point radian value.

Header file: <math.h>

Return values: Cosine of d

Parameters: d Radian value for which cosine is to be computed

Example:
#include <math.h>
double d, ret;
ret = cos(d);

double sin (double d)

Description: Computes the sine of a floating-point radian value.

Header file: <math.h>

Return values: Sine of d

Parameters: d Radian value for which sine is to be computed

Example:
#include <math.h>
double d, ret;
ret = sin(d);
**double tan (double d)**

Description: Computes the tangent of a floating-point radian value.

Header file: `<math.h>`

Return values: Tangent of d

Parameters: d Radian value for which tangent is to be computed

Example:
```
#include <math.h>
double d, ret;
ret=tan(d);
```

**double cosh (double d)**

Description: Computes the hyperbolic cosine of a floating-point number.

Header file: `<math.h>`

Return values: Hyperbolic cosine of d

Parameters: d Floating-point number for which hyperbolic cosine is to be computed

Example:
```
#include <math.h>
double d, ret;
ret=cosh(d);
```

**double sinh (double d)**

Description: Computes the hyperbolic sine of a floating-point number.

Header file: `<math.h>`

Return values: Hyperbolic sine of d

Parameters: d Floating-point number for which hyperbolic sine is to be computed

Example:
```
#include <math.h>
double d, ret;
ret=sinh(d);
```
Example:    #include <math.h>
            double d, ret;
            ret=sinh(d);

double tanh (double d)

Description: Computes the hyperbolic tangent of a floating-point number.

Header file: <math.h>

Return values: Hyperbolic tangent of \( d \)

Parameters: \( d \) Floating-point number for which hyperbolic tangent is to be computed

Example:    #include <math.h>
            double d, ret;
            ret=tanh(d);

double exp (double d)

Description: Computes the exponential function of a floating-point number.

Header file: <math.h>

Return values: Exponential value of \( d \)

Parameters: \( d \) Floating-point number for which exponential function is to be computed

Example:    #include <math.h>
            double d, ret;
            ret=exp(d);
double frexp (double value, double int *e)

Description:  Breaks a floating-point number into a \([0.5, 1.0)\) value and a power of 2.

Header file:  <math.h>

Return values:  
If value is 0.0:  0.0
If value is not 0.0: Value of ret defined by \(\text{ret} \times 2^{\text{value pointed to by e}} = \text{value}\)

Parameters:  
value  Floating-point number to be broken into a \([0.5, 1.0)\) value and a power of 2
\(\text{e}\)  Pointer to storage area that holds power-of-2 value

Example:  
```c
#include <math.h>
double ret, value;
int *e;

ret=frexp(value, e);
```

Remarks:  The \texttt{frexp} function breaks \texttt{value} into a \([0.5, 1.0)\) value and a power of 2. It stores the resultant power-of-2 value in the area pointed to by \(\text{e}\).

The \texttt{frexp} function returns the return value \texttt{ret} in the range \([0.5, 1.0)\) or as 0.0.

If value is 0.0, the contents of the int storage area pointed to by \(\text{e}\) and the value of \texttt{ret} are both 0.0.
**double ldexp (double e, int f)**

**Description:** Multiplies a floating-point number by a power of 2.

**Header file:** `<math.h>`

**Return values:** Result of e * 2^f operation

**Parameters:**
- e Floating-point number to be multiplied by a power of 2
- f Power-of-2 value

**Example:**
```c
c#include <math.h>
double ret, e;
int f;
ret=ldexp(e, f);
```

**double log (double d)**

**Description:** Computes the natural logarithm of a floating-point number.

**Header file:** `<math.h>`

**Return values:**
- Normal: Natural logarithm of d
- Abnormal: In case of domain error: Returns not-a-number.

**Parameters:**
- d Floating-point number for which natural logarithm is to be computed

**Example:**
```c
c#include <math.h>
double d, ret;
ret=log(d);
```

**Error conditions:**
- A domain error occurs if d is negative.
- A range error occurs if d is 0.0.
double log10 (double d)

Description: Computes the base-ten logarithm of a floating-point number.

Header file: <math.h>

Return values: Normal: Base-ten logarithm of d
               Abnormal: In case of domain error: Returns not-a-number.

Parameters: d  Floating-point number for which base-ten logarithm is to be computed

Example:
#include <math.h>
double d, ret;
ret=log10(d);

Error conditions:
A domain error occurs if d is negative.
A range error occurs if d is 0.0.

double modf (double a, double*b)

Description: Breaks a floating-point number into integral and fractional parts.

Header file: <math.h>

Return values: Fractional part of a

Parameters: a  Floating-point number to be broken into integral and fractional parts
             b  Pointer indicating storage area that stores integral part

Example:
#include <math.h>
double a, *b, ret;
ret=modf(a, b);
double pow (double x, double y)

Description: Computes a power of floating-point number.

Header file: <math.h>

Return values: Normal: Value of x raised to the power y

Abnormal: In case of domain error: Returns not-a-number.

Parameters: x Value to be raised to a power

y Power value

Example:

```c
#include <math.h>
double x, y, ret;
ret=pow(x, y);
```

Error conditions:
A domain error occurs if x is 0.0 and y is 0.0 or less, or if x is negative and y is not an integer.

double sqrt (double d)

Description: Computes the positive square root of a floating-point number.

Header file: <math.h>

Return values: Normal: Positive square root of d

Abnormal: In case of domain error: Returns not-a-number.

Parameters: d Floating-point number for which positive square root is to be computed

Example:

```c
#include <math.h>
double d, ret;
ret=sqrt(d);
```

Error conditions:
A domain error occurs if d is negative.
double ceil (double d)

Description: Returns the smallest integral value not less than or equal to the given floating-point number.

Header file: <math.h>

Return values: Smallest integral value not less than or equal to d

Parameters: d Floating-point number for which smallest integral value not less than that number is to be computed

Example: #include <math.h>
    double d, ret;
    ret=ceil(d);

Remarks: The ceil function returns the smallest integral value not less than or equal to d, expressed as a double. Therefore, if d is negative, the value after truncation of the fractional part is returned.

double fabs (double d)

Description: Computes the absolute value of a floating-point number.

Header file: <math.h>

Return values: Absolute value of d

Parameters: d Floating-point number for which absolute value is to be computed

Example: #include <math.h>
    double d, ret;
    ret=fabs(d);
double floor (double d)

Description: Returns the largest integral value not greater than or equal to the given floating-point number.

Header file: <math.h>

Return values: Largest integral value not greater than or equal to d

Parameters: d Floating-point number for which largest integral value not greater than that number is to be computed

Example: #include <math.h>
    double d, ret;
    ret=floor(d);

Remarks: The floor function returns the largest integral value not greater than or equal to d, expressed as a double. Therefore, if d is negative, the value after rounding-up of the fractional part is returned.
**double fmod (double x, double y)**

Description: Computes the floating-point remainder of division of two floating-point numbers.

Header file: `<math.h>`

Return values: When `y` is 0.0: `x`
When `y` is not 0.0: Remainder of division of `x` by `y`

Parameters: 
- `x`: Dividend
- `y`: Divisor

Example:
```c
#include <math.h>
double x, y, ret;
ret=fmod(x, y);
```

Remarks: In the `fmod` function, the relationship between parameters `x` and `y` and return value `ret` is as follows:

\[ x = y \times I + ret \] (where `I` is an integer)

The sign of return value `ret` is the same as the sign of `x`.

If the quotient of `x/y` cannot be expressed, the value of the result is not guaranteed.

When `y` is 0.0, depending on the MCU setting, however, this may lead to a zero division exception.

**<mathf.h>**

Performs various mathematical operations.

`<mathf.h>` declares mathematical functions and defines macros in single-precision format. The mathematical functions and macros used here do not follow the ANSI specifications. Each function receives a float-type parameter and returns a float-type value.

The following constants (macros) are all implementation-defined.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Constant</td>
<td>EDOM</td>
<td>Indicates the value to be set in errno if the value of an parameter input to a function is outside the range of values defined in the function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ERANGE</td>
<td>Indicates the value to be set in errno if the result of a function cannot be represented as a float type value, or if overflow or underflow occurs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HUGE_VAL</td>
<td>Indicates the value for the function return value if the result of a function overflows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>acosf</td>
<td>Computes the arc cosine of a floating-point number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>asinf</td>
<td>Computes the arc sine of a floating-point number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>atanf</td>
<td>Computes the arc tangent of a floating-point number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>atan2f</td>
<td>Computes the arc tangent of the result of a division of two floating-point numbers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cosp</td>
<td>Computes the cosine of a floating-point radian value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sinf</td>
<td>Computes the sine of a floating-point radian value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tanf</td>
<td>Computes the tangent of a floating-point radian value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>coshf</td>
<td>Computes the hyperbolic cosine of a floating-point number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sinhf</td>
<td>Computes the hyperbolic sine of a floating-point number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tanhf</td>
<td>Computes the hyperbolic tangent of a floating-point number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>expf</td>
<td>Computes the exponential function of a floating-point number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>frexf</td>
<td>Breaks a floating-point number into a [0.5f, 1.0f) value and a power of 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ldexpf</td>
<td>Multiplies a floating-point number by a power of 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>logf</td>
<td>Computes the natural logarithm of a floating-point number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>log10f</td>
<td>Computes the base-ten logarithm of a floating-point number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>modff</td>
<td>Breaks a floating-point number into integral and fractional parts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>powf</td>
<td>Computes a power of a floating-point number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sqrtf</td>
<td>Computes the positive square root of a floating-point number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ceilf</td>
<td>Computes the smallest integral value not less than or equal to the given floating-point number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fabsf</td>
<td>Computes the absolute value of a floating-point number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>floorf</td>
<td>Computes the largest integral value not greater than or equal to the given floating-point number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fmodf</td>
<td>Computes the floating-point remainder of division of two floating-point numbers.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Operation in the event of an error is described below.

1. Domain error
   A domain error occurs if the value of a parameter input to a function is outside the domain over which the mathematical function is defined. In this case, the value of EDOM is set in \texttt{errno}. The function return value depends on the compiler.

2. Range error
   A range error occurs if the result of a function cannot be represented as a float type value. In this case, the value of ERANGE is set in \texttt{errno}. If the result overflows, the function returns the value of HUGE_VALF, with the same sign as the correct value of the function. If the result underflows, 0 is returned as the return value.

Notes

1. If there is a possibility of a domain error resulting from a \texttt{<mathf.h>} function call, it is dangerous to use the resultant value directly. The value of \texttt{errno} should always be checked before using the result in such cases.

Example:

```
1  x=asinf(a);
2  if (errno==EDOM)
3     printf ("error\n");
4   else
5     printf ("result is : %f\n",x);
```

In line 1, the arc sine value is computed using the \texttt{asinf} function. If the value of parameter \texttt{a} is outside the domain of the \texttt{asinf} function \([-1.0f, 1.0f]\), the EDOM value is set in \texttt{errno}. Line 2 determines whether a domain error has occurred. If a domain error has occurred, error is output in line 3. If there is no domain error, the arc sine value is output in line 5.
2. Whether or not a range error occurs depends on the internal representation format of floating-point number determined by the compiler. For example, if an internal representation format that allows infinity to be represented as a value is used, `<mathf.h>` library functions can be implemented without causing range errors.

3. In the following cases, `errno` will not be set by the `fabs` or `sqrt` function even though an error has occurred in the function.
   (1) `cpu=sh2afpu`, `cpu=sh4`, or `cpu=sh4a` is specified and `fabsf` or `sqrtf` functions is used.
   (2) `cpu=sh2e` is specified and `fabsf` function is used.

### Implementation Define

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Compiler Specifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Value returned by a mathematical function if an input parameter is out of the range</td>
<td>Not specified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whether <code>errno</code> is set to the value of macro <code>ERANGE</code> if an underflow error occurs in a mathematical function</td>
<td>Not specified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whether a range error occurs if the second argument in the <code>fmodf</code> function is 0</td>
<td>A range error occurs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
float acosf (float f)

Description: Computes the arc cosine of a floating-point number.

Header file: <mathf.h>

Return values: Normal: Arc cosine of f

Abnormal: In case of domain error: Returns not-a-number.

Parameters: f Floating-point number for which arc cosine is to be computed

Example:
```c
#include <mathf.h>
float f, ret;
ret = acosf(f);
```

Error conditions:
A domain error occurs for a value of f not in the range [-1.0f, +1.0f].

Remarks: The acosf function returns the arc cosine in the range [0, π] by the radian.

float asinf (float f)

Description: Computes the arc sine of a floating-point number.

Header file: <mathf.h>

Return values: Normal: Arc sine of f

Abnormal: In case of domain error: Returns not-a-number.

Parameters: f Floating-point number for which arc sine is to be computed

Example:
```c
#include <mathf.h>
float f, ret;
ret = asinf(f);
```

Error conditions:
A domain error occurs for a value of f not in the range [-1.0f, +1.0f].

Remarks: The asinf function returns the arc sine in the range [-π/2, +π/2] by the radian.
float atanf (float f)

Description: Computes the arc tangent of a floating-point number.

Header file: <mathf.h>

Return values: Arc tangent of \( f \)

Parameters: \( f \) Floating-point number for which arc tangent is to be computed

Example: 
```c
#include <mathf.h>
float f, ret;
ret=atanf(f);
```

Remarks: The \texttt{atanf} function returns the arc tangent in the range \((-\pi/2, +\pi/2)\) by the radian.
float atan2f (float y, float x)

Description: Computes the arc tangent of the division of two floating-point numbers.

Header file: <mathf.h>

Return values: Normal: Arc tangent value when y is divided by x

Abnormal: In case of domain error: Returns not-a-number.

Parameters: x Divisor
             y Dividend

Example:
#include <mathf.h>
float x, y, ret;
ret=atan2f(y, x);

Error conditions: A domain error occurs if the values of both x and y are 0.0f

Remarks: The atan2f function returns the arc tangent in the range (–π, +π] by the radian. The meaning of the atan2f function is illustrated in figure 10.7. As shown in the figure, the result of the atan2f function is the angle between the X-axis and a straight line passing through the origin and point (x, y). If y = 0.0f and x is negative, the result is π. If x = 0.0f, the result is ±π/2, depending on whether y is positive or negative. Depending on the MCU setting, however, this may lead to a zero division exception.
Figure 10.7  Meaning of atan2f Function
float cosf (float f)
Description: Computes the cosine of a floating-point radian value.
Header file: <mathf.h>
Return values: Cosine of f
Parameters: f Radian value for which cosine is to be computed
Example: #include <mathf.h>
        float f, ret;
        ret = cosf(f);

defloat sinf (float f)
Description: Computes the sine of a floating-point radian value.
Header file: <mathf.h>
Return values: Sine of f
Parameters: f Radian value for which sine is to be computed
Example: #include <mathf.h>
        float f, ret;
        ret = sinf(f);
```c
float tanf (float f)
{
    Description: Computes the tangent of a floating-point radian value.
    Header file: <mathf.h>
    Return values: Tangent of f
    Parameters: f Radian value for which tangent is to be computed
    Example: #include <mathf.h>
             float f, ret;
             ret = tanf(f);
}

float coshf (float f)
{
    Description: Computes the hyperbolic cosine of a floating-point number.
    Header file: <mathf.h>
    Return values: Hyperbolic cosine of f
    Parameters: f Floating-point number for which hyperbolic cosine is to be computed
    Example: #include <mathf.h>
             float f, ret;
             ret = coshf(f);
}```
float sinh (float f)

Description: Computes the hyperbolic sine of a floating-point number.

Header file: <mathf.h>

Return values: Hyperbolic sine of f

Parameters: f Floating-point number for which hyperbolic sine is to be computed

Example:

```c
#include <mathf.h>
float f, ret;
ret=sinh(f);
```

float tanh (float f)

Description: Computes the hyperbolic tangent of a floating-point number.

Header file: <mathf.h>

Return values: Hyperbolic tangent of f

Parameters: f Floating-point number for which hyperbolic tangent is to be computed

Example:

```c
#include <mathf.h>
float f, ret;
ret=tanh(f);
```
float expf (float f)

Description: Computes the exponential function of a floating-point number.

Header file: <mathf.h>

Return values: Exponential value of f

Parameters: f 

Floating-point number for which exponential function is to be computed

Example:
#include <mathf.h>
float f, ret;
ret=expf(f);

float frexp (float value, float int *e)

Description: Breaks a floating-point number into a [0.5f, 1.0f) value and a power of 2.

Header file: <mathf.h>

Return values: If value is 0.0f: 0.0f
              If value is not 0.0f: Value of ret defined by ret \times 2^{\text{value pointed to by e} = \text{value}}

Parameters: value 

Floating-point number to be broken into a [0.5f, 1.0f) value and a power of 2

e 

Pointer to storage area that holds power-of-2 value

Example:
#include <mathf.h>
float ret, value;
int *e
ret=frexp(value, e);
Remarks: The `frexpf` function breaks value into a \([0.5f, 1.0f)\) value and a power of 2. It stores the resultant power-of-2 value in the area pointed to by e.

The `frexpf` function returns the return value ret in the range \([0.5f, 1.0f)\) or as 0.0f.

If value is 0.0f, the contents of the int storage area pointed to by e and the value of ret are both 0.0f.

### float ldexpf (float e, int f)

**Description:** Multiplies a floating-point number by a power of 2.

**Header file:** `<mathf.h>`

**Return values:** Result of e * 2^f operation

**Parameters:**
- e Floating-point number to be multiplied by a power of 2
- f Power-of-2 value

**Example:**
```
#include <mathf.h>
float ret, e;
int f;
ret=ldexpf(e, f);
```
float logf (float f)

Description: Computes the natural logarithm of a floating-point number.

Header file: <mathf.h>

Return values: Normal: Natural logarithm of f
               Abnormal: In case of domain error: Returns not-a-number.

Parameters:  f  Floating-point number for which natural logarithm is to be computed

Example:     #include <mathf.h>
             float f, ret;
             ret=logf(f);

Error conditions:
A domain error occurs if f is negative.
A range error occurs if f is 0.0f.
```c
float log10f (float f)

Description: Computes the base-ten logarithm of a floating-point number.

Header file: <mathf.h>

Return values: Normal: Base-ten logarithm of f
               Abnormal: In case of domain error: Returns not-a-number.

Parameters: f Floating-point number for which base-ten logarithm is to be computed

Example:
#include <mathf.h>
float f, ret;
ret = log10f(f);

Error conditions:
A domain error occurs if f is negative.
A range error occurs if f is 0.0f.

float modff (float a, float *b)

Description: Breaks a floating-point number into integral and fractional parts.

Header file: <mathf.h>

Return values: Fractional part of a

Parameters: a Floating-point number to be broken into integral and fractional parts
             b Pointer indicating storage area that stores integral part

Example:
#include <mathf.h>
float a, *b, ret;
ret = modff(a, b);
```
float powf (float x, float y)

Description: Computes a power of a floating-point number.

Header file: <mathf.h>

Return values: Normal: Value of x raised to the power y
               Abnormal: In case of domain error: Returns not-a-number.

Parameters: x Value to be raised to a power
            y Power value

Example:    #include <mathf.h>
            float x, y, ret;
            ret=powf(x, y);

Error conditions:
A domain error occurs if x is 0.0f and y is 0.0f or less, or if x is negative and y is not an integer.

float sqrtf (float f)

Description: Computes the positive square root of a floating-point number.

Header file: <mathf.h>

Return values: Normal: Positive square root of f
               Abnormal: In case of domain error: Returns not-a-number.

Parameters: f Floating-point number for which positive square root is to be computed

Example:    #include <mathf.h>
            float f, ret;
            ret=sqrtf(x, y);

Error conditions:
A domain error occurs if f is negative.
**float ceilf (float f)**

**Description:** Returns the smallest integral value not less than or equal to the given floating-point number.

**Header file:** `<math.h>`

**Return values:** Smallest integral value not less than or equal to `f`

**Parameters:** `f` Floating-point number for which smallest integral value not less than that number is to be computed

**Example:**
```c
#include <math.h>
float f, ret;
ret=ceilf(f);
```

**Remarks:** The `ceilf` function returns the smallest integral value not less than or equal to `f`, expressed as a float. Therefore, if `f` is negative, the value after truncation of the fractional part is returned.

**float fabsf (float f)**

**Description:** Computes the absolute value of a floating-point number.

**Header file:** `<math.h>`

**Return values:** Absolute value of `f`

**Parameters:** `f` Floating-point number for which absolute value is to be computed

**Example:**
```c
#include <math.h>
float f, ret;
ret=fabsf(f);
```
float floorf (float f)

Description: Returns the largest integral value not greater than or equal to the given floating-point number.

Header file: <mathf.h>

Return values: Largest integral value not greater than or equal to f

Parameters: f Floating-point number for which largest integral value not greater than that number is to be computed

Example: #include <mathf.h>
float f, ret;
ret=floorf(f);

Remarks: The floorf function returns the largest integral value not greater than or equal to f, expressed as a float. Therefore, if f is negative, the value after rounding-up of the fractional part is returned.
float fmodf (float x, float y)

Description: Computes the floating-point remainder of division of two floating-point numbers.

Header file: <mathf.h>

Return values: When y is 0.0f: x
When y is not 0.0f: Remainder of division of x by y

Parameters: x Dividend
            y Divisor

Example: #include <mathf.h>
         float x, y, ret;
         ret=fmodf(x, y);

Remarks: In the fmodf function, the relationship between parameters x and y and return value ret is as follows:

    x = y * i + ret (where i is an integer)

The sign of return value ret is the same as the sign of x.

If the quotient of x/y cannot be expressed, the value of the result is not guaranteed.

When y is 0.0, depending on the MCU setting, however, this may lead to a zero division exception.
<setjmp.h>

Supports transfer of control between functions.

The following macros are implementation-defined.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>jmp_buf</td>
<td>Indicates the type name corresponding to a storage area for storing information that enables transfer of control between functions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>setjmp</td>
<td>Saves the executing environment defined by jmp_buf of the currently executing function in the specified storage area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>longjmp</td>
<td>Restores the function executing environment saved by the setjmp function, and transfers control to the program location at which the setjmp function was called.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The `setjmp` function saves the executing environment of the current function. The location in the program that called the `setjmp` function can subsequently be returned to by calling the `longjmp` function. An example of how transfer of control between functions is supported using the `setjmp` and `longjmp` functions is shown below.
Example:

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <setjmp.h>
jmp_buf env;
void sub( );
void main( )
{
    if (setjmp(env)!=0){
        printf("return from longjmp\n");
        exit(0);
    }
    sub( );
}

void sub( )
{
    printf("subroutine is running \n");
    longjmp(env, 1);
}
```

Explanation

The `setjmp` function is called in line 8. At this time, the environment in which the `setjmp` function was called is saved in jmp_buf type variable `env`. The return value in this case is 0, and therefore function `sub` is called next.

The environment saved in variable `env` is restored by the `longjmp` function called within function `sub`. As a result, the program behaves just as if a return had been made from the `setjmp` function in line 8. However, the return value at this time is 1 specified by the second parameter of the `longjmp` function. As a result, execution proceeds from line 9.
int setjmp (jmp_buf env)

Description: Saves the executing environment of the currently executing function in the specified storage area.

Header file: \texttt{<setjmp.h>}

Return values: When \texttt{setjmp} function is called: 0  
On return from \texttt{longjmp} function: Nonzero

Parameters: \texttt{env} Pointer to storage area in which executing environment is to be saved

Example: 
\begin{verbatim}
#include <setjmp.h>
int ret;
jmp_buf env;
ret=setjmp(env);
\end{verbatim}

Remarks: The executing environment saved by the \texttt{setjmp} function is used by the \texttt{longjmp} function. The return value is 0 when the function is called as the \texttt{setjmp} function, but the return value on return from the \texttt{longjmp} function is the value of the second parameter specified by the \texttt{longjmp} function.

If the \texttt{setjmp} function is called from a complex expression, part of the current executing environment, such as the intermediate result of expression evaluation, may be lost. The \texttt{setjmp} function should only be used in the form of a comparison between the result of the \texttt{setjmp} function and a constant expression, and should not be called within a complex expression.

Do not use a pointer when calling the \texttt{setjmp} function.
void longjmp (jmp_buf env, int ret)

Description: Restores the function executing environment saved by the setjmp function, and transfers control to the program location at which the setjmp function was called.

Header file: <setjmp.h>

Parameters: env Pointer to storage area in which executing environment was saved
ret Return code to setjmp function

Example:
```c
#include <setjmp.h>
int ret;
jmp_buf env;
    longjmp(env, ret);
```

Remarks: From the storage area specified by the first parameter env, the longjmp function restores the function executing environment saved by the most recent invocation of the setjmp function in the same program, and transfers control to the program location at which that setjmp function was called. The value of the second parameter ret of the longjmp function is returned as the setjmp function return value. However, if ret is 0, the value 1 is returned to the setjmp function as a return value.

If the setjmp function has not been called, or if the function that called the setjmp function has already executed a return statement, the operation of the longjmp function is not guaranteed.
<stdarg.h>

Enables referencing of variable arguments for functions with such arguments.

The following macros are implementation-defined.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type (macro)</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>va_list</td>
<td>Indicates the types of variables used in common by the va_start, va_arg, and va_end macros in order to reference variable parameters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function (macro)</td>
<td>va_start</td>
<td>Executes initialization processing for performing variable parameter referencing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>va_arg</td>
<td>Enables referencing of the argument following the argument currently being referenced for a function with variable parameters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>va_end</td>
<td>Terminates referencing of the arguments of a function with variable parameters.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

An example of a program using the macros defined by this standard include file is shown below.
Example:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdarg.h>

extern void prlist(int count, ...);

void main( )
{
    prlist(1, 1);
    prlist(3, 4, 5, 6);
    prlist(5, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5);
}

void prlist(int count, ...)
{
    va_list ap;
    int i;

    va_start(ap, count);
    for(i=0; i<count; i++)
        printf("%d", va_arg(ap, int));
    putchar('
');
    va_end(ap);
}
```

**Explanation**

In this example, the number of data items to be output is specified in the first parameter, and function prlist is implemented, outputting that number of subsequent parameters.

In line 18, the variable parameter reference is initialized by `va_start`. Each time an parameter is output, the next parameter is referenced by the `va_arg` macro (line 20). In the `va_arg` macro, the type name of the parameter (in this case, int type) is specified in the second parameter.

When parameter referencing ends, the `va_end` macro is called (line 22).
void va_start (va_list ap, parmN)

Description: Executes initialization processing for referencing variable parameters.

Header file: <stdarg.h>

Parameters: ap Variable for accessing variable parameters

parmN Identifier of rightmost argument

Example:
#include <stdarg.h>
void func(int count, ...)
{
    va_list ap;
    va_start(ap, count);
}

Remarks: The va_start macro initializes ap for subsequent use by the va_arg and va_end macros.

The parameter parmN is the identifier of the rightmost parameter in the parameter list in the external function definition (the one just before the , ...).

To reference a function with no variable name, the va_start macro call must be executed first of all.
type va_arg (va_list ap, type)

Description: Allows a reference to the parameter after the parameter currently being referred to in the function with a variable number of parameters.

Header file: <stdarg.h>

Return values: Parameter value

Parameters: ap Variable for accessing variable parameters
type Type of parameter to be accessed

Example: #include <stdarg.h>
va_list ap;
int ret;
   ret=va_arg(ap, type);

Remarks: Specify a variable of the va_list type to be initialized by the va_start macro as the first parameter. The value of ap is updated each time va_arg is used, and, as a result a sequence of variable parameters is returned by sequential calls of this macro.

Specify the type to refer to as the second parameter type.

The ap parameter must be the same as the ap initialized by va_start.

It will not be possible to refer to the parameters correctly when a type for which the size is changed by type conversion is specified, i.e., when char type, unsigned char type, short type, unsigned short type, or float type is specified as the type of the function parameter in type. If such a type is specified, correct operation is not guaranteed.
void va_end (va_list ap)

Description: Terminates referencing of the parameters of a function with variable arguments.

Header file: <stdarg.h>

Parameters: ap Variable for accessing variable parameters

Example:
#include <stdarg.h>
va_list ap;
va_start(ap);
va_end(ap);

Remarks: The ap parameter must be the same as the ap initialized by va_start. If the va_end macro is not called before the return from a function, the operation of that function is not guaranteed.

<stdio.h>

Performs processing relating to input/output of stream input/output file.

The following macros are all implementation-defined.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Constant</td>
<td>FILE</td>
<td>Indicates a structure type that stores various control information including a pointer to the buffer (required for stream input/output processing), an error indicator, and an end-of-file indicator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>_IOFBF</td>
<td>Indicates full buffering of input/output as the buffer area usage method.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>_IOLBF</td>
<td>Indicates line buffering of input/output as the buffer area usage method.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>_IONBF</td>
<td>Indicates non-buffering of input/output as the buffer area usage method.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUFSIZE</td>
<td>Indicates the buffer size required for input/output processing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EOF</td>
<td>Indicates end-of-file, that is, no more input from a file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L_tmpnam*</td>
<td>Indicates the size of an array large enough to store a string literal of a temporary file name generated by the tmpnam function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SEEK_CUR</td>
<td>Indicates a shift of the current file read/write position to an offset from the current position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SEEK_END</td>
<td>Indicates a shift of the current file read/write position to an offset from the end-of-file position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SEEK_SET</td>
<td>Indicates a shift of the current file read/write position to an offset from the beginning of the file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SYS_OPEN*</td>
<td>Indicates the number of files for which simultaneous opening is guaranteed by the implementation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TMP_MAX*</td>
<td>Indicates the minimum number of unique file names that shall be generated by the tmpnam function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>stderr</td>
<td>Indicates the file pointer for the standard error file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>stdin</td>
<td>Indicates the file pointer for the standard input file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>stdout</td>
<td>Indicates the file pointer for the standard output file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>fclose</td>
<td>Closes a stream input/output file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fflush</td>
<td>Outputs stream input/output file buffer contents to the file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fopen</td>
<td>Opens a stream input/output file under the specified file name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>freopen</td>
<td>Closes a currently open stream input/output file and reopens a new file under the specified file name.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** These macros are not defined in this implementation method.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>setbuf</td>
<td>Defines and sets a stream input/output buffer area on the user program side.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>setvbuf</td>
<td>Defines and sets a stream input/output buffer area on the user program side.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fprintf</td>
<td>Outputs data to a stream input/output file according to a format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fscanf</td>
<td>Inputs data from a stream input/output file and converts it according to a format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>printf</td>
<td>Converts data according to a format and outputs it to the standard output file (stdout).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>scanf</td>
<td>Inputs data from the standard input file (stdin) and converts it according to a format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sprintf</td>
<td>Converts data according to a format and outputs it to the specified area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sscanf</td>
<td>Inputs data from the specified storage area and converts it according to a format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>vfprintf</td>
<td>Outputs a variable parameter list to the specified stream input/output file according to a format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>vprintf</td>
<td>Outputs a variable parameter list to the standard output file (stdout) according to a format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>vsprintf</td>
<td>Outputs a variable parameter list to the specified area according to a format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>getc</td>
<td>Inputs one character from a stream input/output file. (macro)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>gets</td>
<td>Inputs a string from a stream input/output file. (macro)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fputc</td>
<td>Outputs one character to a stream input/output file. (macro)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>puts</td>
<td>Outputs a string to a stream input/output file. (macro)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ungetc</td>
<td>Returns one character to a stream input/output file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fread</td>
<td>Inputs data from a stream input/output file to the specified storage area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fwrite</td>
<td>Outputs data from a storage area to a stream input/output file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Definition Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>fseek</td>
<td>Shifts the current read/write position in a stream input/output file.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ftell</td>
<td>Computes the current read/write position in a stream input/output file.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rewind</td>
<td>Shifts the current read/write position in a stream input/output file to the beginning of the file.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>clearerr</td>
<td>Clears the error state of a stream input/output file.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>feof</td>
<td>Tests for the end of a stream input/output file.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ferror</td>
<td>Tests for stream input/output file error state.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>perror</td>
<td>Outputs an error message corresponding to the error number to the standard error file (stderr).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specification Defined by the Implementation</td>
<td>Compiler Specifications</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whether the last line of the input text requires a line feed character indicating end</td>
<td>Not specified. Depends on the low-level interface routine specifications.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whether the blank characters written immediately before the carriage return character are read</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of null characters added to data written in the binary file</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial value of file position specifier in the addition mode</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is a file data lost following text file input?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File buffering specifications</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whether a file with file length 0 exists</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File name configuration rule</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whether the same file is opened simultaneously</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Output format of the %p format conversion in the fprintf function</td>
<td>Hexadecimal representation.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Input data representation of the %p format conversion in the fscanf function.</td>
<td>Hexadecimal representation.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The meaning of conversion specifier ‘-‘ in the fscanf function</td>
<td>If ‘-‘ is not the first or last character or ‘-‘ does not follow '^', the compiler indicates the range from the previous character to the following character.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Value of errno specified by the fgetpos or ftell function</td>
<td>The fgetpos function is not supported. The ftell function does not specify the errno value. The errno value depends on the low-level interface routine specifications.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Output format of messages generated by the perror function</td>
<td>See (a) below for the output message format.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calloc, malloc, or realloc function operation when the size is 0.</td>
<td>The 0-byte area is allocated.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(a) The output format of perror function is

<string literal> : <error message for the error number specified in error>

(b) Table 10.42 shows the format when displaying the floating-point infinity and not-a-number in printf and fprintf functions.
Table 10.42 Display Format of Infinity and Not-a-Number

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Display Format</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive infinity</td>
<td>+++++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative infinity</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not-a-number</td>
<td>*++++</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

An example of a program that performs a series of input/output processing operations for a stream input/output file is shown in the following.
Example

```c
#include <stdio.h>

void main( )
{
    int c;
    FILE *ifp, *ofp;

    if ((ifp=fopen("INPUT.DAT","r"))==NULL){
        fprintf(stderr,"cannot open input file
");
        exit(1);
    }

    if ((ofp=fopen("OUTPUT.DAT","w"))==NULL){
        fprintf(stderr,"cannot open output file
");
        exit(1);
    }

    while ((c=getc(ifp))!=EOF)
        putc(c, ofp);

    fclose(ifp);
    fclose(ofp);
}
```

Explanation

This program copies the contents of file INPUT.DAT to file OUTPUT.DAT.

Input file INPUT.DAT is opened by the `fopen` function in line 8, and output file OUTPUT.DAT is opened by the `fopen` function in line 12. If opening fails, NULL is returned as the return value of the `fopen` function, an error message is output, and the program is terminated.

If the `fopen` function ends normally, the pointer to the data (FILE type) that stores information on the opened files is returned; these are set in variables `ifp` and `ofp`.

After successful opening, input/output is performed using these FILE type data.

When file processing ends, the files are closed with the `fclose` function.
**int fclose (FILE *fp)**

**Description:** Closes a stream input/output file.

**Header file:** `<stdio.h>`

**Return values:**
- Normal: 0
- Abnormal: Nonzero

**Parameters:**
- `fp` File pointer

**Example:**

```c
#include <stdio.h>
FILE *fp;
int ret;
ret=fclose(fp);
```

**Remarks:** The `fclose` function closes the stream input/output file indicated by file pointer `fp`.

- If the output file of the stream input/output file is open and data that is not output remains in the buffer, that data is output to the file before it is closed.
- If the input/output buffer was automatically allocated by the system, it is cancelled.
int fflush (FILE *fp)

Description: Outputs stream input/output file buffer contents to the file.

Header file: <stdio.h>

Return values: Normal: 0
 Abnormal: Nonzero

Parameters: fp File pointer

Example: #include <stdio.h>
 FILE *fp;
 int ret;
 ret=fflush(fp);

Remarks: When an output file of the stream input/output file is open, the \texttt{fflush} function outputs the contents of the buffer that is not output for the stream input/output file specified by file pointer \texttt{fp} to the file. When an input file is open, the \texttt{ungetc} function specification is invalid.
FILE *fopen (const char *fname, const char *mode)

Description: Opens a stream input/output file under the specified file name.

Header file: <stdio.h>

Return values: Normal: File pointer indicating file information on opened file
               Abnormal: NULL

Parameters:  fname  Pointer to string indicating file name
               mode  Pointer to string indicating file access mode

Example:

```c
#include <stdio.h>
FILE *ret;
const char *fname, *mode;
ret=fopen(fname, mode);
```

Remarks: The `fopen` function opens the stream input/output file whose file name is the
         string pointed to by `fname`. If a file that does not exist is opened in write mode
         or addition mode, a new file is created wherever possible. When an existing file
         is opened in write mode, writing processing is performed from the beginning of
         the file, and previously written file contents are erased.

         When a file is opened in addition mode, write processing is performed from the
         end-of-file position. When a file is opened in update mode, both input and
         output processing can be performed on the file. However, input cannot directly
         follow output without intervening execution of the `fflush`, `fseek`, or `rewind`
         function. Similarly, output cannot directly follow input without intervening
         execution of the `fflush`, `fseek`, or `rewind` function.

         A string indicating the opening method may be added after the string indicating
         the file access mode.

         The same file cannot be open for multiple tasks at the same time.
FILE *freopen (const char *fname, const char *mode, FILE *fp)

Description: Closes a currently open stream input/output file and reopens a new file under the specified file name.

Header file: <stdio.h>

Return values: Normal: fp
               Abnormal: NULL

Parameters: fname  Pointer to string indicating new file name
            mode   Pointer to string indicating file access mode
            fp     File pointer of currently open stream input/output file

Example:

```
#include <stdio.h>
const char *fname, *mode;
FILE *ret, *fp;
    ret=freopen(fname, mode, fp);
```

Remarks: The `freopen` function first closes the stream input/output file indicated by file pointer `fp` (the following processing is carried out even if this close processing is unsuccessful). Next, the `freopen` function opens the file indicated by file name `fname` for stream input/output, reusing the FILE structure pointed to by `fp`.

The `freopen` function is useful when there is a limit on the number of files being opened at one time.

The `freopen` function normally returns the same value as `fp`, but returns NULL when an error occurs.
void setbuf (FILE *fp, char buf[BUFSIZ])

Description: Defines and sets a stream input/output buffer area by the user program.

Header file: <stdio.h>

Parameters:  
fp File pointer  
buf Pointer to buffer area

Example:  
#include <stdio.h>  
FILE *fp;  
char buf[BUFSIZ];  
setbuf(fp, buf);

Remarks:  
The setbuf function defines the storage area pointed to by buf so that it can be used as an input/output buffer area for the stream input/output file indicated by file pointer fp. As a result, input/output processing is performed using a buffer area of size BUFSIZE.
int setvbuf (FILE *fp, char *buf, int type, size_t size)

Description: Defines and sets a stream input/output buffer area by the user program.

Header file: `<stdio.h>`

Return values: Normal: 0
Abnormal: Nonzero

Parameters:
- `fp`: File pointer
- `buf`: Pointer to buffer area
- `type`: Buffer management method
- `size`: Size of buffer area

Example:
```c
#include <stdio.h>
FILE *fp;
char *buf;
int type, ret;
size_t size;
ret=setvbuf(fp, buf, type, size);
```

Remarks: The `setvbuf` function defines the storage area pointed to by `buf` so that it can be used as an input/output buffer area for the stream input/output file indicated by file pointer `fp`.

There are three ways of using this buffer area, as follows:

1. When `_IOFBF` is specified as `type` Input/output is fully buffered.

2. When `_IOLBF` is specified as `type` Input/output is line buffered. That is, input/output data is fetched from the buffer area when a new-line character is written, when the buffer area is full, or when input is requested.

3. When `_IONBF` is specified as `type` Input/output is unbuffered.

   The `setvbuf` function usually returns 0. However, when an illegal value is specified for `type` or `size`, or when the request on how to use the buffer could not be accepted, a value other than 0 is returned.

   The buffer area must not be released before the opened stream input/output file is closed. Also, the `setvbuf` function must be used between opening of the stream input/output file and execution of input/output processing,
int fprintf (FILE *fp, const char *control[, arg…])

Description: Outputs data to a stream input/output file according to the format.

Header file: <stdio.h>

Return values: Normal: Number of characters converted and output

Abnormal: Negative value

Parameters:  
fp File pointer
control Pointer to string indicating format
arg,… List of data to be output according to format

Example:  
#include <stdio.h>
FILE *fp;
const char *control="%s";
int ret;
char buffer[]="Hello World
"
   ret=fprintf(fp, control, buffer);

Remarks: The `fprintf` function converts and edits argument arg according to the string that indicates the format pointed to by control, and outputs the result to the stream input/output file indicated by file pointer fp.

The `fprintf` function returns the number of characters converted and output when the function is terminated successfully, or a negative value if an error occurs.

The format specifications are shown below.

(1) Overview of formats

The string literal that represents the format is made up of two kinds of string.

(a) Ordinary characters

A character other than a conversion specification shown in (b) is output unchanged.
(b) Conversion specifications

A conversion specification is a string beginning with `%` that specifies the conversion method for the following argument. The conversion specifications format conforms to the following rules:

```
% [Flag ...] [Field width] [-] [Precision] [Parameter size specification] Conversion string
```

When there is no parameter to be actually output for this conversion specification, the behavior is not guaranteed. Also, when the number of parameters to be actually output is greater than the conversion specification, the excess parameters are ignored.

(2) Description of conversion specifications

(a) Flags

Flags specify modifications to the data to be output, such as addition of a sign. The types of flag that can be specified, and their meanings, are shown in table 10.43.
Table 10.43 Flag Types and Their Meanings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>–</td>
<td>If the number of converted data characters is less than the field width, the data will be output left-justified within the field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+</td>
<td>A plus or minus sign will be prefixed to the result of a signed conversion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>space</td>
<td>If the first character of a signed conversion result is not a sign, a space will be prefixed to the result. If the space and + flags are both specified, the space flag will be ignored.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| #    | The converted data is to be modified according to the conversion types described in table 10.45.  
   (1) For c, d, i, s, and u conversions  
      This flag is ignored.  
   (2) For o conversion  
      The converted data is prefixed with 0.  
   (3) For x or X conversion  
      The converted data is prefixed with 0x (or 0X)  
   (4) For e, E, f, g, and G conversions  
      A decimal point is output even if the converted data has no fractional part. With g and G conversions, the 0 suffixed to the converted data cannot be removed. |
(b) Field width

The number of characters in the converted data to be output is specified as a decimal number.

If the number of converted data characters is less than the field width, the data is prefixed with spaces up to the field width. (However, if '-' is specified as a flag, spaces are suffixed to the data.)

If the number of converted data characters exceeds the field width, the field width is extended to allow the converted result to be output.

If the field width specification begins with 0, 0 characters, not spaces, are prefixed to the output data.

(c) Precision

The precision of the converted data is specified according to the type of conversion, as described in table 10.45.

The precision is specified in the form of a period (.) followed by a decimal integer. If the decimal integer is omitted, 0 is assumed to be specified.

If the specified precision is incompatible with the field width specification, the field width specification is ignored.

The precision specification has the following meanings according to the conversion type.

1. For d, i, o, u, x, and X conversions
   The minimum number of digits in the converted data is specified.

2. For e, E, and f conversions
   The number of digits after the decimal point in the converted data is specified.

3. For g and G conversions
   The maximum number of significant digits in the converted data is specified.

4. For s conversion
   The maximum number of printed digits is specified.
(d) Parameter size specification

For d, i, o, u, x, X, e, E, f, g, and G conversions (see table 10.45), specifies the size (short type, long type, long long, or long double type) of the data to be converted. In other conversions, this specification is ignored. Table 10.44 shows the types of size specification and their meanings.

Table 10.44 Parameter Size Specification Types and Meanings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>For d, i, o, u, x, and X conversions, specifies that the data to be converted is of short type or unsigned short type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>For d, i, o, u, x, and X conversions, specifies that the data to be converted is of long type, unsigned long type, or double type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>For e, E, f, g, and G conversions, specifies that the data to be converted is of long double type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ll</td>
<td>For d, i, o, u, x, and X conversions, specifies that the data to be converted is of long long type or unsigned long long type. For n conversion, specifies that the data to be converted is of pointer type to long long type.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(e) Conversion specifier

Specifies the format into which the data is to be converted.

If the data to be converted is structure or array type, or is a pointer pointing to those types, the behavior is not guaranteed except when a character array is converted by s conversion or when a pointer is converted by p conversion. Table 10.45 shows the conversion specifier and conversion methods. If a letter which is not shown in this table is specified as the conversion specifier, the behavior is not guaranteed. The behavior, if the other character is specified, depends on the compiler.
### Table 10.45 Conversion Specifiers and Conversion Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conversion Specifier</th>
<th>Conversion Type</th>
<th>Conversion Method</th>
<th>Data Type Subject to Conversion</th>
<th>Notes on Precision</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>d conversion</td>
<td>int type data is converted to a signed decimal string. d conversion and i conversion have the same specification.</td>
<td>int type</td>
<td>The precision specification indicates the minimum number of characters output. If the number of converted data characters is less than the field width, the string is prefixed with zeros. If the precision is omitted, 1 is assumed. If conversion and output of data with a value of 0 is attempted with 0 specified as the precision, nothing will be output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>i conversion</td>
<td>int type data is converted to an unsigned octal string.</td>
<td>int type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>o conversion</td>
<td>int type data is converted to an unsigned decimal string.</td>
<td>int type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>u conversion</td>
<td>int type data is converted to an unsigned decimal string.</td>
<td>int type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
<td>x conversion</td>
<td>int type data is converted to unsigned hexadecimal. a, b, c, d, e, and f are used as hexadecimal characters.</td>
<td>int type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>X conversion</td>
<td>int type data is converted to unsigned hexadecimal. A, B, C, D, E, and F are used as hexadecimal characters.</td>
<td>int type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>f conversion</td>
<td>double type data is converted to a decimal string with the format [-] ddd.ddd.</td>
<td>double type</td>
<td>The precision specification indicates the number of digits after the decimal point. When there are characters after the decimal point, at least one digit is output before the decimal point. When the precision is omitted, 6 is assumed. When 0 is specified as the precision, the decimal point and subsequent characters are not output. The output data is rounded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>e conversion</td>
<td>double type data is converted to a decimal string with the format [-] d.dddE±dd. At least two digits are output as the exponent.</td>
<td>double type</td>
<td>The precision specification indicates the number of digits after the decimal point. The format is such that one digit is output before the decimal point in the converted characters, and a number of digits equal to the precision are output after the decimal point. When the precision is omitted, 6 is assumed. When 0 is specified as the precision, characters after the decimal point are not output. The output data is rounded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>E conversion</td>
<td>double type data is converted to a decimal string with the format [-] d.dddE±dd. At least two digits are output as the exponent.</td>
<td>double type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>g conversion</td>
<td>Whether f conversion format output or e conversion (or E conversion) format output is performed is determined by the value to be converted and the precision value that specifies the number of significant digits. Then double type data is output. If the exponent of the converted data is less than -4, or larger than the precision that indicates the number of significant digits, conversion to e (or E) format is performed.</td>
<td>double type</td>
<td>The precision specification indicates the maximum number of significant digits in the converted data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>(or G conversion)</td>
<td>Whether f conversion format output or e conversion (or E conversion) format output is performed is determined by the value to be converted and the precision value that specifies the number of significant digits. Then double type data is output. If the exponent of the converted data is less than -4, or larger than the precision that indicates the number of significant digits, conversion to e (or E) format is performed.</td>
<td>double type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 10.45 Conversion Specifiers and Conversion Methods (cont)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conversion Specifier</th>
<th>Conversion Type</th>
<th>Conversion Method</th>
<th>Data Type Subject to Conversion</th>
<th>Notes on Precision</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>c conversion</td>
<td>int type data is converted to unsigned char data, with conversion to the character corresponding to that data.</td>
<td>int type</td>
<td>The precision specification is invalid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>s conversion</td>
<td>The string pointed to by pointer to char type are output up to the null character or up to the number of characters specified by the precision. (Null characters are not output. Space, horizontal tab, and new line characters are not included in the converted characters.)</td>
<td>Pointer to char type</td>
<td>The precision specification indicates the number of characters to be output. If the precision is omitted, characters are output up to, but not including, the null character in the string pointed to by the data. (Null characters are not output. Space, horizontal tab, and new line characters are not included in the converted characters.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>p conversion</td>
<td>Assuming data as a pointer, conversion is performed to a string of compiler-defined printable characters.</td>
<td>Pointer to void type</td>
<td>The precision specification is invalid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>No conversion</td>
<td>Data is regarded as pointer to int type, and the number of characters output so far is set in the storage area pointed to by that data.</td>
<td>Pointer to int type</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%</td>
<td>No conversion</td>
<td>% is output.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(f) *specification for field width or precision

* can be specified as the field width or precision specification value. In this case, the value of the parameter corresponding to the conversion specification is used as the field width or precision specification value. When this parameter has a negative field width, flag ‘–’ is interpreted as being specified for the positive field width. When the parameter has a negative precision, the precision is interpreted as being omitted.
int fscanf (FILE *fp, const char *control[, ptr…])

Description: Inputs data from a stream input/output file and converts it according to a format.

Header file: <stdio.h>

Return values: Normal: Number of data items successfully input and converted

Abnormal: Input data ends before input data conversion is performed: EOF

Parameters: fp File pointer

control Pointer to string indicating format

ptr,... Pointer to storage area that stores input data

Example:
#include <stdio.h>
FILE *fp;
const char *control="%d";
int ret, buffer[10];
    ret=fscanf(fp, control, buffer);

Remarks: The fscanf function inputs data from the stream input/output file indicated by file pointer fp, converts and edits it according to the string indicating the format pointed to by control, and stores the result in the storage area pointed to by ptr.

The format specifications for inputting data are shown below.

(1) Overview of formats
The string that represents the format is made up of the following three kinds of string.

(a) Space characters
   If a space (" "), horizontal tab ("\t"), or new-line character ("\n") is specified, processing is performed to skip to the next non-white-space character in the input data.

(b) Ordinary characters
   If a character that is neither one of the space characters listed in (a) nor % is specified, one input data character is input. The input character must match a character specified in the string that represents the format.
Conversion specification
A conversion specification is a string beginning with % that specifies the method of converting the input data and storing it in the area pointed to by the following argument. The conversion specification format conforms to the following rules:

% [*] [Field width] [Converted data size] Conversion string

If there is no pointer to the storage area that stores input data for the conversion specification in the format, the behavior is not guaranteed. Also, when a pointer to a storage area that stores input data remains though the format is exhausted, that pointer is ignored.

Description of conversion specification

(a) * specification
Suppresses storage of the input data in the storage area pointed to by the parameter.

(b) Field width
The maximum number of characters in the data to be input is specified as a decimal number.

(c) Converted data size
For d, i, o, u, x, X, e, E, and f conversions (see table 10.47), specifies the size (short type, long type, long long, or long double type) of the converted data. In other conversions, this specification is ignored. Table 10.46 shows the types of size specification and their meanings.

Table 10.46 Converted Data Size Specification Types and Meanings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>For d, i, o, u, x, and X conversions, specifies that the converted data is of short type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>For d, i, o, u, x, and X conversions, specifies that the converted data is of long type. For e, E, and f conversions, specifies that the converted data is of double type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>For e, E, and f conversions, specifies that the converted data is of long double type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ll</td>
<td>For d, i, o, u, x, and X conversions, specifies that the converted data is of long long type.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(d) Conversion specifier
The input data is converted according to the type of conversion specified by the conversion specifier. However, processing is terminated when a white-space character is read, when a character for
which conversion is not permitted is read, or when the specified field width has been exceeded.

Table 10.47 Conversion Specifiers and Conversion Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conversion Specifier</th>
<th>Conversion Type</th>
<th>Conversion Method</th>
<th>Data Type Subject to Conversion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>d conversion</td>
<td>A decimal string is converted to integer type data.</td>
<td>Integer type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>i conversion</td>
<td>A decimal string with a sign prefixed, or a decimal string with u (U) or l (L) suffixed is converted to integer type data. A string beginning with 0x (or 0X) is interpreted as hexadecimal, and the string is converted to int type data. A string beginning with 0 is interpreted as octal, and the string is converted to int type data.</td>
<td>Integer type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>o conversion</td>
<td>An octal string is converted to integer type data.</td>
<td>Integer type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>u conversion</td>
<td>An unsigned decimal string is converted to integer type data.</td>
<td>Integer type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
<td>x conversion</td>
<td>A hexadecimal string is converted to integer type data.</td>
<td>Integer type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>X conversion</td>
<td>There is no difference in meaning between x conversion and X conversion.</td>
<td>Integer type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>s conversion</td>
<td>Characters are converted as a single string until a space, horizontal tab, or new-line character is read. A null character is appended at the end of the string. (The string in which the converted data is set must be large enough to include the null character.)</td>
<td>Character type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>c conversion</td>
<td>One character is input. The input character is not skipped even if it is a white-space character. To read only non-white-space characters, specify %1s. If the field width is specified, the number of characters equivalent to that specification are read. In this case, therefore, the storage area that stores the converted data needs the specified size.</td>
<td>char type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>e conversion</td>
<td>A string indicating a floating-point number is converted to floating-point type data. There is no difference in meaning between the e conversion and E conversion, or between the g conversion and G conversion.</td>
<td>Floating-point type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>E conversion</td>
<td>The input format is a floating-point number that can be represented by the strtod function.</td>
<td>Floating-point type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>f conversion</td>
<td>The input format is a floating-point number that can be represented by the strtod function.</td>
<td>Floating-point type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>g conversion</td>
<td>The input format is a floating-point number that can be represented by the strtod function.</td>
<td>Floating-point type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>G conversion</td>
<td></td>
<td>Floating-point type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>p conversion</td>
<td>A string converted by p conversion of the fprintf function is converted to pointer type data.</td>
<td>Pointer to void type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>No conversion</td>
<td></td>
<td>Integer type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[</td>
<td>[ conversion</td>
<td>A sequence of characters is specified after [,. followed by ]. This character sequence defines a sequence of characters comprising a string. If the first character of the character sequence is not a circumflex (^), the input data is input as a single string until a character not in this character sequence is first read. If the first character is ^, the input data is input as a single string until a character which is in the character sequence following the ^ is first read. A null character is automatically appended at the end of the input string (so the string in which the converted data is set must be large enough to include the null character).</td>
<td>Character type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%</td>
<td>No conversion</td>
<td></td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

"
If the conversion specifier is a letter not shown in table 10.47, the behavior is not guaranteed. For the other characters, the behavior is implementation-defined.

`int printf (const char *control[, arg…])`

**Description:** Converts data according to a format and outputs it to the standard output file (stdout).

**Header file:** `<stdio.h>`

**Return values:**
- Normal: Number of characters converted and output
- Abnormal: Negative value

**Parameters:**
- `control`: Pointer to string indicating format
- `arg,…`: Data to be output according to format

**Example:**
```
#include <stdio.h>
const char *control="%s";
int ret;
char buffer[]="Hello World\n";
   ret=printf(control, buffer);
```

**Remarks:** The `printf` function converts and edits parameter `arg` according to the string that indicates the format pointed to by `control`, and outputs the result to the standard output file (stdout).

For details of the format specifications, see the description of the `fprintf` function.
int scanf (const char *control[, ptr…])

Description: Inputs data from the standard input file (stdin) and converts it according to a format.

Header file: <stdio.h>

Return values: Normal: Number of data items successfully input and converted

Abnormal: EOF

Parameters: control Pointer to string indicating format

ptr,... Pointer to storage area that holds input and converted data

Example: #include <stdio.h>

const char *control="%d";

int ret,buffer[10];

ret=scanf(control,buffer);

Remarks: The scanf function inputs data from the standard input file (stdin), converts and edits it according to the string indicating the format pointed to by control, and stores the result in the storage area pointed to by ptr.

The scanf function returns the number of data items successfully input and converted as the return value. EOF is returned if the standard input file ends before the first conversion.

For details of the format specifications, see the description of the fscanf function.

For %e conversion, specify l for double type, and specify L for long double type. The default type is float.
int sprintf (char *s, const char *control[, arg...])

Description: Converts data according to a format and outputs it to the specified area.

Header file: <stdio.h>

Return values: Number of characters converted

Parameters:
- s Pointer to storage area to which data is to be output
- control Pointer to string indicating format
- arg,... Data to be output according to format

Example:
```
#include <stdio.h>
char *s;
const char *control="%s";
int ret;
char buffer[]="Hello World\n";
    ret=sprintf(s, control, buffer);
```

Remarks: The `sprintf` function converts and edits parameter `arg` according to the string that indicates the format pointed to by `control`, and outputs the result to the storage area pointed to by `s`.

A null character is appended at the end of the converted and output string. This null character is not included in the return value (number of characters output).

For details of the format specifications, see the description of the `fprintf` function.
int sscanf (const char *s, const char *control[, ptr...])

Description: Inputs data from the specified storage area and converts it according to a format.

Header file: <stdio.h>

Return values: Normal: Number of data items successfully input and converted
                Abnormal: EOF

Parameters: s Storage area containing data to be input
             control Pointer to string indicating format
             ptr,... Pointer to storage area that holds input and converted data

Example: #include <stdio.h>
          const char *s, *control="%d";
          int ret,buffer[10];
          ret=sscanf(s, control, buffer);

Remarks: The sscanf function inputs data from the storage area pointed to by s, converts and edits it according to the string indicating the format pointed to by control, and stores the result in the storage area pointed to by ptr.

The sscanf function returns the number of data items successfully input and converted. EOF is returned when the input data ends before the first conversion.

For details of the format specifications, see the description of the fscanf function.
int vfprintf (FILE *fp, const char *control, va_list arg)

Description: Outputs a variable parameter list to the specified stream input/output file according to a format.

Header file: <stdio.h>

Return values: Normal: Number of characters converted and output
               Abnormal: Negative value

Parameters: 
            fp File pointer
            control Pointer to string indicating format
            arg Argument list

Example: #include <stdarg.h>
         #include <stdio.h>
         FILE *fp;
         const char *control=”%d”;
         int ret;
         void prlist(int count ,...)
         {
            va_list ap;
            int i;
            va_start(ap, count);
            for(i=0;i<count;i++)
            {
               ret=vfprintf(fp, control, ap);
               va_end(ap);
            }
         }

Remarks: The vfprintf function sequentially converts and edits a variable parameter list according to the string that indicates the format pointed to by control, and outputs the result to the stream input/output file indicated by fp.

The vfprintf function returns the number of data items converted and output, or a negative value when an error occurs.

Within the vfprintf function, the va_end macro is not invoked.

For details of the format specifications, see the description of the fprintf function.
Parameter `arg`, indicating the argument list, must be initialized beforehand by the `va_start` macro (and the succeeding `va_arg` macro).

### int vprintf (const char *control, va_list arg)

**Description:** Outputs a variable parameter list to the standard output file (stdout) according to a format.

**Header file:** `<stdio.h>`

**Return values:**
- Normal: Number of characters converted and output
- Abnormal: Negative value

**Parameters:**
- `control` Pointer to string indicating format
- `arg` Argument list

**Example:**
```c
#include <stdarg.h>
#include <stdio.h>
FILE *fp;
const char *control="\%d";
int ret;

void prlist(int count ,...)
{
    va_list ap;
    int i;
    va_start(ap, count);
    for(i=0;i<count;i++)
        ret=vprintf(control, ap);
    va_end(ap);
}
```

**Remarks:**
- The `vprintf` function sequentially converts and edits a variable parameter list according to the string that indicates the format pointed to by `control`, and outputs the result to the standard output file.

- The `vprintf` function returns the number of data items converted and output, or a negative value if an error occurs.

- Within the `vprintf` function, the `va_end` macro is not invoked.
For details of the format specifications, see the description of the `fprintf` function.

Parameter `arg`, indicating the argument list, must be initialized beforehand by the `va_start` macro (and the succeeding `va_arg` macro).

### int vsprintf (char *s, const char *control, va_list arg)

**Description:** Outputs a variable parameter list to the specified storage area according to a format.

**Header file:** `<stdio.h>`

**Return values:**
- **Normal:** Number of characters converted
- **Abnormal:** Negative value

**Parameters:**
- `s`: Pointer to storage area to which data is to be output
- `control`: Pointer to string indicating format
- `arg`: Argument list

**Example:**
```c
#include <stdarg.h>
#include <stdio.h>
char *s;
const char *control="%d";
int ret;

void prlist(int count ,...)
{
    va_list ap;
    int i;
    va_start(ap, count);
    for(i=0;i<count;i++) {
        ret=vsprintf(s,control,buffer);
        va_arg(ap,int)
        s += ret;
    }
}
```
Remarks: The `vsprintf` function sequentially converts and edits a variable parameter list according to the string that indicates the format pointed to by `control`, and outputs the result to the storage area pointed to by `s`.

A null character is appended at the end of the converted and output string. This null character is not included in the return value (number of characters output).

For details of the format specifications, see the description of the `fprintf` function.

Parameter `arg`, indicating the argument list, must be initialized beforehand by the `va_start` macro (and the succeeding `va_arg` macro).

```c
int fgetc (FILE *fp)
```

Description: Inputs one character from a stream input/output file.

Header file: `<stdio.h>`

Return values: Normal: End-of-file: EOF
Otherwise: Input character

Abnormal: EOF

Parameters: `fp` File pointer

Example:  
```c
#include <stdio.h>
FILE *fp;
int ret;
ret=fgetc(fp);
```

Error conditions: When a read error occurs, the error indicator for that file is set.

Remarks: The `fgetc` function inputs one character from the stream input/output file indicated by file pointer `fp`.

The `fgetc` function normally returns the input character, but returns EOF at end-of-file or when an error occurs. At end-of-file, the end-of-file indicator for that file is set.
char *fgets (char *s, int n, FILE *fp)

Description: Inputs a string from a stream input/output file.

Header file: <stdio.h>

Return values: Normal: End-of-file: NULL
Otherwise: s
Abnormal: NULL

Parameters: s Pointer to storage area to which string is input
n Number of bytes of storage area to which string is input
fp File pointer

Example:
```c
#include <stdio.h>
char *s, *ret;
int n;
FILE *fp;
ret=fgets(s, n, fp);
```

Remarks: The `fgets` function inputs a string from the stream input/output file indicated by file pointer `fp` to the storage area pointed to by `s`.

The `fgets` function performs input up to the (n–1)th character or a new-line character, or until end-of-file, and appends a null character at the end of the input string.

The `fgets` function normally returns `s`, the pointer to the storage area to which the string is input, but returns NULL at end-of-file or if an error occurs.

The contents of the storage area pointed to by `s` do not change at end-of-file, but are not guaranteed when an error occurs.
int fputc (int c, FILE *fp)

Description: Outputs one character to a stream input/output file.

Header file: <stdio.h>

Return values: Normal: Output character
Abnormal: EOF

Parameters: c Character to be output
fp File pointer

Example: #include <stdio.h>
FILE *fp;
int c, ret;
ret=fputc(c, fp);

Error conditions: When a write error occurs, the error indicator for that file is set.

Remarks: The fputc function outputs character c to the stream input/output file indicated by file pointer fp.

The fputc function normally returns c, the output character, but returns EOF when an error occurs.
int fputs (const char *s, FILE *fp)

Description: Outputs a string to a stream input/output file.

Header file: <stdio.h>

Return values: Normal: 0
               Abnormal: Nonzero

Parameters: s Pointer to string to be output
             fp File pointer

Example: #include <stdio.h>
         const char *s;
         int ret;
         FILE *fp;
         ret=fputs(s, fp);

Remarks: The fputs function outputs the string up to the character preceding the null character pointed to by s to the stream input/output file indicated by file pointer fp. The null character indicating the end of the string is not output.

The fputs function normally returns zero, but returns nonzero when an error occurs.
int getc (FILE *fp)

Description: Inputs one character from a stream input/output file.

Header file: <stdio.h>

Return values: Normal: End-of-file: EOF
Otherwise: Input character

Abnormal: EOF

Parameters: fp File pointer

Example:
#include <stdio.h>
FILE *fp;
int ret;
ret=getc(fp);

Error conditions: When a read error occurs, the error indicator for that file is set.

Remarks: The getc function inputs one character from the stream input/output file indicated by file pointer fp.

The getc function normally returns the input character, but returns EOF at end-of-file or if an error occurs. At end-of-file, the end-of-file indicator for that file is set.
int getchar (void)

Description: Inputs one character from the standard input file (stdin).

Header file: <stdio.h>

Return values: Normal: End-of-file: EOF
              Otherwise: Input character
              Abnormal: EOF

Example:
#include <stdio.h>
int ret;
    ret=getchar();

Error conditions:
When a read error occurs, the error indicator for that file is set.

Remarks: The getchar function inputs one character from the standard input file (stdin).

The getchar function normally returns the input character, but returns EOF at end-of-file or if an error occurs. At end-of-file, the end-of-file indicator for that file is set.
`char *gets (char *s)`

Description: Inputs a string from the standard input file (stdin).

Header file: `<stdio.h>`

Return values:
- Normal: End-of-file: NULL
- Otherwise: `s`

- Abnormal: NULL

Parameters:
- `s` Pointer to storage area to which string is input

Example:
```
#include <stdio.h>
char *ret, *s;
ret=gets(s);
```

Remarks: The `gets` function inputs a string from the standard input file (stdin) to the storage area starting at `s`.

The `gets` function inputs characters up to end-of-file or until a new-line character is input, and appends a null character instead of a new-line character.

The `gets` function normally returns `s`, the pointer to the storage area to which the string is input, but returns NULL at the end of the standard input file or when an error occurs.

The contents of the storage area pointed to by `s` do not change at the end of the standard input file, but is not guaranteed when an error occurs.
`int putc (int c, FILE *fp)`

**Description:** Outputs one character to a stream input/output file.

**Header file:** `<stdio.h>`

**Return values:**
- Normal: Output character
- Abnormal: EOF

**Parameters:**
- `c` Character to be output
- `fp` File pointer

**Example:**
```c
#include <stdio.h>
FILE *fp;
int c, ret;
ret=putc(c, fp);
```

**Error conditions:**
When a write error occurs, the error indicator for that file is set.

**Remarks:**
The `putc` function outputs character `c` to the stream input/output file indicated by file pointer `fp`.

The `putc` function normally returns `c`, the output character, but returns EOF when an error occurs.
int putchar (int c)

Description: Outputs one character to the standard output file (stdout).

Header file: <stdio.h>

Return values: Normal: Output character
              Abnormal: EOF

Parameters: c Character to be output

Example:

```c
#include <stdio.h>
int c, ret;
ret = putchar(c);
```

Error conditions:

When a write error occurs, the error indicator for that file is set.

Remarks:

The `putchar` function outputs character `c` to the standard output file (stdout).

The `putchar` function normally returns `c`, the output character, but returns EOF when an error occurs.
int puts (const char *s)

Description: Outputs a string to the standard output file (stdout).

Header file: <stdio.h>

Return values: Normal: 0
               Abnormal: Nonzero

Parameters: s Pointer to string to be output

Example: #include <stdio.h>
        const char *s;
        int ret;
        ret=puts(s);

Remarks: The puts function outputs the string pointed to by s to the standard output file (stdout). The null character indicating the end of the string is not output, but a new-line character is output instead.

The puts function normally returns zero, but returns nonzero when an error occurs.
int ungetc (int c, FILE *fp)

Description: Returns one character to a stream input/output file.

Header file: <stdio.h>

Return values: Normal: Returned character
               Abnormal: EOF

Parameters: c Character to be returned
            fp File pointer

Example: #include <stdio.h>
         int c, ret;
         FILE *fp;
         ret=ungetc(c, fp);

Remarks: The ungetc function returns character c to the stream input/output file indicated by file pointer fp. Unless the fflush, fseek, or rewind function is called, this returned character will be the next input data.

The ungetc function normally returns character c, but returns EOF if an error occurs.

The behavior is not guaranteed when the ungetc function is called more than once without intervening fflush, fseek, or rewind function execution. When the ungetc function is executed, the current file position indicator for that file is moved back one position; however, when this file position indicator has already been positioned at the beginning of the file, its value is not guaranteed.
size_t fread (void *ptr, size_t size, size_t n, FILE *fp)

Description: Inputs data from a stream input/output file to the specified storage area.

Header file: <stdio.h>

Return values: When size or n is 0: 0
When size and n are both nonzero: Number of successfully input members

Parameters: ptr Pointer to storage area to which data is input
size Number of bytes in one member
n Number of members to be input
fp File pointer

Example:
#include <stdio.h>
void *ptr;
size_t size;
size_t n, ret;
FILE *fp;
ret=fread(ptr, size, n, fp);

Remarks: The fread function inputs n members whose size is specified by size, from the stream input/output file indicated by file pointer fp, into the storage area pointed to by ptr. The file position indicator for the file is advanced by the number of bytes input.

The fread function returns the number of members successfully input, which is normally the same as the value of n. However, at end-of-file or when an error occurs, the number of members successfully input so far is returned, and then the return value will be less than n. The ferror and feof functions should be used to distinguish between end-of-file and error occurrence.

When the value of size or n is zero, zero is returned as the return value and the contents of the storage area pointed to by ptr are unchanged. When an error occurs, or when only a part of the members can be input, the file position indicator is not guaranteed.
size_t fwrite (const void *ptr, size_t size, size_t n, FILE *fp)

Description: Outputs data from a memory area to a stream input/output file.

Header file: <stdio.h>

Return values: Number of successfully output members

Parameters:  
ptr Pointer to storage area storing data to be output
size Number of bytes in one member
n Number of members to be input
fp File pointer

Example:
#include <stdio.h>
const void *ptr;
size_t size;
size_t n, ret;
FILE *fp;
ret=fwrite(ptr, size, n, fp);

Remarks: The fwrite function outputs n members whose size is specified by size, from the storage area pointed to by ptr, to the stream input/output file indicated by file pointer fp. The file position indicator for the file is advanced by the number of bytes output.

The fwrite function returns the number of members successfully output, which is normally the same as the value of n. However, when an error occurs, the number of members successfully output so far is returned, and then the return value will be less than n.

When an error occurs, the file position indicator is not guaranteed.
int fseek (FILE *fp, long offset, int type)

Description: Shifts the current read/write position in a stream input/output file.

Header file: <stdio.h>

Return values: Normal: 0
Abnormal: Nonzero

Parameters: fp File pointer
offset Offset from position specified by type of offset
type Type of offset

Example:
```c
#include <stdio.h>
FILE *fp;
long offset;
int type, ret;
ret=fseek(fp, offset, type);
```

Remarks: The `fseek` function shifts the current read/write position in the stream input/output file indicated by file pointer `fp` by `offset` bytes from the position specified by `type` (the type of offset).
The types of offset are shown in table 10.48.
The `fseek` function normally returns zero, but returns nonzero in response to an invalid request.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offset Type</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SEEK_SET</td>
<td>Shifts to a position which is located offset bytes away from the beginning of the file. The value specified by offset must be zero or positive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEEK_CUR</td>
<td>Shifts to a position which is located offset bytes away from the current position in the file. The shift is toward the end of the file if the value specified by offset is positive, and toward the beginning of the file if negative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEEK_END</td>
<td>Shifts to a position which is located offset bytes forward from end-of-file. The value specified by offset must be zero or negative.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the case of a text file, the type of offset must be SEEK_SET and `offset` must be zero or the value returned by the `ftell` function for that file. Note also that calling the `fseek` function cancels the effect of the `ungetc` function.
**long ftell (FILE *fp)**

**Description:** Obtains the current read/write position in a stream input/output file.

**Header file:** `<stdio.h>`

**Return values:**
- Current file position indicator position (text file)
- Number of bytes from beginning of file to current position (binary file)

**Parameters:**
- `fp`  
  File pointer

**Example:**
```c
#include <stdio.h>
FILE *fp;
long ret;
ret=ftell(fp);
```

**Remarks:**
The `ftell` function obtains the current read/write position in the stream input/output file indicated by file pointer `fp`.

For a binary file, the `ftell` function returns the number of bytes from the beginning of the file to the current position. For a text file, it returns, as the position of the file position indicator, an implementation-defined value that can be used by the `fseek` function.

When the `ftell` function is used twice for a text file, the difference in the return values will not necessarily represent the actual distance in the file.
**void rewind (FILE *fp)**

Description: Shifts the current read/write position in a stream input/output file to the beginning of the file.

Header file: `<stdio.h>`

Parameters: **fp** File pointer

Example:
```c
#include <stdio.h>
FILE *fp;
rewind(fp);
```

Remarks: The `rewind` function shifts the current read/write position in the stream input/output file indicated by file pointer `fp`, to the beginning of the file.

The `rewind` function clears the end-of-file indicator and error indicator for the file.

Note that calling the `rewind` function cancels the effect of the `ungetc` function.

**void clearerr (FILE *fp)**

Description: Clears the error state of a stream input/output file.

Header file: `<stdio.h>`

Parameters: **fp** File pointer

Example:
```c
#include <stdio.h>
FILE *fp;
clearerr(fp);
```

Remarks: The `clearerr` function clears the error indicator and end-of-file indicator for the stream input/output file indicated by file pointer `fp`.
int feof (FILE *fp)

Description: Tests for the end of a stream input/output file.

Header file: <stdio.h>

Return values: End-of-file: Nonzero
Otherwise: 0

Parameters: fp File pointer

Example:
#include <stdio.h>
FILE *fp;
int ret;
ret = feof(fp);

Remarks: The feof function tests for the end of the stream input/output file indicated by file pointer fp.

The feof function tests the end-of-file indicator for the specified stream input/output file, and if the indicator is set, returns nonzero to indicate that the file is at its end. If the end-of-file indicator is not set, the feof function returns zero to show that the file is not yet at its end.
int ferror (FILE *fp)

Description: Tests for stream input/output file error state.

Header file: `<stdio.h>`

Return values: If file is in error state: Nonzero
Otherwise: 0

Parameters: fp File pointer

Example: #include `<stdio.h>`
FILE *fp;
int ret;
    ret = ferror(fp);

Remarks: The `ferror` function tests whether the stream input/output file indicated by file pointer `fp` is in the error state.

The `ferror` function tests the error indicator for the specified stream input/output file, and if the indicator is set, returns nonzero to show that the file is in the error state. If the error indicator is not set, the `ferror` function returns zero to show that the file is not in the error state.
void perror (const char *s)

Description: Outputs an error message corresponding to the error number to the standard error file (stderr).

Header file: <stdio.h>

Parameters: s Pointer to error message

Example:
#include <stdio.h>
const char *s;
perror(s);

Remarks: The perror function maps errno to the error message indicated by s, and outputs the message to the standard error file (stderr).

If s is not NULL and the string pointed to by s is not the null character, the output format is as follows: the string pointed to by s followed by a colon and space, then the implementation-defined error message, and finally a new-line character.
<stdlib.h>

Defines standard functions for standard processing of C programs.

The following macros are implementation-defined.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Definition Name Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>div_t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Indicates the type of structure of the value returned by the div function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>ldiv_t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Indicates the type of structure of the value returned by the ldiv function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>lddiv_t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Indicates the type of structure of the value returned by the lddiv function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constant</td>
<td>RAND_MAX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Indicates the maximum of pseudo-random integers generated by the rand function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>atof</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Converts a number-representing string to a double type floating-point number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>atoi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Converts a decimal-representing string to an int type integer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>atol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Converts a decimal-representing string to a long type integer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>atoll</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Converts a decimal-representing string to a long long type integer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>atofixed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Converts a number-representing string to a long _ _fixed type fixed-point number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>atolaccum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Converts a number-representing string to a long _ _accum type fixed-point number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>strtol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Converts a number-representing string to a double type floating-point number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>strtol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Converts a number-representing string to a long type integer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>strtoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Converts a number-representing string to an unsigned long type integer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>strtoll</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Converts a number-representing string to a long long type integer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>strtoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Converts a number-representing string to an unsigned long long type integer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>strtolfixed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Converts a number-representing string to a long _ _fixed type fixed-point number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>strtolaccum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Converts a number-representing string to a long _ _accum type fixed-point number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>rand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Generates pseudo-random integers from 0 to RAND_MAX.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>srand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sets an initial value of the pseudo-random number series generated by the rand function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Definition Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Function</strong></td>
<td>calloc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>free</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>malloc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>realloc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>calloc_ _X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>free_ _X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>malloc_ _X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>realloc_ _X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>calloc_ _Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>free_ _Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>malloc_ _Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>realloc_ _Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bsearch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>qsort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>abs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>div</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>labs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ldiv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>llabs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>lldiv</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
double atof (const char *nptr)

Description: Converts a number-representing string to a double type floating-point number.

Header file: <stdlib.h>

Return values: Converted data as a double type floating-point number

Parameters: nptr Pointer to a number-representing string to be converted

Example:
```
#include <stdlib.h>
const char *nptr;
double ret;
ret=atof(nptr);
```

Error conditions:
If the converted result overflows or underflows, ERANGE is set to errno.

Remarks:
Data is converted up to the first character that does not fit the floating-point data type.

The atof function does not guarantee the return value, if an error such as an overflow occurs. When you want to acquire the guaranteed return value, use the strtod function.
int atoi (const char *nptr)

Description: Converts a decimal-representing string to an int type integer.

Header file: <stdlib.h>

Return values: Converted data as an int type integer

Parameters: nptr Pointer to a number-representing string to be converted

Example:
```c
#include <stdlib.h>
const char *nptr;
int ret;
ret=atoi(nptr);
```

Error conditions: If the converted result overflows, ERANGE is set to errno.

Remarks: Data is converted up to the first character that does not fit the decimal data type.

The atoi function does not guarantee the return value, if an error such as an overflow occurs. When you want to acquire the guaranteed return value, use the strtol function.
long atol (const char *nptr)

Description: Converts a decimal-representing string to a long type integer.

Header file: <stdlib.h>

Return values: Converted data as a long type integer

Parameters: nptr Pointer to a number-representing string to be converted

Example:
```c
#include <stdlib.h>
const char *nptr;
long ret;
ret=atol(nptr);
```

Error conditions:
If the converted result overflows, ERANGE is set to errno.

Remarks: Data is converted up to the first character that does not fit the decimal data type.

The atol function does not guarantee the return value, if an error such as an overflow occurs. When you want to acquire the guaranteed return value, use the strtol function.
long long atoll (const char *nptr)

Description: Converts a decimal-representing string to a long long type integer.

Header file: <stdlib.h>

Return values: Converted data as a long long type integer

Parameters: nptr Pointer to a number-representing string to be converted

Example:
#include <stdlib.h>
const char *nptr;
long long ret;
ret=atoll(nptr);

Error conditions:
If the converted result overflows, ERANGE is set to errno.

Remarks: Data is converted up to the first character that does not fit the decimal data type.

The atoll function does not guarantee the return value, if an error such as an overflow occurs. When you want to acquire the guaranteed return value, use the strtoll function.
**long __fixed atolfixed (const char *nptr)**

**Description:** Converts a number-representing string to a long __fixed type fixed-point number.

**Header file:** `<stdlib.h>`

**Return values:** Converted data as a long __fixed type fixed-point number

**Parameters:**
- `nptr` Pointer to a number-representing string to be converted

**Example:**
```c
#include <stdlib.h>
const char *nptr;
long __fixed ret;
ret=atolfixed(nptr);
```

**Error conditions:**
If the converted result overflows or underflows, ERANGE is set to `errno`.

**Remarks:**
The `atolfixed` function is only valid when `cpu=sh2dsp`, `sh3dsp`, `sh4aldsp`, and `dspc` are specified.

Data is converted up to the first character that does not fit the fixed-point data type.

The `atolfixed` function does not guarantee the return value, if an error such as an overflow occurs. When you want to acquire the guaranteed return value, use the `strtolfixed` function.
long __accum atolaccum (const char *nptr)

Description: Converts a number-representing string to a long __accum type fixed-point number.

Header file: <stdlib.h>

Return values: Converted data as a long __accum type fixed-point number

Parameters: nptr Pointer to a number-representing string to be converted

Example: #include <stdlib.h>
const char *nptr;
long __accum ret;
ret=atolaccum(nptr);

Error conditions: If the converted result overflows or underflows, ERANGE is set to errno.

Remarks: The atolaccum function is only valid when cpu=sh2dsp, sh3dsp, sh4aldsp, and dspe are specified.

Data is converted up to the first character that does not fit the fixed-point data type.

The atolaccum function does not guarantee the return value, if an error such as an overflow occurs. When you want to acquire the guaranteed return value, use the strtolaccum function.
double strtod (const char *nptr, char **endptr)

Description: Converts a string which represents a number to a double type floating-point number.

Header file: <stdlib.h>

Return values: Normal: If the string pointed by nptr begins with a character that does not represent a floating-point number: 0
If the string pointed by nptr begins with a character that represents a floating-point number: converted data as a double type floating-point number

Abnormal: If the converted data overflows: HUGE_VAL with the same sign as that of the string before conversion
If the converted data underflows: 0

Parameters: nptr Pointer to a string representing a number to be converted
endptr Pointer to the storage area containing a pointer to the first character that does not comprise a floating-point number

Example:
#include <stdlib.h>
const char *nptr;
char **endptr;
double ret;
ret=strtod(nptr, endptr);

Error conditions:
If the converted result overflows or underflows, ERANGE is set to errno.

Remarks: According to the rules described in section 10.1.3 (4), Floating-Point Operation Specifications, the strtod function converts data, from the first digit or the decimal point up to the character immediately before the character that does not comprise a floating-point number, into a double type floating-point number. However, if neither an exponent nor a decimal point is found in the data to be converted, the compiler assumes that the decimal point comes next to the last digit in the string. In the area pointed by endptr, the function sets up a pointer to the first character that does not compose a floating-point number. If some characters that do not compose a floating-point number come before numerals, the value of nptr is set. If endptr is NULL, nothing is set.
long strtol (const char *nptr, char **endptr, int base)

Description: Converts a string which represents a number to a long type integer.

Header file: <stdlib.h>

Return values: Normal: If the string pointed by nptr begins with a character that does not represent an integer: 0
If the string pointed by nptr begins with a character that represents an integer: Converted data as a long type integer
Abnormal: If the converted data overflows: LONG_MAX or LONG_MIN depending on the sign of the string before conversion

Parameters: nptr Pointer to a string representing a number to be converted
endptr Pointer to the storage area containing a pointer to the first character that does not comprise an integer
base Radix of conversion (0 or 2 to 36)

Example:
```c
#include <stdlib.h>
long ret;
const char *nptr;
char **endptr;
int base;
ret=strtol(nptr, endptr, base);
```

Error conditions:
If the converted result overflows, ERANGE is set to errno.

Remarks: The strtol function converts data, from the first numeral up to the character before the first character that does not represent an integer, into a long type integer.

In the storage area pointed by endptr, the function sets up a pointer to the first character that does not represent an integer. If some characters that do not represent an integer come before the first numeral, the value of nptr is set in this area. If endptr is NULL, nothing is set in this area.

If the value of base is 0, the rules described in section 10.1.1 (4), Integers, are observed at conversion. If the value of base is 2 to 36, it indicates the radix of conversion, where a (or A) to z (or Z) in the string to be converted correspond to numbers 10 to 35. If a character that is not smaller than the base value is found.
in the string to be converted, conversion stops immediately. A 0 after a sign is ignored at conversion. Similarly, 0x (or 0X) at base 16 is ignored.

**unsigned long strtoul (const char *nptr, char **endptr, int base)**

**Description:** Converts a string which represents a number to an unsigned long type integer.

**Header file:** <stdlib.h>

**Return values:**
- **Normal:** If the string pointed by *nptr* begins with a character that does not represent an integer: 0
- If the string pointed by *nptr* begins with a character that represents an integer: Converted data as an unsigned long type integer

- **Abnormal:** If the converted data overflows: ULONG_MAX

**Parameters:**
- *nptr* Pointer to a string representing a number to be converted
- *endptr* Pointer to the storage area containing a pointer to the first character that does not comprise an integer
- *base* Radix of conversion (0 or 2 to 36)

**Example:**
```c
#include <stdlib.h>
unsigned long ret;
const char *nptr;
char **endptr;
int base;
ret=strtoul(nptr, endptr, base);
```

**Error conditions:**
If the converted result overflows, ERANGE is set to errno.

**Remarks:**
The `strtoul` function converts data, from the first numeral up to the character before the first character that does not represent an integer, into an unsigned long type integer.

In the storage area pointed by *endptr*, the function sets up a pointer to the first character that does not represent an integer. If some characters that do not represent an integer come before the first numeral, the value of *nptr* is set in this area. If *endptr* is NULL, nothing is set in this area.
If the value of `base` is 0, the rules described in section 10.1.1 (4), Integers, are observed at conversion. If the value of `base` is 2 to 36, it indicates the radix of conversion, where a (or A) to z (or Z) in the string to be converted correspond to numbers 10 to 35. If a character that is not smaller than the `base` value is found in the string to be converted, conversion stops immediately. A 0 after a sign is ignored at conversion. Similarly, 0x (or 0X) at base 16 is ignored.

**long long strtoll (const char *nptr, char **endptr, int base)**

Description: Converts a string which represents a number to a long long type integer.

Header file: `<stdlib.h>`

Return values:
- **Normal:** If the string pointed by `nptr` begins with a character that does not represent an integer: 0
- If the string pointed by `nptr` begins with a character that represents an integer: Converted data as a long long type integer

- **Abnormal:** If the converted data overflows: LLONG_MAX or LLONG_MIN depending on the sign of the string before conversion

Parameters:
- **nptr** Pointer to a string representing a number to be converted
- **endptr** Pointer to the storage area containing a pointer to the first character that does not comprise an integer
- **base** Radix of conversion (0 or 2 to 36)

Example:
```c
#include <stdlib.h>
long long ret;
const char *nptr;
char **endptr;
int base;
ret=strtoll(nptr,endptr,base);
```

Error conditions:
- If the converted result overflows, ERANGE is set to `errno`.

Remarks: The `strtoll` function converts data, from the first numeral up to the character before the first character that does not represent an integer, into a long long type integer.
In the storage area pointed by `endptr`, the function sets up a pointer to the first character that does not represent an integer. If some characters that do not represent an integer come before the first numeral, the value of `nptr` is set in this area. If `endptr` is NULL, nothing is set in this area.

If the value of `base` is 0, the rules described in section 10.1.1 (4), Integers, are observed at conversion. If the value of `base` is 2 to 36, it indicates the radix of conversion, where a (or A) to z (or Z) in the string to be converted correspond to numbers 10 to 35. If a character that is not smaller than the `base` value is found in the string to be converted, conversion stops immediately. A 0 after a sign is ignored at conversion. Similarly, 0x (or 0X) at base 16 is ignored.
unsigned long long strtoull (const char *nptr, char **endptr, int base)

Description: Converts a string which represents a number to an unsigned long long type integer.

Header file: <stdlib.h>

Return values: Normal: If the string pointed by nptr begins with a character that does not represent an integer: 0 If the string pointed by nptr begins with a character that represents an integer: Converted data as an unsigned long long type integer

Abnormal: If the converted data overflows: ULLONG_MAX

Parameters: nptr Pointer to a string representing a number to be converted endptr Pointer to the storage area containing a pointer to the first character that does not comprise an integer base Radix of conversion (0 or 2 to 36)

Example: #include <stdlib.h>
unsigned long long ret;
const char *nptr;
char **endptr;
int base;
ret=strtoull(nptr,endptr,base);

Error conditions: If the converted result overflows, ERANGE is set to errno.

Remarks: The strtoull function converts data, from the first numeral up to the character before the first character that does not represent an integer, into an unsigned long long type integer.

In the storage area pointed by endptr, the function sets up a pointer to the first character that does not represent an integer. If some characters that do not represent an integer come before the first numeral, the value of nptr is set in this area. If endptr is NULL, nothing is set in this area.

If the value of base is 0, the rules described in section 10.1.1 (4), Integers, are observed at conversion. If the value of base is 2 to 36, it indicates the radix of conversion, where a (or A) to z (or Z) in the string to be converted correspond to
numbers 10 to 35. If a character that is not smaller than the base value is found in the string to be converted, conversion stops immediately. A 0 after a sign is ignored at conversion. Similarly, 0x (or 0X) at base 16 is ignored.

long __fixed strtolfixed (const char *nptr, char **endptr)

Description: Converts a string which represents a number to a long __fixed type fixed-point number.

Header file: <stdlib.h>

Return values: Normal: If the string pointed by nptr begins with a character that does not represent a fixed-point number: 0
If the string pointed by nptr begins with a character that represents a fixed-point number: Converted data as a long __fixed type fixed-point number

Abnormal: If the converted data overflows: LFIXED_MAX or LFIXED_MIN depending on the sign of the string before conversion
If the converted data underflows: 0

Parameters: nptr Pointer to a string representing a number to be converted
endptr Pointer to the storage area containing a pointer to the first character that does not comprise a fixed-point number

Example:
#include <stdlib.h>
const char *nptr;
char **endptr;
long __fixed ret;
ret=strtolfixed(nptr,endptr);

Error conditions:
If the converted result overflows or underflows, ERANGE is set to errno.

Remarks: This function is only valid when cpu=sh2dsp, sh3dsp, sh4aldsp, and dspe are specified.
The strtolfixed function converts data, from the first digit or the decimal point up to the character immediately before the character that does not comprise a fixed-point number, into a long __fixed type fixed-point number. However, if
neither an exponent nor a decimal point is found in the data to be converted, the compiler assumes that the decimal point comes next to the last digit in the string. In the area pointed by `endptr`, the function sets up a pointer to the first character that does not compose a fixed-point number. If some characters that do not compose a fixed-point number come before numerals, the value of `nptr` is set. If `endptr` is NULL, nothing is set.

### long _ _accum strtolaccum (const char *nptr, char **endptr)

**Description:** Converts a string which represents a number to a long _ _accum type fixed-point number.

**Header file:** `<stdlib.h>`

**Return values:**
- **Normal:**
  - If the string pointed by `nptr` begins with a character that does not represent a fixed-point number: 0
  - If the string pointed by `nptr` begins with a character that represents a fixed-point number: Converted data as a long _ _accum type fixed-point number

- **Abnormal:**
  - If the converted data overflows: LACCUM_MAX or LACCUM_MIN depending on the sign of the string before conversion
  - If the converted data underflows: 0

**Parameters:**
- `nptr` Pointer to a string representing a number to be converted
- `endptr` Pointer to the storage area containing a pointer to the first character that does not comprise a fixed-point number

**Example:**
```c
#include <stdlib.h>
const char *nptr;
char **endptr;
long _ _accum ret;
ret=strtolaccum(nptr,endptr);
```

**Error conditions:**
If the converted result overflows or underflows, ERANGE is set to `errno`.
Remarks: This function is only valid when \texttt{cpu=sh2dsp, sh3dsp, sh4aldsp, and dspe} are specified.

The \texttt{strtolaccum} function converts data, from the first digit or the decimal point up to the character immediately before the character that does not comprise a fixed-point number, into a long \_\_accum type fixed-point number. However, if neither an exponent nor a decimal point is found in the data to be converted, the compiler assumes that the decimal point comes next to the last digit in the string. In the area pointed by \texttt{endptr}, the function sets up a pointer to the first character that does not compose a fixed-point number. If some characters that do not compose a fixed-point number come before numerals, the value of \texttt{nptr} is set. If \texttt{endptr} is NULL, nothing is set.

\begin{verbatim}
int rand (void)
Description: Generates a pseudo-random integer from 0 to RAND_MAX.
Header file: <stdlib.h>
Return values: Pseudo-random integer
Example:
#include <stdlib.h>
int ret;
ret=rand();
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
void srand (unsigned int seed)
Description: Sets an initial value of the pseudo-random number series generated by the \texttt{rand} function.
Header file: <stdlib.h>
Parameters: seed Initial value for pseudo-random number series generation
Example:
#include <stdlib.h>
unsigned int seed;
srand(seed);
\end{verbatim}

Remarks: The \texttt{srand} function sets up an initial value for pseudo-random number series generation of the \texttt{rand} function. If pseudo-random number series generation by
the `rand` function is repeated and if the same initial value is set up again by the `srand` function, the same pseudo-random number series is repeated.

If the `rand` function is called before the `srand` function, 1 is set as the initial value for the pseudo-random number generation.

```c
void *calloc (size_t nelem, size_t elsize)
```

**Description:** Allocates a storage area and clears all bits in the allocated storage area to 0.

**Header file:** `<stdlib.h>`

**Return values:**
- **Normal:** Starting address of an allocated storage area
- **Abnormal:** Storage allocation failed, or either of the parameter is 0: NULL

**Parameters:**
- `nelem` Number of elements
- `elsize` Number of bytes occupied by a single element

**Example:**
```c
#include <stdlib.h>
size_t nelem, elsize;
void *ret;
ret=calloc(nelem, elsize);
```

**Remarks:** The `calloc` function allocates as many storage units of size `elsize` as the number specified by `nelem`. The function also clears all the bits in the allocated storage area to 0.
void free (void *ptr)

Description: Releases specified storage area.

Header file: <stdlib.h>

Parameters: ptr Address of storage area to release

Example:
```c
#include <stdlib.h>
void *ptr;
free(ptr);
```

Remarks: The `free` function releases the storage area pointed by `ptr`, to enable reallocation for use. If `ptr` is NULL, the function carries out nothing. If the storage area attempted to release was not allocated by the `calloc`, `malloc`, or `realloc` function, or when the area has already been released by the `free` or `realloc` function, correct operation is not guaranteed. Operation result of reference to released storage area is also not guaranteed.

void *malloc (size_t size)

Description: Allocates a storage area.

Header file: <stdlib.h>

Return values: Normal: Starting address of allocated storage area

Abnormal: Storage allocation failed, or size is 0: NULL

Parameters: size Size in number of bytes of storage area to allocate

Example:
```c
#include <stdlib.h>
size_t size;
void *ret;
ret=malloc(size);
```

Remarks: The `malloc` function allocates a storage area of a specified number of bytes by size.
void *realloc (void *ptr, size_t size)

Description: Changes the size of a storage area to a specified value.

Header file: <stdlib.h>

Return values: Normal: Starting address of storage area whose size has been changed

Abnormal: Storage area allocation has failed, or size is 0: NULL

Parameters: 
ptr Starting address of storage area to be changed
size Size of storage area in number of bytes after the change

Example: 
#include <stdlib.h>
size_t size;
void *ptr, *ret;
ret=realloc(ptr, size);

Remarks: The realloc function changes the size of the storage area specified by ptr to the number of bytes specified by size. If the newly allocated storage area is smaller than the old one, the contents are left unchanged up to the size of the newly allocated area.

When ptr is not a pointer to the storage area allocated by the calloc, malloc, or realloc function or when ptr is a pointer to the storage area released by the free or realloc function, operation is not guaranteed.
`void __X *calloc__X (size_t nelem, size_t elsize)`

**Description:** Allocates an X storage area and clears all bits in the allocated X storage area to 0.

**Header file:** `<stdlib.h>`

**Return values:**
- Normal: Starting address of an allocated X storage area
- Abnormal: X storage allocation failed, or either of the parameter is 0: `NULL`

**Parameters:**
- `nelem` Number of elements
- `elsize` Number of bytes occupied by a single element

**Example:**
```
#include <stdlib.h>
size_t nelem, elsize;
void __X *ret;
ret=calloc__X(nelem,elsize);
```

**Remarks:** This function is only valid when `cpu=sh2dsp, sh3dsp, sh4aldsp, and dspe` are specified.
The `calloc__X` function allocates as many X storage units of size `elsize` as the number specified by `nelem`. The function also clears all the bits in the allocated X storage area to 0.
void free__X (void__X *ptr)

Description: Releases specified X storage area.

Header file: <stdlib.h>

Parameters: ptr Address of X storage area to release

Example:
#include <stdlib.h>
void__X *ptr;
free__X(ptr);

Remarks: This function is only valid when cpu=sh2dsp, sh3dsp, sh4aldsp, and dspe are specified.

The free__X function releases the X storage area pointed by ptr, to enable reallocation for use. If ptr is NULL, the function carries out nothing.

If the X storage area attempted to release was not allocated by the calloc__X, malloc__X, or realloc__X function, or when the area has already been released by the free__X or realloc__X function, operation is not guaranteed. Operation result of reference to a released X storage area is also not guaranteed.
void __X *malloc__X (size_t size)

Description: Allocates X storage area.

Header file: <stdlib.h>

Return values: Normal: Starting address of allocated X storage area

Abnormal: X storage allocation failed, or size is 0: NULL

Parameters: size Size in number of bytes of X storage area to allocate

Example: #include <stdlib.h>
size_t size;
void __X *ret;
ret=malloc__X(size);

Remarks: This function is only valid when cpu=sh2dsp, sh3dsp, sh4aldsp, and dspe are specified.

The malloc__X function allocates an X storage area of a specified number of bytes by size.
void __X *realloc__X (void __X *ptr, size_t size)

Description: Changes the size of an X storage area to a specified value.

Header file: <stdlib.h>

Return values: Normal: Starting address of X storage area whose size has been changed
Abnormal: X storage area allocation has failed, or size is 0: NULL

Parameters: ptr Starting address of X storage area to be changed
size Size of X storage area in number of bytes after the change

Example:
#include <stdlib.h>
size_t size;
void __X *ptr, *ret;
ret=realloc__X(ptr,size);

Remarks: This function is only valid when cpu=sh2dsp, sh3dsp, sh4aldsp, and dspe are specified.

The realloc__X function changes the size of the X storage area specified by ptr to the number of bytes specified by size. If the newly allocated X storage area is smaller than the old one, the contents are left unchanged up to the size of the newly allocated X area.

When ptr is not a pointer to the X storage area allocated by the calloc__X, malloc__X, or realloc__X function or when ptr is a pointer to the X storage area released by the free__X or realloc__X function, operation is not guaranteed.
void __Y *calloc__Y (size_t nelem, size_t elsize)

Description: Allocates a Y storage area and clears all bits in the allocated Y storage area to 0.

Header file: <stdlib.h>

Return values: Normal: Starting address of an allocated Y storage area
Abnormal: Y storage allocation failed, or either of the parameter is 0: NULL

Parameters: nelem Number of elements
elsize Number of bytes occupied by a single element

Example:
#include <stdlib.h>
size_t nelem, elsize;
void __Y *ret;
   ret=calloc__Y(nelem,elsize);

Remarks: This function is only valid when cpu=sh2dsp, sh3dsp, sh4aldsp, and dspe are specified.
The calloc__Y function allocates as many Y storage units of size elsize as the number specified by nelem. The function also clears all the bits in the allocated Y storage area to 0.
void free_Y (void *ptr)

Description: Releases specified Y storage area.

Header file: <stdlib.h>

Parameters: ptr Address of Y storage area to release

Example:
#include <stdlib.h>
void *ptr;
free_Y(ptr);

Remarks: This function is only valid when cpu=sh2dsp, sh3dsp, sh4aldsp, and dsc are specified.

The free_Y function releases the Y storage area pointed by ptr, to enable reallocation for use. If ptr is NULL, the function carries out nothing.

If the Y storage area attempted to release was not allocated by the calloc_Y, malloc_Y, or realloc_Y function, or when the area has already been released by the free_Y or realloc_Y function, operation is not guaranteed. Operation result of reference to a released Y storage area is also not guaranteed.
void _ _Y *malloc_ _Y (size_t size)

Description: Allocates Y storage area.

Header file: <stdlib.h>

Return values: Normal: Starting address of allocated Y storage area

Abnormal: Y storage allocation failed, or size is 0: NULL

Parameters: size Size in number of bytes of Y storage area to allocate

Example: #include <stdlib.h>
size_t size;
void _ _Y *ret;
ret=malloc_ _Y(size);

Remarks: This function is only valid when cpu=sh2dsp, sh3dsp, sh4aldsp, and dspe are specified.

The malloc_ _Y function allocates the Y storage area of a specified number of bytes by size.
void __Y *realloc__Y (void __Y *ptr, size_t size)

Description: Changes the size of a Y storage area to a specified value.

Header file: <stdlib.h>

Return values: Normal: Starting address of Y storage area whose size has been changed

Abnormal: Y storage area allocation has failed, or size is 0: NULL

Parameters: ptr Starting address of Y storage area to be changed

size Size of Y storage area in number of bytes after the change

Example: #include <stdlib.h>
size_t size;
void __Y *ptr, *ret;
ret=realloc__Y(ptr,size);

Remarks: This function is only valid when cpu=sh2dsp, sh3dsp, sh4aldsp, and dspe are specified.

The realloc__Y function changes the size of the Y storage area specified by ptr to the number of bytes specified by size. If the newly allocated Y storage area is smaller than the old one, the contents are left unchanged up to the size of the newly allocated Y area.

When ptr is not a pointer to the Y storage area allocated by the calloc__Y, malloc__Y, or realloc__Y function or when ptr is a pointer to the Y storage area released by the free__Y or realloc__Y function, operation is not guaranteed.
void *bsearch (const void *key, const void *base, size_t nmemb, size_t size,
        int (*compar)(const void *, const void *))

Description: Performs binary search.

Header file: <stdlib.h>

Return values: If a matching member is found: Pointer to the matching member
               If no matching member is found: NULL

Parameters:
key Pointer to data to find
base Pointer to a table to be searched
nmemb Number of members to be searched
size Number of bytes of a member to be searched
compar Pointer to a function that performs comparison

Example:
#include <stdlib.h>
const void *key, *base;
size_t nmemb, size;
int (*compar)(const void *, const void *);
void *ret;
    ret=bsearch(key, base, nmemb, size, compar);

Remarks: The bsearch function searches the table specified by base for a member that
         matches the data specified by key, by binary search method. The function that
         performs comparison should receive pointers p1 (first parameter) and p2
         (second parameter) to two data items to compare, and return the result
         complying with the specification below.

         If *p1 < *p2, return a negative value.
         If *p1 == *p2, return 0.
         If *p1 > *p2, return a positive value.

         Members to be searched must be placed in the ascending order.
void qsort (const void *base, size_t nmemb, size_t size,
    int (*compar)(const void *, const void *))

Description: Performs sorting.

Header file: <stdlib.h>

Parameters:
- base Pointer to the table to be sorted
- nmemb Number of members to sort
- size Number of bytes of a member to be sorted
- compar Pointer to a function to perform comparison

Example:
#include <stdlib.h>
const void *base;
size_t nmemb, size;
int (*compar)(const void *, const void *)
qsort(base, nmemb, size, compar);

Remarks: The qsort function sorts out data on the table pointed to by base. The data arrangement order is specified by the pointer to a function to perform comparison. This comparison function should receive pointers p1 (first parameter) and p2 (second parameter) as two data items to be compared, and return the result complying with the specification below.

- If *p1 < *p2, return a negative value.
- If *p1 == *p2, return 0.
- If *p1 > *p2, return a positive value.
int abs (int i)

Description: Calculates the absolute value of an int type integer.

Header file: <stdlib.h>

Return values: Absolute value of i

Parameters: i Integer to calculate the absolute value of

Example:
```
#include <stdlib.h>
int i, ret;
ret=abs(i);
```

Remarks: If the result cannot be expressed as an int type integer, correct operation is not guaranteed.

div_t div (int numer, int denom)

Description: Carries out division of int type integers and obtains the quotient and remainder.

Header file: <stdlib.h>

Return values: Quotient and remainder of division of numer by denom

Parameters: numer Dividend
denom Divisor

Example:
```
#include <stdlib.h>
int numer, denom;
div_t ret;
ret=div(numer, denom);
```
long labs (long j)

Description: Calculates the absolute value of a long type integer.

Header file: <stdlib.h>

Return values: Absolute value of \( j \)

Parameters: 

- \( j \) Integer to calculate the absolute value of

Example:
```
#include <stdlib.h>
long j;
long ret;
ret = labs(j);
```

Remarks: If the result cannot be expressed as a long type integer, correct operation is not guaranteed.

ldiv_t ldiv (long numer, long denom)

Description: Carries out division of long type integer and obtains the quotient and remainder.

Header file: <stdlib.h>

Return values: Quotient and remainder of division of \( \text{numer} \) by \( \text{denom} \)

Parameters: 

- \( \text{numer} \) Dividend
- \( \text{denom} \) Divisor

Example:
```
#include <stdlib.h>
long numer, denom;
ldiv_t ret;
ret = ldiv(numer, denom);
```
long long llabs (long long j)

Description: Calculates the absolute value of a long long type integer.

Header file: <stdlib.h>

Return values: Absolute value of j

Parameters: j Integer to calculate the absolute value of

Example:
```c
#include <stdlib.h>
long long j;
long long ret;
ret=llabs(j);
```

Remarks: If the result cannot be expressed as a long long type integer, correct operation is not guaranteed.

lldiv_t lldiv (long long numer, long long denom)

Description: Carries out division of long long type integers and obtains the quotient and remainder.

Header file: <stdlib.h>

Return values: Quotient and remainder of division of numer by denom

Parameters: numer Dividend
denom Divisor

Example:
```c
#include <stdlib.h>
long long numer, denom;
lldiv_t ret;
ret=lldiv(numer, denom);
```
<string.h>

Defines functions for manipulating character arrays.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>memcpy</td>
<td>Copies contents of a source storage area of a specified length to a destination storage area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>memcpy_ <em>X</em> _X</td>
<td>Copies contents of a source X storage area of a specified length to a destination X storage area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>memcpy_ <em>X</em> _Y</td>
<td>Copies contents of a source Y storage area of a specified length to a destination X storage area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>memcpy_ <em>Y</em> _X</td>
<td>Copies contents of a source X storage area of a specified length to a destination Y storage area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>memcpy_ <em>Y</em> _Y</td>
<td>Copies contents of a source Y storage area of a specified length to a destination Y storage area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>strcpy</td>
<td>Copies contents of a source string including the null character to a destination storage area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>strncpy</td>
<td>Copies a source string of a specified length to a destination storage area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>strcat</td>
<td>Concatenates a string after another string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>stncat</td>
<td>Concatenates a string of a specified length after another string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>memcmp</td>
<td>Compares two storage areas specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>strcmp</td>
<td>Compares two strings specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>strncmp</td>
<td>Compares two strings specified for a specified length.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>memchr</td>
<td>Searches a specified storage area for the first occurrence of a specified character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>strchr</td>
<td>Searches a specified string for the first occurrence of a specified character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>strcspn</td>
<td>Checks a specified string from the beginning and counts the number of consecutive characters at the beginning that are not included in another string specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>strpbrk</td>
<td>Searches a specified string for the first occurrence of any character that is included in another string specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>strrchr</td>
<td>Searches a specified string for the last occurrence of a specified character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>strspn</td>
<td>Checks a specified string from the beginning and counts the number of consecutive characters at the beginning that are included in another string specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Definition Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>strstr</td>
<td>Searches a specified string for the first occurrence of another string specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>strtok</td>
<td>Divides a specified string into some tokens.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>memset</td>
<td>Sets a specified character for a specified number of times at the beginning of a specified storage area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>strerror</td>
<td>Sets error messages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>strlen</td>
<td>Calculates the length of a string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>memmove</td>
<td>Copies the specified size of the contents of a source area to the destination storage area. If a part of the source storage area and a part of the destination storage area overlap, correct copy is performed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Implementation-Defined

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Compiler Specifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Error message returned by the strerror function</td>
<td>Refer to section 12.3, Standard Library Error Messages.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When using functions defined in this standard include file, note the following.

(1) On copying a string, if the destination area is smaller than the source area, correct operation is not guaranteed.

Example
```
char a[]="abc";
char b[3];
.
.
.
strcpy (b, a);
```

In the above example, size of array a (including the null character) is 4 bytes. Copying by `strcpy` overwrites data beyond the boundary of array b.
(2) On copying a string, if the source area overlaps the destination area, correct operation is not guaranteed.

Example

```c
int a[] = "a";
    :
    :
    strcpy(&a[1], a);
    :
```

In the above example, before the null character of the source is read, 'a' is written over the null character. Then the subsequent data after the source string is overwritten in succession.
void *memcpy (void *s1, const void *s2, size_t n)

Description: Copies contents of a copy source storage area of a specified length to a destination storage area.

Header file: <string.h>

Return values: s1 value

Parameters: s1 Pointer to destination storage area
s2 Pointer to source storage area
n Number of characters to be copied

Example:
#include <string.h>
void *ret, *s1;
const void *s2;
size_t n;
ret=memcpy(s1, s2, n);

void _ _X *memcpy_ _X_ _X (void _ _X *s1, const void _ _X *s2, size_t n)

Description: Copies contents of a copy source X storage area of a specified length to a destination X storage area.

Header file: <string.h>

Return values: s1 value

Parameters: s1 Pointer to destination X storage area
s2 Pointer to source X storage area
n Number of characters to be copied

Example:
#include <string.h>
void _ _X *ret, *s1;
const void _ _X *s2;
size_t n;
ret=memcpy_ _X_ _X(s1, s2, n);

Remarks: This function is only valid when cpu=sh2dsp, sh3dsp, sh4aldsp, and dspc are specified.
void __X *memcpy__X__Y (void __X *s1, const void __Y *s2, size_t n)

Description: Copies contents of a copy source Y storage area of a specified length to a destination X storage area.

Header file: <string.h>

Return values: s1 value

Parameters: s1 Pointer to destination X storage area
s2 Pointer to source Y storage area
n Number of characters to be copied

Example:
#include <string.h>
void __X *ret, *s1;
const void __Y *s2;
size_t n;
ret=memcpy__X__Y(s1,s2,n);

Remarks: This function is only valid when cpu=sh2dsp, sh3dsp, sh4aldsp, and dspe are specified.
void _ _Y *memcpy_ _Y_ _X (void _ _Y *s1, const void _ _X *s2, size_t n)

Description: Copies contents of a copy source X storage area of a specified length to a
destination Y storage area.

Header file: <string.h>

Return values: s1 value

Parameters: s1 Pointer to destination Y storage area
s2 Pointer to source X storage area
n Number of characters to be copied

Example: #include <string.h>
void _ _Y *ret, *s1;
const void _ _X *s2;
size_t n;
ret = memcpy_ _Y_ _X(s1, s2, n);

Remarks: This function is only valid when cpu=sh2dsp, sh3dsp, sh4aldsp, and dspe are
specified.
void __Y *memcpy__Y__Y (void __Y *s1, const void __Y *s2, size_t n)

Description: Copies contents of a copy source Y storage area of a specified length to a
destination Y storage area.

Header file: <string.h>

Return values: s1 value

Parameters: s1 Pointer to destination Y storage area
s2 Pointer to source Y storage area
n Number of characters to be copied

Example:
#include <string.h>
void __Y *ret, *s1;
const void __Y *s2;
size_t n;
    ret=memcpy__Y__Y(s1,s2,n);

Remarks: This function is only valid when cpu=sh2dsp, sh3dsp, sh4aldsp, and dspe are specified.

char *strcpy (char *s1, const char *s2)

Description: Copies contents of a source string including the null character to a destination
storage area.

Header file: <string.h>

Return values: s1 value

Parameters: s1 Pointer to destination storage area
s2 Pointer to source string

Example:
#include <string.h>
char *s1, *ret;
const char *s2;
    ret=strcpy(s1, s2);
char *strncpy (char *s1, const char *s2, size_t n)

Description: Copies a source string of a specified length to a destination storage area.

Header file: <string.h>

Return values: s1 value

Parameters:  
  s1 Pointer to destination storage area  
  s2 Pointer to source string  
  n Number of characters to be copied

Example:
```
#include <string.h>
char *s1, *ret;
const char *s2;
size_t n;
    ret=strncpy(s1, s2, n);
```

Remarks: The strncpy function copies up to n characters from the beginning of the string pointed by s2 to a storage area pointed by s1. If the length of the string specified by s2 is shorter than n characters, the function elongates the string to the length by padding with null characters.

If the length of the string specified by s2 is longer than n characters, the copied string in s1 storage area ends with a character other than the null character.
char *strcat (char *s1, const char *s2)

Description: Concatenates a string after another string.

Header file: <string.h>

Return values: s1 value

Parameters: s1 Pointer to the string after which another string is appended
s2 Pointer to the string to be added after the other string

Example: #include <string.h>
char *s1, *ret;
const char *s2;
ret=strcat(s1, s2);

Remarks: The strcat function concatenates the string specified by s2 at the end of another string specified by s1. The null character indicating the end of the s2 string is also copied. The null character at the end of the s1 string is deleted.

cchar *strncat (char *s1, const char *s2, size_t n)

Description: Concatenates a string of a specified length after another string.

Header file: <string.h>

Return values: s1 value

Parameters: s1 Pointer to the string after which another string is appended
s2 Pointer to the string to be appended after the other string
n Number of characters to concatenate

Example: #include <string.h>
char *s1, *ret;
const char *s2;
size_t n;
ret=strncat(s1, s2, n);

Remarks: The strncat function concatenates up to n characters from the beginning of the string specified by s2 at the end of another string specified by s1. The null character at the end of the s1 string is replaced by the first character of the s2 string. A null character is appended to the end of the concatenated string.
int memcmp (const void *s1, const void *s2, size_t n)

Description:   Compares two storage areas specified.

Header file:   <string.h>

Return values:   If storage area pointed by s1 > storage area pointed by s2:  Positive value
                 If storage area pointed by s1 == storage area pointed by s2:  0
                 If storage area pointed by s1 < storage area pointed by s2:  Negative value

Parameters:   s1   Pointer to the reference storage area to be compared
              s2   Pointer to the storage area to compare to the reference
              n    Number of characters to compare

Example:   #include <string.h>
            const void *s1, *s2;
            size_t n;
            int ret;
            ret=memcmp(s1, s2, n);

Remarks:   The memcmp function compares the contents of the first n characters in the
           storage areas pointed by s1 and s2. The rule of comparison are implementation-
           defined.
`int strcmp (const char *s1, const char *s2)`

**Description:** Compares two strings specified.

**Header file:** `<string.h>`

**Return values:**
- If string pointed by `s1` > string pointed by `s2`: Positive value
- If string pointed by `s1` == string pointed by `s2`: 0
- If string pointed by `s1` < string pointed by `s2`: Negative value

**Parameters:**
- `s1` Pointer to the reference string to be compared
- `s2` Pointer to the string to compare to the reference

**Example:**
```c
#include <string.h>
const char *s1, *s2;
int ret;
    ret = strcmp(s1, s2);
```

**Remarks:** The `strcmp` function compares the contents of the strings pointed by `s1` and `s2`, and sets up the comparison result as a return value. The rule of comparison are implementation-defined.
int strncmp (const char *s1, const char *s2, size_t n)

Description: Compares two strings specified up to a specified length.

Header file: <string.h>

Return values: If string pointed by \texttt{s1} > string pointed by \texttt{s2}: Positive value
If string pointed by \texttt{s1} == string pointed by \texttt{s2}: 0
If string pointed by \texttt{s1} < string pointed by \texttt{s2}: Negative value

Parameters: \texttt{s1} Pointer to the reference string to be compared
\texttt{s2} Pointer to the string to compare to the reference
\texttt{n} Maximum number of characters to compare

Example:

```c
#include <string.h>
const char *s1, *s2;
size_t n;
int ret;
ret=strncmp(s1, s2, n);
```

Remarks: The \texttt{strncpy} function compares the contents of the strings pointed by \texttt{s1} and \texttt{s2}, up to \texttt{n} characters. The rule of comparison are implementation-defined.
void *memchr (const void *s, int c, size_t n)

Description: Searches a specified storage area for the first occurrence of a specified character.

Header file: <string.h>

Return values: If the character is found: Pointer to the found character
If the character is not found: NULL

Parameters: s Pointer to the storage area to be searched
             c Character to search for
             n Number of characters to search

Example:
#include <string.h>
const void *s;
int c;
size_t n;
void *ret;
    ret=memchr(s, c, n);

Remarks: The memchr function searches the storage area specified by s from the
beginning up to n characters, looking for the first occurrence of the character
specified as c. If the c character is found, the function returns the pointer to the
found character.
char *strchr (const char *s, int c)

Description: Searches a specified string for the first occurrence of a specified character.

Header file: <string.h>

Return values: If the character is found: Pointer to the found character
If the character is not found: NULL

Parameters: s Pointer to the string to search
c Character to search for

Example: #include <string.h>
const char *s;
int c;
char *ret;
ret=strchr(s, c);

Remarks: The strchr function searches the string specified by s looking for the first occurrence of the character specified as c. If the c character is found, the function returns the pointer to the found character.

The null character at the end of the s string is included in the search object.
size_t strcspn (const char *s1, const char *s2)

Description: Checks a specified string from the beginning and counts the number of consecutive characters at the beginning that are not included in another string specified.

Header file: <string.h>

Return values: Number of characters at the beginning of the s1 string that are not included in the s2 string

Parameters: s1 Pointer to the string to be checked
s2 Pointer to the string used to check s1

Example:
```c
#include <string.h>
const char *s1, *s2;
size_t ret;
ret=strcspn(s1, s2);
```

Remarks: The strcspn function checks from the beginning of the string specified by s1, and counts the number of consecutive characters that are not included in another string specified by s2, and returns that length.

The null character at the end of the s2 string is not taken as a part of the s2 string.
char *strpbrk (const char *s1, const char *s2)

Description: Searches a specified string for the first occurrence of the character that is included in another string specified.

Header file: <string.h>

Return values: If the character is found: Pointer to the found character If the character is not found: NULL

Parameters: s1 Pointer to the string to search s2 Pointer to the string that indicates the characters to search s1 for

Example: #include <string.h>
const char *s1, *s2;
char *ret;
ret=strpbrk(s1, s2);

Remarks: The strpbrk function searches the string specified by s1 looking for the first occurrence of any character included in the string specified by s2. If the searched character is found, the function returns the pointer to the first occurrence.
char *strrchr (const char *s, int c)

Description: Searches a specified string for the last occurrence of a specified character.

Header file: <string.h>

Return values: If the character is found: Pointer to the found character
If the character is not found: NULL

Parameters: s Pointer to the string to be searched
c Character to search for

Example: #include <string.h>
const char *s;
int c;
char *ret;
ret=strrchr(s, c);

Remarks: The strrchr function searches the string specified by s looking for the last occurrence of the character specified by c. If the c character is found, the function returns the pointer to the last occurrence of that character.

The null character at the end of the s string is included in the search objective.
size_t strspn (const char *s1, const char *s2)

Description: Checks a specified string from the beginning and counts the number of consecutive characters at the beginning that are included in another string specified.

Header file: <string.h>

Return values: Number of characters at the beginning of the s1 string that are included in the s2 string

Parameters: s1 Pointer to the string to be checked
s2 Pointer to the string used to check s1

Example:

```c
#include <string.h>
const char *s1, *s2;
size_t ret;
ret=strspn(s1, s2);
```

Remarks: The strspn function checks from the beginning of the string specified by s1, and counts the number of consecutive characters that are included in another string specified by s2, and returns that length.
char *strstr (const char *s1, const char *s2)

Description: Searches a specified string for the first occurrence of another string specified.

Header file: <string.h>

Return values: If the string is found: Pointer to the found string
If the string is not found: NULL

Parameters: s1 Pointer to the string to be searched
s2 Pointer to the string to search for

Example:
#include <string.h>
const char *s1, *s2;
char *ret;
    ret=strstr(s1, s2);

Remarks: The strstr function searches the string specified by s1 looking for the first occurrence of another string specified by s2, and returns the pointer to the first occurrence.
char *strtok (char *s1, const char *s2)

Description: Divides a specified string into some tokens.

Header file: <string.h>

Return values: If division into tokens is successful: Pointer to the first token divided
                If division into tokens is unsuccessful: NULL

Parameters:

s1 Pointer to the string to divide into some tokens
s2 Pointer to the string representing string dividing characters

Example:

#include <string.h>
char *s1, *ret;
const char *s2;
ret=strtok(s1, s2);

Remarks: The strtok function should be repeatedly called to divide a string.

(1) First call
The string pointed by s1 is divided at a character included in the string pointed by s2. If a token has been separated, the function returns a pointer to the beginning of that token. Otherwise, the function returns NULL.

(2) Second and subsequent calls
Starting from the next character separated before as the token, the function repeats division at a character included in the string pointed by s2. If a token has been separated, the function returns a pointer to the beginning of that token. Otherwise, the function returns NULL.

At the second and subsequent calls, specify NULL as the first parameter.

The string pointed by s2 can be changed at each call.

The null character is appended to the end of a separated token.

An example of use of the strtok function is shown below.
Example
1  #include <string.h>
2  static char s1[]="a@b, @c/@d";
3  char *ret;
4
5  ret = strtok(s1, "@");
6  ret = strtok(NULL, ",@" );
7  ret = strtok(NULL, "/@" );
8  ret = strtok(NULL, "@" );

Explanation:

The above example program uses the `strtok` function to divide string "a@b, @c/@d" into tokens a, b, c, and d.

The second line specifies string "a@b, @c/@d" as an initial value for string `s1`.

The fifth line calls the `strtok` function to divide tokens using '@' as the delimiter. As a result, a pointer to character 'a' is returned, and the null character is embedded at '@,' the first delimiter after character 'a.' Thus string 'a' has been separated.

Specify NULL for the first parameter to consecutively separate tokens from the same string, and repeat calling the `strtok` function.

Consequently, the function separates strings 'b,' 'c,' and 'd.'
void *memset (void *s, int c, size_t n)

Description: Sets a specified character for a specified number of times at the beginning of a specified storage area.

Header file: <string.h>

Return values: Value of s

Parameters:  
s Pointer to storage area to set characters in  
c Character to be set  
n Number of characters to be set

Example:  
#include <string.h>
void *s, *ret;
int c;
size_t n;
ret=memset(s, c, n);

Remarks: The memset function sets the character specified by c for a number of times specified by n to the storage area specified by s.
char *strerror (int s)

Description: Returns an error message corresponding to a specified error number.

Header file: <string.h>

Return values: Pointer to the error message (string) corresponding to the specified error number

Parameters: s Error number

Example:
```c
#include <string.h>
char *ret;
int s;
ret=strerror(s);
```

Remarks: The `strerror` function receives an error number specified by `s` and returns an error message corresponding to the number. Contents of error messages are implementation-defined. If the returned error message is modified, correct operation is not guaranteed.

size_t strlen (const char *s)

Description: Calculates the length of a string.

Header file: <string.h>

Return values: Number of characters of the string

Parameters: s Pointer to the string to check the length of

Example:
```c
#include <string.h>
const char *s;
size_t ret;
ret=strlen(s);
```

Remarks: The null character at the end of the `s` string is excluded from the string length.
void *memmove (void *s1, const void *s2, size_t n)

Description: Copies the specified size of the contents of a source area to the destination storage area. If part of the source storage area and the destination storage area overlaps, data is copied to the destination storage area before the overlapped source storage area is overwritten. Therefore, correct copy is enabled.

Header file: <string.h>

Return values: Value of s1

Parameters: s1 Pointer to the destination storage area
            s2 Pointer to the source storage area
            n Number of characters to be copied

Example:
#include <string.h>
void *ret, *s1
const void *s2;
size_t n;
    ret=memmove(s1, s2, n);
10.4.2 EC++ Class Libraries

(1) Overview of Libraries

This section describes the specifications of the EC++ class libraries, which can be used as standard libraries in C++ programs. This section gives an overview of the library configuration, and describes the layout and the terms used in this library function description.

- Library Types
  
  Table 10.49 shows the various library types and the corresponding standard include files.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Library Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Standard Include Files</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stream input/output class</td>
<td>Performs input/output processing.</td>
<td><code>&lt;ios&gt;</code>, <code>&lt;streambuf&gt;</code>, <code>&lt;iostream&gt;</code>, <code>&lt;iomanip&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memory management</td>
<td>Performs memory allocation and deallocation</td>
<td><code>&lt;new&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complex number calculation</td>
<td>Performs complex number calculation</td>
<td><code>&lt;complex&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>String manipulation</td>
<td>Performs string manipulation</td>
<td><code>&lt;string&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2) Stream Input/Output Class Library

The header files for stream input/output class libraries are as follows.

1. `<ios>`
   Defines data members and function members that specify input/output formats and manage the input/output states. The `<ios>` header file also defines the `Init` and `ios_base` classes.

2. `<streambuf>`
   Defines functions for the stream buffer.

3. `<istream>`
   Defines input functions from the input stream.

4. `<ostream>`
   Defines output functions to the output stream.

5. `<iomanip>`
   Defines input/output functions.
6. `<iomanip>`

Defines manipulators with parameters.

The following shows the inheritance relation of the above classes. An arrow (->) indicates that a derived class refers to a base class. The streambuf class has no inheritance relation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>streamoff</td>
<td>Defined as long type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>streamsize</td>
<td>Defined as size_t type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int_type</td>
<td>Defined as int type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pos_type</td>
<td>Defined as long type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>off_type</td>
<td>Defined as long type.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(a) ios_base::Init Class

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>init_cnt</td>
<td>Static data member that counts the number of stream input/output objects. The data must be initialized to 0 by a low-level interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Init ()</td>
<td>Constructor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~Init ()</td>
<td>Destructor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. ios_base::Init::Init ()
   Constructor of class Init.
   Increments init_cnt.

2. ios_base::Init::~Init ()
   Destructor of class Init.
   Decrements init_cnt.
(b) *ios_base* Class

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>fmtflags</td>
<td>Type that indicates the format control information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iostate</td>
<td>Type that indicates the stream buffer input/output state</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>openmode</td>
<td>Type that indicates the open mode of the file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>seekdir</td>
<td>Type that indicates the seek state of the stream buffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>fmtfl</td>
<td>Format flag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>wide</td>
<td>Field width</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>prec</td>
<td>Precision (number of decimal point digits) at output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fillch</td>
<td>Fill character</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>void _ec2p_init_base()</td>
<td>Initializes the base class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void _ec2p_copy_base( ios_base&amp; ios_base_dt)</td>
<td>Copies ios_base_dt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ios_base()</td>
<td>Constructor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~ios_base()</td>
<td>Destructor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fmtflags flags() const</td>
<td>References the format flag (fmtfl)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fmtflags flags(fmtflags fmtflg)</td>
<td>Sets fmtflg&amp;format flag (fmtfl) to the format flag (fmtfl)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fmtflags setf(fmtflags fmtflg)</td>
<td>Sets fmtflg to format flag (fmtfl)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fmtflags setf( fmtflags fmtflg, fmtflags mask)</td>
<td>Sets mask&amp;fmtflg to the format flag (fmtfl)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void unsetf(fmtflags mask)</td>
<td>Sets ~mask &amp;format flag (fmtfl) to the format flag (fmtfl)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>char fill() const</td>
<td>Reads the fill character (fillch)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>char fill(char ch)</td>
<td>Sets ch as the fill character (fillch)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int precision() const</td>
<td>Reads the precision (prec)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>streamsize precision( streamsize preci)</td>
<td>Sets preci as precision (prec)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>streamsize width() const</td>
<td>Reads the field width (wide)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>streamsize width(streamsize wd)</td>
<td>Sets wd as field width (wide)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. `ios_base::fmtflags`  
   Defines the format control information relating to input/output processing. 
   The definition for each bit mask of `fmtflags` is as follows.

   ```
   const ios_base::fmtflags ios_base::boolalpha = 0x0000;
   const ios_base::fmtflags ios_base::skipws = 0x0001;
   const ios_base::fmtflags ios_base::unitbuf = 0x0002;
   const ios_base::fmtflags ios_base::uppercase = 0x0004;
   const ios_base::fmtflags ios_base::showbase = 0x0008;
   const ios_base::fmtflags ios_base::showpoint = 0x0010;
   const ios_base::fmtflags ios_base::showpos = 0x0020;
   const ios_base::fmtflags ios_base::left = 0x0040;
   const ios_base::fmtflags ios_base::right = 0x0080;
   const ios_base::fmtflags ios_base::internal = 0x0100;
   const ios_base::fmtflags ios_base::adjustfield = 0x01c0;
   const ios_base::fmtflags ios_base::dec = 0x0200;
   const ios_base::fmtflags ios_base::oct = 0x0400;
   const ios_base::fmtflags ios_base::hex = 0x0800;
   const ios_base::fmtflags ios_base::basefield = 0x0e00;
   const ios_base::fmtflags ios_base::scientific = 0x1000;
   const ios_base::fmtflags ios_base::fixed = 0x2000;
   const ios_base::fmtflags ios_base::floatfield = 0x3000;
   const ios_base::fmtflags ios_base::fmtmask = 0x3fff;
   ```

2. `ios_base::iostate`  
   Defines the input/output state of the stream buffer. 
   The definition for each bit mask of iostate is as follows.

   ```
   const ios_base::iostate ios_base::goodbit = 0x0;
   const ios_base::iostate ios_base::eofbit = 0x1;
   const ios_base::iostate ios_base::failbit = 0x2;
   const ios_base::iostate ios_base::badbit = 0x4;
   const ios_base::iostate ios_base::statemask = 0x7;
   ```
3. `ios_base::openmode`  
   Defines open mode of the file.  
   The definition for each bit mask of `openmode` is as follows.
   
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><code>openmode</code></th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>ios_base::in</code></td>
<td>= 0x01; Opens the input file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ios_base::out</code></td>
<td>= 0x02; Opens the output file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ios_base::ate</code></td>
<td>= 0x04; Seeks for eof only once after the file has been opened.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ios_base::app</code></td>
<td>= 0x08; Seeks for eof each time the file is written to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ios_base::trunc</code></td>
<td>= 0x10; Opens the file in overwrite mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ios_base::binary</code></td>
<td>= 0x20; Opens the file in binary mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. `ios_base::seekdir`  
   Defines the seek state of the stream buffer.  
   Determines the position to continue the input/output of data in a string literal.  
   The definition for each bit mask of `seekdir` is as follows.
   
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><code>seekdir</code></th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>ios_base::beg</code></td>
<td>= 0x0;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ios_base::cur</code></td>
<td>= 0x1;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ios_base::end</code></td>
<td>= 0x2;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. `void ios_base::_ec2p_init_base()`  
   The initial settings are as follows.  
   `fmtfl = skipws | dec;`  
   `wide = 0;`  
   `prec = 6;`  
   `fillch = ‘ ’;`  

6. `void ios_base::_ec2p_copy_base(ios_base& ios_base_dt)`  
   Copies `ios_base_dt`.  

7. `ios_base::ios_base()`  
   Constructor of class `ios_base`.  
   Calls `Init::Init()`.

8. `ios_base::~ios_base()`  
   Destructor of class `ios_base`.  

9. `ios_base::fmtflags ios_base::flags() const`
   Reads format flag (fmtfl).
   Return value: Format flag (fmtfl)

10. `ios_base::fmtflags ios_base::flags(fmtflags fmtflg)`
    Sets fmtflg&format flag (fmtfl) to the format flag (fmtfl).
    Return value: Format flag (fmtfl) before setting

11. `ios_base::fmtflags ios_base::setf(fmtflags fmtflg)`
    Sets fmtflg to format flag (fmtfl).
    Return value: Format flag (fmtfl) before setting

12. `ios_base::fmtflags ios_base::setf(fmtflags fmtflg, fmtflags mask)`
    Sets ~mask&format flag (fmtfl) to the format flag (fmtfl).
    Return value: Format flag (fmtfl) before setting.

13. `void ios_base::unsetf(fmtflags mask)`
    Sets the result of bitwise AND of format flag (fmtfl) and ~mask to the format flag (fmtfl).

14. `char ios_base::fill() const`
    Reads fill character (fillch).
    Return value: Fill character (fillch)

15. `char ios_base::fill(char ch)`
    Sets ch as fill character (fillch).
    Return value: Fill character (fillch) before setting

16. `int ios_base::precision() const`
    Reads precision (prec).
    Return value: Precision (prec)

17. `streamsize ios_base::precision(streamsize preci)`
    Sets preci as precision (prec).
    Return value: Precision (prec) before setting

18. `streamsize ios_base::width() const`
    References field width (wide).
    Return value: Field width (wide)
19. `streamsize ios_base::width (streamsize wd)`
   Sets `wd` as field width (`wide`).
   Return value: Field width (`wide`) before setting.
(c) `ios` Class

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>sb</td>
<td>Pointer to the streambuf object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tiestr</td>
<td>Pointer to the ostream object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>state</td>
<td>State flag of streambuf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>ios()</td>
<td>Constructor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ios(streambuf* sbptr)</td>
<td>Performs initial setting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void init(streambuf* sbptr)</td>
<td>Destructor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>virtual ~ios()</td>
<td>Destructor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>operator void*() const</td>
<td>Tests whether an error has been generated (state!(badbit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bool operator!() const</td>
<td>Tests whether an error has been generated (state&amp;(badbit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iostate rdstate() const</td>
<td>Reads the state flag (state)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void clear(iostate st=goodbit)</td>
<td>Clears the state flag (state) except for the specified state (st)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void setstate(iostate st)</td>
<td>Specifies st as the state flag (state)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bool good() const</td>
<td>Tests whether an error has been generated (state==goodbit)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bool eof() const</td>
<td>Tests for the end of an input stream (state&amp;eofbit)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bool bad() const</td>
<td>Tests whether an error has been generated (state&amp;eofbit)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bool fail() const</td>
<td>Tests whether input text matches the requested pattern (state&amp;(badbit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ostream* tie() const</td>
<td>Reads the pointer to the ostream object (tiestr)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ostream* tie(ostream* tstrptr)</td>
<td>Specifies tstrptr as the pointer to the ostream object (tiestr)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>streambuf* rdbuf() const</td>
<td>References the pointer to the stream buffer (sb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>streambuf* rdbuf(streambuf* sbptr)</td>
<td>Specifies sbptr as the pointer to the stream buffer (sb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ios&amp; copyfmt(const ios&amp; rhs)</td>
<td>Copies the state flag (state) of rhs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. ios::ios()
   Constructor of class ios.
   Calls init(0) and specifies the initial value in the member object.

2. ios::ios(streambuf* sbptr)
   Constructor of class ios.
   Calls init(sbptr) and specifies the initial value in the member object.

3. void ios::init(streambuf* sbptr)
   Specifies sbptr to sb.
   Specifies state and tiestr to 0.

4. virtual ios::~ios()
   Destructor of class ios.

5. ios::operator void*() const
   Tests whether an error has been generated (!state&(badbit | failbit)).
   Return value: An error has been generated: false
                No error has been generated: true

6. bool ios::operator!() const
   Tests whether an error has been generated (state&(badbit | failbit)).
   Return value: An error has been generated: true
                No error has been generated: false

7. iostate ios::rdstate() const
   References the state flag (state).
   Return value: State flag (state)

8. void ios::clear(iostate st=goodbit)
   Clears the state flag (state) except for the specified state (st).
   If the pointer to the streambuf object (sb) is 0, badbit is specified to the state flag (state).

9. void ios::setstate(iostate st)
   Specifies st to the state flag (state).
10. bool ios::good() const
    Tests whether an error has been generated (state==goodbit).
    Return value: An error has been generated: false
                  No error has been generated: true

11. bool ios::eof() const
    Tests for the end of the input stream (state&eofbit).
    Return value: End of the input stream has been reached: true
                  End of the input stream has not been reached: false

12. bool ios::bad() const
    Tests whether an error has been generated (state&badbit).
    Return value: An error has been generated: true
                  No error has been generated: false

13. bool ios::fail() const
    Tests whether the input text matches the requested pattern (state&(badbit | failbit)).
    Return value: Does not match the requested pattern: true
                  Matches the requested pattern: false

14. ostream* ios::tie() const
    Reads the pointer (tiestr) to the ostream object.
    Return value: Pointer to the ostream object (tiestr)

15. ostream* ios::tie (ostream* tstrptr)
    Specifies tstrptr as the pointer (tiestr) to the ostream object.
    Return value: Pointer to the ostream object (tiestr) before setting

16. streambuf* ios::rdbuf() const
    Reads the pointer to the streambuf object (sb).
    Return value: Pointer to the streambuf object (sb)

17. streambuf* ios::rdbuf (streambuf* sbptr)
    Specifies sbptr as the pointer to the streambuf object (sb).
    Return value: Pointer to the streambuf object (sb) before setting

18. ios & ios::copyfmt(const ios& rhs)
    Copies the state flag (state) of rhs.
    Return value: *this
### (d) ios Class Manipulators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Function</strong></td>
<td>ios_base&amp; boolalpha(ios_base&amp; str)</td>
<td>Specifies bool type format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ios_base&amp; noboolalpha(ios_base&amp; str)</td>
<td>Clears bool type format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ios_base&amp; showbase(ios_base&amp; str)</td>
<td>Specifies the radix display prefix mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ios_base&amp; noshowbase(ios_base&amp; str)</td>
<td>Clears the radix display prefix mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ios_base&amp; showpoint(ios_base&amp; str)</td>
<td>Specifies the decimal-point generation mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ios_base&amp; noshowpoint(ios_base&amp; str)</td>
<td>Clears the decimal-point generation mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ios_base&amp; showpos(ios_base&amp; str)</td>
<td>Specifies the + sign generation mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ios_base&amp; noshowpos(ios_base&amp; str)</td>
<td>Clears the + sign generation mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ios_base&amp; skipws(ios_base&amp; str)</td>
<td>Specifies the space skipping mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ios_base&amp; noskipws(ios_base&amp; str)</td>
<td>Clears the space skipping mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ios_base&amp; uppercase(ios_base&amp; str)</td>
<td>Specifies the uppercase letter conversion mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ios_base&amp; nouppercase(ios_base&amp; str)</td>
<td>Clears the uppercase letter conversion mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ios_base&amp; internal(ios_base&amp; str)</td>
<td>Specifies the internal fill mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ios_base&amp; left(ios_base&amp; str)</td>
<td>Clears the left side fill mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ios_base&amp; right(ios_base&amp; str)</td>
<td>Clears the right side fill mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ios_base&amp; dec(ios_base&amp; str)</td>
<td>Specifies the decimal mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ios_base&amp; hex(ios_base&amp; str)</td>
<td>Specifies the hexadecimal mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ios_base&amp; oct(ios_base&amp; str)</td>
<td>Specifies the octal mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ios_base&amp; fixed(ios_base&amp; str)</td>
<td>Specifies the fixed-point output mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ios_base&amp; scientific(ios_base&amp; str)</td>
<td>Specifies the scientific description mode</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **ios_base& boolalpha(ios_base& str)**  
   Specifies bool type format.  
   Return value: str

2. **ios_base& noboolalpha(ios_base& str)**  
   Clears bool type format.  
   Return value: str
3. `ios_base& showbase(ios_base& str)`
   Specifies an output mode of prefixing a radix at the beginning of data.
   For a hexadecimal, 0x is prefixed.
   For a decimal, nothing is prefixed. For an octal, 0 is prefixed.
   Return value: str

4. `ios_base& noshowbase(ios_base& str)`
   Clears the output mode of prefixing a radix at the beginning of data.
   Return value: str

5. `ios_base& showpoint(ios_base& str)`
   Specifies the output mode of showing decimal point.
   If no precision is specified, six decimal-point (fraction) digits are displayed.
   Return value: str

6. `ios_base& noshowpoint(ios_base& str)`
   Clears the output mode of showing decimal point.
   Return value: str

7. `ios_base& showpos(ios_base& str)`
   Specifies the output mode of generating the + sign (adds a + sign to a positive number).
   Return value: str

8. `ios_base& noshowpos(ios_base& str)`
   Clears the output mode of generating the + sign.
   Return value: str

9. `ios_base& skipws(ios_base& str)`
   Specifies the input mode of skipping spaces (skips consecutive spaces).
   Return value: str

10. `ios_base& noskipws (ios_base& str)`
    Clears the input mode of skipping spaces.
    Return value: str
11. `ios_base& uppercase(ios_base& str)`
   Specifies the output mode of converting letters to uppcercases.
   In hexadecimal, the radix will be the uppercase letters 0X, and the numeric value letters will be
   uppercase letters. The exponential representation of a floating-point value will also use
   uppercase letter E.
   Return value: str

12. `ios_base& nouppercase(ios_base& str)`
    Clears the output mode of converting letters to uppcercases.
    Return value: str

13. `ios_base& internal(ios_base& str)`
    When data is output in the field width (wide) range, it is output in the order of
    1. Sign and radix
    2. Fill character (fill)
    3. Numeric value
    Return value: str

14. `ios_base& left(ios_base& str)`
    When data is output in the field width (wide) range, it is aligned to the left.
    Return value: str

15. `ios_base& right(ios_base& str)`
    When data is output in the field width (wide) range, it is aligned to the right.
    Return value: str

16. `ios_base& dec(ios_base& str)`
    Specifies the conversion radix to the decimal mode.
    Return value: str

17. `ios_base& hex(ios_base& str)`
    Specifies the conversion radix to the hexadecimal mode.
    Return value: str

18. `ios_base& oct(ios_base& str)`
    Specifies the conversion radix to the octal mode.
    Return value: str
19. `ios_base& fixed(ios_base& str)`
   Specifies the fixed-point output mode.
   Return value: `str`

20. `ios_base& scientific(ios_base& str)`
    Specifies the scientific description mode (exponential description).
    Return value: `str`
### (e) streambuf Class

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Constant</td>
<td><code>eof</code></td>
<td>Indicates the end of file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Variable</td>
<td><code>_B_cnt_ptr</code></td>
<td>Pointer to the length of valid data of the buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>_B_beg_ptr</code></td>
<td>Pointer to the base pointer of the buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>_B_len_ptr</code></td>
<td>Pointer to the length of the buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>_B_next_ptr</code></td>
<td>Pointer to the next position of the buffer from which data is to be read.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>_B_end_ptr</code></td>
<td>Pointer to the end position of the buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>_B_beg_pptr</code></td>
<td>Pointer to the start position of the control buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>_B_next_pptr</code></td>
<td>Pointer to the next position of the buffer from which to read data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>_C_flg_ptr</code></td>
<td>Pointer to the input/output control flag of the file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td><code>char* _ec2p_getflag() const</code></td>
<td>Reads the pointer for file input/output control flag.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>char*&amp; _ec2p_gnptr()</code></td>
<td>Reads the pointer to the next position of the buffer from which data is to be read.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>char*&amp; _ec2p_pnptr()</code></td>
<td>Reads the pointer to the next position of the buffer where data is to be written.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>void _ec2p_bcntplus()</code></td>
<td>Increments the valid data length of the buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>void _ec2p_bcntminus()</code></td>
<td>Decrements the valid data length of the buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>void _ec2p_setbPtr(char** begptr, char** curptr, long* cntptr, long* lenptr, char* flgptr)</code></td>
<td>Sets the pointers of streambuf.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>streambuf()</td>
<td>Constructor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>virtual ~streambuf()</td>
<td>Destructor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>streambuf* pubsetbuf(char* s, streamsize n)</td>
<td>Reserves buffer for stream input/output. This function calls setbuf(s,n)(^1).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pos_type pubseekoff(off_type off, ios_base::seekdir way, ios_base::openmode which=ios_base::in</td>
<td>Moves the position to read or write data in the input/output stream by using the method specified by way. This function calls seekoff(off,way,which)(^1).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) This notation means that the function is not part of the standard library but is provided by the compiler.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>pos_type pubseekpos(pos_type sp, ios_base::openmode which=ios_base::in</td>
<td>Calculates the offset from the beginning of the stream to the current position. This function calls seekpos(sp,which)(^1).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ios_base::out)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int pubsync()</td>
<td>Flushes the output stream. This function calls sync()(^1).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>streamsize in_avail()</td>
<td>Calculates the offset from the end of the input stream to the current position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int_type snextc()</td>
<td>Reads the next character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int_type sbumpc()</td>
<td>Reads one character and sets the pointer to the next character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int_type sgetc()</td>
<td>Reads one character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int sgetn(char* s, streamsize n)</td>
<td>Reads n characters and sets them in the memory area specified by s.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int_type sputbackc(char c)</td>
<td>Puts back the read position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int sungetc()</td>
<td>Puts back the read position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int sputc(char c)</td>
<td>Inserts character c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int sputn(const char* s, streamsize n)</td>
<td>Inserts n characters at the position pointed to by s.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>char* eback() const</td>
<td>Reads the start pointer of the input stream.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>char* gptr() const</td>
<td>Reads the next pointer of the input stream.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>char* egptr() const</td>
<td>Reads the end pointer of the input stream.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void gbump(int n)</td>
<td>Moves the next pointer of the input stream for n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void setg(char* gbeg, char* gnext, char* gend)</td>
<td>Assigns each pointer of the input stream.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>char* pbase() const</td>
<td>Calculates the start pointer of the output stream.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>char* pptr() const</td>
<td>Calculates the next pointer of the output stream.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>char* ep.ptr() const</td>
<td>Calculates the end pointer of the output stream.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Definition Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>void pbump( int n)</td>
<td>Moves the next pointer of the output stream by n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void setp(char* pbeg, char* pend)</td>
<td>Assigns each pointer of the output stream.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>virtual streambuf* setbuf(char* s, streamsize n)</td>
<td>For each derived class, a defined operation is executed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>virtual pos_type seekoff( off_type off, ios_base::seekdir way, ios_base::openmode=(ios_base::openmode) (ios_base::in</td>
<td>ios_base::out))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>virtual pos_type seekpos( pos_type sp, ios_base::openmode=(ios_base::openmode) (ios_base::in</td>
<td>ios_base::out))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>virtual int sync()</td>
<td>Flushes the output stream.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>virtual int showmany()</td>
<td>Calculates the number of valid characters in the input stream.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>virtual streamsize xsgetn(char* s, streamsize n)</td>
<td>Reads n characters and sets them in the memory area pointed to by s.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>virtual int_type underflow()</td>
<td>Reads one character without moving the stream position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>virtual int_type uflow()</td>
<td>Reads one character of the next pointer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>virtual int_type pbackfail(int type c = eof)</td>
<td>Puts back the character specified by c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>virtual streamsize xsputn(const char* s, streamsize n)</td>
<td>Inserts n characters in the position pointed to by s.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>virtual int_type overflow(int type c = eof)</td>
<td>Inserts character c in the output stream.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: 1. This class does not define the processing.
1. `streambuf::streambuf()`  
   Constructor.  
   The initial settings are as follows:  
   
   ```
   _B_cnt_ptr = B_beg_ptr = B_next_ptr = B_end_ptr = C_flg_ptr = _B_len_ptr = 0
   B_beg_pptr = &B_beg_ptr
   B_next_pptr = &B_next_ptr
   ```

2. `virtual streambuf::~streambuf()`  
   Destructor.

3. `streambuf* streambuf::pubsetbuf(char* s, streamsize n)`  
   Reserves the buffer for stream input/output.  
   This function calls `setbuf(s,n)`.
   Return value: `setbuf(s,n)`

4. `pos_type streambuf::pubseekoff(off_type off, ios_base::seekdir way, ios_base::openmode which=(ios_base::openmode)(ios_base::in|ios_base::out))`  
   Moves the read or write position for the input/output stream by using the method specified by way.  
   This function calls `seekoff(off,way,which)`.
   Return value: The stream position newly specified

5. `pos_type streambuf::pubseekpos(pos_type sp, ios_base::openmode which=(ios_base::openmode)(ios_base::in | ios_base::out))`  
   Calculates the offset from the beginning of the stream to the current position.
   Moves the current stream pointer by the amount specified by `sp`.
   This function calls `seekpos(sp,which)`.
   Return value: The offset from the beginning of the stream

6. `int streambuf::pubsync()`  
   Flushes the output stream.
   This function calls `sync()`.
   Return value: 0

7. `streamsize streambuf::in_avail()`  
   Calculates the offset from the end of the input stream to the current position.
   Return value: If the position where data is read is valid: The offset from the end of the stream to the current position.
   If the position where data is read is invalid: 0 (`showmanyc()` is called)
8. int_type streambuf::snextc()
   Reads one character. If the character read is not \texttt{eof}, the next character is read.
   Return value: If the characters read is not \texttt{eof}: The character read
   If the characters read is \texttt{eof}: \texttt{eof}

9. int_type streambuf::sbumpc()
   Reads one character and moves forward the pointer to the next.
   Return value: If the position where data is read is valid: The character read
   If the position where data is read is invalid: \texttt{eof}

10. int_type streambuf::sgetc()
    Reads one character.
    Return value: If the position where data is read is valid: The character read
                If the position where data is read is invalid: \texttt{eof}

11. int streambuf::sgetn(char* s, streamsize n)
    Reads \texttt{n} characters and sets them in the memory area specified by \texttt{s}. If an \texttt{eof} is found in the string read, setting is terminated.
    Return value: The specified number of characters.

12. int_type streambuf::sputbackc(char c);
    If the data read position is correct and the put back data of the position is the same as \texttt{c}, the read position is put back.
    Return value: If the read position was put back: The value of \texttt{c}
                  If the read position was not put back: \texttt{eof}

13. int streambuf::sungetc()
    If the data read position is correct, the read position is put back.
    Return value: If the read position was put back: The value that was put back
                  If the read position was not put back: \texttt{eof}

14. int streambuf::sputc(char c)
    Inserts characters \texttt{c}.
    Return value: If the write position is correct: The value of \texttt{c}
                  If the write position is incorrect: \texttt{eof}
15. int_type streambuf::sputn(const char* s, streamsize n)
   Inserts \( n \) characters at the position pointed to by \( s \).
   If the buffer is smaller than \( n \), the number of characters for the buffer is inserted.
   Return value: The number of characters inserted

16. char* streambuf::eback() const
   Calculates the start pointer of the input stream.
   Return value: Start pointer

17. char* streambuf::gptr() const
   Calculates the next pointer of the input stream.
   Return value: Next pointer

18. char* streambuf::egptr() const
   Calculates the end pointer of the input stream.
   Return value: End pointer

19. void streambuf::gbump(int n)
   Moves forward the next pointer of the input stream by \( n \).

20. void streambuf::setg(char* gbeg, char* gnext, char* gend)
    Sets each pointer of the input stream as follows:
    \*B_beg_pptr = gbeg;
    \*B_next_pptr = gnext;
    B_end_ptr = gend;
    \*B_cnt_ptr = gend-gnext;
    \*B_len_ptr = gend-gbeg;

21. char* streambuf::pbase() const
    Calculates the start pointer of the output stream.
    Return value: Start pointer

22. char* streambuf::pptr () const
    Calculates the next pointer of the output stream.
    Return value: Next pointer

23. char* streambuf::epptr () const
    Calculates the end pointer of the output stream.
    Return value: End pointer
24. void streambuf::pbump (int n)
    Moves forward the next pointer of the output stream by n.

25. void streambuf::setp(char* pbeg, char* pend)
    The settings for each pointer of the output stream are as follows:
    *B_beg_pptr = pbeg;
    *B_next_pptr = pbeg;
    B_end_ptr = pend;
    *_B_cnt_ptr=pend-pbeg;
    *_B_len_ptr=pend-pbeg;

26. virtual streambuf* streambuf::setbuf(char* s, streamsize n)
    For each derived class from streambuf, a defined operation is executed.
    Return value: *this (Process done by this member function is not defined.)

27. virtual pos_type streambuf::seekoff(off_type off, ios_base::seekdir way ,
    ios_base::openmode=(ios_base::openmode)(ios_base::in | ios_base::out))
    Changes the stream position.
    Return value: -1 (Process done by this member function is not defined.)

28. virtual pos_type streambuf::seekpos(pos_type sp,
    ios_base::openmode=(ios_base::openmode)(ios_base::in | ios_base::out))
    Changes the stream position.
    Return value: -1 (Process done by this member function is not defined.)

29. virtual int streambuf::sync()
    Flushes the output stream.
    Return value: 0 (Process done by this member function is not defined.)

30. virtual int streambuf::showmanyc()
    Calculates the number of valid characters in the input stream.
    Return value: 0 (Process done by this member function is not defined.)

31. virtual streamsize streambuf::xsgetn(char* s, streamsize n)
    Reads n characters and sets them in the memory area specified by s.
    If the buffer is smaller than n, the numbers of characters of the buffer is inserted.
    Return value: The number of characters input
32. virtual int_type streambuf::underflow()
   Reads one character without moving the stream position.
   Return value: eof (Process done by this member function is not defined.)

33. virtual int_type streambuf::uflow()
   Reads one character of the next pointer.
   Return value: eof (Process done by this member function is not defined.)

34. virtual int_type streambuf::pbackfail(int_type c=eof)
   Puts back the character specified by c.
   Return value: eof (Process done by this member function is not defined.)

35. virtual streamsize streambuf::xsputn(const char* s, streamsize n)
   Inserts n characters pointed to by s in to the stream position.
   If the buffer is smaller than n, the number of characters for the buffer is inserted.
   Return value: The number of characters inserted

36. virtual int_type streambuf::overflow(int_type c=eof)
   Inserts character c in the output stream.
   Return value: eof (Process done by this member function is not defined.)
(f) istream::sentry Class

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>ok_</td>
<td>Whether the current state is input-enabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Function

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sentry(istream&amp; is, bool noskipws = false)</td>
<td>Constructor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~sentry()</td>
<td></td>
<td>Destructor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operator bool()</td>
<td></td>
<td>References ok_.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. istream::sentry::sentry (istream& is, bool noskipws=false)
   Constructor of internal class sentry.
   If good() is non-zero, enables input with or without a format.
   If tie() is non-zero, flushes related output stream.

2. istream::sentry::~sentry ()
   Destructor of internal class sentry

3. istream::sentry::operator bool()
   Reads ok_.
   Return value: ok_
### (g) istream Class

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>chcount</td>
<td>The number of characters extracted by the input function called last.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>int _ec2p_getistr(char* str,unsigned int dig, int mode)</td>
<td>Converts str with the radix specified by dig.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- `istream(streambuf* sb)` Constructor.
- `virtual ~istream()` Destructor.
- `istream& operator>>(bool& n)` Stores the extracted characters in n.
- `istream& operator>>(short& n)`
- `istream& operator>>(unsigned short& n)`
- `istream& operator>>(int& n)`
- `istream& operator>>(unsigned int& n)`
- `istream& operator>>(long& n)`
- `istream& operator>>(unsigned long& n)`
- `istream& operator>>(long long& n)`
- `istream& operator>>(unsigned long long& n)`
- `istream& operator>>(float& n)`
- `istream& operator>>(double& n)`
- `istream& operator>>(long double& n)`
- `istream& operator>>(void*& p)` Converts the extracted characters to a pointer to void and stores them in p.
- `istream& operator >>=(streambuf* sb)` Extracts characters and stores them in the memory area specified by sb.

- `streamsize gcount() const` Calculates chcount (number of characters extracted).
- `int_type get()` Extracts a character.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>istream&amp; get(char&amp; c)</td>
<td>Stores the extracted characters in c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istream&amp; get(signed char&amp; c)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istream&amp; get(unsigned char&amp; c)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istream&amp; get(char* s, streamsize n)</td>
<td>Extracts string literals with size n-1 and stores them in the memory area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istream&amp; get(signed char* s, streamsize n)</td>
<td>specified by s.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istream&amp; get(unsigned char* s, streamsize n)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istream&amp; get(char* s, streamsize n, char delim)</td>
<td>Extracts string literals with size n-1 and stores them in the memory area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istream&amp; get(signed char* s, streamsize n, char delim)</td>
<td>specified by s.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istream&amp; get(unsigned char* s, streamsize n, char delim)</td>
<td>If delim is found in the string literal, input is stopped.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istream&amp; get(streambuf&amp; sb)</td>
<td>Extracts string literals and stores them in the memory area specified by sb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istream&amp; get(streambuf&amp; sb, char delim)</td>
<td>Extracts string literals and stores them in the memory area specified by sb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istream&amp; getline(char* s, streamsize n)</td>
<td>Extracts string literals with size n-1 and stores them in the memory area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istream&amp; getline(signed char* s, streamsize n)</td>
<td>specified by s.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istream&amp; getline(unsigned char* s, streamsize n)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Definition Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>istream&amp; getline(char* s, streamsize n, char delim)</td>
<td>Extracts string literals with size n-1 and stores them in the memory area specified by s. If character delim is found, input is stopped.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istream&amp; getline(</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>signed char* s, streamsize n, char delim)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istream&amp; getline(</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>unsigned char* s, streamsize n, char delim)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istream&amp; ignore(</td>
<td>Skips reading the number of characters specified by n. If character delim is found, skipping is stopped.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>streamsize n=1,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int_type delim=streambuf::eof)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int_type peek()</td>
<td>Seeks for input characters that can be acquired next.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istream&amp; read(char* s, streamsize n)</td>
<td>Extracts string literals with size n and stores them in the memory area specified by s.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istream&amp; read(signed char* s, streamsize n)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istream&amp; read(unsigned char* s, streamsize n)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>streamsize readsome(char* s, streamsize n)</td>
<td>Extracts the number of string literals specified by n and stores them in the memory area specified by s.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>streamsize readsome(signed char* s, streamsize n)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>streamsize readsome(unsigned char* s, streamsize n)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istream&amp; putback(char c)</td>
<td>Puts back a character to the input stream.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istream&amp; unget()</td>
<td>Puts back the position of the input stream.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int sync()</td>
<td>Checks the existence of a stream. This function calls streambuf::pubsync().</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Function Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>pos_type tellg()</td>
<td>Finds the input stream position. This function calls streambuf::pubseekoff(0,cur,in).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istream&amp; seekg(pos_type pos)</td>
<td>Moves the current stream pointer by the amount specified by pos. This function calls streambuf::pubseekpos(pos).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istream&amp; seekg(off_type off, ios_base::seekdir dir)</td>
<td>Moves the position to read the input stream by using the method specified by dir. This function calls stream::pubseekoff(off,dir).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. int istream::_ec2p_getistr(char* str, unsigned int dig, int mode)
   Converts str to the radix specified by dig.
   Return value: Returns the converted radix.

2. istream::istream (streambuf* sb)
   Constructor of class istream.
   Calls ios::init(sb).
   Specifies chcount=0.

3. virtual istream::~istream ()
   Destructor of class istream.

4. istream& istream::operator>>(bool& n)
   istream& istream::operator>>(short& n)
   istream& istream::operator>>(unsigned short& n)
   istream& istream::operator>>(int& n)
   istream& istream::operator>>(unsigned int& n)
   istream& istream::operator>>(long& n)
   istream& istream::operator>>(unsigned long& n)
   istream& istream::operator>>(long long& n)
   istream& istream::operator>>(unsigned long long& n)
   istream& istream::operator>>(float& n)
   istream& istream::operator>>(double& n)
   Stores the extracted characters in n.
   Return value: *this
5. istream& istream::operator>>(void*& p)
   Converts the extracted characters to a void* type and stores them in the memory specified by p.
   Return value: *this

6. istream& istream::operator>>(streambuf* sb)
   Extracts characters and stores them in the memory area specified by sb.
   If there is no extracted characters, setstate(failbit) is called.
   Return value: *this

7. streamsize istream::gcount() const
   References chcount (number of extracted characters).
   Return value: chcount

8. int_type istream::get()
   Extracts a character.
   Return value: If characters are extracted: Extracted characters.
   If no characters are extracted: Calls setstate(failbit), streambuf::eof.

9. istream& istream::get (char& c)
    istream& istream::get(signed char& c)
    istream& istream::get(unsigned char& c)
    Extracts a character and stores it in c. If the extracted character is streambuf::eof, failbit is set.
    Return value: *this

10. istream& istream::get(char* s, streamsize n)
     istream& istream::get(signed char* s, streamsize n)
     istream& istream::get(unsigned char* s, streamsize n)
     Extracts a string literal with size n-1 and stores it in the memory area specified by s. If ok_==false or no character has been extracted, failbit is set.
     Return value: *this

11. istream& istream::get (char* s, streamsize n, char delim)
     istream& istream::get(signed char* s, streamsize n, char delim)
     istream& istream::get(unsigned char* s, streamsize n, char delim)
     Extracts a string literal with size n-1 and stores it in the memory area specified by s.
     If delim is found in the string literal, input is stopped.
     If ok_==false or no character has been extracted, failbit is set.
     Return value: *this
12. istream& istream::get (streambuf& sb)
   Extracts a string literal and stores it in the memory area specified by sb.
   If ok_ == false or no character has been extracted, failbit is set.
   Return value: *this

13. istream& istream::get (streambuf& sb, char delim)
   Extracts a string literal and stores it in the memory area specified by sb.
   If delim is found in the string literal, input is stopped.
   If ok_ == false or no character has been extracted, failbit is specified.
   Return value: *this

14. istream& istream::getline(char* s, streamsize n)
   istream& istream::getline(signed char* s, streamsize n)
   istream& istream::getline(unsigned char* s, streamsize n)
   Extracts a string literal with size n-1 and stores it in the memory area specified by s.
   If ok_ == false or no character has been extracted, failbit is specified.
   Return value: *this

15. istream& istream::getline (char* s, streamsize n, char delim)
   istream& istream::getline(signed char* s, streamsize n, char delim)
   istream& istream::getline(unsigned char* s, streamsize n, char delim)
   Extracts a string literal with size n-1 and stores it in the memory area specified by s.
   If character delim is found, input is stopped.
   If ok_ == false or no character has been extracted, failbit is specified.
   Return value: *this

16. istream& istream::ignore(streamsize n = 1, int_type delim = streambuf::eof)
    Skips reading the number of characters specified by n.
    If character delim is found, skipping is stopped.
    Return value: *this

17. int_type istream::peek()
    Seeks input characters that will be acquired next.
    Return value: If ok_ == false: streambuf::eof
                 If ok_ != false: rdbuf()->sgetc()
18. `istream& istream::read(char* s, streamsize n)`
   `istream& istream::read(signed char* s, streamsize n)`
   `istream& istream::read(unsigned char* s, streamsize n)`
   If `ok_!=false`, extracts a string literal with size `n` and stores it in the memory area specified by `s`. If the number of extracted characters does not match with the number of `n`, `eofbit` is specified.
   Return value: `*this`

19. `streamsize istream::readsome(char* s, streamsize n)`
   `streamsize istream::readsome(signed char* s, streamsize n)`
   `streamsize istream::readsome(unsigned char* s, streamsize n)`
   Extracts a string literal with size `n` and stores it in the memory area specified by `s`. If the number of characters exceeds the stream size, only the number of characters equal to the stream size is stored.
   Return value: The number of extracted characters

20. `istream& istream::putback(char c)`
    Puts back character `c` to the input stream.
    If the characters put back are streambuf::eof, `badbit` is set.
    Return value: `*this`

21. `istream& istream::unget()`
    Puts back the pointer of the input stream by one.
    If the extracted characters are streambuf::eof, `badbit` is set.
    Return value: `*this`

22. `int istream::sync()`
    Checks for an input stream.
    This function calls `streambuf::pubsync()`.
    Return value: If there is no input stream: streambuf::eof
                 If there is an input stream: 0

23. `pos_type istream::tellg()`
    Checks for the position of an input stream.
    This function calls `streambuf::pubseekoff(0,cur,in)`.
    Return value: Offset from the beginning of the stream.
                  If an input processing error occurs, -1 is returned.
24. istream& istream::seekg (pos_type pos)
    Moves the current stream pointer for pos.
    This function calls streambuf::pubseekpos(pos).
    Return value: *this

25. istream& istream::seekg(off_type off, ios_base::seekdir dir)
    Moves the position to read the input stream using the method specified by dir.
    This function calls streambuf::pubseekoff(off,dir). If an input processing error occurs, this
    processing is not performed.
    Return value: *this
### (h) `istream` Class Manipulator

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>istream&amp; ws(istream&amp; is)</code></td>
<td>Skips reading space</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. `istream& ws(istream& is)`
   Skips reading white space.
   Return value: is

### (i) `istream` Non-Member Function

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>istream&amp; operator&gt;&gt;(istream&amp; in, char* s)</code></td>
<td>Extracts a string of characters and stores them in the memory area specified by s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>istream&amp; operator&gt;&gt;(istream&amp; in, signed char* s)</code></td>
<td>Extracts a string of characters and stores them in the memory area specified by s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>istream&amp; operator&gt;&gt;(istream&amp; in, unsigned char* s)</code></td>
<td>Extracts a string of characters and stores them in the memory area specified by s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>istream&amp; operator&gt;&gt;(istream&amp; in, char&amp; c)</code></td>
<td>Extracts a character and stores it in c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>istream&amp; operator&gt;&gt;(istream&amp; in, signed char&amp; c)</code></td>
<td>Extracts a character and stores it in c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>istream&amp; operator&gt;&gt;(istream&amp; in, unsigned char&amp; c)</code></td>
<td>Extracts a character and stores it in c</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. `istream& operator>>(istream& in, char* s)`
   `istream& operator>>(istream& in, signed char* s)`
   `istream& operator>>(istream& in, unsigned char* s)`
   Extracts characters and stores them in the memory area specified by `s`. Processing is terminated if
   - the number of characters stored is equal to field width – 1
   - `streambuf::eof` is found in the input stream
   - the next available character `c` satisfies `isspace(c)==1`
   If no characters are stored, `failbit` is specified.
   Return value: `in`

2. `istream& operator>>(istream& in, char& c)`
   `istream& operator>>(istream& in, signed char& c)`
   `istream& operator>>(istream& in, unsigned char& c)`
   Extracts a character and stores it in `c`. If no character is stored, `failbit` is set.
   Return value: `in`
### ostream::sentry Class

#### Definition Names

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>ok_</td>
<td>Whether or not the current state allows output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>_ec2p_os</td>
<td>Pointer to the ostream object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>sentry(ostream&amp; os)</td>
<td>Constructor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~sentry()</td>
<td>Destructor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>operator bool()</td>
<td>References ok_</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. ostream::sentry::sentry (ostream& os)
   Constructor of the internal class sentry.
   If good() is non-zero and tie() is non-zero, flush() is called.
   Specifies os to _ec2p_os.

2. ostream::sentry::~sentry ()
   Destructor of internal class sentry.
   If (_ec2p_os->flags() & ios_base::unitbuf) is true, flush() is called.

3. ostream::sentry::operator bool ()
   References ok_.
   Return value: ok_.


### ostream Class

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>ostream(streambuf* sbptr)</td>
<td>Constructor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>virtual~ostream()</td>
<td>Destructor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ostream&amp; operator&lt;&lt;(bool n)</td>
<td>Inserts n in the output stream.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ostream&amp; operator&lt;&lt;(short n)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ostream&amp; operator&lt;&lt;(unsigned short n)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ostream&amp; operator&lt;&lt;(int n)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ostream&amp; operator&lt;&lt;(unsigned int n)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ostream&amp; operator&lt;&lt;(long n)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ostream&amp; operator&lt;&lt;(unsigned long n)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ostream&amp; operator&lt;&lt;(long long n)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ostream&amp; operator&lt;&lt;(unsigned long long n)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ostream&amp; operator&lt;&lt;(float n)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ostream&amp; operator&lt;&lt;(double n)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ostream&amp; operator&lt;&lt;(long double n)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ostream&amp; operator&lt;&lt;(void* n)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ostream&amp; operator&lt;&lt;(streambuf* sbptr)</td>
<td>Inserts the output stream of sbptr into the output stream.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ostream&amp; putc(char c)</td>
<td>Inserts a character c into the output stream.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Definition Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ostream&amp; write(</td>
<td>const char* s, streamsize n)</td>
<td>Inserts n characters from s into the output stream.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ostream&amp; write(</td>
<td>const signed char* s, streamsize n)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ostream&amp; write(</td>
<td>const unsigned char* s, streamsize n)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ostream&amp; flush()</td>
<td></td>
<td>Flushes the output stream. This function calls streambuf::pubsync().</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pos_type tellp()</td>
<td></td>
<td>Calculates the current write position. This function calls streambuf::pubseekoff(0,cur,out).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ostream&amp; seekp(pos_type pos)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Calculates the offset from the beginning of the stream to the current position. Moves the current stream pointer by the amount specified by pos. This function calls streambuf::pubseekpos(pos).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ostream&amp; seekp(off_type off, seekdir dir)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Moves the stream write position by the amount specified by off, from dir. This function calls streambuf::pubseekoff(off,dir).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. `ostream::ostream (streambuf* sbptr)`
   Constructor.
   Calls `ios(sbptr)`.

2. `virtual ostream::~ostream ()`
   Destructor.
3. ostream& ostream::operator<<(bool n)
   ostream& ostream::operator<<(short n)
   ostream& ostream::operator<<(unsigned short n)
   ostream& ostream::operator<<(int n)
   ostream& ostream::operator<<(unsigned int n)
   ostream& ostream::operator<<(long n)
   ostream& ostream::operator<<(unsigned long n)
   ostream& ostream::operator<<(long long n)
   ostream& ostream::operator<<(unsigned long long n)
   ostream& ostream::operator<<(float n)
   ostream& ostream::operator<<(double n)
   ostream& ostream::operator<<(long double n)
   ostream& ostream::operator<<(void* n)
   If sentry::ok_==true, n is inserted into the output stream.
   If sentry::ok_==false, failbit is specified.
   Return value: *this

4. ostream& ostream::operator<<(streambuf* sbptr)
   If sentry::ok_==true, the output string of sbptr is inserted into the output stream.
   If sentry::ok_==false, failbit is specified.
   Return value: *this

5. ostream& ostream::putc(char c)
   If (sentry::ok_==true) and (rdbuf()->sputc(c)!=streambuf::eof), c is inserted into the output stream.
   Otherwise failbit is specified.
   Return value: *this

6. ostream& ostream::write(const char* s, streamsize n)
   ostream& ostream::write(const signed char* s, streamsize n)
   ostream& ostream::write(const unsigned char* s, streamsize n)
   If (sentry::ok_==true) and (rdbuf()->sputn(s, n)==n), n characters pointed to by s is inserted to the output stream.
   Otherwise badbit is specified.
   Return value: *this
7. ostream& ostream::flush()
    Flushes the output stream.
    This function calls streambuf::pubsync().
    Return value: *this

8. pos_type ostream::tellp()
    Calculates the current write position.
    This function calls streambuf::pubseekoff(0,cur,out).
    Return value: The current stream position.
    If an error occurs during processing, -1 is returned.

9. ostream& ostream::seekp(pos_type pos)
    If no error occurs, the offset from the beginning of the stream to the current position is calculated.
    Moves the current stream by the amount specified by pos.
    This function calls streambuf::pubseekpos(pos).
    Return value: *this

10. ostream& ostream::seekp (off_type off, seekdir dir)
    Moves the stream write position by the amount specified by off, from dir.
    This function calls streambuf::pubseekoff(off,dir).
    Return value: *this
## (l) ostream Class Manipulator

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>ostream&amp; endl(ostream&amp; os)</td>
<td>Inserts a new line and flushes the output stream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ostream&amp; ends(ostream&amp; os)</td>
<td>Inserts a NULL code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ostream&amp; flush(ostream&amp; os)</td>
<td>Flushes the output stream</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. ostream& endl(ostream& os)
   Inserts a new line code and flushes the output stream.
   This function calls flush().
   Return value: os

2. ostream& ends(ostream& os)
   Inserts a NULL code to the output line.
   Return value: os

3. ostream& flush(ostream& os)
   Flushes the output stream.
   This function calls streambuf::sync().
   Return value: os
(m) ostream Non-Member Function

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td><code>ostream&amp; operator&lt;&lt;(ostream&amp; os, char s)</code></td>
<td>Inserts s into the output stream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>ostream&amp; operator&lt;&lt;(ostream&amp; os, signed char s)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>ostream&amp; operator&lt;&lt;(ostream&amp; os, unsigned char s)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>ostream&amp; operator&lt;&lt;(ostream&amp; os, const char* s)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>ostream&amp; operator&lt;&lt;(ostream&amp; os, const signed char* s)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>ostream&amp; operator&lt;&lt;(ostream&amp; os, const unsigned char* s)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. `ostream& operator<<(ostream& os, char s)`
   `ostream& operator<<(ostream& os, signed char s)`
   `ostream& operator<<(ostream& os, unsigned char s)`
   `ostream& operator<<(ostream& os, const char* s)`
   `ostream& operator<<(ostream& os, const signed char* s)`
   `ostream& operator<<(ostream& os, const unsigned char* s)`

If (sentry::ok_==true) and an error does not occur, s is inserted into the output stream. Otherwise **failbit** is specified.

Return value: os
## (n) smanip Class Manipulator

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>smanip resetiosflags(ios_base::fmtflags mask)</td>
<td>Clears the flag specified by the mask value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>smanip setiosflags(ios_base::fmtflags mask)</td>
<td>Specifies the format flag (fmtfl)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>smanip setbase(int base)</td>
<td>Specifies the radix used at output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>smanip setfill(char c)</td>
<td>Specifies the fill character (fillch)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>smanip setprecision(int n)</td>
<td>Specifies the precision (prec)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>smanip setw(int n)</td>
<td>Specifies the field width (wide)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **smanip resetiosflags(ios_base::fmtflags mask)**
   - Clears the flag specified by the **mask** value.
   - Return value: Target object of input/output

2. **smanip setiosflags(ios_base::fmtflags mask)**
   - Specifies the format flag (**fmtfl**).
   - Return value: Target object of input/output

3. **smanip setbase(int base)**
   - Specifies the radix used by output.
   - Return value: Target object of input/output

4. **smanip setfill(char c);**
   - Specifies the fill characters (**fillch**).
   - Return value: Target object of input/output

5. **smanip setprecision(int n)**
   - Specifies the precision (**prec**).
   - Return value: Target object of input/output

6. **smanip setw(int n)**
   - Specifies the field width (**wide**).
   - Return value: Target object of input/output
(o) Example of Using EC++ Input/Output Libraries

Input/output stream can be used if a pointer to an object of the `mystdbuf` class is used instead of `streambuf` at the initialization of objects `istream` and `ostream`.

The following shows the inheritance relationship of the above classes. An arrow (->) indicates that a derived class at the start point refers to a base class at the end point.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>_file_Ptr</td>
<td>File pointer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>mystrbuf()</td>
<td>Constructor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mystrbuf(void* ptr)</td>
<td>Initializes the streambuf buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>virtual ~mystrbuf()</td>
<td>Destructor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void* myfptr() const</td>
<td>Returns a pointer to the FILE type structure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mystrbuf* open(const char* filename, int mode)</td>
<td>Specifies the file name and mode and opens the file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mystrbuf* close()</td>
<td>Closes the file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>virtual streambuf* setbuf(char* s, streamsize n)</td>
<td>Reserves stream input/output buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>virtual pos_type seekoff(off_type off, ios_base::seekdir way, ios_base::openmode=(ios_base::openmode) (ios_base::in</td>
<td>Changes the position of the stream pointer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>virtual pos_type seekpos(pos_type sp, ios_base::openmode=(ios_base::openmode) (ios_base::in</td>
<td>Changes the position of the stream pointer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>virtual int sync()</td>
<td>Flushes the stream.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>virtual int showmanyc()</td>
<td>Returns the number of valid characters of input stream.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>virtual int_type underflow()</td>
<td>Reads one character without moving the stream position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>virtual int_type pbackfail(int type c = streambuf::eof)</td>
<td>Puts back the character specified by c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>virtual int_type overflow(int type c = streambuf::eof)</td>
<td>Inserts character specified by c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void _Init(_f_type* fp)</td>
<td>Initialization.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
<Example>

#include <istream>
#include <ostream>
#include <mystrbuf>
#include <string>
#include <new>
#include <stdio.h>

void main(void)
{
    mystrbuf myfin(stdin);
    mystrbuf myfout(stdout);
    istream mycin(&myfin);
    ostream mycout(&myfout);

    int i;
    short s;
    long l;
    char c;
    string str;

    mycin >> i >> s >> l >> c >> str;
    mycout << "This is EC++ Library." << endl
            << i << s << l << c << str << endl;

    return;
}

(3) Memory Management Library

The header file for the memory management library is shown below.

```c
<new>
```

Defines memory allocation/deallocation function.

By setting an exception processing function address to the `_ec2p_new_handler` variable, exception processing can be executed if memory allocation fails. The `_ec2p_new_handler` is a static variable and the initial value is NULL. If this handler is used, reentrance will be lost.

Operations required for the exception processing function (of the memory management library):

- Creates an allocatable area and returns the area.
- Operations are not prescribed for cases where an area cannot be created and returned.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Macro</td>
<td>new_handler</td>
<td>Pointer type to the function that returns a void type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>_ec2p_new_handler</td>
<td>Pointer to an exception processing function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>void* operator new(size_t size)</td>
<td>Allocates memory area with a size specified by size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void* operator new[ ] (size_t size)</td>
<td>Allocates array area with a size specified by size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void* operator new( size_t size, void* ptr)</td>
<td>Allocates the area specified by ptr as the memory area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void* operator new[ ]( size_t size, void* ptr)</td>
<td>Allocates the area specified by ptr as the array area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void operator delete(void* ptr)</td>
<td>Deallocates the memory area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void operator delete[ ](void* ptr)</td>
<td>Deallocates the array area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>new_handler set_new_handler( new_handler new_P)</td>
<td>Sets exception processing function address (new_P) in _ec2p_new_handler</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. void* operator new(size_t size)
   Allocates a memory area with the size specified by size.
   If allocation fails and when the new_handler is set, new_handler is called.
   Return value: If memory allocation succeeds: Pointer to void type
                   If memory allocation fails: NULL

2. void* operator new[ ] (size_t size)
   Allocates an array area with the size specified by size.
   If allocation fails and when the new_handler is set, new_handler is called.
   Return value: If memory allocation succeeds: Pointer to void type
                   If memory allocation fails: NULL

3. void* operator new (size_t size, void* ptr)
   Allocates the area specified by ptr as the storage area.
   Return value: ptr

4. void* operator new[ ](size_t size, void* ptr)
   Allocates the area specified by ptr as the array area.
   Return value: ptr

5. void operator delete(void* ptr)
   Deallocates the storage area specified by ptr.
   If ptr is NULL, no operation will be performed.

6. void operator delete[ ] (void* ptr)
   Deallocates the array area specified by ptr.
   If ptr is NULL, no operation will be performed.

7. new_handler set_new_handler(new_handler new_P)
   Sets new_P to _ec2p_new_handler.
   Return value: _ec2p_new_handler
(4) Complex Number Calculation Class Libraries

The header file for the complex number calculation class libraries is as follows.

```
<complex>
Defines float_complex class and double_complex class.
```

These classes have no derivation.
### (a) `float_complex` Class

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td><code>value_type</code></td>
<td>float type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Variable</td>
<td><code>_re</code></td>
<td>Defines the real part of float precision.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>_im</code></td>
<td>Defines the imaginary part of float precision.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td><code>float_complex</code></td>
<td>Constructor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(<code>float re = 0.0f, float im = 0.0f</code>)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>float_complex(const double_complex&amp; rhs)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>float real() const</code></td>
<td>Reads the real part <code>_re</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>float imag() const</code></td>
<td>Reads the imaginary part <code>_im</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>float_complex&amp; operator=(float rhs)</code></td>
<td>Copies rhs to the real part <code>_re</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>float_complex&amp; operator+=(float rhs)</code></td>
<td>Adds rhs to the real part of <code>*this</code> and stores the sum in <code>*this</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>float_complex&amp; operator-=(float rhs)</code></td>
<td>Subtracts rhs from the real part of <code>*this</code> and stores the difference in <code>*this</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>float_complex&amp; operator*==(float rhs)</code></td>
<td>Multiplies <code>*this</code> by rhs and stores the product in <code>*this</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>float_complex&amp; operator/=(float rhs)</code></td>
<td>Divides <code>*this</code> by rhs and stores the quotient in <code>*this</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>float_complex&amp; operator=(const float_complex&amp; rhs)</code></td>
<td>Copies rhs to <code>*this</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>float_complex&amp; operator+=(const float_complex&amp; rhs)</code></td>
<td>Adds rhs to <code>*this</code> and stores the sum in <code>*this</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>float_complex&amp; operator-=(const float_complex&amp; rhs)</code></td>
<td>Subtracts rhs from <code>*this</code> and stores the difference in <code>*this</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>float_complex&amp; operator*==(const float_complex&amp; rhs)</code></td>
<td>Multiplies <code>*this</code> by rhs and stores the product in <code>*this</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>float_complex&amp; operator/=(const float_complex&amp; rhs)</code></td>
<td>Divides <code>*this</code> by rhs and stores the quotient in <code>*this</code>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. `float_complex::float_complex (float re=0.0f, float im=0.0f)`
   Constructor of class `float_complex`.
   The initial settings are as follows:
   
   ```
   _re = re;
   _im = im;
   ```

2. `float_complex::float_complex (const double_complex& rhs)`
   Constructor of class `float_complex`.
   The initial settings are as follows:
   
   ```
   _re = (float)rhs.real();
   _im = (float)rhs.imag();
   ```

3. `float float_complex::real() const`
   Reads the real part.
   Return value: `this->_re`

4. `float float_complex::imag() const`
   Reads the imaginary part.
   Return value: `this->_im`

5. `float_complex& float_complex::operator=(float rhs)`
   Copies `rhs` to the real part (_re).
   0.0f is assigned to the imaginary part (_im).
   Return value: `*this`

6. `float_complex& float_complex::operator+= (float rhs)`
   Adds `rhs` to the real part (_re) and stores the sum in the real part (_re).
   The value of the imaginary part (_im) does not change.
   Return value: `*this`

7. `float_complex& float_complex::operator-= (float rhs)`
   Subtracts `rhs` from the real part (_re) and stores the difference in the real part (_re).
   The value of the imaginary part (_im) does not change.
   Return value: `*this`

8. `float_complex& float_complex::operator*=(float rhs)`
   Multiplies `*this` by `rhs` and stores the product in `*this`.
   ```
   (_re=_re*rhs, _im=_im*rhs)
   ```
   Return value: `*this`
9. float_complex& float_complex::operator/=(float rhs)
   Divides *this by rhs and stores the quotient in *this.
   (_re=_re/rhs, _im=_im/rhs)
   Return value: *this

10. float_complex& float_complex::operator=(const float_complex& rhs)
    Copies rhs to *this.
    Return value: *this

11. float_complex& float_complex::operator+=(const float_complex& rhs)
    Adds rhs to *this and stores the sum in *this
    Return value: *this

12. float_complex& float_complex::operator-=(const float_complex& rhs)
    Subtracts rhs from *this and stores the difference in *this.
    Return value: *this

13. float_complex& float_complex::operator*=(const float_complex& rhs)
    Multiplies *this by rhs and stores the product in *this.
    Return value: *this

14. float_complex& float_complex::operator/=(const float_complex& rhs)
    Divides *this by rhs and stores the quotient in *this.
    Return value: *this
### float_complex Non-Member Function

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td><code>float_complex operator+(</code></td>
<td>Performs unary + operation of lhs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const float_complex&amp; lhs)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>float_complex operator+(</code></td>
<td>Adds lhs to rhs and stores the sum in lhs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const float_complex&amp; lhs,</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const float_complex&amp; rhs)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>float_complex operator+(</code></td>
<td>Performs unary - operation of lhs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const float_complex&amp; lhs)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const float_complex&amp; rhs)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>float_complex operator-(</code></td>
<td>Subtracts rhs from lhs and stores the difference in lhs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const float_complex&amp; lhs)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const float_complex&amp; rhs)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>float_complex operator-(</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const float_complex&amp; lhs,</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const float&amp; rhs)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>float_complex operator-(</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const float&amp; lhs,</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const float_complex&amp; rhs)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>float_complex operator*(</code></td>
<td>Multiples lhs by rhs and stores the product in lhs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const float_complex&amp; lhs,</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const float_complex&amp; rhs)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>float_complex operator*/(</code></td>
<td>Divides lhs by rhs and stores the quotient in lhs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const float_complex&amp; lhs,</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const float_complex&amp; rhs)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Definition Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>float_complex operator/ (const float&amp; lhs, const float_complex&amp; rhs)</td>
<td>Divides lhs by rhs and stores the quotient in lhs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bool operator== (const float_complex&amp; lhs, const float_complex&amp; rhs)</td>
<td>Compares the real parts of lhs and rhs, and the imaginary parts of lhs and rhs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bool operator== (const float_complex&amp; lhs, const float&amp; rhs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bool operator== (const float_complex&amp; lhs, const float_complex&amp; rhs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bool operator!= (const float_complex&amp; lhs, const float_complex&amp; rhs)</td>
<td>Compares the real parts of lhs and rhs, and the imaginary parts of lhs and rhs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bool operator!= (const float_complex&amp; lhs, const float&amp; rhs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bool operator!= (const float&amp; lhs, const float_complex&amp; rhs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istream&amp; operator&gt;&gt;(istream&amp; is, float_complex&amp; x)</td>
<td>Inputs x in a format of u, (u), or (u,v)(u: real part, v: imaginary part)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ostream&amp; operator&lt;&lt;(ostream&amp; os, const float_complex&amp; x)</td>
<td>Outputs x in a format of u, (u), or (u,v)(u: real part, v: imaginary part)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>float real(const float_complex&amp; x)</td>
<td>Reads the real part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>float imag(const float_complex&amp; x)</td>
<td>Reads the imaginary part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>float abs(const float_complex&amp; x)</td>
<td>Calculates the absolute value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>float arg(const float_complex&amp; x)</td>
<td>Calculates the phase angle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>float norm(const float_complex&amp; x)</td>
<td>Calculates the absolute value of the square</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>float_complex conj(const float_complex&amp; x)</td>
<td>Calculates the conjugate complex number of x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Definition Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>float_complex polar( const float&amp; rho, const float&amp; theta)</td>
<td>Calculates the float_complex value for a complex number with size rho and phase angle theta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>float_complex cos(const float_complex&amp; x)</td>
<td>Calculates the complex cosine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>float_complex cosh(const float_complex&amp; x)</td>
<td>Calculates the complex hyperbolic cosine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>float_complex exp(const float_complex&amp; x)</td>
<td>Calculates the exponent function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>float_complex log(const float_complex&amp; x)</td>
<td>Calculates the natural logarithm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>float_complex log10(const float_complex&amp; x)</td>
<td>Calculates the common logarithm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>float_complex pow( const float_complex&amp; x, int y)</td>
<td>Calculates the x to the yth power</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>float_complex pow( const float_complex&amp; x, const float&amp; y)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>float_complex pow( const float_complex&amp; x, const float_complex&amp; y)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>float_complex pow( const float&amp; x, const float_complex&amp; y)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>float_complex sin(const float_complex&amp; x)</td>
<td>Calculates the complex sine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>float_complex sinh(const float_complex&amp; x)</td>
<td>Calculates the complex hyperbolic sine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>float_complex sqrt(const float_complex&amp; x)</td>
<td>Calculates the square root within the right half space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>float_complex tan(const float_complex&amp; x)</td>
<td>Calculates the complex tangent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>float_complex tanh(const float_complex&amp; x)</td>
<td>Calculates the complex hyperbolic tangent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. float_complex operator+ (const float_complex& lhs)
   Performs unary + operation of lhs.
   Return value: lhs

2. float_complex operator+ (const float_complex& lhs, const float_complex& rhs)
   float_complex operator+(const float_complex& lhs, const float& rhs)
   float_complex operator+(const float& lhs, const float_complex& rhs)
   Adds lhs to rhs and stores the sum in lhs.
   Return value: float_complex(lhs) += rhs

3. float_complex operator−(const float_complex& lhs)
   Performs unary - operation of lhs.
   Return value: float_complex(−lhs.real(), −lhs.imag())

4. float_complex operator−(const float_complex& lhs, const float_complex& rhs)
   float_complex operator−(const float_complex& lhs, const float& rhs)
   float_complex operator−(const float& lhs, const float_complex& rhs)
   Subtracts rhs from lhs and stores the difference in lhs.
   Return value: float_complex(lhs) -= rhs

5. float_complex operator* (const float_complex& lhs, const float_complex& rhs)
   float_complex operator*(const float_complex& lhs, const float& rhs)
   float_complex operator*(const float& lhs, const float_complex& rhs)
   Multiplies lhs by rhs and stores the product in lhs.
   Return value: float_complex(lhs) *= rhs

6. float_complex operator/(const float_complex& lhs, const float_complex& rhs)
   float_complex operator/(const float_complex& lhs, const float& rhs)
   float_complex operator/(const float& lhs, const float_complex& rhs)
   Divides lhs by rhs and stores the quotient in lhs.
   Return value: float_complex(lhs) /= rhs
7. bool operator==(const float_complex& lhs, const float_complex& rhs)
   bool operator==(const float_complex& lhs, const float& rhs)
   bool operator==(const float& lhs, const float_complex& rhs)
   Compares the real parts of \( \text{lhs} \) and \( \text{rhs} \), and the imaginary parts of \( \text{lhs} \) and \( \text{rhs} \).
   For a float type parameter, the imaginary part is assumed to be 0.0f.
   Return value: \( \text{lhs.real()==rhs.real() && lhs.imag()==rhs.imag()} \)

8. bool operator!=(const float_complex& lhs, const float_complex& rhs)
   bool operator!=(const float_complex& lhs, const float& rhs)
   bool operator!=(const float& lhs, const float_complex& rhs)
   Compares the real parts of \( \text{lhs} \) and \( \text{rhs} \), and the imaginary parts of \( \text{lhs} \) and \( \text{rhs} \).
   For a float type parameter, the imaginary part is assumed to be 0.0f.
   Return value: \( \text{lhs.real()!=rhs.real() || lhs.imag()!=rhs.imag()} \)

9. istream& operator>>(istream& is, float_complex& x)
   Inputs \( x \) as a format of \( u,(u) \), or \( (u,v) \)(\( u \): real part, \( v \): imaginary part).
   The input value is converted to float_complex.
   If \( x \) is input in a format other than the \( u,(u) \), or \( (u,v) \) format, is.setstate(ios_base::failbit) is called.
   Return value: is

10. ostream& operator<<(ostream& os, const float_complex& x)
    Outputs \( x \) to \( os \).
    The output format is \( u,(u) \), or \( (u,v) \)(\( u \): real part, \( v \): imaginary part).
    Return value: os

11. float real(const float_complex& x)
    Reads the real part.
    Return value: \( x.\text{real()} \)

12. float imag(const float_complex& x)
    Reads the imaginary part.
    Return value: \( x.\text{imag()} \)

13. float abs(const float_complex& x)
    Calculates the absolute value.
    Return value: \( (x.\text{real()}^2 + |x.\text{imag()}|^2)^{1/2} \)
14. float arg (const float_complex& x)
   Calculates the phase angle.
   Return value: atan2f(x.imag(), x.real())

15. float norm(const float_complex& x)
   Calculates the absolute value of the square.
   Return value: |x.real()|^2 + |x.imag()|^2

16. float_complex conj(const float_complex& x)
   Calculates the conjugate complex number of x.
   Return value: float_complex(x.real(), (-1)*x.imag())

17. float_complex polar(const float& rho, const float& theta)
   Calculates the float_complex value for a complex number with size \texttt{rho} and phase angle (argument) \texttt{theta}.
   Return value: float_complex(rho*cosf(theta), rho*sinf(theta))

18. float_complex cos(const float_complex& x)
   Calculates the complex cosine.
   Return value: float_complex(cosf(x.real())*coshf(x.imag()), (-1)*sinf(x.real())*sinhf(x.imag()))

19. float_complex cosh(const float_complex& x)
   Calculates the complex hyperbolic cosine.
   Return value: cos(float_complex((-1)*x.imag(), x.real()))

20. float_complex exp(const float_complex& x)
   Calculates the exponential function.
   Return value: float_complex(expf(x.real())*cosf(x.imag()), expf(x.real())*sinf(x.imag()))

21. float_complex log(const float_complex& x)
   Calculates the natural logarithm (base e).
   Return value: float_complex(logf(abs(x)), arg(x))

22. float_complex log10(const float_complex& x)
   Calculates the common logarithm (base 10).
   Return value: float_complex(log10f(abs(x)), arg(x)/logf(10))
23. float_complex pow(const float_complex& x, int y)
   float_complex pow(const float_complex& x, const float& y)
   float_complex pow(const float_complex& x, const float_complex& y)
   float_complex pow(const float& x, const float_complex& y)
   Calculates the \( x \) to the \( y \)th power.
   If \( pow(0,0) \), a domain error will occur.
   Return value: If float_complex pow (const float_complex& x, const float_complex& y): 
   \( \exp( y \cdot \log(x) ) \)
   Otherwise: \( \exp( y \cdot \log(x) ) \)

24. float_complex sin(const float_complex& x)
   Calculates complex sine.
   Return value: float_complex(sinf(x.real())*coshf(x.imag()), cosf(x.real())*sinhf(x.imag()))

25. float_complex sinh(const float_complex& x)
   Calculates the complex hyperbolic sine.
   Return value: float_complex(0,-1)*sin(float_complex((-1)*x.imag(),x.real()))

26. float_complex sqrt(const float_complex& x)
   Calculates the square root within the right half space.
   Return value: float_complex(sqrtf(abs(x))*cosf(arg(x)/2), sqrtf(abs(x))*sinf(arg(x)/2))

27. float_complex tan(const float_complex& x)
   Calculates the complex tangent.
   Return value: sin(x) / cos(x)

28. float_complex tanh(const float_complex& x)
   Calculates the complex hyperbolic tangent.
   Return value: sinh(x) / cosh(x)
## (c) `double_complex` Class

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>value_type</td>
<td>double type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>_re</td>
<td>Defines the real part of double precision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>_im</td>
<td>Defines the imaginary part of double precision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td><code>double_complex</code></td>
<td>Constructor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(</td>
<td>double re=0.0,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>double im=0.0)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>float_complex</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>real()</code> const</td>
<td>Reads the real part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>imag()</code> const</td>
<td>Reads the imaginary part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>operator=(double rhs)</code></td>
<td>Copies rhs to the real part and stores the sum in *this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>operator+=(double rhs)</code></td>
<td>Adds rhs to the real part of *this and stores the sum in *this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>operator-=(double rhs)</code></td>
<td>Subtracts rhs from the real part of *this and stores the difference in *this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>operator*=(double rhs)</code></td>
<td>Multiplies *this by rhs and stores the product in *this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>operator/=(double rhs)</code></td>
<td>Divides *this by rhs and stores the quotient in *this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>operator=(</code></td>
<td>Copies rhs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const double_complex&amp; rhs)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>operator+=(</code></td>
<td>Adds rhs to *this and stores the sum in *this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const double_complex&amp; rhs)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>operator-=</code></td>
<td>Subtracts rhs from *this and stores the difference in *this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const double_complex&amp; rhs)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>operator*=</code></td>
<td>Multiplies *this by rhs and stores the product in *this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const double_complex&amp; rhs)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>operator/=</code></td>
<td>Divides *this by rhs and stores the quotient in *this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const double_complex&amp; rhs)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. `double_complex::double_complex(double re=0.0, double im=0.0)`  
   Constructor of class `double_complex`.  
   The initial settings are as follows:  
   `_re = re;`  
   `_im = im;`

2. `double_complex::double_complex(const float_complex&)`  
   Constructor of class `double_complex`.  
   The initial settings are as follows:  
   `_re = (double)rhs.real();`  
   `_im = (double)rhs.imag();`

3. `double double_complex::real() const`  
   Reads the real part.  
   Return value: `this->_re`

4. `double double_complex::imag() const`  
   Reads the imaginary part.  
   Return value: `this->_im`

5. `double_complex& double_complex::operator=(double rhs)`  
   Copies `rhs` to the real part `_re`.  
   0.0 is assigned to the imaginary part `_im`.  
   Return value: `*this`

6. `double_complex& double_complex::operator+=(double rhs)`  
   Adds `rhs` to the real part `_re` and stores the sum in the real part `_re`.  
   The value of the imaginary part `_im` does not change.  
   Return value: `*this`

7. `double_complex& double_complex::operator-=(double rhs)`  
   Subtracts `rhs` from the real part `_re` and stores the difference in the real part `_re`.  
   The value of the imaginary part `_im` does not change.  
   Return value: `*this`
8. `double_complex& double_complex::operator*=(double rhs)`
   Multiplies *this by `rhs` and stores the product in *this.
   `_re=_re*rhs, _im=_im*rhs`  
   Return value: *this

9. `double_complex& double_complex::operator/=(double rhs)`
   Divides *this by `rhs` and stores the quotient in *this.
   `_re=_re/rhs, _im=_im/rhs)`
   Return value: *this

10. `double_complex& double_complex::operator=(const double_complex& rhs)`
    Copies `rhs` to *this.
    Return value: *this

11. `double_complex& double_complex::operator+=(const double_complex& rhs)`
    Adds `rhs` to *this and stores the sum in *this.
    Return value: *this

12. `double_complex& double_complex::operator-=(const double_complex& rhs)`
    Subtracts `rhs` from *this and stores the difference in *this.
    Return value: *this

13. `double_complex& double_complex::operator*=(const double_complex& rhs)`
    Multiplies *this by `rhs` and stores the product in *this.
    Return value: *this

14. `double_complex& double_complex::operator/=(const double_complex& rhs)`
    Divides *this by `rhs` and stores the quotient in *this.
    Return value: *this
(d) **double\_complex Non-Member Function**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>double_complex operator+(const double_complex&amp; lhs)</td>
<td>Performs unary + operation of lhs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>double_complex operator+(const double_complex&amp; lhs, const double_complex&amp; rhs)</td>
<td>Adds rhs to lhs and stores the sum in lhs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>double_complex operator+(const double_complex&amp; lhs, const double&amp; rhs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>double_complex operator+(const double&amp; lhs, const double_complex&amp; rhs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>double_complex operator-(const double_complex&amp; lhs)</td>
<td>Performs unary - operation of lhs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>double_complex operator-(const double_complex&amp; lhs, const double_complex&amp; rhs)</td>
<td>Subtracts rhs from lhs and stores the difference in lhs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>double_complex operator-(const double_complex&amp; lhs, const double&amp; rhs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>double_complex operator-(const double&amp; lhs, const double_complex&amp; rhs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>double_complex operator*(const double_complex&amp; lhs, const double_complex&amp; rhs)</td>
<td>Multiples lhs by rhs and stores the product in lhs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>double_complex operator*(const double_complex&amp; lhs, const double&amp; rhs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>double_complex operator*(const double&amp; lhs, const double_complex&amp; rhs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>double_complex operator/(const double_complex&amp; lhs, const double_complex&amp; rhs)</td>
<td>Divides lhs by rhs and stores the quotient in lhs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>double_complex operator/(const double_complex&amp; lhs, const double&amp; rhs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Definition Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>double_complex_operator_/ (const double_&amp; lhs, const double__complex_&amp; rhs)</td>
<td>Divides lhs by rhs and stores the quotient in lhs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bool_operator_== (const double__complex_&amp; lhs, const double__complex_&amp; rhs)</td>
<td>Compares the real part of lhs and rhs, and the imaginary parts of lhs and rhs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bool_operator_== (const double__complex_&amp; lhs, const double_&amp; rhs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bool_operator_== (const double__complex_&amp; lhs, const double__complex_&amp; rhs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bool_operator_!=(-const double__complex_&amp; lhs, const double__complex_&amp; rhs)</td>
<td>Compares the real parts of lhs and rhs, and the imaginary parts of lhs and rhs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bool_operator_!=(const double__complex_&amp; lhs, const double_&amp; rhs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bool_operator_!=(const double__complex_&amp; lhs, const double__complex_&amp; rhs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istream&amp;\ operator_&gt;&gt;(istream&amp; is, double__complex_&amp; x)</td>
<td>Inputs x in a format of u, (u), or (u,v) (u: real part, v: imaginary part)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ostream&amp;\ operator_&lt;&lt;(ostream&amp; os, const double__complex_&amp; x)</td>
<td>Outputs x in a format of u, (u), or (u,v) (u: real part, v: imaginary part)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>double_real(const double__complex_&amp; x)</td>
<td>Reads the real part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>double_imag(const double__complex_&amp; x)</td>
<td>Reads the imaginary part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>double_abs(const double__complex_&amp; x)</td>
<td>Calculates the absolute value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>double_arg(const double__complex_&amp; x)</td>
<td>Calculates the phase angle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>double__norm(const double__complex_&amp; x)</td>
<td>Calculates the absolute value of the square</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>double__complex__conj(const double__complex_&amp; x)</td>
<td>Calculates the conjugate complex number of x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Definition Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td><code>double_complex polar(</code></td>
<td>Calculates the double_complex value for a complex number with size rho and phase angle theta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const double&amp; rho,</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const double&amp; theta)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>double_complex cos(</code></td>
<td>Calculates the complex cosine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const double_complex&amp; x)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>double_complex cosh(</code></td>
<td>Calculates the complex hyperbolic cosine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const double_complex&amp; x)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>double_complex exp(</code></td>
<td>Calculates the exponential function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const double_complex&amp; x)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>double_complex log(</code></td>
<td>Calculates the natural logarithm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const double_complex&amp; x)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>double_complex log10(</code></td>
<td>Calculates the common logarithm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const double_complex&amp; x)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>double_complex pow(</code></td>
<td>Calculates the x to the yth power</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const double_complex&amp; x,</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>int y)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>double_complex pow(</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const double_complex&amp; x,</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const double&amp; y)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>double_complex pow(</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const double_complex&amp; x,</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const double_complex&amp; y)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>double_complex pow(</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const double&amp; x,</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const double_complex&amp; y)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>double_complex sin(</code></td>
<td>Calculates the complex sine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const double_complex&amp; x)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>double_complex sinh(</code></td>
<td>Calculates the complex hyperbolic sine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const double_complex&amp; x)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>double_complex sqrt(</code></td>
<td>Calculates the square root within the right half space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const double_complex&amp; x)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>double_complex tan(</code></td>
<td>Calculates the complex tangent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const double_complex&amp; x)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>double_complex tanh(</code></td>
<td>Calculates the complex hyperbolic tangent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const double_complex&amp; x)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. `double_complex operator+ (const double_complex& lhs)`
   Performs unary + operation of `lhs`.
   Return value: `lhs`

2. `double_complex operator+ (const double_complex& lhs, const double_complex& rhs)
   double_complex operator+ (const double_complex& lhs, const double& rhs)
   double_complex operator+ (const double& lhs, const double_complex& rhs)`
   Adds `lhs` to `rhs` and stores the sum in `lhs`.
   Return value: `double_complex(lhs)+=rhs`

3. `double_complex operator− (const double_complex& lhs)`
   Performs unary - operation of `lhs`.
   Return value: `double_complex(−lhs.real(), −lhs.imag())`

4. `double_complex operator− (const double_complex& lhs, const double_complex& rhs)
   double_complex operator− (const double_complex& lhs, const double& rhs)
   double_complex operator− (const double& lhs, const double_complex& rhs)`
   Subtracts `rhs` from `lhs` and stores the difference in `lhs`.
   Return value: `double_complex(lhs)=−rhs`

5. `double_complex operator*(const double_complex& lhs, const double_complex& rhs)
   double_complex operator*(const double_complex& lhs, const double& rhs)
   double_complex operator*(const double& lhs, const double_complex& rhs)`
   Multiplies `lhs` by `rhs` and stores the product in `lhs`.
   Return value: `double_complex(lhs)*=rhs`

6. `double_complex operator/(const double_complex& lhs, const double_complex& rhs)
   double_complex operator/(const double_complex& lhs, const double& rhs)
   double_complex operator/(const double& lhs, const double_complex& rhs)`
   Divides `lhs` by `rhs` and stores the quotient in `lhs`.
   Return value: `double_complex(lhs)/=rhs`

7. `bool operator==(const double_complex& lhs, const double_complex& rhs)
   bool operator==(const double_complex& lhs, const double& rhs)
   bool operator==(const double& lhs, const double_complex& rhs)`
   Compares the real parts of `lhs` and `rhs`, and the imaginary parts of `lhs` and `rhs`.
   For a double type parameter, the imaginary part is assumed to be 0.0.
   Return value: `lhs.real()==rhs.real() && lhs.imag()==rhs.imag()`
8. bool operator!=(const double_complex& lhs, const double_complex& rhs)
    bool operator!=(const double_complex& lhs, const double& rhs)
    bool operator!=(const double& lhs, const double_complex& rhs)

    Compares the real parts of \texttt{lhs} and \texttt{rhs}, and the imaginary parts of \texttt{lhs} and \texttt{rhs}.
    For a double type parameter, the imaginary part is assumed to be 0.0.
    Return value: \texttt{lhs.real() != rhs.real() || lhs.imag() != rhs.imag()}

9. istream& operator>>(istream& is, double_complex& x)

    Inputs \texttt{x} with a format of \texttt{u, (u), or (u,v)} (\texttt{u}: real part, \texttt{v}: imaginary part).
    The input value is converted to \texttt{double_complex}.
    If \texttt{x} is input in a format other than the \texttt{u, (u), or (u,v)} format, \texttt{is.setstate(ios_base::failbit)} is called.
    Return value: \texttt{is}

10. ostream& operator<<(ostream& os, const double_complex& x)

    Outputs \texttt{x} to \texttt{os}.
    The output format is \texttt{u, (u), or (u,v)} (\texttt{u}: real part, \texttt{v}: imaginary part).
    Return value: \texttt{os}

11. double real(const double_complex& x)

    Reads the real part.
    Return value: \texttt{x.real()}

12. double imag(const double_complex& x)

    Reads the imaginary part.
    Return value: \texttt{x.imag()}

13. double abs(const double_complex& x)

    Calculates the absolute value.
    Return value: \((|x.real|)^2 + |x.imag|)^{1/2}

14. double arg(const double_complex& x)

    Calculates the phase angle.
    Return value: \(\text{atan2}(x.imag(), x.real())\)

15. double norm(const double_complex& x)

    Calculates the absolute value of the square.
    Return value: \(|x.real|^2 + |x.imag|^2\)
16. `double_complex conj(const double_complex& x)`
   Calculates the conjugate complex number of `x`.
   Return value: `double_complex(x.real(), (-1)*x.imag())`

17. `double_complex polar(const double& rho, const double& theta)`
   Calculates the `double_complex` value for a complex number with size `rho` and phase angle (argument) `theta`.
   Return value: `double_complex(rho*cos(theta), rho*sin(theta))`

18. `double_complex cos(const double_complex& x)`
   Calculates the complex cosine.
   Return value: `double_complex(cos(x.real())*cosh(x.imag()), (-1)*sin(x.real())*sinh(x.imag()))`

19. `double_complex cosh(const double_complex& x)`
   Calculates the complex hyperbolic cosine.
   Return value: `cos(double_complex((-1)*x.imag(), x.real()))`

20. `double_complex exp(const double_complex& x)`
   Calculates the exponent function.
   Return value: `exp(x.real())*cos(x.imag()),exp(x.real())*sin(x.imag())`

21. `double_complex log(const double_complex& x)`
   Calculates the natural logarithm (base e).
   Return value: `double_complex(log(abs(x)), arg(x))`

22. `double_complex log10(const double_complex& x)`
   Calculates the common logarithm (base 10).
   Return value: `double_complex(log10(abs(x)), arg(x)/log(10))`

23. `double_complex pow(const double_complex& x, int y)`
   `double_complex pow(const double_complex& x, const double& y)`
   `double_complex pow(const double_complex& x, const double_complex& y)`
   `double_complex pow(const double& x, const double_complex& y)`
   Calculates the `x` to the `y`th power.
   If `pow(0,0)`, a domain error will occur.
   Return value: `exp(y*log(x))`
24. `double_complex sin(const double_complex& x)`
   Calculates the complex sine
   Return value: `double_complex(sin(x.real())*cosh(x.imag()), cos(x.real())*sinh(x.imag()))`

25. `double_complex sinh(const double_complex& x)`
   Calculates the complex hyperbolic sine
   Return value: `double_complex(0,-1)*sin(double_complex((-1)*x.imag(),x.real()))`

26. `double_complex sqrt(const double_complex& x)`
   Calculates the square root within the right half space
   Return value: `double_complex(sqrt(abs(x))*cos(arg(x)/2), sqrt(abs(x))*sin(arg(x)/2))`

27. `double_complex tan(const double_complex& x)`
   Calculates the complex tangent.
   Return value: `sin(x) / cos(x)`

28. `double_complex tanh(const double_complex& x)`
   Calculates the complex hyperbolic tangent.
   Return value: `sinh(x) / cosh(x)`
(5) **String Handling Class Library**

The header files for string handling class library is as follows.

```c
<string>
Defines the string class.
```

This class has no derivation.

(a) **string Class**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>iterator</td>
<td>char* type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>const_iterator</td>
<td>const char* type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constant</td>
<td>npos</td>
<td>Maximum string literal length (UNIT_MAX characters)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>s_ptr</td>
<td>Pointer to the memory area where the string literal is stored by the object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>s_len</td>
<td>The length of the string literal stored by the object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>s_res</td>
<td>Size of the reserved memory area to store string literal by the object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>string(void)</td>
<td>Constructor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string(const string&amp; str, size_t pos=0, size_t n=npos)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string(const char str, size_t n)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string(const char* str)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string(size_t n, char c)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~string()</td>
<td>Destructor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string&amp; operator=(const string&amp; str) Assigns str</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string&amp; operator=(const char* str)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string&amp; operator=(char c) Assigns c</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iterator begin() Calculates the start pointer of the string literal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>const_iterator begin() const</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iterator end()</td>
<td>Calculates the end pointer of the string literal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>const_iterator end() const</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t size() const</td>
<td>Calculates the length of the stored string literal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t length() const</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t max_size() const</td>
<td>Calculates the size of the reserved memory area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void resize(size_t n, char c)</td>
<td>Changes the string literal length to n that can be stored</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void resize(size_t n)</td>
<td>Changes the string literal length to n that can be stored</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t capacity() const</td>
<td>Calculates the size of the reserved memory area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void reserve(size_t res_arg = 0)</td>
<td>Performs re-allocation of the memory area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void clear()</td>
<td>Clears the stored string literal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bool empty() const</td>
<td>Checks whether the stored string literal length is 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>const char&amp; operator[](size_t pos) const</td>
<td>References s_ptr[pos]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>char&amp; operator[](size_t pos)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>const char&amp; at(size_t pos) const</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>char&amp; at(size_t pos)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string&amp; operator+=(const string&amp; str)</td>
<td>Adds string literal str</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string&amp; operator+=(const char* str)</td>
<td>Adds a character c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string&amp; append(const string&amp; str)</td>
<td>Adds string literal str</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string&amp; append(const char* str)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string&amp; append(const string&amp; str, size_t pos, size_t n)</td>
<td>Adds n characters of string literal str to the object position pos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Definition Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>string&amp; append(const char* str, size_t n)</td>
<td>Adds n characters to string literal str</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string&amp; append(size_t n, char c)</td>
<td>Adds n characters, each of which is c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string&amp; assign(const string&amp; str)</td>
<td>Assigns string literal str</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string&amp; assign(const char* str)</td>
<td>Add n characters to string literal str at position pos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string&amp; assign(const char* str, size_t n)</td>
<td>Assigns n characters of string literal str</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string&amp; assign(size_t n, char c)</td>
<td>Assigns n characters, each of which is c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string&amp; assign(const string&amp; str, size_t pos, size_t n)</td>
<td>Insert n characters to position pos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string&amp; assign(const char* str, size_t n)</td>
<td>Assigns n characters of string literal str</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string&amp; insert(size_t pos1, const string&amp; str)</td>
<td>Inserts string literal str to position pos1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string&amp; insert(size_t pos1, const char* str, size_t pos2, size_t n)</td>
<td>Inserts n characters starting from pos2 of string literal str to position pos1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string&amp; insert(size_t pos, const char* s, size_t n)</td>
<td>Inserts n characters of string literal str to position pos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string&amp; insert(size_t pos, const char* str)</td>
<td>Inserts string literal str to position pos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string&amp; insert(size_t pos, size_t n, char c)</td>
<td>Inserts a string literal of n characters c to position pos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iterator insert(iterator p, char c=char())</td>
<td>Inserts a character c before the character specified by p</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Definition Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>void insert(iterator p, size_t n, char c)</td>
<td>Inserts n characters c before the character specified by p</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string&amp; erase(size_t pos=0, size_t n=npos)</td>
<td>Deletes n characters from position pos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iterator erase(iterator position)</td>
<td>Deletes the character specified by position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iterator erase(iterator first, iterator last)</td>
<td>Deletes the characters in range [first, last]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string&amp; replace(</td>
<td>Replaces the string literal of n1 characters starting from position pos1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t pos1,</td>
<td>with string literal str</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t n1,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>const string&amp; str,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string&amp; replace(size_t pos1,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t n1,</td>
<td>Replaces the string literal of n1 characters starting from position pos1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>const char* str,</td>
<td>with string literal str</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t pos2,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t n2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string&amp; replace(size_t pos,</td>
<td>Replaces the string literal of n1 characters starting from position pos1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t n1,</td>
<td>with string literal str</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>const char* str,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t n2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string&amp; replace(size_t pos,</td>
<td>Replaces the string literal of n1 characters starting from position pos1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t n1,</td>
<td>with n2 characters, each of which is c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>char c)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string&amp; replace(iterator i1,</td>
<td>Replaces the string literal from position i1 to i2 with string literal str</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iterator i2,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>const string&amp; str)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Definition Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>string&amp; replace(</td>
<td>Replaces the string literal from position i1 to i2 with string literal str</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iterator i1, iterator i2,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>const char* str)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string&amp; replace(</td>
<td>Replaces string literal from position i1 to i2 with n characters of string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iterator i1, iterator i2,</td>
<td>literal str</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>const char* str, size_t n)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string&amp; replace(</td>
<td>Replaces the string literal from position i1 to i2 with n characters, each</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iterator i1, iterator i2,</td>
<td>of which is c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t n, char c)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t copy(</td>
<td>Copies the first n characters of string literal str to position pos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>char* str, size_t n, size_t pos=0)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void swap(string&amp; str)</td>
<td>Swaps *this with string literal str</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>const char* c_str() const</td>
<td>References the pointer to the memory area where the string literal is stored</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>const char* data() const</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t find(</td>
<td>Finds the position where the string literal same as string literal str first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>const string&amp; str, size_t pos=0)</td>
<td>appears after position pos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t find(</td>
<td>Finds the position where the character c first appears after position pos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>const char* str, size_t pos=0)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t find(char c, size_t pos=0)</td>
<td>Finds the position where a string literal same as string literal str appears</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>most recently before position pos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t rfind(</td>
<td>Finds the position where a string literal same as string literal str appears</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>const string&amp; str, size_t pos=npos)</td>
<td>most recently before position pos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t rfind(</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>const char* str, size_t pos=npos)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Definition Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>size_t rfind(const char* str, size_t pos, size_t n) const</td>
<td>Finds the position where the string literal same as n characters of str appears most recently before position pos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t rfind(char c, size_t pos) const</td>
<td>Finds the position where the character c appears most recently before position pos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t find_first_of(const string&amp; str, size_t pos=0) const</td>
<td>Finds the position where any character included in string literal str first appears after position pos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t find_first_of(const char* str, size_t pos=0) const</td>
<td>Finds the position where any character included in n characters of string literal str first appear after position pos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t find_first_of(char c, size_t pos=0) const</td>
<td>Finds the position where the character c first appears after position pos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t find_last_of(const string&amp; str, size_t pos) const</td>
<td>Finds the position where any character included in string literal str appears most recently before position pos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t find_last_of(const char* str, size_t pos) const</td>
<td>Finds the position where any character included in the n characters of string literal str appears most recently before position pos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t find_last_of(char c, size_t pos) const</td>
<td>Finds the position where the character c appears most recently before position pos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t find_first_not_of(const string&amp; str, size_t pos=0) const</td>
<td>Finds the position where a character different from any character included in string literal str first appears after position pos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t find_first_not_of(const char* str, size_t pos=0) const</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Definition Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>size_t find_first_not_of(const char* str, size_t pos, size_t n) const</td>
<td>Finds the position where a character different from any character in the first n characters of string literal str appears after position pos.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t find_first_not_of(char c, size_t pos=0) const</td>
<td>Finds the position where a character different from c first appears after position pos.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t find_last_not_of(const string&amp; str, size_t pos=npos) const</td>
<td>Finds the position where a character different from any character included in string literal str appears most recently before position pos.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t find_last_not_of(const char* str, size_t pos=npos) const</td>
<td>Finds the position where a character different from any character in the first n characters of string literal str appears most recently before position pos.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size_t find_last_not_of(char c, size_t pos=npos) const</td>
<td>Finds the location where a character different from c appears most recently before position pos.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string substr(size_t pos=0, size_t n=npos) const</td>
<td>Creates an object from a string literal in the range ([pos,n]) of the stored string literal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int compare(const string&amp; str) const</td>
<td>Compares the string literal with string literal str.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int compare(size_t pos1, size_t n1, const string&amp; str) const</td>
<td>Compares n1 characters from position pos1 of *this with str.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int compare(size_t pos1, size_t n1, const string&amp; str, size_t pos2, size_t n2) const</td>
<td>Compares the string literal of n1 characters from position pos1 with the string literal of n2 characters from position pos2 of string literal str.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int compare(const char* str) const</td>
<td>Compares *this with string literal str.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int compare(size_t pos1, size_t n1, const char* str, size_t n2=npos) const</td>
<td>Compares the string literal of n1 characters from position pos1 with n2 characters of string literal str.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. string::string (void)
   Sets as follows:
   
   s_ptr = 0;
   s_len = 0;
   s_res = 1;

2. string::string (const string& str, size_t pos=0, size_t n=npos)
   Copies str. Note that s_len will be the smaller value of n and s_len.

3. string::string (const char* str, size_t n)
   Sets as follows:
   
   s_ptr = str;
   s_len = n;
   s_res = n+1;

4. string::string (const char* str)
   Sets as follows:
   
   s_ptr = str;
   s_len = string length of str;
   s_res = string length str + 1 of;

5. string::string (size_t n, char c)
   Sets as follows:
   
   s_ptr=string literal of n characters, each of which is c
   s_len = n;
   s_res = n+1;

6. string::~string ()
   Destructor of the class string.
   Deallocates the memory area where the string literal is stored.

7. string& string::operator=(const string& str)
   Assigns the str data.
   Return value: *this

8. string& string::operator= (const char* str)
   Creates a string object from str and assigns the data of str to the string object.
   Return value: *this
9. string& string::operator= (char c)
   Creates a string object from c and assigns the data of the string to the string object.
   Return value: *this

10. string::iterator string::begin()
    string::const_iterator string::begin() const
    Calculates the start pointer of the string literal.
    Return value: Start pointer of string literal

11. string::iterator string::end ()
    string::const_iterator string::end() const
    Calculates the end pointer of the string literal.
    Return value: End pointer of string literal

12. size_t string::size () const
    size_t string::length() const
    Calculates the length of the stored string literal.
    Return value: Length of the stored string literal

13. size_t string::max_size() const
    Calculates the size of the reserved memory area.
    Return value: Size of the reserved area

14. void string::resize(size_t n, char c)
    Changes the string literal length available to n.
    If n<=size(), replaces the string literal with the original string literal with length n.
    If n>size(), replaces the string literal with a string literal that has c appended to the end so that
    the length will be equal to n.
    The length must be n<=max_size().
    If n>max_size(), the string literal length is n=max_size().

15. void string::resize (size_t n)
    Changes the string literal length available to n.
    If n<=size(), replaces the string literal with the original string literal with length n.
    The length must be n<=max_size.

16. size_t string::capacity() const
    Calculates the size of the reserved memory area.
    Return value: Size of the reserved memory area
17. void string::reserve(size_t res_arg = 0)
   Re-allocates the memory area.
   After reserve(), capacity() will be equal to or larger than the reserve() parameter.
   When memory area is re-allocated, all references, pointers, and iterator that references the
   elements of the numeric literal (number sequence, series) become invalid.

18. void string::clear()
   Clears the stored string literal.

19. bool string::empty() const
   Checks whether the stored string literal length is 0.
   Return value: If the length of the stored string literal is 0: true
                 If the length of the stored string literal is non zero: false

20. const char& string::operator [] (size_t pos) const
    char& string::operator[] (size_t pos)
    const char& string::at (size_t pos) const
    char& string::at (size_t pos)
    References s_ptr[pos].
    Return value: If n<s_len: s_ptr [pos]
                 If n>= s_len: ’0’

21. string& string::operator+= (const string& str)
    Appends the string literal stored in str to the left-hand-side object.
    Return value: *this

22. string& string::operator+=(const char* str)
    Creates a string object from str and adds the string literal to the left-hand-side object.
    Return value: *this

23. string& string::operator+=(char c)
    Creates a string object from c and adds the string literal.
    Return value: *this

24. string& string::append(const string& str)
    string& string::append(const char* str)
    Appends string literal str to the object.
    Return value: *this
25. string& string::append (const string& str, size_t pos, size_t n);
   Appends \( n \) characters of string literal \( str \) to the object position \( pos \).
   Return value: \*this

26. string& string::append (const char* str, size_t n)
   Appends \( n \) characters of string literal \( str \) to the object.
   Return value: \*this

27. string& string::append (size_t n, char c)
   Appends \( n \) characters, each of which is \( c \), to the object.
   Return value: \*this

28. string& string::assign(const string& str)
   string& string::assign(const char* str)
   Assigns string literal \( str \).
   Return value: \*this

29. string& string::assign (const string& str, size_t pos, size_t n)
   Assigns \( n \) characters of string literal \( str \) to position \( pos \).
   Return value: \*this

30. string& string::assign (const char* str, size_t n)
   Assigns \( n \) characters of string literal \( str \).
   Return value: \*this

31. string& string::assign (size_t n, char c)
   Assigns \( n \) characters, each of which is \( c \).
   Return value: \*this

32. string& string::insert(size_t pos1, const string& str)
   Inserts string literal \( str \) to position \( pos1 \).
   Return value: \*this

33. string& string::insert (size_t pos1, const string& str, size_t pos2, size_t n)
   Inserts \( n \) characters started from position \( pos2 \) of string literal \( str \) to position \( pos1 \).
   Return value: \*this

34. string& string::insert (size_t pos, const char* str, size_t n)
   Inserts \( n \) characters of string literal \( str \) to position \( pos \).
   Return value: \*this
35. string& string::insert (size_t pos, const char* str)
   Inserts string literal str to position pos.
   Return value: *this

36. string& string::insert (size_t pos, size_t n, char c)
   Inserts a string literal of n characters, each of which is c, to position pos.
   Return value: *this

37. string::iterator string::insert (iterator p, char c=char())
   Inserts character c before the character specified by p.
   Return value: Character inserted

38. void string::insert (iterator p, size_t n, char c)
   Inserts n characters, each of which is c, before the character specified by p.

39. string& string::erase (size_t pos=0, size_t n=npos)
   Deletes n characters starting from position pos.
   Return value: *this

40. iterator string::erase(iterator position)
   Deletes the character specified by position.
   Return value: If the next iterator of the element to be deleted exists:
                  The next iterator of the deleted elements
                  If the next iterator of the elements to be deleted do not exist: end()

41. iterator string::erase (iterator first, iterator last)
   Deletes the characters in range [first, last].
   Return value: If the next iterator of last exists: The next iterator of last
                  If the next iterator of last does not exists: end()

42. string& string::replace(size_t pos1, size_t n1, const string& str)
    string& string::replace(size_t pos1, size_t n1, const char* str)
   Replaces the string literal of n1 characters starting from position pos1 with string literal str.
   Return value: *this

43. string& string::replace (size_t pos, size_t n1, const string& str, size_t pos2, size_t n2)
   Replaces the string literal of n1 characters starting from position pos1 with the string literal of n2 characters starting from position pos2 in string literal str.
   Return value: *this
44. string& string::replace (size_t pos, size_t n1, const char* str, size_t n2)
   Replaces the string literal of \( n1 \) characters starting from position \( pos \) with string literal \( str \) of \( n2 \) characters.
   Return value: *this

45. string& string::replace (size_t pos, size_t n1, size_t n2, char c)
   Replaces the string literal of \( n1 \) characters starting from position \( pos \) with \( n2 \) characters, each of which is \( c \).
   Return value: *this

46. string& string::replace (iterator i1, iterator i2, const string& str)
   string& string::replace(iterator i1, iterator i2, const char* str)
   Replaces the string literal from position \( i1 \) to \( i2 \) with string literal \( str \).
   Return value: *this

47. string& string::replace (iterator i1, iterator i2, const char* str, size_t n)
   Replaces the string literal from position \( i1 \) to \( i2 \) with \( n \) characters of string literal \( str \).
   Return value: *this

48. string& string::replace (iterator i1, iterator i2, size_t n, char c)
   Replaces the characters from position \( i1 \) to \( i2 \) with \( n \) characters, each of which is \( c \).
   Return value: *this

49. size_t string::copy(char* str, size_t n, size_t pos=0) const
   Copies \( n \) characters of string literal \( str \) to position \( pos \).
   Return value: rlen

50. void string::swap(string& str)
   Swaps *this with string literal \( str \).

51. const char* string::c_str() const
   const char* string::data() const
   References the pointer to the area where the string literal is stored.
   Return value: s_ptr
52. size_t string::find (const string& str, size_t pos=0) const
   size_t string::find (const char* str, size_t pos=0) const
   Finds the position where the string literal same as string literal str first appears after position pos.
   Return value: Offset of string literal

53. size_t string::find (const char* str, size_t pos, size_t n) const
   Finds the position where the string literal same as the n characters of str first appears after position pos.
   Return value: Offset of string literal

54. size_t string::find (char c, size_t pos=0) const
   Finds the position where character c first appears after position pos.
   Return value: Offset of string literal

55. size_t string::rfind(const string& str, size_t pos=npos) const
    size_t string::rfind(char *str, size_t pos=npos) const
    Finds the position where a string literal same as string literal str appears most recently before position pos.
    Return value: Offset of string literal

56. size_t string::rfind (const char* str, size_t pos, size_t n) const
    Finds the position where the string literal same as n characters of str appears most recently before position pos.
    Return value: Offset of string literal

57. size_t string::rfind (char c, size_t pos=npos) const
    Finds the position where character c appears most recently before position pos.
    Return value: Offset of string literal

58. size_t string::find_first_of(const string& str, size_t pos=0) const
    size_t string::find_first_of(const char* str, size_t pos=0) const
    Finds the position where any character included in string literal str first appears after position pos.
    Return value: Offset of string literal
59. `size_t string::find_first_of (const char* str, size_t pos, size_t n) const`

   Finds the position where any character included in `n` characters of string literal `str` first appear after position `pos`.
   Return value: Offset of string literal

60. `size_t string::find_first_of (char c, size_t pos=0) const`

   Finds the position where character `c` first appears after position `pos`.
   Return value: Offset of string literal

61. `size_t string::find_last_of(const string& str, size_t pos=npos) const`

   Finds the position where any character included in string literal `str` appears most recently before position `pos`.
   Return value: Offset of string literal

62. `size_t string::find_last_of(const char* str, size_t pos, size_t n) const`

   Finds the position where any character included in the first `n` characters of string literal `str` appears most recently before position `pos`.
   Return value: Offset of string literal

63. `size_t string::find_last_of(char c, size_t pos=npos) const`

   Finds the position where character `c` appears most recently before position `pos`.
   Return value: Offset of string literal

64. `size_t string::find_first_not_of(const string& str, size_t pos=0) const`

   Finds the position where a character different from any character included in string literal `str` first appears after position `pos`.
   Return value: Offset of string literal

65. `size_t string::find_first_not_of(const char* str, size_t pos=0) const`

   Finds the position where a character different from any character in the first `n` characters of string literal `str` first appears after position `pos`.
   Return value: Offset of string literal

66. `size_t string::find_first_not_of(char c, size_t pos=0) const`

   Finds the position where a character different from character `c` first appears after position `pos`.
   Return value: Offset of string literal
67. size_t string::find_last_not_of(const string& str, size_t pos=npos) const
    size_t string::find_last_not_of(const char* str, size_t pos=npos) const
    Finds the position where a character different from any character included in string literal str
    appears most recently before position pos.
    Return value: Offset of string literal

68. size_t string::find_last_not_of (const char* str, size_t pos, size_t n) const
    Finds the position where a character different from any character in the first n characters of
    string literal str appears most recently before position pos.
    Return value: Offset of string literal

69. size_t string::find_last_not_of (char c, size_t pos=npos) const
    Finds the position where a character different from character c appears most recently before
    position pos.
    Return value: Offset of string literal

70. string string::substr(size_t pos=0, size_t n=npos) const
    Creates an object from a string literal in the range [pos,n] of the stored string literal.
    Return value: Object address with string literal range [pos,n]

71. int string::compare(const string& str) const
    Compares the string literal with string literal str.
    Return value: If the string literals are the same: 0
    If the string literals are different: 1 when this->s_len>str.s_len,
    -1 when this->s_len < str.s_len

72. int string::compare (size_t pos1, size_t n1, const string& str) const
    Compares n1 characters from position pos1 of *this with string literal str.
    Return value: If the string literals are the same: 0
    If the string literals are different: 1 when this->s_len>str.s_len,
    -1 when this->s_len < str.s_len

73. int string::compare(size_t pos1, size_t n1, const string& str, size_t pos2, size_t n2) const
    Compares a string literal of n1 characters from position pos1 with the string literal of n2
    characters from position pos2 of string literal str.
    Return value: If the string literals are the same: 0
    If the string literals are different: 1 when this->s_len>str.s_len,
    -1 when this->s_len < str.s_len
74. int string::compare (const char* str) const
   Compares *this with string literal str.
   Return value: If the string literals are the same: 0
                 If the string literals are different: 1 when this->s_len>str.s_len,
                 -1 when this->s_len < str.s_len

75. int string::compare (size_t pos1, size_t n1, const char* str, size_t n2=npos) const
   Compares the string literal of n1 characters from position pos1 with
   n2 characters of string literal str.
   Return value: If the string literals are the same: 0
                 If the string literals are different: 1 when this->s_len>str.s_len,
                 -1 when this->s_len < str.s_len
(b) string Class Manipulators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Definition Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>string operator + (const string&amp; lhs, const string&amp; rhs)</td>
<td>Appends the string literal (or characters) of rhs to the string literal (or character) of lhs, creates an object and stores the string literal in the object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string operator+(const char* lhs, const string&amp; rhs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string operator+(char lhs, const string&amp; rhs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string operator+(const string&amp; lhs, const char* rhs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string operator+(const string&amp; lhs, char rhs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bool operator==(const string&amp; lhs, const string&amp; rhs)</td>
<td>Compares the string literal of lhs with the string literal of rhs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bool operator==(const char* lhs, const string&amp; rhs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bool operator==(const string&amp; lhs, const char* rhs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bool operator!=(const string&amp; lhs, const string&amp; rhs)</td>
<td>Compares the string literal of lhs with the string literal of rhs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bool operator!=(const char* lhs, const string&amp; rhs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bool operator!=(const string&amp; lhs, const char* rhs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bool operator&lt;(const string&amp; lhs, const string&amp; rhs)</td>
<td>Compares the string literal length of lhs with the string literal length of rhs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Definition Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>bool operator&lt;(const char* lhs, const string&amp; rhs)</td>
<td>Compares the string literal length of lhs with the string literal length of rhs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bool operator&lt;(const string&amp; lhs, const char* rhs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bool operator&gt;(const string&amp; lhs, const string&amp; rhs)</td>
<td>Compares the string literal length of lhs with the string literal length of rhs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bool operator&gt;(const char* lhs, const string&amp; rhs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bool operator&lt;=(const string&amp; lhs, const string&amp; rhs)</td>
<td>Compares the string literal length of lhs with the string literal length of rhs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bool operator&lt;=(const char* lhs, const string&amp; rhs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bool operator&gt;=(const string&amp; lhs, const string&amp; rhs)</td>
<td>Compares the string literal length of lhs with the string literal length of rhs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bool operator&gt;=(const char* lhs, const string&amp; rhs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void swap(string&amp; lhs, string&amp; rhs)</td>
<td>Swaps the string literal of lhs with the string literal of rhs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istream&amp; operator&gt;&gt;(istream&amp; is, string&amp; str)</td>
<td>Extracts the string literal to str</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ostream&amp; operator&lt;&lt;(ostream&amp; os, const string&amp; str)</td>
<td>Inserts string literal str</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istream&amp; getline(istream&amp; is, string&amp; str, char delim)</td>
<td>Extracts a string literal from is and appends it to str. If ‘delim’ is detected, terminates input.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istream&amp; getline(istream&amp; is, string&amp; str)</td>
<td>Extracts a string literal from is and appends it to str. If a new-line character is detected, terminates input.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. `string operator+(const string& lhs, const string& rhs)`
   `string operator+(const char* lhs, const string& rhs)`
   `string operator+(char lhs, const string& rhs)`
   `string operator+(const string& lhs, char rhs)`
   Appends the string literal (characters) of `lhs` with the strings literal (characters) of `rhs`, creates an object and stores the string literal in the object.
   Return value: Object where the linked string literals are stored

2. `bool operator==(const string& lhs, const string& rhs)`
   `bool operator==(const char* lhs, const string& rhs)`
   `bool operator==(const string& lhs, const char* rhs)`
   Compares the string literal of `lhs` with the string literal of `rhs`.
   Return value: If the string literals are the same: true
   If the string literals are different: false

3. `bool operator!=(const string& lhs, const string& rhs)`
   `bool operator!=(const char* lhs, const string& rhs)`
   `bool operator!=(const string& lhs, const char* rhs)`
   Compares the string literal of `lhs` with the string literal of `rhs`.
   Return value: If the string literals are the same: false
   If the string literals are different: true

4. `bool operator<(const string& lhs, const string& rhs)`
   `bool operator<(const char* lhs, const string& rhs)`
   `bool operator<(const string& lhs, const char* rhs)`
   Compares the string literal length of `lhs` with the string literal length of `rhs`.
   Return value: If `lhs.s_len < rhs.s_len`: true
   If `lhs.s_len >= rhs.s_len`: false

5. `bool operator>(const string& lhs, const string& rhs)`
   `bool operator>(const char* lhs, const string& rhs)`
   `bool operator>(const string& lhs, const char* rhs)`
   Compares the string literal length of `lhs` with the string literal length of `rhs`.
   Return value: If `lhs.s_len > rhs.s_len`: true
   If `lhs.s_len <= rhs.s_len`: false
6. bool operator<=(const string& lhs, const string& rhs)  
   bool operator<=(const char* lhs, const string& rhs)  
   bool operator<=(const string& lhs, const char* rhs)  
   Compares the string literal length of \texttt{lhs} with the string literal length of \texttt{rhs}.  
   Return value: If \texttt{lhs.s_len} <= \texttt{rhs.s_len}: true  
                 If \texttt{lhs.s_len} > \texttt{rhs.s_len}: false  

7. bool operator>=(const string& lhs, const string& rhs)  
   bool operator>=(const char* lhs, const string& rhs)  
   bool operator>=(const string& lhs, const char* rhs)  
   Compares the string literal length of \texttt{lhs} with the string literal length of \texttt{rhs}.  
   Return value: If \texttt{lhs.s_len} >= \texttt{rhs.s_len}: true  
                 If \texttt{lhs.s_len} < \texttt{rhs.s_len}: false  

8. void swap (string& lhs, string& rhs)  
   Swaps the string literal of \texttt{lhs} with the string literal of \texttt{rhs}.  

9. istream& operator>>(istream& is, string& str)  
   Extracts a string literal to \texttt{str}.  
   Return value: is  

10. ostream& operator<<(ostream& os, const string& str)  
    Inserts string literal \texttt{str}.  
    Return value: os  

11. istream& getline (istream& is, string& str, char delim)  
    Extracts a string literal from \texttt{is} and appends it to \texttt{str}.  
    If the character \texttt{delim} is found, the input is terminated.  
    Return value: is  

12. istream& getline (istream& is, string& str)  
    Extracts a string literal from \texttt{is} and appends it to \texttt{str}.  
    If a new-line character is found, the input is terminated.  
    Return value: is
10.4.3 Reentrant Library

A library created by using the `reent` option of the standard library generator is able to execute all reentrants except for the `rand` and `srand` functions.

Table 10.50 lists libraries that are reentrant when the `reent` option is not specified. A function that is marked with $\Delta$ in the table sets the `errno` variable. Such a function can be assumed to be reentrant unless the program refers to `errno`.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Standard Include File</th>
<th>Function Name</th>
<th>Reentrant</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>stddef.h</td>
<td>offsetof</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>assert.h</td>
<td>assert</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>ctype.h</td>
<td>isalnum</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>isalpha</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>iscntrl</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>isdigit</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>isgraph</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>islower</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>isprint</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ispunct</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>isspace</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>isupper</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>isxdigit</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>tolower</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>toupper</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>math.h</td>
<td>acos</td>
<td>$\Delta$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>asin</td>
<td>$\Delta$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>atan</td>
<td>$\Delta$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>atan2</td>
<td>$\Delta$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>cos</td>
<td>$\Delta$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sin</td>
<td>$\Delta$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>tan</td>
<td>$\Delta$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 10.50 Reentrant Library List (cont)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Standard Include File</th>
<th>Function Name</th>
<th>Reentrant</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>math.h(cont)</td>
<td>cosh</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sinh</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>tanh</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>exp</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>frexp</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ldexp</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>log</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>log10</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>modf</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pow</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sqrt</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ceil</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fabs</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>floor</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fmod</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>mathf.h</td>
<td>acosf</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>asinf</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>atanf</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>atan2f</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>cosf</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sinf</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>tanf</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>coshf</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sinhf</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>tanhf</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>expf</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>frexp</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ldexpf</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>logf</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>log10f</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Table 10.50 Reentrant Library List (cont)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Standard Include File</th>
<th>Function Name</th>
<th>Reentrant</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>mathf.h (cont)</td>
<td>modff</td>
<td>Δ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>powf</td>
<td>Δ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sqrtf</td>
<td>Δ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ceil</td>
<td>Δ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fabsf</td>
<td>Δ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>floorf</td>
<td>Δ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fmodf</td>
<td>Δ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>setjmp.h</td>
<td>setjmp</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>longjmp</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>stdarg.h</td>
<td>va_start</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>va_arg</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>va_end</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>stdio.h</td>
<td>fclose</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fflush</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fopen</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>freopen</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>setbuf</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>setvbuf</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fprintf</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fscanf</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>printf</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>scanf</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sprintf</td>
<td>Δ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sscanf</td>
<td>Δ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>vfprintf</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>vprintf</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>vsprintf</td>
<td>Δ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fgetc</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fgets</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fputc</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No.</td>
<td>Standard Include File</td>
<td>Function Name</td>
<td>Reentrant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>stdio.h (cont)</td>
<td>fgets</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>getc</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>getchar</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>gets</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>putc</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>putchar</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>puts</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ungetc</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fread</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fwrite</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fseek</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ftell</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>rewind</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>clearerr</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>feof</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ferror</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>stdlib.h</td>
<td>atof</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>atoi</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>atol</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>atolfixed</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>atolaccum</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>strtod</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>strtol</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>strtoul</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>strtoll</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>strtoull</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>strtofixed</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>strtolaccum</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 10.50 Reentrant Library List (cont)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Standard Include File</th>
<th>Function Name</th>
<th>Reentrant</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>stdlib.h (cont)</td>
<td>rand</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>srand</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>calloc</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>free</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>malloc</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>realloc</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>free__X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>malloc__X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>realloc__X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>calloc__X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>free__Y</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>malloc__Y</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>realloc__Y</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>calloc__Y</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>bsearch</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>qsort</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>abs</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>div</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>labs</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>llabs</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>lddiv</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>llldiv</td>
<td>∆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No.</td>
<td>Standard Include File</td>
<td>Function Name</td>
<td>Reentrant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>string.h</td>
<td>memcpy</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>memcpy__X__X</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>memcpy__X__Y</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>memcpy__Y__X</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>memcpy__Y__Y</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>strcpy</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>strncpy</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>strcat</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>strncat</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>memcmp</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>strcmp</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>strncmp</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>memchr</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>strchr</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>strcspn</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>strrchr</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>strspn</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>strstr</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>strtok</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>memset</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>strerror</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>strlen</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>memmove</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reentrant column:  
O: Reentrant  
X: Non-reentrant  
∆: errno is set.
10.4.4 Unsupported Libraries

Table 10.51 lists the libraries not supported by this compiler.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Standard Include File</th>
<th>Reentrant</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>locale.h*</td>
<td>setlocale, localeconv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>signal.h*</td>
<td>signal, raise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>stdio.h</td>
<td>remove, rename, tmpfile, tmpnam, fgetpos, fsetpos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>stdlib.h</td>
<td>abort, atexit, exit, getenv, system, mblen, mbtowc, wcswcs, wcstombs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>string.h</td>
<td>strcoll, strxfrm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>time.h*</td>
<td>clock, difftime, mktime, time, asctime, ctime, gmtime, localtime, strftime</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The header file is not supported.
10.4.5 DSP Library

(1) Overview

This section describes a digital signal processing (DSP) library for use with the SH2-DSP the SH3-DSP, and the SH4AL-DSP (called SH-DSP hereafter). This library includes standard DSP functions, so various DSP operations can be performed by using a single function or using several functions in sequence.

This library includes the following functions.

- Fast Fourier Transforms
- Window Functions
- Filters
- Convolution and Correlation
- Miscellaneous

These are reentrant library functions except for the fast Fourier transforms and filters.

When using this library, include files shown in table 10.52, and link the library suitable for the target CPU and compiler options as shown in table 10.53.

After calling the library, a return value, EDSP_OK, is returned if a function is correctly terminated, and a return value, EDSP_BAD_ARG or EDSP_NO_HEAP, is returned if a function is not correctly terminated. For details on the return values, refer to the description of each function.

Table 10.52 Include Files for DSP Library

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Library Type</th>
<th>Contents</th>
<th>Include File</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DSP library</td>
<td>Library for DSP operations</td>
<td>&lt;ensigdsp.h&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;filt_ws.h&gt;*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: When the filter functions are used in a program, filt_ws.h must be included once.
### Table 10.53 DSP Libraries

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CPU</th>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Library</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SH2-DSP</td>
<td>-pic=0</td>
<td>shdsslpl.lib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-pic=1</td>
<td>shdsspic.lib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH3-DSP</td>
<td>-pic=0 -endian=big</td>
<td>sh3dspnb.lib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-pic=1 -endian=big</td>
<td>sh3dsppb.lib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-pic=0 -endian=little</td>
<td>sh3dspnl.lib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-pic=1 -endian=little</td>
<td>sh3dspl.lib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH4AL-DSP</td>
<td>-pic=0 -endian=big</td>
<td>sh4aldspnb.lib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-pic=1 -endian=big</td>
<td>sh4aldsppb.lib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-pic=0 -endian=little</td>
<td>sh4aldspnl.lib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-pic=1 -endian=little</td>
<td>sh4aldspl.lib</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### (2) Data Formats

This library regards data as a signed 16-bit fixed-point number. The signed 16-bit fixed-point number has a data format where the decimal point is fixed at the right of the most significant bit (MSB) as shown in figure 10.8 (a). The signed 16-bit fixed-point number can represent values in the range from -1 to 1-2^{-15}. The library accepts data with a short-type data format. Therefore, it is necessary to represent data as signed 16-bit fixed-point number when this library is used in a C/C++ program.

For example, +0.5 is H'4000 when represented with signed 16-bit fixed-point number. Therefore, the short-type real argument sent to the library function is H'4000.

For the operation within the library, signed 32-bit fixed-point numbers and signed 40-bit fixed-point numbers are also used. The data format of the signed 32-bit fixed-point number is shown in figure 10.8 (b). Values in the range from -1 to 1-2^{-31} can be represented. As shown in figure 10.8 (c), the signed 40-bit fixed-point number has a data format with eight guard bits. Values in the range from -2^{8} to 2^{8}-2^{-31} can be represented.

The product of signed 16-bit fixed-point numbers is stored as a signed 32-bit fixed-point number. An overflow will occur only if H'8000 is multiplied by H'8000 for fixed-point multiplication by using a DSP instruction. The least significant bit (LSB) of a product is always 0. To use the product for the next operation, the upper 16 bits are converted to a signed 16-bit fixed-point number. At that time, an underflow can occur, and accuracy can be lost.
For multiply-and-accumulate operation, the sum is stored in a signed 40-bit fixed-point number. Be careful to prevent an overflow from occurring during addition. If an overflow occurs during the operation, the result will be incorrect. To avoid an overflow, a scaling of the coefficient and input data must be performed. This library incorporates a scaling function. For details on scaling, refer to the description of each function.

(a) Signed 16-bit fixed-point number (-1 to 1-2^{15})

(b) Signed 32-bit fixed-point number (-1 to 1-2^{31})

(c) Signed 40-bit fixed-point number (-2^8 to 2^8×2^{-31})

S : Sign bit
▲ : Decimal point

Figure 10.8  Data Format
(3) Efficiency

This library function is optimized for fast execution on the SH-DSP. To use the library efficiently, the following two recommendations should be observed whenever possible in defining the memory map of a target system.

- The program code segment should be located in the memory that supports single cycle 32-bit reads.
- The data segment should be located in the memory that supports single cycle 16 (or 32) bit reads and writes.

If there is sufficient internal 32-bit memory, this would be a suitable location for the library code and data. If other memory is used, the recommendations above should be followed whenever possible.

(4) Use with DSP-C

The DSP library can be used with the DSP-C language in a program. When a library function has two types in the description of each function, the type listed above is used when the `dspc` option is not specified, and the type listed below is used when the `dspc` option is specified.

When a library function has only one type, the type can be used in both cases when the `dspc` option is specified and not specified.
(5) Fast Fourier Transforms

(a) Overview

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FftComplex</td>
<td>Executes not-in-place, complex FFT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FftReal</td>
<td>Executes not-in-place, real FFT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IfftComplex</td>
<td>Executes not-in-place, complex inverse FFT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IfftReal</td>
<td>Executes not-in-place, real inverse FFT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FftInComplex</td>
<td>Executes in-place, complex FFT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FftInReal</td>
<td>Executes in-place, real FFT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IfftInComplex</td>
<td>Executes in-place, complex inverse FFT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IfftInReal</td>
<td>Executes in-place, real inverse FFT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LogMagnitude</td>
<td>Converts complex data to log magnitude format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InitFft</td>
<td>Generates FFT lookup tables.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FreeFft</td>
<td>Releases FFT lookup table memory.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: For details on not-in-place and in-place, refer to section 10.4.5 (5) (e), FFT Structure.

These functions calculate the forward and inverse fast Fourier transforms with a user-defined scaling. The forward Fourier transform is defined by:

$$y_n = 2^{-s} \sum_{n=0}^{N} e^{-2\pi i n/N} \cdot x_n$$

where $s$ is the number of stages in which scaling is performed and $N$ is the number of data. The inverse Fourier transform is defined by:

$$y_n = 2^{-s} \sum_{n=0}^{N} e^{2\pi i n/N} \cdot x_n$$

For details on scaling, refer to (d) Scaling below.
(b) Complex Data Array Format

In **FFT** and **IFFT** routines, complex data are stored using two arrays: the real part of data in X memory and the imaginary part of data in Y memory. However, the locations of real **FFT** output data and real **IFFT** input data differ. Assuming the arrays x and y could have real and imaginary parts respectively, element x[0] contains the real part of the DC component of the signal, and y[0] contains the real part of the Fs/2 frequency (both DC and Fs/2 components are real, and their imaginary parts are zero).

(c) Real Data Array Format

Real data can be specified in three possible formats:

- The data is represented in a single array, located in any memory block.
- The data is represented in a single array, located in X memory.
- The data is split into two arrays, each of which has size N/2. The first half of the data is stored in the X memory; the second half is stored in the Y memory.

**FftReal** uses only the first representation for the real data. **IfftReal, FftInReal** and **IfftInReal** allow the user to select either the second or third representation.

(d) Scaling

In an **FFT**, the signal power doubles at each natural radix-2 stage; the peak signal amplitude can also double. This doubling can cause overflow when transforming a high power signal, but can be prevented by a division by two at each radix-2 stage (this is called scaling). However, excessive scaling will generate an unnecessary quantization error. The optimum balance among overflow, quantization error, and scaling depends highly on the characteristics of the input signal. When a peak of a signal spectrum is very large, for example, the maximum scaling will be required to avoid overflow, whereas an impulse signal will require very little scaling.

The safest approach is to perform scaling at every radix-2 stage. As long as each complex input data is scaled to have power less than $2^{30}$, this approach guarantees that overflow will not occur. This library allows finer control of scaling, with scaling selectable individually for each radix-2 stage. Careful selection of this scaling allows the combined effects of overflow and quantization to be minimized.

To allow specification of the required approach each **FFT** function has a scale parameter. The scale is interpreted starting with the least significant bit, with each bit corresponding to each radix-2 stage. A division by two is performed at each radix-2 stage only if its corresponding scale bit has been set to 1.
The FFT implementation used in this library takes advantage of the radix-4 stages to improve execution speed. The scale is interpreted starting with the least significant bit, with each pair of bits corresponding to each radix-4 stage. If either in the pair is set to 1, a division by two is performed; if both in the pair are set to 1, a division by four is performed. This gives the same overall scaling between two radix-2 stages and a radix-4 stage, with minor differences in the quantization error.

For example:
- \( \text{scale} = H'\text{FFFFFFFF} \) (or size-1) specifies to perform scaling on every radix-2 stage, with a guarantee that no overflow will occur if the input data all have signal power less than \( 2^{30} \).
- \( \text{scale} = H'\text{55555555} \) specifies to perform scaling on alternate radix-2 FFT stages.
- \( \text{scale} = 0 \) specifies no scaling.

\text{EFFTALLSCALE (H'FFFFFFFF), EFFTMIDSCALE (H'55555555) and EFFTNOSCALE (0), defined in ensigdsp.h,} can be used to provide these values.

(e) FFT Structure

This library has two types of FFT structures: \text{not-in-place FFT} and \text{in-place FFT}. When a not-in-place FFT structure is used, input data is fetched from the RAM, FFT is executed, and output data is stored in another area of the RAM specified by the user. When an in-place FFT structure is used, input data is fetched from the RAM, FFT is executed, and output data is stored in the same area of the RAM. When an in-place FFT structure is used, the used memory space can be reduced but the FFT execution time increases. Use not-in-place FFT to use the same input data in other functions. Use \text{in-place FFT} to reduce the memory space required.
int FftComplex (short op_x[ ], short op_y[ ], const short ip_x[ ],
       const short ip_y[ ], long size, long scale)
int FftComplex (_ _X _ _fixed op_x[ ], _ _Y _ _fixed op_y[ ],
       const _ _X _ _fixed ip_x[ ], const _ _Y _ _fixed ip_y[ ], long size, long scale)

Description: Executes a complex Fast Fourier Transform.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return value: EDSP_OK successfully completed
EDSP_BAD_ARG size < 4
size not a power of 2
size > max_fft_size

Parameters: op_x[ ] real part of output data
op_y[ ] imaginary part of output data
ip_x[ ] real part of input data
ip_y[ ] imaginary part of input data
size size of FFT
scale scaling specification

Remarks: 1. This routine calculates a complex Fast Fourier Transform. The calculation is not-in-place, so the input and output arrays must not overlap.
2. The storage of complex data arrays is described in section 10.4.5 (b), Complex Data Array Format.
3. Before calling this routine the lookup table and max_fft_size should be initialized by calling InitFft.
4. Scaling specification is described in section 10.4.5 (d), Scaling.
5. Only the lower log2 (size) bits of scale are used.
6. This routine is not reentrant.
int FftReal (short op_x[ ], short op_y[ ], const short ip[ ], long size, long scale)
int FftReal (_ _X _ _fixed op_x[ ], _ _Y _ _fixed op_y[ ], const _ _fixed ip[ ],
      long size, long scale)

Description: Executes a real Fast Fourier Transform.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
EDSP_BAD_ARG size < 8
              size not a power of 2
              size > max_fft_size

Parameters:  op_x[ ] real part of positive output data
              op_y[ ] imaginary part of positive output data
              ip[ ] real input data
              size size of FFT
              scale scaling specification

Remarks: 1. On returning, op_x and op_y contain (size/2) positive output data only.
          The negative data are simply the conjugate complex number of the
          positive data. Since the output data values at both 0 and Fs/2 are real, the
          Fs/2 value is placed in op_y[0].
2. The calculation is not-in-place, so the input and output arrays must not
   overlap.
3. The storage of complex and real data arrays is described in section 10.4.5
   (5) (b), Complex Data Array Format, and section 10.4.5 (5) (c), Real Data
   Array Format.
4. Before calling this routine the lookup table and max_fft_size should be
   initialized by calling InitFft.
5. Scaling specification is described in section 10.4.5 (5)(d), Scaling.
6. Only the lower log2 (size) bits of scale are used.
7. This routine is not reentrant.
int IfftComplex (short op_x[], short op_y[], const short ip_x[], const short ip_y[], long size, long scale)

int IfftComplex (_X_fixed op_x[], _Y_fixed op_y[],
                     const _X_fixed ip_x[], const _Y_fixed ip_y[], long size, long scale)

Description: Executes a complex inverse Fast Fourier Transform.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
               EDSP_BAD_ARG size < 4
                     size not a power of 2
                     size > max_fft_size

Parameters: op_x[] real part of output data
            op_y[] imaginary part of output data
            ip_x[] real part of input data
            ip_y[] imaginary part of input data
            size size of inverse FFT
            scale scaling specification

Remarks: 1. The calculation is **not-in-place**, so the input and output arrays must not overlap.
2. The storage of complex data arrays is described in section 10.4.5 (5) (b), Complex Data Array Format.
3. Before calling this routine the lookup table and **max_fft_size** should be initialized by calling **InitFft**.
4. Scaling specification is described in section 10.4.5 (5) (d), Scaling.
5. Only the lower log2(size) bits of **scale** are used.
6. This routine is not reentrant.
int IfftReal (short op_x[], short scratch_y[], const short ip_x[], const short ip_y[], long size, long scale, int op_all_x)
int IfftReal (_X_fixed op_x[], _Y_fixed scratch_y[], const _X_fixed ip_x[], const _Y_fixed ip_y[], long size, long scale, int op_all_x)

Description: Executes a real inverse Fast Fourier Transform.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
EDSP_BAD_ARG size < 8
size not a power of 2
size > max_fft_size
op_all_x ≠ 0 or 1

Parameters: op_x[ ] real output data
scratch_y[ ] scratch memory or real output data
ip_x[ ] real part of positive input data
ip_y[ ] imaginary part of positive input data
size size of inverse FFT
scale scaling specification
op_all_x format specification of output data

Remarks: 1. ip_x and ip_y should contain the positive input data only. The negative data are simply the conjugate complex number of the positive data. Since the input data values at both 0 and Fs/2 can only be real, the input value at Fs/2 should be placed in ip_y[0].
2. op_all_x specifies the output data format.
   If op_all_x is 1, all output is stored in op_x. If op_all_x is 0, the first size/2 output data are stored in op_x, the remaining size/2 output data are stored in scratch_y.
3. The calculation is not-in-place, so the input and output arrays must not overlap.
4. Storage of complex and real data arrays is described in section 10.4.5 (5) (b), Complex Data Array Format, and section 10.4.5 (5) (c), Real Data Array Format.
5. ip_x and ip_y should have size/2 elements. op_x should have size or size/2 elements as required by the value of op_all_x.
6. Before calling this routine the lookup table and max_fft_size should be initialized by calling InitFft.
7. Scaling specification is described in section 10.4.5 (5) (d), Scaling.
8. Only the lower $\log_2 (\text{size})$ bits of $\text{scale}$ are used.
9. This routine is not reentrant.

```c
int FftInComplex (short data_x[], short data_y[], long size, long scale)
int FftInComplex (_X__fixed data_x[], _Y__fixed data_y[], long size, long scale)
```

Description: Executes an in-place complex Fast Fourier Transform.

Header: `<ensigdsp.h>`

Return values:
- EDSP_OK: successfully completed
- EDSP_BAD_ARG: size < 4
- size not a power of 2
- size > max_fft_size

Parameters:
- data_x[]: real part of data
- data_y[]: imaginary part of data
- size: size of FFT
- scale: scaling specification

Remarks:
1. The storage of complex data arrays is described in section 10.4.5 (5) (b), Complex Data Array Format.
2. Before calling this routine the lookup table and `max_fft_size` should be initialized by calling `InitFft`.
3. Scaling specification is described in section 10.4.5 (5) (d), Scaling.
4. Only the lower $\log_2 (\text{size})$ bits of $\text{scale}$ are used.
5. This routine is not reentrant.
int FftInReal (short data_x[ ], short data_y[ ], long size, long scale, int ip_all_x)
int FftInReal (_X__fixed data_x[ ], _Y__fixed data_y[ ], long size, long scale, int ip_all_x)

Description: Executes an in-place real Fast Fourier Transform.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
EDSP_BAD_ARG size < 8
size not a power of 2
size > max_fft_size
ip_all_x ≠ 0 or 1

Parameters: data_x[ ] real data on input, real part of positive data on output
data_y[ ] real data or unused on input, imaginary part of positive data on output
size size of FFT
scale scaling specification
ip_all_x format specification of input data

Remarks:
1. The format of the input data is specified by ip_all_x. If ip_all_x is 1, the input data are taken from the data_x. If ip_all_x is 0, the first size/2 data are taken from data_x, and the remaining size/2 data are taken from data_y.
2. On returning, data_x and data_y contain size/2 positive data only. The negative output data are simply the conjugate complex number of the positive data. Since the output data at both 0 and Fs/2 are real, the output value at Fs/2 is placed in data_y[0].
3. The storage of complex and real data arrays is described in section 10.4.5 (4) (b), Complex Data Array Format, and section 10.4.5 (5) (c), Real Data Array Format.
4. data_y should have size/2 elements. data_x should have size or size/2 elements as required by the value of ip_all_x.
5. Before calling this routine the lookup table and max_fft_size should be initialized by calling InitFft.
6. Scaling specification is described in section 10.4.5 (5) (d), Scaling.
7. Only the lower log2(size) bits of scale are used.
8. This routine is not reentrant.
int IfftInComplex (short data_x[], short data_y[], long size, long scale)
int IfftInComplex (_X _fixed data_x[], _Y _fixed data_y[], long size, long scale)

Description: Executes an in-place complex inverse Fast Fourier Transform.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
               EDSP_BAD_ARG size < 4
               size not a power of 2
               size > max_fft_size

Parameters:  data_x[] real part of data
              data_y[] imaginary part of data
              size size of inverse FFT
              scale scaling specification

Remarks: 1. The storage of complex data arrays is described in section 10.4.5 (5) (b), Complex Data Array Format.
2. Before calling this routine the lookup table and max_fft_size should be initialized by calling InitFft.
3. Scaling specification is described in section 10.4.5 (5) (d), Scaling.
4. Only the lower log2 (size) bits of scale are used.
5. This routine is not reentrant.
int IfftInReal (short data_x[ ], short data_y[ ], long size, long scale, int op_all_x)
int IfftInReal (_X _fixed data_x[ ], _Y _fixed data_y[ ], long size, long scale, int op_all_x)

Description: Executes an in-place real inverse Fast Fourier Transform.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values:
- EDSP_OK  successfully completed
- EDSP_BAD_ARG size < 8
- size not a power of 2
- size > max_fft_size
- op_all_x ≠ 0 or 1

Parameters:
- data_x[ ] real part of positive data on input, real data on output
- data_y[ ] imaginary part of positive data on input, real data or unused on output
- size  size of inverse FFT
- scale  scaling specification
- op_all_x format specification of output data

Remarks:
1. data_x and data_y should contain size/2 positive input data only. The negative data are simply the conjugate complex number of the positive data. Since the input data values at both 0 and Fs/2 can only be real, the input value at Fs/2 should be placed in data_y[0].
2. op_all_x specifies the output data format. If op_all_x is 1, all output is stored in data_x. If op_all_x is 0, the first size/2 output data are stored in data_x; the remaining size/2 output data are stored in data_y.
3. The storage of complex and real data arrays is described in section 10.4.5 (5) (b), Complex Data Array Format, and section 10.4.5 (5) (c), Real Data Array Format.
4. data_y should have size/2 elements. data_x should have size or size/2 elements as required by the value of op_all_x.
5. Before calling this routine the lookup table and max_fft_size should be initialized by calling InitFft.
6. Scaling specification is described in section 10.4.5 (5) (d), Scaling.
7. Only the lower log2 (size) bits of scale are used.
8. This routine is not reentrant.
int LogMagnitude (short output[], const short ip_x[], const short ip_y[],
   long no_elements, float fscale)
int LogMagnitude (_fixed output[], const _X _fixed ip_x[],
   const _Y _fixed ip_y[], long no_elements, float fscale)

Description: Executes the log magnitude of the complex input data in decibels, and writes
the scaled result into the output array

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
               EDSP_BAD_ARG no_elements < 1
               no_elements > 32767
               |fscale| ≥ 215/(10log10231)

Parameters: output[] real output data z
            ip_x[] real part of input data x
            ip_y[] imaginary part of input data y
            no_elements number of output data N
            fscale output scaling factor

Remarks: z(n)=10fscale⋅log10(x(n)²+y(n)²) 0 ≤ n < N

The storage of complex data arrays is described in section 10.4.5 (5) (b),
Complex Data Array Format.
int InitFft (long max_size)

Description: Generates the (quarter size) lookup tables used by the FFT functions.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
               EDSP_NO_HEAP insufficient space available from malloc
               EDSP_BAD_ARG max_size < 2
               max_size not a power of 2
               max_size > 32768

Parameters: max_size Maximum size of FFT that will be required.

Remarks: 1. The lookup tables are stored in memory allocated by malloc.
2. Once the lookup tables have been generated the global variable max_fft_size is updated to indicate the maximum permitted FFT size.
3. This routine must be called once before calling the first FFT function.
4. max_size must be 8 or larger.
5. The lookup tables are generated for the transform size specified by max_size. Smaller transforms will be performed using the same lookup tables.
6. The addresses of the lookup tables are stored in internal variables; they should not be accessed by user programs.
7. This routine is not reentrant.

void FreeFft (void)

Description: Release the memory used for storing FFT lookup tables.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Remarks: 1. Set the max_fft_size global variable as 0. To use a FFT function again after executing FreeFft, InitFft must be executed.
2. This function is not reentrant.
(6) Window Function

(a) Overview

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GenBlackman</td>
<td>Generates a Blackman window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GenHamming</td>
<td>Generates a Hamming window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GenHanning</td>
<td>Generates a Hanning window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GenTriangle</td>
<td>Generates a Triangle window.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
int GenBlackman (short output[ ], long win_size)
int GenBlackman (_ _fixed output[ ], long win_size)

Description: Generates a Blackman window in output.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
               EDSP_BAD_ARG win_size ≤ 1

Parameters: output[ ] output data W(n)
             win_size window size N

Remarks: VectorMult can be used to apply the window to a data array.
         The function used is:

         \[ W(n) = (2^{15} - 1) \left[ 0.42 - 0.5\cos\left(\frac{2\pi n}{N}\right) + 0.08\cos\left(\frac{4\pi n}{N}\right) \right] \quad 0 \leq n < N \]

int GenHamming (short output[ ], long win_size)
int GenHamming (_ _fixed output[ ], long win_size)

Description: Generates a Hamming window in output.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
               EDSP_BAD_ARG win_size ≤ 1

Parameters: output[ ] output data W(n)
             win_size window size N

Remarks: VectorMult can be used to apply the window to a data array.
         The function used is:

         \[ W(n) = (2^{15} - 1) \left[ 0.54 - 0.46\cos\left(\frac{2\pi n}{N}\right) \right] \quad 0 \leq n < N \]
int GenHanning (short output[], long win_size)
int GenHanning (_fixed output[], long win_size)

Description: Generates a Hanning window in output.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
               EDSP_BAD_ARG win_size ≤ 1

Parameters: output[] output data W(n)
             win_size window size N

Remarks: VectorMult can be used to apply the window to a data array.
         The function used is:

         \[ W(n) = \left( \frac{2^{15} - 1}{2} \right) \left[ 1 - \cos \left( \frac{2\pi n}{N} \right) \right] \]
         \[ 0 \leq n < N \]

int GenTriangle (short output[], long win_size)
int GenTriangle (_fixed output[], long win_size)

Description: Generates a Triangle window in output

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
               EDSP_BAD_ARG win_size ≤ 1

Parameters: output[] output data W(n)
             win_size window size N

Remarks: VectorMult can be used to apply the window to a data array.
         The function used is:

         \[ W(n) = (2^{15} - 1) \left[ 1 - \left\lfloor \frac{2n - N + 1}{N + 1} \right\rfloor \right] \]
         \[ 0 \leq n < N \]
(7) Filters

(a) Overview

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fir</td>
<td>Executes a finite impulse response filter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fir1</td>
<td>Executes a finite impulse response filter for a single input data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iir</td>
<td>Executes an infinite impulse response filter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iir1</td>
<td>Executes an infinite impulse response filter for a single input data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dlr</td>
<td>Executes a double precision infinite impulse response filter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dlr1</td>
<td>Executes a double precision infinite impulse response filter for a single input data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lms</td>
<td>Executes a real adaptive FIR filter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lms1</td>
<td>Executes a real adaptive FIR filter for a single input data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InitFir</td>
<td>Allocates a workspace for FIR filter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InitIir</td>
<td>Allocates a workspace for IIR filter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InitDlr</td>
<td>Allocates a workspace for double precision DIIR filter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InitLms</td>
<td>Allocates a workspace for LMS filter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FreeFir</td>
<td>Releases a workspace allocated by InitFir.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FreeIir</td>
<td>Releases a workspace allocated by InitIir.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FreeDlr</td>
<td>Releases a workspace allocated by InitDlr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FreeLms</td>
<td>Releases a workspace allocated by InitLms.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: When the filter functions are used in a program, filt_ws.h must be included once.

(b) Coefficient Scaling
Filtering is likely to introduce saturation or quantization error. It can be minimized by scaling the filter coefficients. However, the scaling of coefficients must be performed carefully to balance the effects of saturation and quantization. If the coefficients are too large, saturation may occur; if they are too small, excessive quantization error may be introduced.

For FIR (finite impulse response) filters, no saturation will occur if
\[
\text{coeff}[i] \neq \text{H}'8000 \text{ for all } i, \\
\sum |\text{coeff}| < 2^{24}, \text{ and} \\
\text{res_shift} = 24.
\]
Here, coeff is a filter coefficient, and res_shift is the number of bits shifted to the right at output.

For many input signals, smaller res_shift values (or larger coeff values) can be used with a low likelihood of saturation, and with significantly reduced quantization error. If H'8000 may be among the inputs, all coeff values should be limited to the range from H'8001 to H'7FFF.

IIR (infinite impulse response) filters have a recursive structure, which means that the scaling approach described above is inappropriate.

LMS (least mean squared) adaptive filters obey the same conventions as FIR filters. However, the coefficients may be pushed into saturation as the coefficients are adapted. In that case, the coefficients should not include H’8000.

(c) Workspace

Digital filters have state that must be preserved from the processing of one data to the next. This filter state must be stored in memory that can be accessed with minimum overhead - on this library, the Y-RAM area is used. The workspace must be initialized by the Init function before calling a filter function.

The structure of the workspace memory is liable to change in the future, so user programs should not attempt to read or modify this memory, it should only be accessed by the library functions.

(d) Memory Usage

To allow efficient use of the SH-DSP for all filters, the coefficients must be located in X memory. The input and output data may be located in any memory segment.

The filter coefficients must be located in X memory using the #pragma section directive. When the dspc option is specified, __X memory qualifier should be used. In this case the #pragma specification is not required.

Each individual filter is allocated to workspace from a global buffer using the Init routines. The global buffer must be located in Y memory.
int Fir (short output[], const short input[], long no_samples, const short coeff[],
        long no_coeffs, int res_shift, short *workspace)

int Fir (_fixed output[], const _fixed input[], long no_samples,
        const _X _fixed coeff[], long no_coeffs, int res_shift, _Y _fixed *workspace)

Description: Executes a finite impulse response (FIR) filter.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
               EDSP_BAD_ARG no_samples < 1
                      no_coeffs ≤ 6
                      res_shift < 0
                      res_shift > 25

Parameters: output[] output data y
             input[] input data x
             no_samples number of data N
             coeff[] filter coefficients h
             no_coeffs number of coefficients K (length of filter)
             res_shift right shift applied to each output
             workspace pointer to workspace

Remarks: 1. It uses workspace to record the most recent input data. The result of
          filtering the data in input is written to output:

          \[ y(n) = \sum_{k=0}^{K-1} h(k) \cdot x(n-k) \cdot 2^{-\text{res}_\text{shift}} \]

          2. For multiply-accumulate operation, the sum is accumulated in 39 bits.
             Each 16-bit output y(n) is extracted from the lower 16 bits of res_shift
             bits shifted to the right. If an overflow occurs, output is saturated to
             positive or negative maximum value.

          3. Coefficient scaling is described in section 10.4.5 (7) (b), Coefficient
             Scaling.

          4. Before calling this routine for a new filter, initialize the filter workspace
             by calling InitFir.

          5. When output is specified the same as input, input is overwritten.

          6. This routine is not reentrant.
int Fir1 (short *output, short input, const short coeff[], long no_coeffs, int res_shift, short *workspace)

Description: Executes a finite impulse response (FIR) filter for a single input data only.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
              EDSP_BAD_ARG no_coeffs ≤ 6
                      res_shift < 0
                      res_shift > 25

Parameters: output pointer to output data y(n)
            input  input data x(n)
            coeff[] filter coefficients h
            no_coeffs number of coefficients K (length of filter)
            res_shift  right shift applied to each output
            workspace pointer to workspace

Remarks: 1. It uses workspace to record the most recent input data. The result of filtering the data in input is written to output:

          \[ y(n) = \left( \sum_{k=0}^{K-1} h(k) x(n-k) \right) \cdot 2^{-\text{res\_shift}} \]

2. For multiply-accumulate operation, the sum is accumulated in 39 bits. Each 16 bit output is extracted from the lower 16 bits of res_shift bits shifted to the right. If an overflow occurs, output is saturated to positive or negative maximum value.

3. Coefficient scaling is described in section 10.4.5 (7) (b), Coefficient Scaling.

4. Before calling this routine for a new filter, initialize the filter workspace by calling InitFir.

5. This routine is not reentrant.
int Iir (short output[ ], const short input[ ], long no_samples, const short coeff[ ],
    long no_sections, short *workspace)
int Iir (_ _fixed output[ ], const _ _fixed input[ ], long no_samples,
    const _ _X _ _fixed coeff[ ], long no_sections, _ _Y _ _fixed *workspace)

Description: Executes an infinite impulse response (IIR) filter.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values:
EDSP_OK successfully completed
EDSP_BAD_ARG no_samples < 1
             no_sections < 1
             a0k < 0
             a0k > 16

Parameters:
output[ ] output data yK-1
input[ ] input data x0
no_samples number of data N
coeff[ ] filter coefficients
no_sections number of second order filter sections K
workspace pointer to workspace

Remarks:
1. The filter is implemented as a cascade of K second order filters called
   biquads, with an additional scaling performed on the biquad output. The
   coefficients are specified in signed 16-bit fixed-point numbers and the
   output of each biquad is given by:
   \[ D_k(n) = (a1k d_k(n-1) + a2k d_k(n-2) + 2^{15} x(n)) \times 2^{-15} \]
   \[ y_k(n) = (b0k d_k(n) + b1k d_k(n-1) + b2k d_k(n-2)) \times 2^{-a0k} \]
2. The input \( x_k(n) \) to the kth section is the output \( y_{k-1}(n) \) of the previous
   section. The input to the first (k=0) section is taken from \( \text{input} \). The
   output from the last (k = K-1) section is written to \( \text{output} \).
3. The filter coefficients should be specified in \( \text{coeff} \) in the order:
   \( a00, a10, a20, b00, b10, b20, a01, a11, a21, b01 \ldots b_{2K-1} \)
   Here, \( a0k \) is the number of bits shifted to the right at kth biquad output.
4. Each biquad is calculated in 32 bits using saturating arithmetic. Each
   biquad output is extracted from the lower 16 bits of accumulator after 15
   or \( a0k \) bits shifted to the right. If an overflow occurs, output is saturated to
   positive or negative maximum value.
5. Before calling this routine for a new filter, initialize the filter workspace
   by calling \text{InitIir} \.

Page 784 of 1176
6. When \textit{output} is specified the same as \textit{input}, \textit{input} is overwritten.

7. This routine is not reentrant.

\begin{verbatim}
int Iir1 (short *output, short input, const short coeff[], long no_sections,
short *workspace)
Description: Executes an infinite impulse response (IIR) filter for a single input data only.
Header: <ensigdsp.h>
Return values: EDSP_OK  successfully completed
EDSP_BAD_ARG  no_sections < 1
               a0k < 0
               a0k > 16
Parameters: output  pointer to output data yk-1(n)
            input  input data x0(n)
            coeff[]  filter coefficients
            no_sections  number of second order filter sections K
            workspace  pointer to workspace
Remarks: 1. The filter is implemented as a cascade of K second order filters called
          biquads, with an additional scaling performed on the biquad output. The
          coefficients are specified in signed 16-bit fixed-point numbers and the
          output of each biquad is given by:
          \[
          D_k(n) = [a_{1k}d_k(n-1)+a_{2k}d_k(n-2)+2^{15}x(n)] \cdot 2^{-15}
          \]
          \[
          y_k(n) = [b_{0k}d_k(n)+b_{1k}d_k(n-1)+b_{2k}d_k(n-2)] \cdot 2^{-a_{0k}}
          \]
          2. The input \( x_k(n) \) to the \( k \)th section is the output \( y_{k-1}(n) \) of the previous
          section. The input to the first (\( k=0 \)) section is taken from \textit{input}.
          The output from the last (\( k=K-1 \)) section is written to \textit{output}.
          3. The filter coefficients should be specified in \textit{coeff} in the order:
          \( a_{00}, a_{10}, a_{20}, b_{00}, b_{10}, b_{20}, a_{01}, a_{11}, a_{21}, B_{21} \ldots b_{2K-1} \)
          Here, \( a_{0k} \) is the number of bits shifted to the right at \( k \)th biquad output.
          4. Each biquad is calculated in 32 bits using saturating arithmetic. Each
          biquad output is extracted from the lower 16 bits of accumulator after 15
          or \( a_{0k} \) bits shifted to the right. If an overflow occurs, output is saturated to
          positive or negative maximum value.
          5. Before calling this routine for a new filter, initialize the filter workspace
          by calling \texttt{InitIir}.
          6. This routine is not reentrant.
\end{verbatim}
int DIir (short output[], const short input[], long no_samples, const long coeff[], long no_sections, long *workspace)

int DIir (_ _fixed output[], const _ _fixed input[], long no_samples, const _ _X long _ _fixed coeff[], long no_sections, _ _Y long _ _fixed *workspace)

Description: Executes an infinite impulse response (IIR) filter with double precision coefficients.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
EDSP_BAD_ARG no_samples < 1
no_sections < 1
a0k < 3
a0k > 32 for k < K-1
a0k > 48 for k = K-1

Parameters: output[] pointer to output data yk-1
input[] input data x
no_samples number of data N
coeff[] filter coefficients
no_sections number of second order filter sections K
workspace pointer to workspace

Remarks: 1. The filter is implemented as a cascade of K second order filters called biquads, with an additional scaling performed on the biquad output. The coefficients are specified in signed 32-bit fixed-point numbers and the output of each biquad is given by:

\[
D_k(n) = (a_{1k}d_k(n-1) + a_{2k}d_k(n-2) + 2^{29}x(n)) \cdot 2^{-31}
\]

\[
y_k(n) = (b_{0k}d_k(n) + b_{1k}d_k(n-1) + b_{2k}d_k(n-2)) \cdot (2^{a_0k}) \cdot 2^3
\]

2. The input x_k(n) to the kth section is the output y_k-1(n) of the previous section. The input to the first (k=0) section is taken from input after 16 bits shifted to the left. The output from the last (k = K-1) section is written to output.

3. The filter coefficients should be specified in coeff in the order:
a00, a10, a20, b00, b10, b20, a01, a11, a21, b01... b2K-1
Here, a0k is the number of bits shifted to the right at kth biquad output.

4. DIir differs from Iir in that the filter coefficients are specified as 32 rather than 16 bit values. For multiply-accumulate operation, the sum is accumulated in 64 bits. Intermediate biquad outputs are extracted from the lower 32 bits of accumulator after a0k bits shifted to the right. If an
overflow occurs, output is saturated to positive or negative maximum
value.
5. In the final stage, output is extracted from the lower 16 bits of
accumulator after $a_{n-1}$ bits shifted to the right. If an overflow occurs,
output is saturated to positive or negative maximum value.
6. Before calling this routine for a new filter, initialize the filter workspace
by calling `InitDIir`.
7. Delay nodes $d_k(n)$ are rounded to 30-bit quantities. If an overflow occurs,
they are saturated to positive or negative maximum value.
8. The most common use of `DIir` specifies the coefficients in signed 32-bit
fixed-point numbers. In this case, $a_k$ should be set to 31 for $k < K-1$ and
to 47 for $k = K-1$.
9. When double-precision calculation is not required, `Iir` should be used in
preference to `DIir` as it runs faster on the SH-DSP.
10. When `output` is specified the same as `input`, `input` is overwritten.
11. This routine is not reentrant.
int DIir1 (short *output, const short input, const long coeff[],
        long no_sections, long *workspace)

Description: Executes a double precision infinite impulse response (IIR) filter for a single
input data only.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values:
- EDSP_OK  successfully completed
- EDSP_BAD_ARG no_sections < 1
- \(a_{0k} < 3\)
- \(a_{0k} > 32\) for \(k < K-1\)
- \(a_{0k} > 48\) for \(k = K-1\)

Parameters:
- output  pointer to output data \(y_{k-1}(n)\)
- input  input data \(x_0(n)\)
- coeff[]  filter coefficients
- no_sections  number of second order filter sections \(K\)
- workspace  pointer to workspace

Remarks:
1. The filter is implemented as a cascade of \(K\) second order filters called
   biquads, with an additional scaling performed on the biquad output. The
   coefficients are specified in signed 32-bit fixed-point numbers and the
   output of each biquad is given by:
   \[
   D_k(n) = \left[ a_{1k}d_k(n-1) + a_{2k}d_k(n-2) + 2^{29}x(n) \right] 2^{-31}
   \]
   \[
   y_k(n) = \left[ b_{0k}d_k(n) + b_{1k}d_k(n-1) + b_{2k}d_k(n-2) \right] (2^{-(a_{0k})}) 2^2
   \]
   \[
   x_k(n) = x_{k-1}(n) \times 2^{16}
   \]
   The input \(x_k(n)\) to the \(k\)th section is the output \(y_{k-1}(n)\) of the previous
   section. The input to the first \((k=0)\) section is taken from \text{input} after 16
   bits shifted to the left. The output from the last \((k = K-1)\) section is
   written to \text{output}.

2. The filter coefficients should be specified in \text{coeff} in the order:
   \(a_{00}, a_{10}, b_{00}, b_{10}, a_{01}, b_{01}, b_{11}, \ldots, b_{2K-1}\)
   Here, \(a_{0k}\) is the number of bits shifted to the right at \(k\)th biquad output.

4. DIir1 differs from Iir1 in that the filter coefficients are specified as 32
   rather than 16-bit values. For multiply-accumulate operation, the sum is
   accumulated in 64 bits. Intermediate biquad outputs are extracted from
   the lower 32 bits of accumulator after \(a_{0k}\) bits shifted to the right. If an
   overflow occurs, output is saturated to positive or negative maximum
   value.

5. In the final stage, output is extracted from the lower 16 bits of
   accumulator after \(a_{0K-1}\) bits shifted to the right. If an overflow occurs,
output is saturated to positive or negative maximum value.

6. Before calling this routine for a new filter, initialize the filter workspace by calling `InitDfir`.

7. Delay nodes \( d_k(n) \) are rounded to 30-bit quantities. If an overflow occurs, they are saturated to positive or negative maximum value.

8. The most common use of `Dfir` specifies the coefficients in signed 32-bit fixed-point numbers. In this case, \( a_{47} \) should be set to 31 for \( k < K-1 \) and to 47 for \( k = K-1 \).

9. When double-precision calculation is not required, `Iir1` should be used in preference to `Dfir1` as it runs faster on the SH-DSP.

10. This routine is not reentrant.
int Lms (short output[], const short input[], const short ref_output[],
     long no_samples, short coeff[], long no_coeffs, int res_shift,
     short conv_fact, short *workspace)
int Lms (_fixed output[], const _fixed input[], const _fixed ref_output[],
     long no_samples, _fixed coeff[], long no_coeffs, int res_shift,
     short conv_fact, _fixed *workspace)

Description: Executes a real adaptive \textbf{FIR} filter using the least mean square algorithm (LMS).

Header: \texttt{<ensigdsp.h>}

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
               EDSP_BAD_ARG no_samples < 1
               no_coeffs \leq 6
               res_shift < 0
               res_shift > 25

Parameters:  output[] output data y
              input[] input data x
              ref_output[] desired output value d
              no_samples number of data N
              coeff[] adaptive filter coefficients h
              no_coeffs number of coefficients K
              res_shift right shift applied to each output
              conv_fact convergence factor $2\mu$
              workspace pointer to workspace

Remarks: 1. The \textbf{FIR} filter is defined as:
          \[ y(n) = \left( \sum_{k=0}^{K-1} h_n(k) x(n-k) \right) \cdot 2^{-\text{res shift}} \]

2. For multiply-accumulate operation, the sum is accumulated in 39 bits. Each 16-bit output is extracted from the lower 16 bits of \text{res shift} bits shifted to the right. If an overflow occurs, output is saturated to positive or negative maximum value.

3. The \textit{Widrow-Hoff} algorithm is used to update the filter coefficients:
   \[ h_{n+1}(k) = h_n(k) + 2\mu e(n)x(n-k) \]
   where $e(n)$ is the error between the desired signal and the actual filter output:
   \[ e(n) = d(n) - y(n) \]
4. The calculation of $2\mu e(n)x(n-k)$ requires two (16 bits) × (16 bits) multiplies. In both multiplies, upper 16 bits are stored and if an overflow occurs, data are saturated to positive or negative maximum value. If updated coefficients include $H'8000$, an overflow may occur for multiply-accumulate operation. In this case, the coefficients must set in the range from $H'8001$ to $H'7FFF$.

5. Coefficient specification is described in section 10.4.5 (7) (b), Coefficient Scaling. As the coefficients are adapted by LMS filters, the safest scaling scheme is to use fewer than 256 coefficients and set $\text{res\_shift}$ to 24.

6. $\text{conv\_fact}$ should normally be positive; it should never be $H'8000$. 

7. Before calling this routine for a new filter, initialize the filter workspace by calling $\text{InitLms}$. 

8. When the $\text{output}$ array is specified the same as the $\text{input}$ or $\text{ref\_output}$ array, $\text{input}$ or $\text{ref\_output}$ is overwritten. 

9. This routine is not reentrant.

**int Lms1 (short *output, short input, short ref\_output, short coeff[], long no\_coeffs, int res\_shift, short conv\_fact, short *workspace)**

**Description:** Executes a real adaptive FIR filter using the least mean square algorithm (LMS), for a single input data.

**Header:** <ensigdsp.h>

**Return values:**
- EDSP_OK successfully completed
- EDSP_BAD_ARG no_coeffs ≤ 6
- res_shift < 0
- res_shift > 25

**Parameters:**
- output pointer to output data $y(n)$
- input input data $x(n)$
- ref\_output desired output value $d(n)$
- coeff[] adaptive filter coefficients $h$
- no_coeffss number of coefficients $K$
- res\_shift right shift applied to each output
- conv\_fact convergence factor $2\mu$
- workspace pointer to workspace
Remarks:

1. The **FIR** filter is defined as:

\[ y(n) = \sum_{k=0}^{K-1} h_n(k) x(n-k) \cdot 2^{-\text{res\_shift}} \]

2. For multiply-accumulate operation, the sum is accumulated in 39 bits. Each 16-bit output \( y(n) \) is extracted from the lower 16 bits of \( \text{res\_shift} \) bits shifted to the right. If an overflow occurs, output is saturated to positive or negative maximum value.

3. The **Widrow-Hoff** algorithm is used to update the filter coefficients:

\[ h_{n+1}(k) = h_n(k) + 2\mu e(n)x(n-k) \]

where \( e(n) \) is the (saturated) error between the desired signal and the actual filter output:

\[ e(n) = d(n) - y(n) \]

4. The calculation of \( 2\mu e(n)x(n-k) \) requires two (16 bits) \( \times \) (16 bits) multiplies. In both multiplies, upper 16 bits are stored and if an overflow occurs, data are saturated to positive or negative maximum value. If updated coefficients include H’8000, an overflow may occur for multiply-accumulate operation. In this case, the coefficients must be set in the range from H’8001 to H’7FFF.

5. Coefficient specification is described in section 10.4.5 (7) (b), Coefficient Scaling. As the coefficients are adapted by LMS filters, the safest scaling scheme is to use fewer than 256 coefficients and set \( \text{res\_shift} \) to 24.

6. \texttt{conv\_fact} should normally be positive; it should never be H’8000.

7. Before calling this routine for a new filter, initialize the filter workspace by calling \texttt{InitLms}.

8. This routine is not reentrant.
int InitFir (short **workspace, long no_coeffs)
int InitFir (_Y _fixed **workspace, long no_coeffs)

Description: Allocates the memory required for subsequent calls to `Fir` and `Fir1`.

Header: `<ensigdsp.h>`

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
EDSP_NO_HEAP insufficient space available for workspace buffer
EDSP_BAD_ARG no_coeffs ≤ 2

Parameters: workspace pointer to pointer to workspace
no_coeffs number of coefficients K

Remarks: 1. Previous input data are initialized to zero.
2. The workspace buffer allocated by `InitFir` should only be manipulated by `Fir, Fir1, Lms` and `Lms1`. It should not be accessed by user programs.
3. This routine is not reentrant.

int InitIir (short **workspace, long no_sections)
int InitIir (_Y _fixed **workspace, long no_sections)

Description: Allocates the memory required for subsequent calls to `Iir` and `Iir1`.

Header: `<ensigdsp.h>`

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
EDSP_NO_HEAP insufficient space available for workspace buffer
EDSP_BAD_ARG no_sections < 1

Parameters: workspace pointer to pointer to workspace
no_sections number of second order filter sections K

Remarks: 1. Previous input data are initialized to zero.
2. The workspace buffer allocated by `InitIir` should only be manipulated by `Iir` and `Iir1`. It should not be accessed by user programs.
3. This routine is not reentrant.
int InitDIir (long **workspace, long no_sections)
int InitDIir (__Y long __fixed **workspace, long no_sections)

Description: Allocates the memory required for subsequent calls to DIir and DIir1.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
EDSP_NO_HEAP insufficient space available for workspace buffer
EDSP_BAD_ARG no_sections < 1

Parameters: workspace pointer to pointer to workspace
no_sections number of second order filter sections K

Remarks
1. Previous input data are initialized to zero.
2. The workspace buffer allocated by InitDIir should only be manipulated by DIir and DIir1. It should not be accessed by user programs.
3. This routine is not reentrant.

int InitLms (short **workspace, long no_coeffs)
int InitLms (__Y __fixed **workspace, long no_coeffs)

Description: Allocates the memory required for subsequent calls to Lms and Lms1.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
EDSP_NO_HEAP insufficient space available for workspace buffer
EDSP_BAD_ARG no_coeffs ≤ 2

Parameters: workspace pointer to pointer to workspace
no_coeffs number of coefficients K

Remarks
1. Previous input data are initialized to zero.
2. The workspace buffer allocated by InitLms should only be manipulated by Fir, Fir1, Lms and Lms1. It should not be accessed by user programs.
3. This routine is not reentrant.
int FreeFir (short **workspace, long no_coeffs)
int FreeFir (Y fixed **workspace, long no_coeffs)

Description: Frees workspace memory previously allocated by InitFir.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
               EDSP_BAD_ARG no_coeffs ≤ 2

Parameters: workspace pointer to pointer to workspace
            no_coeffs number of coefficients K

Remarks: This routine is not reentrant.

int FreeIir (short **workspace, long no_sections)
int FreeIir (Y fixed **workspace, long no_sections)

Description: Frees workspace memory previously allocated by InitIir.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
               EDSP_BAD_ARG no_sections < 1

Parameters: workspace pointer to pointer to workspace
            no_sections number of second order filter sections K

Remarks: This routine is not reentrant.
int FreeDliir (long **workspace, long no_sections)
int FreeDliir (_ _Y long _ _fixed **workspace, long no_sections)

Description: Frees workspace memory previously allocated by InitDliir.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
EDSP_BAD_ARG no_sections ≤ 2

Parameters: workspace pointer to pointer to workspace
no_sections number of second order filter sections K

Remarks: This routine is not reentrant.

int FreeLms (short **workspace, long no_coeffs)
int FreeLms (_ _Y _ _fixed **workspace, long no_coeffs)

Description: Frees workspace memory previously allocated by InitLms.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
EDSP_BAD_ARG no_coeffs < 1

Parameters: workspace pointer to pointer to workspace
no_coeffs number of coefficients K

Remarks: This routine is not reentrant.
(8) Convolution and Correlation

(a) Overview

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ConvComplete</td>
<td>Completely convolves two arrays.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ConvCyclic</td>
<td>Cyclically convolves two arrays.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ConvPartial</td>
<td>Partially convolves two arrays.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Correlate</td>
<td>Correlates two arrays.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CorrCyclic</td>
<td>Cyclically correlates two arrays.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In each case, one of two input arrays must be located in X memory and the other in Y memory. The output array may be located in any memory area.
int ConvComplete (short output[], const short ip_x[], const short ip_y[],
    long x_size, long y_size, int res_shift)
int ConvComplete (_fixed output[], const _fixed ip_x[], const _fixed ip_y[],
    long x_size, long y_size, int res_shift)

Description: Completely convolves the two input arrays x and y, and puts the result in the
output array z.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
               EDSP_BAD_ARG x_size < 1
                           y_size < 1
                           res_shift < 0
                           res_shift > 25

Parameters:  output[] output z
              ip_x[] input x
              ip_y[] input y
              x_size size of ip_x X
              y_size size of ip_y Y
              res_shift right shift applied to each output

Remarks: 1. \( z(m) = \left[ \sum_{i=0}^{X-1} x(i) y(m-i) \right] \cdot 2^{-\text{res_shift}} \quad 0 \leq m < X + Y - 1 \)
2. Elements outside the input array are read as zero.
3. The output array size must be set more than \( X + Y - 1 \).
int ConvCyclic (short output[], const short ip_x[], const short ip_y[],
long size, int res_shift)
int ConvCyclic (_fixed output[], const _fixed ip_x[], const _fixed ip_y[],
long size, int res_shift)

Description: Cyclically convolves the two input arrays and puts the result in the output array.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
EDSP_BAD_ARG size < 6
res_shift < 0
res_shift > 25

Parameters: output[] output z
ip_x[] input x
ip_y[] input y
size size of arrays N
res_shift right shift applied to each output

Remarks: \[ z(m) = \sum_{i=0}^{N-1} x(i) y(|m - i + N|_N) \cdot 2^{-\text{res\_shift}} \quad 0 \leq m < N \]
where \(|i|_N\) is residue of i modulo N.
int ConvPartial (short output[], const short ip_x[], const short ip_y[],
        long x_size, long y_size, int res_shift)
int ConvPartial (_fixed output[], const _fixed ip_x[], const _fixed ip_y[],
        long x_size, long y_size, int res_shift)

Description: Partially convolves the two input arrays x and y, and puts the result to output
        array z.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
        EDSP_BAD_ARG x_size < 5
        y_size < 1
        res_shift < 0
        res_shift > 25

Parameters: output[] output z
        ip_x[] input x
        ip_y[] input y
        x_size size of ip_x, X
        y_size size of ip_y, Y
        res_shift right shift applied to each output

Remarks: 1. This routine does not include outputs derived from elements outside
        the input array.

\[ z(m) = \sum_{i=0}^{A-1} a(i) \cdot b(m + A - 1 - i) \cdot 2^{-\text{res_shift}} \]
        \[ 0 \leq m \leq |A - B| \]

where a is the smaller input array, A is its size, b is the other array and B
        is its size.

2. The output array size must be set more than |X-Y|+1.
3. Elements outside the input arrays are read as zero.
int Correlate (short output[ ], const short ip_x[ ], const short ip_y[ ], long x_size,
   long y_size, long no_corr, int x_is_larger, int res_shift)
int Correlate (_ _fixed output[ ], const _ _X _ _fixed ip_x[ ], const _ _Y _ _fixed ip_y[ ],
   long x_size, long y_size, long no_corr, int x_is_larger, int res_shift)

Description: Correlates the two input arrays x and y, and puts the result in the output
array z.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
EDSP_BAD_ARG x_size < 1
   y_size < 1
   no_corr < 1
   res_shift < 0
   res_shift > 25
   x_is_larger ≠ 0 or 1

Parameters: output[ ] output z
   ip_x[ ] input x
   ip_y[ ] input y
   x_size size of ip_x X
   y_size size of ip_y Y
   no_corr number of correlations M
   x_is_larger array specification, if X=Y
   res_shift right shift applied to each output

Remarks: 1. In this calculation a is the larger input array, A is its size, b is the other
   input (if X and Y are equal, x_is_larger = 1 defines a to be x and
   x_is_larger = 0 defines b to be x). Then:
   \[ z(m) = \sum_{i=0}^{A-1} a(i) b(i + m) \cdot 2^{-\text{res}_\text{shift}} \quad 0 \leq m < M \]

   2. A < X+M is permissible. In this case, elements outside the input arrays
      are read as zero.

   3. res_shift = 0 corresponds to an integer calculation.
      res_shift = 15 corresponds to a fractional calculation.
int CorrCyclic (short output[], const short ip_x[], const short ip_y[], long size,
int reverse, int res_shift)
int CorrCyclic (_fixed output[], const _fixed ip_x[], const _fixed ip_y[],
long size, int reverse, int res_shift)

Description: Cyclically correlates array x with array y and puts the result in the output
array z.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
EDSP_BAD_ARG size < 5
res_shift < 0
res_shift > 25
reverse ≠ 0 or 1

Parameters: output[] output z
ip_x[] input x
ip_y[] input y
size size of arrays N
reverse reverse flag
res_shift right shift applied to each output

Remarks:
\[
z(m) = \left[ \sum_{i=0}^{N-1} x(i) y(\left| i + m \right|_N) \right] \cdot 2^{-\text{res}\_\text{shift}} \quad 0 \leq m < N
\]

where \( |i|_N \) is residue of \( i \) modulo \( N \). If reverse is 1 the elements in output are
reversed, to give the effective calculation:

\[
z(m) = \left[ \sum_{i=0}^{N-1} y(i) x(\left| i + m \right|_N) \right] \cdot 2^{-\text{res}\_\text{shift}} \quad 0 \leq m < N
\]
### (9) Miscellaneous

#### (a) Overview

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Limit</td>
<td>Exchanges data from H'8000 to H'8001.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CopyXtoY</td>
<td>Copies array from X memory to Y memory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CopyYtoX</td>
<td>Copies array from Y memory to X memory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CopyToX</td>
<td>Copies array from a specified location to X memory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CopyToY</td>
<td>Copies array from a specified location to Y memory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CopyFromX</td>
<td>Copies array from X memory to a specified location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CopyFromY</td>
<td>Copies array from Y memory to a specified location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GenGWnoise</td>
<td>Generates Gaussian white noise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MatrixMult</td>
<td>Multiplies two matrices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VectorMult</td>
<td>Multiplies two data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MsPower</td>
<td>Calculates mean square power.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean</td>
<td>Calculates mean.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Variance</td>
<td>Calculates mean and variance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MaxI</td>
<td>Searches for maximum in integer array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MinI</td>
<td>Searches for minimum in integer array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PeakI</td>
<td>Searches for maximum absolute value in integer array.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
int Limit (short data_xy[ ], long no_elements, int data_is_x)
int Limit (_fixed data_xy[ ], long no_elements, int data_is_x)

Description: Exchanges data from H’8000 to H’8001. Therefore an overflow does not occur for fixed-point multiply operation.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
EDSP_BAD_ARG no_elements < 1
              data_is_x ≠ 0 or 1

Parameters:  
             data_xy data array
             no_elements number of elements
             data_is_x location specification of data

Remarks: 1. Even if this routine is performed, an overflow may occur for accumulate operation.
2. If data_is_x is 1, data_xy should be located in X memory.
   If data_is_x is 0, data_xy should be located in Y memory.

int CopyXtoY (short op_y[ ], const short ip_x[ ], long n)
int CopyXtoY (_fixed op_y[ ], const _fixed ip_x[ ], long n)

Description: Copies the array ip_x to op_y.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
EDSP_BAD_ARG n < 6

Parameters:  
op_y[ ] output data
             ip_x[ ] input data
             n number of elements

Remarks: ip_x is located in X memory and op_y is located in Y memory.
int CopyYtoX (short op_x[], const short ip_y[], long n)
int CopyYtoX (_X _fixed op_x[], const _Y _fixed ip_y[], long n)

Description: Copies the array ip_y to op_x.
Header: <ensigdsp.h>
Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
EDSP_BAD_ARG n < 1
Parameters: op_x[] output data
ip_y[] input data
n number of elements
Remarks: op_x is located in X memory and ip_y is located in Y memory.

int CopyToX (short op_x[], const short input[], long n)
int CopyToX (_X _fixed op_x[], const _fixed input[], long n)

Description: Copies the array input to op_x.
Header: <ensigdsp.h>
Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
EDSP_BAD_ARG n < 1
Parameters: op_x[] output data
input[] input data
n number of elements
Remarks: op_x is located in X memory and input is located in any memory area.
int CopyToY (short op_y[], const short input[], long n)
int CopyToY (_Y_fixed op_y[], const _fixed input[], long n)

Description: Copies the array input to op_y.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
               EDSP_BAD_ARG n < 1

Parameters:  op_y[]   output data
              input[]  input data
              n        number of elements

Remarks: op_y is located in Y memory and input is located in any memory area.

int CopyFromX (short output[], const short ip_x[], long n)
int CopyFromX (_fixed output[], const _X_fixed ip_x[], long n)

Description: Copies the array ip_x to output.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
               EDSP_BAD_ARG n < 1

Parameters:  output[]  output data
              ip_x[]   input data
              n        number of elements

Remarks: ip_x is located in X memory and output is located in any memory area.
int CopyFromY (short output[], const short ip_y[], long n)
int CopyFromY (_fixed output[], const _Y _fixed ip_y[], long n)

Description: Copies the array ip_y to output.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
EDSP_BAD_ARG n < 1

Parameters: output[] output data
ip_y[] input data
n number of elements

Remarks: ip_y is located in Y memory and output is located in any memory area.
int GenGWnoise (short output[], long no_samples, float variance)
int GenGWnoise (_fixed output[], long no_samples, float variance)

Description: Generates Gaussian white noise with zero mean and user-specified variance.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values:
- EDSP_OK successfully completed
- EDSP_BAD_ARG no_samples < 1
  variance ≤ 0.0

Parameters:
- output[] output white noise data
- no_samples number of output data
- variance variance of noise distribution σ^2

Remarks:
1. Output data are produced in pairs. To produce a pair of output data, the standard random number generator provided by rand is used to generate pairs of random numbers γ_1 and γ_2 between -1 and 1, until a pair is found whose sum of squares x is less than 1. The pair of output data o_1 and o_2 are then calculated:
   \[ o_1 = σγ_1 \sqrt{-2 \ln(x)/x} \]
   \[ o_2 = σγ_2 \sqrt{-2 \ln(x)/x} \]

2. If an odd number of samples are requested, the second data of the last pair is discarded.

3. This routine is not strictly reentrant since any calls to rand will affect the sequence of random numbers used. However, such calls will not affect the random properties of the white noise generated.

4. Floating-point arithmetic is used in this function and this degrades the processing speed, so its use should be restricted to test programs rather than application programs whenever possible.
int MatrixMult (void *op_matrix, const void *ip_x, const void *ip_y, long m, long n, long p, int x_first, int res_shift)
int MatrixMult (void *op_matrix, const __X void *ip_x, const __Y void *ip_y, long m, long n, long p, int x_first, int res_shift)

Description: Multiplies the two matrices x and y and stores the result in op_matrix.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
EDSP_BAD_ARG m, n or p < 5
res_shift < 0
res_shift > 25
x_first ≠ 0 or 1

Parameters: op_matrix pointer to the first element of output
ip_x pointer to the first element of input x
ip_y pointer to the first element of input y
m row dimension of matrix1
n column dimension of matrix1, row dimension of matrix2
p column dimension of matrix2
x_first order specification of matrix multiply
res_shift right shift applied to each output

Remarks: 1. If x_first is 1 the product x × y is calculated. In this case ip_x is m × n,
ip_y is n × p and op_matrix is m × p.
2. If x_first is 0 the product y × x is calculated. In this case ip_y is m × n,
ip_x is n × p and op_matrix is m × p.
3. For multiply-accumulate operation, the sum is accumulated in 39 bits.
   Each 16-bit output is extracted from the lower 16 bits of res_shift bits
   shifted to the right. If an overflow occurs, output is saturated to positive
   or negative maximum value.
4. Each matrix is stored in the normal ‘C’ manner (row major order):
   \[
   \begin{pmatrix}
   a_0 & a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \\
   a_4 & a_5 & a_6 & a_7 \\
   a_8 & a_9 & a_{10} & a_{11}
   \end{pmatrix}
   \]
5. The function prototype specifies the array parameters as void * to allow
   arbitrary array sizes to be specified. These parameters should point to
short-type data.
   6. `ip_x`, `ip_y` and `op_matrix` must not overlap.

```c
int VectorMult (short output[ ], const short ip_x[ ], const short ip_y[ ],
               long no_elements, int res_shift)
```

```c
int VectorMult (_ _fixed output[ ], const _ _X _ _fixed ip_x[ ], const _ _Y _ _fixed ip_y[ ],
               long no_elements, int res_shift)
```

**Description:** Multiplies pairs of elements from `ip_x` and `ip_y` and stores the results in `output`.

**Header:** `<ensigdsp.h>`

**Return values:**
- `EDSP_OK` successfully completed
- `EDSP_BAD_ARG` `no_elements < 4`
- `res_shift < 0`
- `res_shift > 16`

**Parameters:**
- `output[ ]` `output`
- `ip_x[ ]` `input1`
- `ip_y[ ]` `input2`
- `no_elements` `number of elements`
- `res_shift` `right shift applied to each output`

**Remarks:**
1. Output is extracted from the lower 16 bits of `res_shift` bits shifted to the right. If an overflow occurs, output is saturated to positive or negative maximum value.
2. This routine performs element-wise multiplication. To calculate a dot product use `MatrixMult` with `m` and `p` set to 1.
```c
int MsPower (long *output, const short input[], long no_elements, int src_is_x)
int MsPower (long _fixed * output, const _fixed input[], long no_elements,
           int src_is_x)
```

Description: Calculates the mean square power of the input data

Header: `<ensigdsp.h>`

Return values:
- EDSP_OK: successfully completed
- EDSP_BAD_ARG: `no_elements` < 6
  - `src_is_x` ≠ 0 or 1

Parameters:
- `output`: pointer to output
- `input[]`: input x
- `no_elements`: number of elements N
- `src_is_x`: location specification of data

Remarks:
1. Mean square power: \[ \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=0}^{N-1} x(i)^2 \]
2. The division result is rounded to the nearest integral value.
3. The sum is accumulated in 63 bits. If `no_elements` is more than \(2^{32}\), an overflow may occur.
4. If `src_is_x` is 1, data is located in X memory. If `src_is_x` is 0, data is located in Y memory.
int Mean (short *mean, const short input[], long no_elements, int src_is_x)
int Mean (_fixed *mean, const _fixed input[], long no_elements, int src_is_x)

Description: Calculates the mean of input

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
               EDSP_BAD_ARG no_elements < 6
               src_is_x ≠ 0 or 1

Parameters: mean  pointer to mean x of input
             input[]  input x
             no_elements  number of elements N
             src_is_x  location specification of data

Remarks: 1. \( \bar{x} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=0}^{N-1} x(i) \)
2. The division result is rounded to the nearest integral value.
3. The sum is accumulated in 32 bits. If no_elements is more than \(2^{16}-1\), an overflow may occur.
4. If src_is_x is 1, data is located in X memory.
   If src_is_x is 0, data is located in Y memory.
int Variance (long *variance, short *mean, const short input[], long no_elements, int src_is_x)
int Variance (long _ _fixed *variance_ptr, _ _fixed *mean_ptr, const _ _fixed input[], long no_elements, int src_is_x)

Description: Calculates the mean and variance of input data.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
EDSP_BAD_ARG no_elements < 4
src_is_x ≠ 0 or 1

Parameters: variance pointer to the variance σ^2 of input
mean pointer to mean x of data
input[] input x
no_elements number of elements N
src_is_x location specification of data

Remarks:
1. \[ \bar{x} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=0}^{N-1} x(i) \]
   \[ \sigma^2 = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=0}^{N-1} (x(i))^2 - \bar{x}^2 \]
2. The division results are rounded to the nearest integral values.
3. x is accumulated in 32 bits and is not checked for overflow. If no_elements is more than \(2^{16}-1\), an overflow may occur.
4. σ^2 is accumulated in 63 bits and is not checked for overflow.
5. If src_is_x is 1, data is located in X memory.
   If src_is_x is 0, data is located in Y memory.
int MaxI (short **max_ptr, short input[], long no_elements, int src_is_x)
int MaxI (_fixed **max_ptr, _fixed input[], long no_elements, int src_is_x)

Description: Searches for maximum value of array input, and returns its address in max_ptr.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
EDSP_BAD_ARG no_elements < 1
src_is_x ≠ 0 or 1

Parameters: max_ptr pointer to pointer to the maximum element
input[] input
no_elements number of elements
src_is_x location specification of data

Remarks: 1. If several elements have the same maximum value the one nearest the start of input is returned.
2. If src_is_x is 1, data is located in X memory.
   If src_is_x is 0, data is located in Y memory.

int MinI (short **min_ptr, short input[], long no_elements, int src_is_x)
int MinI (_fixed **min_ptr, _fixed input[], long no_elements, int src_is_x)

Description: Searches for minimum value of array input, and returns its address in min_ptr.

Header: <ensigdsp.h>

Return values: EDSP_OK successfully completed
EDSP_BAD_ARG no_elements < 1
src_is_x ≠ 0 or 1

Parameters: min_ptr pointer to pointer to the minimum element
input[] input
no_elements number of elements
src_is_x location specification of data

Remarks: 1. If several elements have the same minimum value the one nearest the start of input is returned.
2. If \texttt{src\_is\_x} is 1, data is located in X memory.
   If \texttt{src\_is\_x} is 0, data is located in Y memory.

\begin{verbatim}
int PeakI (short **peak_ptr, short input[], long no_elements, int src_is_x)
int PeakI (_fixed **peak_ptr, _fixed input[], long no_elements, int src_is_x)
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{Description:} Searches for maximum absolute value of array \texttt{input}, and returns its address
in \texttt{peak\_ptr}

\textbf{Header:} \texttt{<ensigdsp.h>}

\textbf{Return values:}
\begin{tabular}{ll}
EDSP\_OK & successfully completed \\
EDSP\_BAD\_ARG & no_elements < 1 \\
& src\_is\_x ≠ 0 or 1
\end{tabular}

\textbf{Parameters:}
\begin{tabular}{ll}
\texttt{peak\_ptr} & pointer to pointer to the peak element \\
\texttt{input[]} & input \\
\texttt{no\_elements} & number of elements \\
\texttt{src\_is\_x} & location specification of data
\end{tabular}

\textbf{Remarks}
\begin{enumerate}
\item If several elements have the same peak value the one nearest the start of
input is returned.
\item If \texttt{src\_is\_x} is 1, data is located in X memory.
   If \texttt{src\_is\_x} is 0, data is located in Y memory.
\end{enumerate}
11.1 Program Elements

11.1.1 Source Statements

(1) Source Statement Structure

The following shows the structure of a source statement.

```
[label] [operation][operand(s)] [comment]
```

Example:

```
LABEL1: MOV R0,R1
```

(a) Label

A symbol or a local symbol is written as a tag attached to a source statement.
A symbol is a name defined by the programmer.

(b) Operation

The mnemonic of an executable instruction, a DSP instruction, an extended instruction, an assembler directive, or a directive statement is written as the operation.
Executable instructions and DSP instructions are microprocessor instructions.
Extended instructions are instructions that are expanded into executable instructions and constant data (literals) or several executable instructions.
Assembler directives are instructions that give directions to the assembler.
Directive statements are used for file inclusion, conditional assembly, and macro functions.
(c) Operand
The object(s) of the operation's execution are written as the operand.
The number of operands and their types are determined by the operation. There are also
operations which do not require any operands.

(d) Comment
Notes or explanations that make the program easier to understand are written as the
comment.

(2) Coding of Source Statements
Source statements are written using ASCII characters. String literals and comments can
include Japanese characters (shift JIS code or EUC code) or LATIN1 code character.
In principle, a single statement must be written on a single line. The maximum length of a line
is 8192 bytes.

(a) Coding of Label
The label is written as follows:
• Written starting in the first column,
Or:
• Written with a colon (:) appended to the end of the label.

Examples:

LABEL1 ; This label is written starting in the first column.
LABEL2: ; This label is terminated with a colon.

---------------------------------------------------------------------
LABEL3 ; This label is regarded as an error by the assembler,
; since it is neither written starting in the first column
; nor terminated with a colon.
(b) Coding of Operation
   The operation is written as follows:
   — When there is no label:
     Written starting in the second or later column.
   — When there is a label:
     Written after the label, separated by one or more spaces or tabs.
   Example:
     ADD  R0,R1       ; An example with no label.
     LABEL1: ADD  R1,R2       ; An example with a label.

(c) Coding of Operand
   The operand is written following the operation field, separated by one or more spaces or tabs.
   Example:
     ADD  R0,R1       ; The ADD instruction takes two operands.
     SHAL R1          ; The SHAL instruction takes one operand.

(d) Coding of Comment
   The comment is written following a semicolon (;).
   The assembler regards all characters from the semicolon to the end of the line as the comment.
   Example:
     ADD  R0,R1       ; Adds R0 to R1.
(3) Coding of Source Statements across Multiple Lines
A single source statement can be written across several lines in the following situations:
— When the source statement is too long as a single statement.
— When it is desirable to attach a comment to each operand.

Write source statements across multiple lines using the following procedure.
(a) Insert a new line after a comma that separates operands.
(b) Insert a plus sign (+) in the first column of the new line.
(c) Continue writing the source statement following the plus sign.
Spaces and tabs can be inserted following the plus sign. A comment can be written at the end of each line.

Example:
```
.DATA.L     H'FFFF0000,
+         H'FF00FF00,
+         H'FFFFFFFF
```
; In this example, a single source statement is written across three lines.

A comment can be attached at the end of each line.

Example:
```
.DATA.L     H'FFFF0000,    ; Initial value 1.
+         H'FF00FF00,    ; Initial value 2.
+         H'FFFFFFFF    ; Initial value 3.
```
; In this example, a comment is attached to each operand.
11.1.2 Reserved Words

Reserved words are names that the assembler reserves as symbols with special meanings. Register names, operators, and the location counter are used as reserved words. Register names are different depending on the target CPU. Refer to the programming manual of the target CPU, for details. Reserved words must not be used as symbols.

- Register names
  R0 to R15, FR0 to FR15, DR0 to DR14 (only even values), XD0 to XD14 (only even values), FV0 to FV12 (only multiples of four), R0_BANK to R7_BANK, SP*, SR, GBR, VBR, MACH, MACL, PR, PC, SSR, SPC, FPUL, FPSCR, MOD, RE, RS, DSR, A0, A0G, A1, A1G, M0, M1, X0, X1, Y0, Y1, XMTRX, DBR, SGR, TBR

- Operators
  STARTOF, SIZEOF, HIGH, LOW, HWORD, LWORD, $EVEN, $ODD, $EVEN2, $ODD2

- Location counter
  $ 

Note: R15 and SP indicate the same register.

11.1.3 Symbols

(1) Functions of Symbols
Symbols are names defined by the programmer, and perform the following functions.
- Address symbols: Express data storage or branch destination addresses.
- Constant symbols: Express constants.
- Aliases of register names: Express general registers and floating-point registers.
- Section names: Express section names.
The following shows examples of symbol usage.

Examples:

```assembly
BRA SUB1 ;BRA is a branch instruction.
;SUB1 is the address symbol of the destination.
```

```assembly
SUB1:
```

```assembly
MAX: .EQU 100 ;.EQU is an assembler directive that sets a value to a
;symbol.
MOV.B #MAX,R0 ;MAX expresses the constant value 100.
```

```assembly
MIN: .REG R0 ;.REG is an assembler directive that defines a register
;alias.
MOV.B #100,MIN ;MIN is an alias for R0.
```

```assembly
.SECTION CD, CODE, ALIGN=4
; .SECTION is an assembler directive that declares a section.
;CD is the name of the current section.
```
(2) Naming Symbols

(a) Available Characters
The following ASCII characters can be used.
- Alphabetical uppercase and lowercase letters (A to Z, a to z)
- Numbers (0 to 9)
- Underscore (_)
- Dollar sign ($)

The assembler distinguishes uppercase letters from lowercase letters in symbols.

(b) First Character in a Symbol
The first character in a symbol must be one of the following.
- Alphabetical uppercase and lowercase letters (A to Z, a to z)
- Underscore (_)
- Dollar sign ($)

Note: The dollar sign character used alone is a reserved word that expresses the location counter.

(c) Maximum Length of a Symbol
Not limited.

(d) Names that Cannot Be Used as Symbols
Reserved words cannot be used as symbols. Names of the following type must not be used because such names are used as internal symbols by the assembler.

$_Ommmmm (m is a number from 0 to F.)
_$$nnnnn (n is a number from 0 to 9.)

Note: Internal symbols are necessary for assembler internal processing. Internal symbols are not output to assemble listings or object modules.

(e) Defining and Referencing Symbols
To define a symbol, it must be entered as a label. To reference a symbol, it must be entered as an operand. Symbols that are entered as operands for .SECTION or .MACRO, however, constitute an exception. To reference a symbol (macro name) that has been defined by .MACRO, the symbol must be entered as an operation (macro call). A symbol may be referenced before it has been defined. We reference to such as reference as a forward reference. Such references can usually be used, but in some cases they are prohibited.
When a program consists of multiple source files, symbols may be referenced from more than one file. The way a symbol defined in one file is referenced to from another file is called external definition. To reference a symbol that is defined in another file is called external reference. External definitions can be declared by .EXPORT and .GLOBAL. External references can be defined by .IMPORT and .GLOBAL. Be careful with the use of forward and external references, because in some cases, external references such as forward references are prohibited.

11.1.4 Constants

(1) Integer Constants

Integer constants are expressed with a prefix that indicates the radix.

The radix indicator prefix is a notation that indicates the radix of the constant.

— Binary numbers  The radix indicator "B" plus a binary constant.
— Octal numbers   The radix indicator "Q" plus an octal constant.
— Decimal numbers The radix indicator "D" plus a decimal constant.
— Hexadecimal numbers The radix indicator "H" plus a hexadecimal constant.

The assembler does not distinguish uppercase letters from lowercase letters in the radix indicator.

The radix indicator and the constant value must be written with no intervening space. The radix indicator can be omitted. Integer constants with no radix indicator are normally decimal constants, although the radix for such constants can be changed with .RADIX.

Example:

```
.DATAB  B'10001000
.DATAB  Q'210
.DATAB  D'136
.DATAB  H'88
```

These source statements express the same numerical value.

Note: "Q" is used instead of "O" to avoid confusion with the digit 0.
(2) Character Constants

Character constants are considered to be constants that represent character codes. Character constants are written by enclosing up to four-byte characters in double quotation marks.

The following ASCII characters can be used in character constants.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ASCII code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H'09 (tab)</td>
<td>Tab character</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H'20 (space) to H'7E (tilde)</td>
<td>Space to tilde</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In addition, Japanese characters (shift JIS code or EUC code) and LATIN1 code character can be used. Use two double quotation marks in succession to indicate a single double quotation mark in a character constant. When using Japanese characters in shift JIS code or EUC code, be sure to specify the \texttt{sjis} or \texttt{euc} command line option, respectively. When using LATIN1 code character, be sure to specify the \texttt{latin1} command line option. Note that the shift JIS code, EUC code, and LATIN1 code character cannot be used together in one source program.

Example 1:

```plaintext
.DATA.L "ABC" ;This is the same as .DATA.L H'00414243.
.DATA.W "AB" ;This is the same as .DATA.W H'4142.
.DATA.B "A" ;This is the same as .DATA.B H'41.
```

;The ASCII code for A is: H'41
;The ASCII code for B is: H'42
;The ASCII code for C is: H'43

Example 2:

```plaintext
.DATA.B "*****" ;This is a character constant consisting of a single double quotation mark.
```
(3) Floating-Point Constants

Floating-point constants can be specified as operands in assembler directives for reserving floating-point constants.

(a) Floating-Point Constant Representation:

Floating-point constants can be represented in decimal and hexadecimal.

- Decimal representation

\[ F'[{±}] \left( n[.m] \right) \left[ t[±]xx \right] \]

- Indicates that the number is decimal. It cannot be omitted.

- \( [{±}] \) indicates the integer part in decimal. "n" indicates the fraction part in decimal. Either the integer part or the fraction part can be omitted. If the sign (±) is omitted, the assembler assumes it is positive.

- \( t \) indicates that the number is in either of the following precisions
  
  S: Single precision
  D: Double precision

  If omitted, the assembler assumes the operation size of the assembler directive.

- \( [[±]xx] \) indicates the exponent part in decimal. If omitted, the assembler assumes 0. If the sign (±) is omitted, the assembler assumes it is positive.

Example:

- \( F'0.5S^-2 = 0.5 \times 10^{-2} = 0.005 = H'3BA3D70A \)
- \( F'.123D3 = 0.123 \times 10^3 = 123 = H'405EC00000000000 \)
Hexadecimal representation

\[ H'\text{xxxx}[] \cdot \text{t} \]

- **H** indicates that the number is hexadecimal. It cannot be omitted.
- **xxxx** indicates the bit pattern of the floating-point constant in hexadecimal. If the bit pattern is shorter than the specified data length, it is aligned to the right end of the reserved area and 0s are added to the remaining bits in the reserved area. If the bit pattern is longer than the specified data length, the right-side bits of the bit pattern are allocated for the specified data length and the remaining bits of the bit pattern are ignored.
- **t** indicates that the number is in either of the following precisions:
  - **S**: Single precision
  - **D**: Double precision

If omitted, the assembler assumes the operation size of the assembler directive.

This format directly specifies the bit pattern of the floating-point constant to represent data that is difficult to represent in decimal format, such as 0s or infinity for the specified precision.

**Example:**

\[ H'0123456789ABCDEF.\text{S} = H'89ABCDEF \]
\[ H'FFFF.\text{D} = H'000000000000FFF \]

(b) Floating-Point Data Range:

Table 11.1 lists the floating-point data types.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Normalized number</td>
<td>The absolute value is between the underflow and overflow boundaries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>including the boundary values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Denormalized number</td>
<td>The absolute value is between 0 and the underflow boundary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zero</td>
<td>The absolute value is 0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinity</td>
<td>The absolute value is larger than the overflow boundary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not-a-Number (NAN)</td>
<td>A value that is not a numerical value. Includes sNAN (signaling NAN) and qNAN (quiet NAN).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
These data types are shown on the following number line. NAN cannot be shown on the number line because it is not handled as a numerical value.

![Number line diagram]

Table 11.2 lists the numerical value ranges the assembler can use.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data Type</th>
<th>Single Precision</th>
<th>Double Precision</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Normalized number</strong></td>
<td>Maximum value 3.40 x 10^{38}</td>
<td>1.79 x 10^{308}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Minimum value 1.18 x 10^{-38}</td>
<td>2.23 x 10^{-308}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Denormalized number</strong></td>
<td>Maximum value 1.17 x 10^{-38}</td>
<td>2.22 x 10^{-308}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Minimum value 1.40 x 10^{-45}</td>
<td>4.94 x 10^{-324}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(c) Floating-Point Data Format:

The floating-point data format is shown below:

**Single Precision**:

```
31,30,........23,22,..............................................,0
S  E  F
```

**Double Precision**:

```
63,62,........52,51,..............................................,0
S  E  F
```

▲: Decimal point
S: Sign bit
E: Exponent part
F: Fraction part
• Sign bit (S)
  Indicates the sign of a value. Positive and negative are represented by 0 and 1, respectively.
• Exponent part (E)
  Indicates the exponent of a value. The actual exponent value is obtained by subtracting the bias value from the value specified in this exponent part.
• Fraction part (F)
  Each bit has its own significance and corresponds to $2^{-1}, 2^{-2}, ..., 2^{-n}$ from the start bit, respectively ($n$ is the bit length of the fraction part).

Table 11.3 shows the size of each parameter in data format.

### Table 11.3  Data Format Size

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Single Precision</th>
<th>Double Precision</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bit length</td>
<td>32 bits</td>
<td>64 bits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sign bit (S)</td>
<td>1 bit</td>
<td>1 bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exponent part (E)</td>
<td>8 bits</td>
<td>11 bits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fraction part (F)</td>
<td>23 bits</td>
<td>52 bits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bias of exponent value</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>1023</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A floating-point number is represented using the symbols in table 11.3 as follows:

$$2^{E-\text{bias}} \cdot (-1)^S \cdot \begin{cases} 
(1. F) : \text{Normalized number} \\
(0. F) : \text{Denormalized number}
\end{cases}$$

(1. $F = b_0 \times 2^{-1} + b_1 \times 2^{-2} + ... + b_{n-1} \times 2^{-n}$
(0. $F = b_0 \times 2^{-1} + b_1 \times 2^{-2} + ... + b_{n-1} \times 2^{-n}$

`b`: Bit location in the fraction part

`n`: Bit length of the fraction part

Table 11.4 shows the floating-point representation for each data type. NAN cannot be represented because it is not handled as a numerical value.
Table 11.4 Floating-Point Representation for Each Data Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data Type</th>
<th>Single Precision</th>
<th>Double Precision</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Normalized number</td>
<td>$(-1)^s \cdot 2^{E-127} \cdot (1. F)$</td>
<td>$(-1)^s \cdot 2^{E-1023} \cdot (1. F)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Denormalized number</td>
<td>$(-1)^s \cdot 2^{-126} \cdot (0. F)$</td>
<td>$(-1)^s \cdot 2^{-1022} \cdot (0. F)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zero</td>
<td>$(-1)^s \cdot 0$</td>
<td>$(-1)^s \cdot 0$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinity</td>
<td>$(-1)^s \cdot \infty$</td>
<td>$(-1)^s \cdot \infty$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not-a-Number (NAN)</td>
<td>quiet NAN, signaling NAN</td>
<td>quiet NAN, signaling NAN</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(d) Rounding of Floating-Point Constants:

- **Round to Nearest even (RN)**
  
  Rounds the least significant bit in the object code to its nearest absolute value. When two absolute values are at the same distance, rounds the least significant bit to become zero.

- **Round to Zero (RZ)**
  
  Rounds the least significant bit toward zero.

   Example:
   
   - Object code of `.FDATA.S F' 1S-1
     
     RN: H'3DCCCCCD
     
     RZ: H'3DCCCCCC

(e) Handling Denormalized Numbers:

- The assembler handles denormalized numbers differently depending on the target CPU. In a CPU that does not handle denormalized numbers, if a value in the denormalized number range is used, warning 841 occurs and the object code is output as zero.

- In a CPU that handles denormalized numbers, if a value in the denormalized number range is used, warning 842 occurs and the object code is output in denormalized numbers.

- How to handle denormalized numbers can be switched with the `denormalize` option.
Example:
CPU not handling denormalized numbers:
.FDATA.S F' 1S-40 Warning 841, Object code H'00000000
CPU handling denormalized numbers:
.FDATA.S F' 1S-40 Warning 842, Object code H'000116C2

(4) Floating-Point Arithmetic Operations
Floating-point arithmetic operations can be specified in the assembler directive for reserving floating-point data.

(a) Rounding of Results:
When the result of floating-point arithmetic operations exceeds the valid fraction digits in internal representation, the assembler rounds it as follows:

- Rounds the result to the nearest of two internal representations of floating-point constants.
- Rounds the result so that the least significant digit of the fraction part becomes zero when two internal representations are at the same distance from the result.
- For the SH-2E CPU, truncates the section that exceeds the valid digits.
- For the SH-4, SH-4A, or SH2A-FPU CPU, rounds the section that exceeds the valid digits to the nearest value when \( \text{round=nearest} \) is specified, and truncates the section that exceeds the valid digits when \( \text{round=zero} \) is specified.

(b) Handling of Overflows, Underflows, and Invalid Operations:
The assembler handles overflows, underflows, and invalid operations as follows:

- For an overflow, handles the result as a positive or negative infinity depending on the sign of the result.
- For an underflow, handles the result as a positive or negative zero depending on the sign of the result.
- For an invalid operation, which occurs when infinity values of the opposite sign are added or when an infinity value is subtracted from another infinity value of the same sign, handles the result as a not-a-number.

Note: Arithmetic operations on constant expressions are performed during assembly. If an overflow, underflow, or invalid operation occurs during assembly, a warning level error message is output.
(5) Fixed-Point Constants

Fixed-point constants can be specified as operands in the assembler directive for reserving fixed-point data.

(a) Fixed-Point Number Representation:

Fixed-point numbers express real numbers ranging from –1.0 to 1.0 in decimal.

Word size and longword size are available for fixed-point numbers.

- **Word-size fixed-point numbers**
  
  Two-byte signed integers expressing real numbers ranging from –1.0 to 1.0.
  
  The real number expressed by 2-byte signed integer \( x (\text{–32,768} < = x < = 32,767) \) is \( x/32768 \).

  Example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fixed-point number</th>
<th>Word-size representation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>–1.0</td>
<td>H’8000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–0.5</td>
<td>H’C000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>H’0000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>H’4000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>H’7FFF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Longword-size fixed-point numbers**

Four-byte signed integers expressing real numbers ranging from –1.0 to 1.0. The real number expressed by 4-byte signed integer \( x (\text{–2,147,483,648} < = x < = 2,147,483,647) \) is \( x/2147483648 \).

  Example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fixed-point number</th>
<th>Longword-size representation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>–1.0</td>
<td>H’80000000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–0.5</td>
<td>H’C0000000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>H’00000000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>H’40000000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>H’7FFFFFFF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(b) Fixed-Point Data Format:
The fixed-point data format consists of a sign bit and a 15-bit fraction part in word size, and a sign bit and a 31-bit fraction part in longword size. The decimal point is assumed to be fixed on the right of the sign bit.

- **Word size**
  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1514</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

  ▲: Decimal point
  S: Sign bit
  F: Fraction part

- **Longword size**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3130</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

  ▲: Decimal point
  S: Sign bit
  F: Fraction part

  — Sign bit (S)
  Indicates the sign of a value. Positive and negative are represented by 0 and 1, respectively.

  — Fraction part (F)
  Each bit has its own significance and corresponds to $2^{-1}$, $2^{-2}$, ..., $2^{-31}$ from the start bit, respectively.

(c) Valid Range for Fixed-Point Numbers:
In longword size, 31 bits can represent nine digits of data in decimal, but the assembler handles ten digits in decimal as a valid number, rounds the 32nd bit in RN (round to the nearest absolute value) mode, and uses the high-order 31 bits of the result as fixed-point data.

Note: The actual fixed-point data range is –1.0 to 0.9999999999, but the assembler assumes 1.0 as 0.9999999999 and represents it as H'7FFFFFFF.
11.1.5 Location Counter

The location counter expresses the address (location) in memory where the corresponding object code (the result of converting executable instructions and data into code the microprocessor can understand) is stored.

The value of the location counter is automatically adjusted according to the object code output. The value of the location counter can be changed intentionally using assembler directives.

Examples:

```
.ORG H'00001000'; This assembler directive sets the location counter to H'00001000

.DATA.W H'FF'; The object code generated by this assembler directive has
;a length of 2 bytes.
;The location counter changes to H'00001002.

.DATA.W H'F0'; The object code generated by this assembler directive has
;a length of 2 bytes.
;The location counter changes to H'00001004.

.DATA.W H'10'; The object code generated by this assembler directive has
;a length of 2 bytes.
;The location counter changes to H'00001006.

.ALIGN 4'; The value of the location counter is corrected to be a
;multiple of 4.
;The location counter changes to H'00001008.
```
The object code generated by this assembler directive has a length of 4 bytes.
The location counter changes to H'0000100C.
.ORG is an assembler directive that sets the value of the location counter.
.ALIGN is an assembler directive that adjusts the value of the location.
.DATA is an assembler directive that reserves data in memory.
.W is a specifier that indicates that data is handled in word (2 bytes) size.
.L is a specifier that indicates that data is handled in longword (4 bytes) size.

The location counter is referenced using the dollar sign symbol.

Examples:
LABEL1: .EQU $ ;This assembler directive sets the value of the location counter to the symbol LABEL1.
          ;.EQU is an assembler directive that sets the value to a symbol.

11.1.6 Expressions

Expressions are combinations of constants, symbols, and operators that derive a value, and are used as the operands of executable instructions and assembler directives.

(1) Elements of Expression
An expression consists of terms, operators, and parentheses.
(a) Terms
The terms are the followings:
• A constant
• The location counter reference ($)
• A symbol (excluding aliases of the register name)
• The result of a calculation specified by a combination of the above terms and an operator.
An individual term is also a kind of expression.
(b) Operators

Table 11.5 shows the operators supported by the assembler.

**Table 11.5 Operators**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator Type</th>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Coding</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arithmetic operations</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>Unary plus</td>
<td>+ &lt;term&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>–</td>
<td>Unary minus</td>
<td>– &lt;term&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>+</td>
<td>Addition</td>
<td>&lt;term1&gt; + &lt;term2&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>–</td>
<td>Subtraction</td>
<td>&lt;term1&gt; – &lt;term2&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*</td>
<td>Multiplication</td>
<td>&lt;term1&gt; * &lt;term2&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>/</td>
<td>Division</td>
<td>&lt;term1&gt; / &lt;term2&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logic operations</td>
<td>~</td>
<td>Unary negation</td>
<td>~ &lt;term&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;</td>
<td>Logical AND</td>
<td>&lt;term1&gt; &amp; &lt;term2&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Logical OR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~</td>
<td>Exclusive OR</td>
<td>&lt;term1&gt; ~ &lt;term2&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shift operations</td>
<td>&lt;&lt;</td>
<td>Arithmetic left shift</td>
<td>&lt;term 1&gt; &lt;&lt; &lt;term 2&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;&gt;</td>
<td>Arithmetic right shift</td>
<td>&lt;term 1&gt; &gt;&gt; &lt;term 2&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section set operations*</td>
<td>STARTOF</td>
<td>Determines the starting address of a section set.</td>
<td>STARTOF &lt;section name&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SIZEOF</td>
<td>Determines the size of a section set in bytes.</td>
<td>SIZEOF &lt;section name&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Even/odd operations</td>
<td>$EVEN</td>
<td>1 when the value is a multiple of 2, and 0 otherwise</td>
<td>$EVEN &lt;symbol&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$ODD</td>
<td>0 when the value is a multiple of 2, and 1 otherwise</td>
<td>$ODD &lt;symbol&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$EVEN2</td>
<td>1 when the value is a multiple of 4, and 0 otherwise</td>
<td>$EVEN2 &lt;symbol&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$ODD2</td>
<td>0 when the value is a multiple of 4, and 1 otherwise</td>
<td>$ODD2 &lt;symbol&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extraction operations</td>
<td>HIGH</td>
<td>Extracts the high-order byte</td>
<td>HIGH &lt;term&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LOW</td>
<td>Extracts the low-order byte</td>
<td>LOW &lt;term&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HWORD</td>
<td>Extracts the high-order word</td>
<td>HWORD &lt;term&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LWORD</td>
<td>Extracts the low-order word</td>
<td>LWORD &lt;term&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(c) Parentheses
Parentheses modify the operation precedence.

(2) Operation Precedence
When multiple operations appear in a single expression, the order in which the processing is performed is determined by the operator precedence and by the use of parentheses. The assembler processes operations according to the following rules.

— Rule 1
Processing starts from operations enclosed in parentheses.
When there are multiple parentheses, processing starts with the operations surrounded by the innermost parentheses.

— Rule 2
Processing starts with the operator with the highest precedence.

— Rule 3
Processing proceeds in the direction of the operator association rule when operators have the same precedence.

Table 11.6 shows the operator precedence and the association rule.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Precedence</th>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Association Rule</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 (high)</td>
<td>+ - ~ STARTOF SIZEOF $EVEN $ODD $EVEN2 $ODD2 HIGH LOW HWORD LWORD*</td>
<td>Operators are processed from right to left.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>* /</td>
<td>Operators are processed from left to right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>+ –</td>
<td>Operators are processed from left to right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>&lt;&lt; &gt;&gt;</td>
<td>Operators are processed from left to right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>&amp;</td>
<td>Operators are processed from left to right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 (low)</td>
<td></td>
<td>~</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The operators of precedence 1 (highest precedence) are for unary operation.
The figures below show examples of expressions.

Example 1:

\[ 1 + \left( 2 - \left( 3 + \left( 4 - 5 \right) \right) \right) \]

(a) \( (b) \)  
(c) \( (d) \)

The assembler calculates this expression in the order (a) to (d).

The result of (a) is \(-1\)
The result of (b) is \(2\)
The result of (c) is \(0\)
The result of (d) is \(1\)

The final result of this calculation is \(1\).

Example 2:

\[-\text{H'FFFFFFF1} + \text{H'000000F0} \times \text{H'00000010} | \text{H'000000F0} & \text{H'0000FFFF} \]

(a) \( (b) \)  
(c) \( (d) \) \( (e) \)

The assembler calculates this expression in the order (a) to (e).

The result of (a) is \(\text{H'000000F} \)
The result of (b) is \(\text{H'000000F0} \)
The result of (c) is \(\text{H'000000F0} \)
The result of (d) is \(\text{H'000000F0} \)
The result of (e) is \(\text{H'000000FF} \)

The final result of this calculation is \(\text{H'000000FF} \).
Example 3:

- \[ H'0000000F \]
- \[ H'00000010 \]
- \[ H'FFFFFFEF \]
- \[ H'00000011 \]

The assembler calculates this expression in the order (a) to (d).

The result of (a) is H'FFFFFFF0
The result of (b) is H'00000010
The result of (c) is H'FFFFFFEF
The result of (d) is H'00000011

The final result of this calculation is H'00000011.

(3) Detailed Description on Operation

(a) STARTOF Operation

Determines the start address of a section set after the specified sections are linked by the optimizing linkage editor.

(b) SIZEOF Operation

Determines the size of a section set after the specified sections are linked by the optimizing linkage editor.
Example:

```assembly
.CPU    SH1
.SECTION INIT_RAM, DATA, ALIGN=4
.RES.B H'100
.SECTION INIT_DATA, DATA, ALIGN=4

INIT_BGN .DATA.L (STARTOF INIT_RAM) .........................; (1)
INIT_END .DATA.L (STARTOF INIT_RAM) + (SIZEOF INIT_RAM) ...; (2)

; ;

.SECTION MAIN, CODE, ALIGN=4

INITIAL:
MOV.L  DATA1,R6
MOV    #0,R5
MOV.L  DATA1+4,R3
BRA    LOOP2
MOV.L  @R3,R4
LOOP1:
MOV.L  R5,@R4
ADD    #4,R4

LOOP2:
MOV.L  @R6,R3
CMP/HI R3,R4
BF     LOOP1
RTS
NOP

DATA1:

.DATA.L INIT_END
.DATA.L INIT_BGN
.END
```

(1) Determines the start address of section INIT_RAM.
(2) Determines the end address of section INIT_RAM.
(c) HIGH Operation

Extracts the high-order byte from the low-order two bytes of a 4-byte value.

Before operation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>31</th>
<th>24</th>
<th>23</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>H'xx</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

After operation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>31</th>
<th>24</th>
<th>23</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H'00</td>
<td>H'00</td>
<td>H'00</td>
<td>H'xx</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

LABEL .EQU H'00007FFF
.DATA HIGH LABEL ; Reserves integer data H'0000007F on memory.

(d) LOW Operation

Extracts the lowest-order one byte from a 4-byte value.

Before operation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>31</th>
<th>24</th>
<th>23</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>H'xx</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

After operation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>31</th>
<th>24</th>
<th>23</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H'00</td>
<td>H'00</td>
<td>H'00</td>
<td>H'xx</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(e) HWORD Operation

Extracts the high-order two bytes from a 4-byte value.

Before operation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>31</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H'xxxx</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

After operation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>31</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H'0000</td>
<td>H'xxxx</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(f) LWORD Operation
Extracts the low-order two bytes from a 4-byte value.

Before operation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>31</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H’xxxx</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

After operation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>31</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H’0000</td>
<td>H’xxxx</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(g) EVEN/ODD Operation
Determines if the value of the address symbol is a multiple of 2 or 4.
Table 11.7 shows the even/odd operations.

Table 11.7 Even/Odd Operations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Operation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$EVEN</td>
<td>1 when the value is a multiple of 2, and 0 otherwise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$ODD</td>
<td>0 when the value is a multiple of 2, and 1 otherwise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$EVEN2</td>
<td>1 when the value is a multiple of 4, and 0 otherwise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$ODD2</td>
<td>0 when the value is a multiple of 4, and 1 otherwise</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:
To obtain the current program counter value using an $ODD2 operator.
LAB:

MOVA @(0,PC),R0
ADD #4+2+$ODD2 LAB,R0 ;$ODD2 gives 0 when LAB is 
;a multiple of 4, and gives 1 when 
;LAB is not a multiple of 4.
(4) Notes on Expressions

(a) Internal Processing
The assembler regards expression values as 32-bit signed values.

Example:
\texttt{~H'F0}  
The assembler regards \texttt{H'F0} as \texttt{H'000000F0}.
Therefore, the value of \texttt{~H'F0} is \texttt{H'FFFFFF0F}. (Note that this is not \texttt{H'0000000F}.)

(b) Arithmetic Operators
Where values must be determined at assembly, the multiplication and division operators cannot take terms that contain relative values as their operands.
Also, a divisor of 0 cannot be used with the division operator.

Example:
\texttt{.IMPORT SYM}
\texttt{.DATA SYM/10 ;Correctly assembled.}
\texttt{.ORG SYM/10 ;An error will occur.}

(c) Logic Operators
The logic operators cannot take terms that contain relative values as their operands.
11.1.7 String Literals

String literals are sequences of character data. The following ASCII characters can be used in string literals.

ASCII code
- H'09 (tab)
- H'20 (space) to H'7E (tilde)

A single character in a string literal has as its value the ASCII code for that character and is represented as a byte sized data object. In addition, Japanese characters in shift JIS code or EUC code, and LATIN1 code character can be used. When using Japanese characters in shift JIS code or EUC code, be sure to specify the sjis or euc option, respectively. If not specified, Japanese characters are handled as the Japanese code specified by the host computer. When using LATIN1 code character, be sure to specify the latin1 option.

String literals must be written enclosed in double quotation marks. Use two double quotation marks in succession to indicate a single double quotation mark in a string literal.

Examples:

```
.SDATA   "Hello!" ; This statement reserves the string literal data
               ; Hello!
.SDATA   " " " Hello! " " ; This statement reserves the string literal data
               ; " Hello! 
; ; .SDATA is an assembler directive that reserves string literal data in memory.
```

Note: The difference between character constants and string literals is as follows. Character constants are numeric values. They have a data size of either 1 byte, 2 bytes, or 4 bytes. String literals cannot be handled as numeric values. A string literal has a data size between 1 byte and 255 bytes.
11.1.8 Local Label

(1) Local Label Functions

A local label is valid locally between address symbols. Since a local label does not conflict with the other labels outside its scope, the user does not have to consider other label names. A local label can be defined by writing in the label field in the same way as a normal address symbol, and can be referenced by an operand.

An example of local label descriptions is shown below.

Note: A local label cannot be referenced during debugging.

A local label cannot be specified as any of the following items:

— Macro name
— Section name
— Object module name
— Label in .ASSIGNA, .ASSIGNC, .EQU, .ASSIGN, .REG, or .FREG
— Operand in .EXPORT, .IMPORT, or .GLOBAL

Example:

LABEL1: ;Local block 1 start
?0001:

~

CMP/EQ R1,R2
BT ?0002 ;Branches to ?0002 of local block 1
BRA ?0001 ;Branches to ?0001 of local block 1

?0002:

~

LABEL2: ;Local block 2 start
?0001:

~

CMP/GE R1,R2
BT ?0002 ;Branches to ?0002 of local block 2
BRA ?0001 ;Branches to ?0001 of local block 2

?0002:

LABEL3: ;Local block 3 start
(2) Naming Local Labels

— First Character:
   A local label is a string starting with a question mark (?).

— Usable Characters:
   The following ASCII characters can be used in a local label, except for the first character:
   • Alphabetical uppercase and lowercase letters (A to Z, a to z)
   • Numbers (0 to 9)
   • Underscore (_)
   • Dollar sign ($)
   The assembler distinguishes uppercase letters from lowercase ones in local labels.

— Maximum Length:
   The length of local label characters is 2 to 16 characters. If 17 or more characters are specified, the assembler will not recognize them as a local label.

(3) Scope of Local Labels

The scope of a local label is called a local block. Local blocks are separated by address symbols, or by .SECTION.

The local label defined within a local block can be referenced in that local block.

A local label belonging to a local block is interpreted as being unique even if its spelling is the same as local labels in other local blocks; it does not cause an error.

Note: The address symbols defined by .ASSIGNA, .ASSIGNC, .EQU, .ASSIGN, .REG, or .FREG are not interpreted as delimiters for the local block.
11.2 Executable Instructions

11.2.1 Overview of Executable Instructions

The executable instructions are the instructions of microprocessor. The microprocessor interprets and executes the executable instructions in the object code stored in memory.

An executable instruction source statement has the following basic form.

```
{<symbol>}: {<mnemonic>}, {<operation size>}, {<addressing mode>}, {<addressing mode>}, {<comment>}
```

This section describes the mnemonic, operation size, and addressing mode.

(1) Mnemonic

The mnemonic expresses the executable instruction. Abbreviations that indicate the type of processing are provided as mnemonics for microprocessor instructions. The assembler does not distinguish uppercase and lowercase letters in mnemonics.

(2) Operation Size

The operation size is the unit for processing data. The operation sizes vary with the executable instruction. The assembler does not distinguish uppercase and lowercase letters in the operation size.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Specifier</th>
<th>Data Size</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Byte (1 byte)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>Word (2 bytes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>Longword (4 bytes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>Single precision (4 bytes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Double precision (8 bytes)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(3) Addressing Mode

The addressing mode specifies the data area accessed, and the destination address. The addressing modes vary with the executable instruction.
Table 11.8 lists the addressing modes.

Table 11.8  Addressing Modes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Addressing Mode</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rn</td>
<td>Register direct</td>
<td>The contents of the specified register.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@Rn</td>
<td>Register indirect</td>
<td>A memory location. The value in Rn gives the start address of the memory accessed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@Rn+</td>
<td>Register indirect with post-increment</td>
<td>A memory location. The value in Rn (before being incremented*) gives the start address of the memory accessed. The microprocessor first uses the value in Rn for the memory reference, and increments Rn afterwards.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@–Rn</td>
<td>Register indirect with pre-decrement</td>
<td>A memory location. The value in Rn (after being decremented*) gives the start address of the memory accessed. The microprocessor first decrements Rn, and then uses that value for the memory reference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@(disp,Rn)</td>
<td>Register indirect with displacement*3</td>
<td>A memory location. The start address of the memory access is given by: the value of Rn plus the displacement (disp). The value of Rn is not changed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@(R0,Rn)</td>
<td>Register indirect with index</td>
<td>A memory location. The start address of the memory access is given by: the value of R0 plus the value of Rn. The values of R0 and Rn are not changed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@(disp,GBR)</td>
<td>GBR indirect with displacement</td>
<td>A memory location. The start address of the memory access is given by: the value of GBR plus the displacement (disp). The value of GBR is not changed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@(R0,GBR)</td>
<td>GBR indirect with index</td>
<td>A memory location. The start address of the memory access is given by: the value of GBR plus the value of R0. The values of GBR and R0 are not changed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@(disp,PC)</td>
<td>PC relative with displacement</td>
<td>A memory location. The start address of the memory access is given by: the value of the PC plus the displacement (disp).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 11.8 Addressing Modes (cont)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Addressing Mode</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>@(disp,TBR)</td>
<td>TBR duplicate indirect with displacement</td>
<td>A memory location. The start address of the memory access is given by: the contents of the location indicated by the value of TBR plus the displacement (disp). The value of TBR is not changed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| symbol          | PC relative specified with symbol | [When used as the operand of a branch instruction] The symbol directly indicates the destination address. The assembler derives a displacement (disp) from the symbol and the value of the PC, using the formula: disp = symbol – PC.  
When used as the operand of a data move instruction] A memory location. The symbol indicates the start address of the memory accessed. The assembler derives a displacement (disp) from the symbol and the value of the PC, using the formula: disp = symbol – PC.  
When used as the operand of an instruction that specifies the RS or RE register (LDRS or LDRE instruction)] A memory location. The symbol indicates the start address of the memory accessed. The assembler derives a displacement (disp) from the symbol and the value of the PC, using the formula: disp = symbol – PC. |
| #imm            | Immediate | Indicates a constant. |

**Notes:**

1. **Increment**
   - The amount of the increment is 1 when the operation size is a byte, 2 when the operation size is a word (two bytes), and 4 when the operation size is a longword (four bytes).

2. **Decrement**
   - The amount of the decrement is 1 when the operation size is a byte, 2 when the operation size is a word, and 4 when the operation size is a longword.

3. **Displacement**
   - A displacement is the distance between two points. In this assembly language, the unit of displacement values is in bytes.
The values that can be used for the displacement vary with the addressing mode and the operation size.

### Table 11.9 Allowed Displacement Values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Addressing Mode</th>
<th>Displacement*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>@(disp,Rn)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When the operation size is byte (B):</td>
<td>H'00000000 to H'0000000F (0 to 15)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When the operation size is word (W):</td>
<td>H'00000000 to H'0000001E (0 to 30)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When the operation size is longword (L):</td>
<td>H'00000000 to H'0000003C (0 to 60)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@(disp:12,Rn)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When the operation size is byte (B):</td>
<td>H'00000000 to H'000000FFF (0 to 4095)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When the operation size is word (W):</td>
<td>H'00000000 to H'000001FFE (0 to 8190)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When the operation size is longword (L):</td>
<td>H'00000000 to H'000003FFC (0 to 16380)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@(disp,GBR)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When the operation size is byte (B):</td>
<td>H'00000000 to H'000000FF (0 to 255)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When the operation size is word (W):</td>
<td>H'00000000 to H'000001FE (0 to 510)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When the operation size is longword (L):</td>
<td>H'00000000 to H'000003FC (0 to 1020)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@(disp,PC)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[When used as an operand of a move instruction]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When the operation size is word (W):</td>
<td>H'00000000 to H'0000001FE (0 to 510)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When the operation size is longword (L):</td>
<td>H'00000000 to H'0000003FC (0 to 1020)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[When used as an operand of an instruction that sets the RS or RE register (LDRS or LDRE)]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H'FFFFFF00 to H'000000FE (–256 to 254)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@@(disp,TBR)</td>
<td>H'00000000 to H'0000003FC (0 to 1020)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Units are bytes, and numbers in parentheses are decimal.
### Table 11.9 Allowed Displacement Values (cont)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Addressing Mode</th>
<th>Displacement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>symbol</td>
<td>[When used as a branch instruction operand]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When used as an operand for a conditional branch instruction (BT, BF, BF/S, or BT/S):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{ H'00000000 to H'000000FF (0 to 255) H'FFFFF000 to H'FFFFFFFF (–256 to –1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When used as an operand for an unconditional branch instruction (BRA or BSR)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{ H'00000000 to H'000000FF (0 to 4095) H'FFFFF000 to H'FFFFFFFF (–4096 to –1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[When used as the operand of a data move instruction]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When the operation size is word (W): H'00000000 to H'000001FE (0 to 510)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When the operation size is longword (L): H'00000000 to H'000003FC (0 to 1020)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[When used as an operand of an instruction that sets the RS or RE register (LDRS or LDRE)]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H'FFFFFFFF00 to H'000000FE (–256 to 254)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Units are bytes, and numbers in parentheses are decimal.

The values that can be used for immediate values vary with the executable instruction.
Table 11.10 Allowed Immediate Values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Executable Instruction</th>
<th>Immediate Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TST, AND, OR, XOR</td>
<td>H'00000000 to H'000000FF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H'FFFFFFFFFF80 to H'FFFFFFFFFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV</td>
<td>H'00000000 to H'000000FF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H'FFFFFFFFFF80 to H'FFFFFFFFFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADD, CMP/EQ</td>
<td>H'00000000 to H'000000FF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H'FFFFFFFFFF80 to H'FFFFFFFFFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRAPA</td>
<td>H'00000000 to H'000000FF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SETRC, LDRC</td>
<td>H'00000001 to H'000000FF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H'0000000000 to H'000000FF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVI20</td>
<td>H'00000000 to H'000000FF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVI20S*3</td>
<td>H'00000000 to H'0000FF00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bit manipulation instructions</td>
<td>H'00000000 to H'00000007</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
1. Values in the range H'FFFFFFFFFF80 to H'FFFFFFFFFF can be written as positive decimal values.
2. When zero is set as the immediate values of the SETRC or LDRC instruction, warning number 835 occurs and the object code is output as zero. In this case, the range to be repeated is executed once.
   When an externally referenced symbol is set as the immediate values of the SETRC or LDRC instruction, the linkage editor checks the range from H'00000000 to H'000000FF (0 to 255).
3. When the lower eight bits of immediate data are not 0, warning 845 is generated and the lower eight bits are rounded down to 0.

Note: The assembler corrects the value of displacements under certain conditions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Type of Correction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>When the operation size is a word and the displacement is not a multiple of 2</td>
<td>The lowest bit of the displacement is discarded, resulting in the value being a multiple of 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When the operation size is a longword and the displacement is not a multiple of 4</td>
<td>The lower 2 bits of the displacement are discarded, resulting in the value being a multiple of 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When the displacement of the branch instruction is not a multiple of 2</td>
<td>The lowest bit of the displacement is discarded, resulting in the value being a multiple of 2.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Be sure to take this correction into consideration when using operands of the mode @(disp,Rn), @(disp,GBR), @@(disp,TBR), and @(disp,PC).
Example:

```
MOV.L @(63,PC),R0
```

The assembler corrects the 63 to be 60, and generates object code identical to that for the statement `MOV.L @(60,PC),R0`, and warning 870 occurs.

### 11.2.2 Notes on Executable Instructions

(1) Notes on the Operation Size

The operation size that can be specified vary with the mnemonic and the addressing mode combination.

(a) SH-1 Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations:

Table 11.11 shows the SH-1 allowable executable instruction and operation size combinations.

**Symbol meanings:**

- `Rn, Rm` A general register (R0 to R15)
- `R0` General register R0
- `SR` Status register
- `GBR` Global base register
- `VBR` Vector base register
- `MACH, MACL` High-order and Low-Order Multiplication and accumulation registers
- `PR` Procedure register
- `PC` Program counter
- `imm` An immediate value
- `disp` A displacement value
- `symbol` A symbol
- `B` Byte
- `W` Word (2 bytes)
- `L` Longword (4 bytes)
- `µ` Valid specification
- `×` Invalid specification:
  - The assembler regards instructions with this combination as the specification being omitted.
- `∆` The assembler regards them as extended instructions.
### Table 11.11 SH-1 Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data Transfer Instructions</th>
<th>Operation Sizes</th>
<th>Addressing Mode</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>W</th>
<th>L</th>
<th>Default when Omitted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MOV #imm,Rn</td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>∆</td>
<td>∆</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>*1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV @(disp,PC),Rn</td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV symbol,Rn</td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV Rn,Rm</td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV Rn,@Rm</td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV @Rn,Rm</td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV Rn,@–Rm</td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV @Rn+,Rm</td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV R0,@(disp,Rn)</td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>*2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV Rn,@(disp,Rm)</td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV @(disp,Rn),R0</td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>*3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV Rn,@(R0,Rm)</td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV @(R0,Rn),Rm</td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV R0,@(disp,GBR)</td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV @/(disp,GBR),R0</td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVA #imm,R0</td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>Δ</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVA @(disp,PC),R0</td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVA symbol,R0</td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVT Rn</td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SWAP Rn,Rm</td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>W</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XTRCT Rn,Rm</td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**
1. In size selection mode, the assembler selects the operation size according to the imm value.
2. In this case, Rn must be one of R1 to R15.
3. In this case, Rm must be one of R1 to R15.
### Table 11.11 SH-1 Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 2)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arithmetic Operation Instructions</th>
<th>Operation Sizes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mnemonic</td>
<td>Addressing Mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADD</td>
<td>Rn,Rm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADD</td>
<td>#imm,Rn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADDC</td>
<td>Rn,Rm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADDV</td>
<td>Rn,Rm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMP/EQ</td>
<td>#imm,R0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMP/EQ</td>
<td>Rn,Rm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMP/HS</td>
<td>Rn,Rm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMP/GE</td>
<td>Rn,Rm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMP/HS</td>
<td>Rn,Rm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMP/HS</td>
<td>Rn,Rm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMP/HS</td>
<td>Rn,Rm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMP/STR</td>
<td>Rn,Rm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIV1</td>
<td>Rn,Rm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIV0S</td>
<td>Rn,Rm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIV0U</td>
<td>(no operands)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXTS</td>
<td>Rn,Rm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXTU</td>
<td>Rn,Rm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAC</td>
<td>@Rn+,@Rm+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MULS</td>
<td>Rn,Rm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MULU</td>
<td>Rn,Rm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEG</td>
<td>Rn,Rm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEG</td>
<td>Rn,Rm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUB</td>
<td>Rn,Rm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUB</td>
<td>Rn,Rm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUB</td>
<td>Rn,Rm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The object code generated when W is specified is the same as that generated when L is specified.
### Table 11.11 SH-1 Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 3)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Logic Operation Instructions</th>
<th>Operation Sizes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mnemonic</strong></td>
<td><strong>Addressing Mode</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AND</td>
<td>Rn,Rm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AND</td>
<td>#imm,R0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AND</td>
<td>#imm,@(R0,GBR)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOT</td>
<td>Rn,Rm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
<td>Rn,Rm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
<td>#imm,R0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
<td>#imm,@(R0,GBR)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAS</td>
<td>@(Rn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TST</td>
<td>Rn,Rm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TST</td>
<td>#imm,R0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TST</td>
<td>#imm,@(R0,GBR)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XOR</td>
<td>Rn,Rm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XOR</td>
<td>#imm,R0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XOR</td>
<td>#imm,@(R0,GBR)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 11.11 SH-1 Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 4)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shift Instructions</th>
<th>Operation Sizes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mnemonic</strong></td>
<td><strong>Addressing Mode</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROTL</td>
<td>Rn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROTR</td>
<td>Rn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROTCL</td>
<td>Rn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROTCR</td>
<td>Rn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHAL</td>
<td>Rn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHAR</td>
<td>Rn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHLL</td>
<td>Rn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHLR</td>
<td>Rn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHLL2</td>
<td>Rn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHLR2</td>
<td>Rn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHLL8</td>
<td>Rn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHLR8</td>
<td>Rn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHLL16</td>
<td>Rn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHLR16</td>
<td>Rn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 11.11 SH-1 Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 5)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Branch Instructions</th>
<th>Operation Sizes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mnemonic</strong></td>
<td><strong>Addressing Mode</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BF</td>
<td>symbol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BT</td>
<td>symbol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRA</td>
<td>symbol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BSR</td>
<td>symbol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JMP</td>
<td>@Rn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSR</td>
<td>@Rn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTS</td>
<td>(no operands)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 11.11 SH-1 Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 6)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>System Control Instructions</th>
<th>Operation Sizes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mnemonic</td>
<td>Addressing Mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLRT (no operands)</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLRMAC (no operands)</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDC Rn,SR</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDC Rn,GBR</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDC Rn,VBR</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDC @Rn+,SR</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDC @Rn+,GBR</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDC @Rn+,VBR</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDS Rn,MACH</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDS Rn,MACL</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDS Rn,PR</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDS @Rn+,MACH</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDS @Rn+,MACL</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDS @Rn+,PR</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOP (no operands)</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTE (no operands)</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SETT (no operands)</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLEEP (no operands)</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC SR,Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC GBR,Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC VBR,Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC SR,–Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC GBR,–Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC VBR,–Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STS MACH,Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STS MACL,Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STS PR,Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STS MACH,–Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STS MACL,–Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STS PR,–Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRAPA #imm</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(b) SH-2 Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations:
Table 11.12 lists the combination of executable instructions added to SH-2 from SH-1 and the operation size.

### Table 11.12 SH-2 Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arithmetic Operation Instructions</th>
<th>Operation Sizes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mnemonic</strong></td>
<td><strong>Addressing Mode</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAC</td>
<td>@Rn+, @Rm+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUL</td>
<td>Rn,Rm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMULS</td>
<td>Rn,Rm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMULU</td>
<td>Rn,Rm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DT</td>
<td>Rn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 11.12 SH-2 Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 2)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Branch Instructions</th>
<th>Operation Sizes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mnemonic</strong></td>
<td><strong>Addressing Mode</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BF/S</td>
<td>symbol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BT/S</td>
<td>symbol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRAF</td>
<td>Rn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BSRF</td>
<td>Rn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(c) SH-2E Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations:

Table 11.13 lists the combination of executable instructions added to SH-2E from SH-2 and the operation size.

Symbol meanings:
- FRm,FRn  Floating-point register
- FR0    FR0 floating-point register
- FPUL   Floating-point communication register
- FPSCR  Floating-point status control register
- S      Single precision (4 bytes)

Table 11.13 SH-2E Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Addressing Mode</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>W</th>
<th>L</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>Default when Omitted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FLDI0</td>
<td>FRn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLDI1</td>
<td>FRn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>@Rn,FRn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>FRn,@Rm</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>@Rm+,FRn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>FRn,@-Rm</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>@(R0,Rm),FRn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>FRm,@(R0,Rm)</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>FRm,FRn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 11.13 SH-2E Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 2)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arithmetic Operation Instructions</th>
<th>Operation Sizes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mnemonic</td>
<td>Addressing Mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FABS</td>
<td>FRn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FADD</td>
<td>FRm,FRn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCMP/EQ</td>
<td>FRm,FRn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCMP/GT</td>
<td>FRm,FRn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FDIV</td>
<td>FRm,FRn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMAC</td>
<td>FR0,FRm,FRn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMUL</td>
<td>FRm,FRn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FNEG</td>
<td>FRn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSUB</td>
<td>FRm,FRn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 11.13 SH-2E Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 3)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>System Control Instructions</th>
<th>Operation Sizes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mnemonic</td>
<td>Addressing Mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLDS</td>
<td>FRm,FPUL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLOAT</td>
<td>FPUL,FRn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSTS</td>
<td>FPUL,FRn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTRC</td>
<td>FRm,FPUL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDS</td>
<td>Rm,FPUL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDS</td>
<td>@Rm+,FPUL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDS</td>
<td>Rm,FPSCR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDS</td>
<td>@Rm+,FPSCR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STS</td>
<td>FPUL,Rn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STS</td>
<td>FPUL, @-Rn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STS</td>
<td>FPSCR,Rn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STS</td>
<td>FPSCR, @-Rn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(d) SH-3 Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations:

Table 11.14 lists the combination of executable instructions added to SH-3 from SH-2 and the operation size.

Symbol meanings:
- Rn_BANK: Bank general register
- SSR: Saved status register
- SPC: Saved program counter

| Table 11.14 SH-3 Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 1) |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|-----|-----|-----|-----------------|
| **Mnemonic** | **Addressing Mode** | **Operation Sizes** | **Default when Omitted** |
| PREF | @Rn | × | × | × | — |

| Table 11.14 SH-3 Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 2) |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|-----|-----|-----|-----------------|
| **Shift Instructions** | **Addressing Mode** | **Operation Sizes** | **Default when Omitted** |
| SHAD | Rn,Rm | × | × | O | L |
| SHLD | Rn,Rm | × | × | O | L |
### Table 11.14 SH-3 Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 3)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Addressing Mode</th>
<th>Operation Sizes</th>
<th>Default when Omitted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CLRS</td>
<td>(no operands)</td>
<td>× × × —</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SETS</td>
<td>(no operands)</td>
<td>× × × —</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDC</td>
<td>Rm,SSR</td>
<td>× × O L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDC</td>
<td>Rm,SPC</td>
<td>× × O L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDC</td>
<td>Rm,Rn_BANK</td>
<td>× × O L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDC</td>
<td>@Rm+,SSR</td>
<td>× × O L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDC</td>
<td>@Rm+,SPC</td>
<td>× × O L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDC</td>
<td>@Rm+,Rn_BANK</td>
<td>× × O L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC</td>
<td>SSR,Rn</td>
<td>× × O L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC</td>
<td>SPC,Rn</td>
<td>× × O L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC</td>
<td>Rm_BANK,Rn</td>
<td>× × O L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC</td>
<td>SSR,@–Rn</td>
<td>× × O L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC</td>
<td>SPC,@–Rn</td>
<td>× × O L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC</td>
<td>Rm_BANK,@–Rn</td>
<td>× × O L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDTLB</td>
<td>(no operands)</td>
<td>× × × —</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(e) SH-4 Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations:

Table 11.15 lists the combination of executable instructions added to SH-4 from SH-3 and the operation size.

Symbol meanings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DRm,DRn</td>
<td>Double-precision floating-point register</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XDm,XDn</td>
<td>Extended double-precision floating-point register</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FVm,FVn</td>
<td>Single-precision floating-point vector register</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XMTRX</td>
<td>Single-precision floating-point extended register matrix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DBR</td>
<td>Debug vector base register</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SGR</td>
<td>Save general register 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Double precision (8 bytes)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 11.15 SH-4 Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data Transfer Instructions</th>
<th>Operation Sizes</th>
<th>Default when Omitted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mnemonic</td>
<td>Addressing Mode</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLDI0</td>
<td>FRn</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLDI1</td>
<td>FRn</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>FRm,FRn</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>FRn,@Rm</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>FRn,@-Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>FRn,@(R0,Rm)</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>@Rm,FRn</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>@Rm,FRn</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>@(R0,Rm),FRn</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>DRm,DRn</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>DRm,@Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>DRm,@-Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>DRm,@(R0,Rn)</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>@Rm,DRn</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>@Rm+X,DRn</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>DRm,XDn</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>XDm,DRn</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>XDm,XDn</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>XDm,@Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>XDm,@-Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>XDm,@(R0,Rn)</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>@Rm,XDn</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>@Rm,XDn</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 11.15 SH-4 Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 2)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arithmetic Operation Instructions</th>
<th>Operation Sizes</th>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Addressing Mode</th>
<th>Operation Sizes</th>
<th>Default when Omitted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FABS</td>
<td></td>
<td>FRn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FABS</td>
<td></td>
<td>DRn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FADD</td>
<td></td>
<td>FRm,FRn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FADD</td>
<td></td>
<td>DRm,DRn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCMP/EQ</td>
<td></td>
<td>FRm,FRn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCMP/EQ</td>
<td></td>
<td>DRm,DRn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCMP/GT</td>
<td></td>
<td>FRm,FRn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCMP/GT</td>
<td></td>
<td>DRm,DRn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FDIV</td>
<td></td>
<td>FRm,FRn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FDIV</td>
<td></td>
<td>DRm,DRn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIPR</td>
<td></td>
<td>FVm,FVn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMAC</td>
<td></td>
<td>FR0,FRm,FRn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMUL</td>
<td></td>
<td>FRm,FRn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMUL</td>
<td></td>
<td>DRm,DRn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FNEG</td>
<td></td>
<td>FRn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FNEG</td>
<td></td>
<td>DRn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSQRT</td>
<td></td>
<td>FRn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSQRT</td>
<td></td>
<td>DRn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSUB</td>
<td></td>
<td>FRm,FRn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSUB</td>
<td></td>
<td>DRm,DRn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTRV</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMTRX,FVn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 11.15 SH-4 Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 3)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>System Control Instructions</th>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Addressing Mode</th>
<th>Operation Sizes</th>
<th>Default when Omitted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCNVDS</td>
<td>DRm,FPUL</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCNVSD</td>
<td>FPUL,DRn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLDS</td>
<td>FRm,FPUL</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLOAT</td>
<td>FPUL,FRn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLOAT</td>
<td>FPUL,DRn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FRCHG (no operands)</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSCHG (no operands)</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSTS</td>
<td>FPUL,FRn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTRC</td>
<td>FRm,FPUL</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTRC</td>
<td>DRm,FPUL</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDC</td>
<td>Rm,DBR</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDC</td>
<td>@Rm+,DBR</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDS</td>
<td>Rm,FPUL</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDS</td>
<td>@Rm+,FPUL</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDS</td>
<td>Rm,FPSCR</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDS</td>
<td>@Rm+,FPSCR</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OCBP</td>
<td>@Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OCBWB</td>
<td>@Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC</td>
<td>DBR,Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC</td>
<td>DBR,−Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC</td>
<td>SGR,Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC</td>
<td>SGR,−Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STS</td>
<td>FPUL,Rm</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STS</td>
<td>FPUL,−Rm</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STS</td>
<td>FPSCR,Rm</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STS</td>
<td>FPSCR,−Rm</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(f) SH2-DSP, SH3-DSP Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations:

Table 11.16 shows the executable instruction and operation size combinations for the SH2-DSP and SH3-DSP instructions added to those of the SH-2 and SH-3, respectively.

Symbol meanings:
- MOD  Modulo register
- RS   Repeat start register
- RE   Repeat end register
- DSR  DSP status register
- A0   DSP data register (A0, A1, X0, X1, Y0, or Y1 can be specified.)

Table 11.16  SH2-DSP, SH3-DSP Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations  
(Part 1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Repeat Control Instructions</th>
<th>Operation Sizes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mnemonic</td>
<td>Addressing Mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDRS @ (disp, PC)</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDRS symbol</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDRE @ (disp, PC)</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDRE symbol</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SETRC Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SETRC # imm</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 11.16 SH2-DSP, SH3-DSP Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 2)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>System Control Instructions</th>
<th>Addressing Mode</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>W</th>
<th>L</th>
<th>Default when Omitted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LDC Rn,MOD</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDC Rn,RS</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDC Rn,RE</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDC @Rn+.MOD</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDC @Rn+.RS</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDC @Rn+.RE</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDS Rn,DSR</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDS Rn,A0</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDS @Rn+.DSR</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDS @Rn+.A0</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC MOD,Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC RS,Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC RE,Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC MOD, @–Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC RS, @–Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC RE, @–Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STS DSR,Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STS A0,Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STS DSR, @–Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STS A0, @–Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(g) SH4AL-DSP Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations:

Table 11.17 shows the executable instruction and operation size combinations for the SH4AL-DSP instructions added to those of the SH3-DSP.

**Table 11.17 SH4AL-DSP Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 1)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data Transfer Instructions</th>
<th>Operation Sizes</th>
<th>Default when Omitted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mnemonic</td>
<td>Addressing Mode</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLRDMXY</td>
<td>(no operands)</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVCA R0,@Rn</td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVCO R0,@Rn</td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVLI @Rn,R0</td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVUA @Rn,R0</td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVUA @Rn+,R0</td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PREFI (no operands)</td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SETDMX (no operands)</td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SETDMY (no operands)</td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 11.17 SH4AL-DSP Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations
#### (Part 2)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>System Control Instructions</th>
<th>Operation Sizes</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>W</th>
<th>L</th>
<th>Default when Omitted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ICBI @Rn</td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDC Rn,DBR</td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDC @Rn+,DBR</td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDC Rn,SGR</td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDC @Rn+,SGR</td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OCBI @Rn</td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OCBP @Rn</td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OCBWB @Rn</td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC DBR,Rn</td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC DBR,@-Rn</td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC SGR,Rn</td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC SGR,@-Rn</td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYNCO @Rn</td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 11.17 SH4AL-DSP Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations
#### (Part 3)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Repeat Control Instructions</th>
<th>Operation Sizes</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>W</th>
<th>L</th>
<th>Default when Omitted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LDRC Rn</td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(h) SH-4A Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations:
Table 11.18 shows the executable instruction and operation size combinations for the SH-4A instructions added to those of the SH-4.

### Table 11.18 SH-4A Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data Transfer Instructions</th>
<th>Operation Sizes</th>
<th>Addressing Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mnemonic</td>
<td>B W L Default when omitted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVCO R0, @Rn</td>
<td>× × O L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVLI @Rn, R0</td>
<td>× × O L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVUA @Rn, R0</td>
<td>× × O L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVUA @Rn+, R0</td>
<td>× × O L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PREFI (no operands)</td>
<td>× × × —</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 11.18 SH-4A Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 2)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>System Control Instructions</th>
<th>Operation Sizes</th>
<th>Addressing Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mnemonic</td>
<td>B W L S D Default when Omitted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FPCHG (no operands)</td>
<td>× × × × —</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICBI @Rn</td>
<td>× × × × —</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDC Rn, SGR</td>
<td>× × O × L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDC @Rn+, SGR</td>
<td>× × O × L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSCA FPUL, DRn</td>
<td>× × × O × S</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSRRRA FRn</td>
<td>× × × O × S</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYNCO @Rn</td>
<td>× × × × —</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(i) SH-2A Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations:
Table 11.19 shows the executable instruction and operation size combinations for the SH-2A instructions added to those of the SH-2.

Symbol meanings:
- TBR Jump table register
Table 11.19 SH-2A Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Addressing Mode</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>W</th>
<th>L</th>
<th>Default when Omitted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MOV</td>
<td>R0,@Rn+</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV</td>
<td>@-Rm,R0</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV</td>
<td>Rm,@(disp:12,Rn)</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV</td>
<td>@(disp:12,Rm),Rn</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVI20</td>
<td>#imm20,Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVI20S</td>
<td>#imm20,Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVML</td>
<td>Rm,@-R15</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVML</td>
<td>@R15+,Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVMU</td>
<td>Rm,@-R15</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVMU</td>
<td>@R15+,Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVU</td>
<td>Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVU</td>
<td>@(disp:12,Rm),Rn</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOTT</td>
<td>(no operands)</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PREF</td>
<td>@Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 11.19 SH-2A Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 2)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Addressing Mode</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>W</th>
<th>L</th>
<th>Default when Omitted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CLIPS</td>
<td>Rn</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLIPU</td>
<td>Rn</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIVS</td>
<td>R0,Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIVU</td>
<td>R0,Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MULR</td>
<td>R0,Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 11.19 SH-2A Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 3)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shift Instructions</th>
<th>Operation Sizes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mnemonic</td>
<td>Addressing Mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHAD</td>
<td>Rn, Rm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHLD</td>
<td>Rn, Rm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 11.19 SH-2A Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 4)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Branch Instructions</th>
<th>Operation Sizes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mnemonic</td>
<td>Addressing Mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSR/N</td>
<td>@Rn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSR/N</td>
<td>@(disp,TBR)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTS/N</td>
<td>(no operands)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTV/N</td>
<td>Rn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 11.19 SH-2A Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 5)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>System Control Instructions</th>
<th>Operation Sizes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mnemonic</td>
<td>Addressing Mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDBANK</td>
<td>@Rm,R0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDC</td>
<td>Rm,TBR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESBANK</td>
<td>(no operands)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STBANK</td>
<td>R0,@Rn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC</td>
<td>TBR,Rn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 11.19 SH-2A Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 6)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bit Manipulation Instructions</th>
<th>Operation Sizes</th>
<th>Addressing Mode</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>W</th>
<th>L</th>
<th>Default when Omitted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BAND</td>
<td></td>
<td>#imm.@(disp:12,Rn)</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BANDNOT</td>
<td></td>
<td>#imm.@(disp:12,Rn)</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BCLR</td>
<td></td>
<td>#imm.@(disp:12,Rn)</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BCLR</td>
<td></td>
<td>#imm,Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLD</td>
<td></td>
<td>#imm.@(disp:12,Rn)</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLD</td>
<td></td>
<td>#imm,Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLDCOL</td>
<td></td>
<td>#imm.@(disp:12,Rn)</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLDCOL</td>
<td></td>
<td>#imm.@(disp:12,Rn)</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BSET</td>
<td></td>
<td>#imm.@(disp:12,Rn)</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BST</td>
<td></td>
<td>#imm,Rn</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BXOR</td>
<td></td>
<td>#imm.@(disp:12,Rn)</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(j) SH2A-FPU Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations:

Table 11.20 shows the executable instruction and operation size combinations for the SH2A-FPU instructions added to those of the SH-2E and SH-2A.
Table 11.20 SH2A-FPU Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations

### Part 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Addressing Mode</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>W</th>
<th>L</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>Default when Omitted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>DRm,DRn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>DRm,@Rn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>DRm@-Rn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>DRm,@(R0,Rn)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>@Rm,DRn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>@Rm+,DRn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>@(R0,Rm),DRn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>@(disp:12,Rm),FRn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>@(disp:12,Rm),DRn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>FRm,@(disp:12,Rn)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOV</td>
<td>DRm,@(disp:12,Rn)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Part 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Addressing Mode</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>W</th>
<th>L</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>Default when Omitted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FABS</td>
<td>DRn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FADD</td>
<td>DRm,DRn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCMP/EQ</td>
<td>DRm,DRn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCMP/GT</td>
<td>DRm,DRn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FDIV</td>
<td>DRm,DRn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMUL</td>
<td>DRm,DRn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FNEG</td>
<td>DRn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSQRT</td>
<td>FRn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSQRT</td>
<td>DRn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSUB</td>
<td>DRm,DRn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 11.20  SH2A-FPU Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations
(Part 3)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>System Control Instructions</th>
<th>Operation Sizes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mnemonic</td>
<td>Addressing Mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCNVDS</td>
<td>DRm,FPUL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCNVD</td>
<td>FPUL,DRn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLOAT</td>
<td>FPUL,DRn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSCHG</td>
<td>(no operands)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTRC</td>
<td>DRm,FPUL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(2) Notes on Delayed Branch Instructions

The unconditional branch instructions are delayed branch instructions. The microprocessors execute the delay slot instruction (the instruction directly following a branch instruction in memory) before executing the delayed branch instruction. If an instruction inappropriate for a delay slot is specified, the assembler issues error 150 or 151.

Table 11.21 shows the relationship between the delayed branch instructions and the delay slot instructions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Delay Slot Instruction</th>
<th>Delayed Branch Instruction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BF/S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BF</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BT</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BF/S</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BT/S</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRAF</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BSR</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BF</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BT</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BF/S</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BT/S</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRAF</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BSR</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JMP</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSR</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSR/N</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTS</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTS/N</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTE</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTV/N</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRAPA</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIVS</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIVU</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDC</td>
<td>Rn,SR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>@Rn+,SR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV</td>
<td>@(disp,PC),Rn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>symbol,Rn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 11.21 Relationship between Delayed Branch Instructions and Delay Slot Instructions (cont)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Delay Slot Instruction</th>
<th>Delayed Branch Instruction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MOVA @(disp,PC),R0</td>
<td>BF/S BT/S BRAF BSRF BRA BSR JMP JSR RTS RTE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>x  x  x  x  x  x  x  x  x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVA symbol,R0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>x  x  x  x  x  x  x  x  x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDRS @(disp,PC)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>x  x  x  x  x  x  x  x  x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDRS symbol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>x  x  x  x  x  x  x  x  x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDRE @(disp,PC)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>x  x  x  x  x  x  x  x  x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDRE symbol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>x  x  x  x  x  x  x  x  x</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Extended instructions**

**MOV.L #imm,Rn**

|                        | BF/S BT/S BRAF BSRF BRA BSR JMP JSR RTS RTE |
|                        | x  x  x  x  x  x  x  x  x |

**MOV.W #imm,Rn**

|                        | BF/S BT/S BRAF BSRF BRA BSR JMP JSR RTS RTE |
|                        | x  x  x  x  x  x  x  x  x |

**MOVA #imm,R0**

|                        | BF/S BT/S BRAF BSRF BRA BSR JMP JSR RTS RTE |
|                        | x  x  x  x  x  x  x  x  x |

**32-bit instructions**

|                        | BF/S BT/S BRAF BSRF BRA BSR JMP JSR RTS RTE |
|                        | x  x  x  x  x  x  x  x  x |

**Register bank-related instructions**

|                        | BF/S BT/S BRAF BSRF BRA BSR JMP JSR RTS RTE |
|                        | x  x  x  x  x  x  x  x  x |

**Any other instructions**

|                        | BF/S BT/S BRAF BSRF BRA BSR JMP JSR RTS RTE |
|                        | O  O  O  O  O  O  O  O  O |

**Symbol meanings:**

**O:** Normal, i.e., the assembler generates the specified object code.

**x:** Error 150 or 151

- The instruction specified is inappropriate as a delay slot instruction.
- The assembler generates object code with a NOP instruction (H'0009).

**Notes:**

1. Operates normally when the CPU type is SH-1, SH-2, SH-2E, SH2-DSP, SH-2A, or SH2A-FPU.
   Any other CPU type will cause error 150 or 151 to occur.

2. 32-bit instructions:
   Instructions that accept a register-indirect address with 12-bit displacement or 20-bit
   immediate data as an operand: MOVI20 and MOVI20S instructions.

3. Register bank-related instructions: RESBANK, LDBANK, and STBANK instructions.

**Note:** If the delayed branch instruction and the delay slot instruction are coded in different
sections, the assembler does not check the validity of the delay slot instruction.
(3) Notes on Address Calculations

When the operand addressing mode is PC relative with displacement, i.e., @(disp,PC), the value of PC must be taken into account in coding. The value of PC can vary depending on certain conditions.

(a) Normal Case

The value of PC is the first address in the currently executing instruction plus 4 bytes.

Example:

(Consider the state when a MOV instruction is being executed at absolute address H'00001000.)

![Figure 11.1 Address Calculation Example (Normal Case)](image-url)
(b) During the Delay Slot Instruction

The value of PC is destination address for the delayed branch instruction plus 2 bytes.

Example:

(Consider the state when a MOV instruction is being executed at absolute address H'00001000.)

Figure 11.2 Address Calculation Example (When the Value of PC Differs Due to a Branch)

Supplement: When the operand is the PC relative specified with the symbol, the assembler derives the displacement taking account of the value of PC when generating the object code.
(c) During the Execution of Either a MOV.L @(disp,PC),Rn or a MOVA @(disp,PC),R0
When the value of PC is not a multiple of 4, microprocessors correct the value by
discarding the lower 2 bits when calculating addresses.

Example 1:
When the microprocessor corrects the value of PC
(Consider the state when a MOV instruction is being executed at address H'00001002.)

The value of the PC is corrected to be a multiple of 4.

Figure 11.3  Address Calculation Example (When Microprocessor Corrects the Value of PC)
Example 2:

When the microprocessor does not correct the value of PC
(Consider the state when a MOV instruction is being executed at address H'00001000.)

![Diagram](image)

**Figure 11.4 Address Calculation Example (When Microprocessor Does Not Correct the Value of PC)**

Supplement: When the operand is the PC relative specified with the symbol, the assembler derives the displacement taking account of the value of PC when generating the object code.
11.3 DSP Instructions

11.3.1 Program Contents

(1) Source Statements

The SH2-DSP, SH3-DSP, and SH4AL-DSP instructions are classified into two types: executable instructions and DSP instructions. The DSP instructions manipulate DSP registers. The instruction set and description format of DSP instructions are different from those of the executable instructions. For the DSP instructions, many operations can be included in one statement. The DSP instruction operation is as follows:

- DSP operation:
  Specifies operations between DSP registers.
  PABS, PADD, PADDC, PAND, PCLR, PCMP, PCOPY, PDEC, PDMSB, PINC, PLDS, PMULS, PNEG, POR, PRND, PSHA, PSHL, PSTS, PSUB, PSUBC, PSWAP, PXOR

- X data transfer operation:
  Specifies data transfer between a DSP register and X data memory.
  MOVX, NOPX

- Y data transfer operation:
  Specifies data transfer between a DSP register and Y data memory.
  MOVY, NOPY

- Single data transfer operation:
  Specifies data transfer between a DSP register and memory.
  MOVS
(2) Parallel Operation Instructions

Parallel operation instructions specify DSP operations as well as data transfer between a DSP register and X or Y data memory at the same time. The instruction size is 32 bits. The description format is as follows:

```
[<label>][∆<DSP operation part>][∆<data transfer part>][<comment>]
```

(a) DSP Operation Part Description Format:
```
[<condition>∆]<DSP operation>∆<operand>[∆...]
```

- Condition:
  Specifies how parallel operation instruction is executed as follows:
  - DCT: The instruction is executed when the DC bit is 1.
  - DCF: The instruction is executed when the DC bit is 0.
- DSP operation:
  Specifies DSP operation.
  PADD and PMULS, PCLR and PMULS, and PSUB and PMULS can be specified in combination.

(b) Data Transfer Part Description Format:
```
[∆<X data transfer operation>][∆<operand>][∆<Y data transfer operation>][∆<operand>]
```

Be sure to specify X data transfer and Y data transfer in this order. Inputting an instruction is not required when the data move instruction is NOPX or NOPY.

Example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LABEL</th>
<th>PADD A0, M0, M0</th>
<th>PMULS X0, Y0, M0</th>
<th>MOVX, W @R4+, X0</th>
<th>MOVY, W @R6+, Y0</th>
<th>DSP Instruction</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DCT PINC X1, A1</td>
<td>MOVX, W @R4+, X0</td>
<td>MOVY, W @R6+, Y0</td>
<td>DSP operation part</td>
<td>Data transfer part</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DCF PDIR X1, M0</td>
<td>MOVX, W @R4, X0</td>
<td>Y Memory transfer is omitted</td>
<td>DSP operation part</td>
<td>Data transfer part</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

```
[<label>][∆<DSP operation part>][∆<data transfer part>][<comment>]
```

(a) DSP Operation Part Description Format:
```
[<condition>∆]<DSP operation>∆<operand>[∆...]
```

- Condition:
  Specifies how parallel operation instruction is executed as follows:
  - DCT: The instruction is executed when the DC bit is 1.
  - DCF: The instruction is executed when the DC bit is 0.
- DSP operation:
  Specifies DSP operation.
  PADD and PMULS, PCLR and PMULS, and PSUB and PMULS can be specified in combination.

(b) Data Transfer Part Description Format:
```
[∆<X data transfer operation>][∆<operand>][∆<Y data transfer operation>][∆<operand>]
```

Be sure to specify X data transfer and Y data transfer in this order. Inputting an instruction is not required when the data move instruction is NOPX or NOPY.

Example:
(3) Data Transfer Instructions

Two types of data move instructions are available: combination of X data memory transfer and Y data memory transfer, and single data transfer. The description formats are as follows:

(a) Combination of X Data Memory Transfer and Y Data Memory Transfer Instructions:

```
[<label>][<X data transfer operation>[<operand>]]
[<Y data transfer operation>[<operand>]]<comment>
```

Be sure to specify X data memory transfer and Y data memory transfer in this order. Inputting an instruction is not required when the data move instruction is NOPX or NOPY. Note that both X data memory and Y data memory cannot be omitted, unlike the parallel operation instruction.

Example:

```
LABEL2: MOVX.W @R4,X0 ;Data move instruction
         MOVX.W @R4,X0 MOVY.W @R6+, Y0
```

(b) Single Data Transfer Instruction:

```
[<label>][<single data transfer operation><operand>]<comment>
```

Specifies the MOVS instruction.

Example:

```
LABEL3: MOVS.W @-R2,A0 ;Single data transfer
```
(4) Coding of Source Statements Across Multiple Lines

For the DSP instructions, many operations can be included in one statement, and therefore, source statements become long and complicated. To make programs easy to read, source statements for DSP instructions can be written across multiple lines by separating between an operand and an operation, in addition to separating at a comma between operands.

Write source statements across multiple lines using the following procedure.

— Insert a new line between an operand and an operation.
— Insert a plus sign (+) in the first column of the new line.
— Continue writing the source statement following the plus sign.

Spaces and tabs can be inserted following the plus sign.

Example:

```
PADD   A0,M0,X0
+      PMULS  A1,Y1,M0
+      MOVX   @R4,X0
+      MOYY   @R6,Y1
```

; A single source statement is written across four lines.
11.3.2 DSP Instructions

(1) DSP Operation Instructions

Table 11.22 lists DSP instructions in mnemonic.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Specifications</th>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DSP arithmetic operation instructions</td>
<td>PADD, PSUB, PCOPY, PDMSB, PINC, PNEG, PMULS, PADDCl, PSUBC, PCMP, PDEC, PABS, PRND, PCLR, PLDS, PSTS, PSWAP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSP logic operation instructions</td>
<td>POR, PAND, PXOR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSP shift operation instructions</td>
<td>PSHA, PSHL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(a) Operation Size:
For the DSP operation instructions, operation size cannot be specified.

(b) Addressing Mode:
Table 11.23 lists addressing modes for the DSP operation instructions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Addressing Mode</th>
<th>Description Format</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DSP register direct</td>
<td>Dp (DSP register name)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immediate data</td>
<td>#imm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- DSP register direct
  
  Table 11.24 lists registers that can be specified in DSP register direct addressing mode. For Sx, Sy, Dz, Du, Se, Sf, and Dg, refer to table 11.26, DSP Operation Instructions.
Table 11.24 Registers that Can Be Specified in DSP Register Direct Addressing Mode

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DSP Register</th>
<th>A0</th>
<th>A1</th>
<th>M0</th>
<th>M1</th>
<th>X0</th>
<th>X1</th>
<th>Y0</th>
<th>Y1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dp</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sx</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sy</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dz</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Du</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Se</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sf</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dg</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Immediate data
  Immediate data can only be specified for the first operand of the PSHA and PSHL instructions. The following items can be specified:
  — Value type
    Constants, symbols, or expressions can be specified.
  — Symbol type
    Symbols including relative and externally defined symbols can be specified as immediate data.
  — Value range
    Table 11.25 lists the specifiable value ranges.

Table 11.25 Ranges of Immediate Data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Immediate Data</th>
<th>Range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PSHA</td>
<td>H'FFFFFFE0 to H'00000020 (−32 to 32)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSHL</td>
<td>H'FFFFFFF0 to H'00000010 (−16 to 16)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(c) Combination of Multiple DSP Operation Instructions:

The PADD instruction and the PMULS instruction, the PCLR instruction and the PMULS instruction, or the PSUB instruction and the PMULS instruction can be specified in combination. Each of these two combinations is basically one DSP instruction. The PADD, PCLR, or PSUB operand and a PMULS operand are separately described so that programs can be read easily.

Example:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{PADD} & \ A0,M0,A0 \quad \text{PMULS} & \ X0,Y0,M0 \quad \text{NOPX} \quad \text{MOVY.W} & @R6+,Y0 \\
\text{PCLR} & \ A1 \quad \text{PMULS} & \ X0,Y0,M0 \quad \text{NOPX} \quad \text{MOVY.W} & @R6+,Y0 \\
\text{PSUB} & \ A1,M1,A1 \quad \text{PMULS} & \ X1,Y1,M1 \quad \text{MOVX} & @R4+,X0 \quad \text{NOPY}
\end{align*}
\]

Note: Warning 701 is displayed if the same register is specified as the destination registers when multiple DSP operation instructions are specified in combination.

\[
\text{PADD} \ A0,M0,A0 \quad \text{PMULS} \ X0,Y0,A0 \quad ; \text{Warning 701 will occur.}
\]

(d) Conditional DSP Operation Instructions:

Conditional DSP operation instructions specify if the program is executed according to the DC bit of the DSR register.

DCT: When the DC bit is 1, the instruction is executed.

DCF: When the DC bit is 0, the instruction is executed.

Conditional DSP operation instructions are the following:

PABS, PADD, PAND, PCLR, PCOPY, PDEC, PDMSB, PINC, PLDS, PNEG, POR, PRND, PSHA, PSHL, PSTS, PSUB, PSWAP, PXOR

(e) DSP Operation Instruction List:

Table 11.26 lists DSP operation instructions for the SH2-DSP and SH3-DSP. Table 11.27 lists DSP operation instructions for the SH4AL-DSP added to those of the SH2-DSP and SH3-DSP. For the registers that can be specified as Sx, Sy, Dz, Du, Se, Sf, and Dg, refer to Table 11.24, Registers that Can Be Specified in DSP Register Direct Addressing Mode.
### Table 11.26 DSP Operation Instructions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Addressing Mode</th>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Addressing Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PABS</td>
<td>Sx, Dz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PABS</td>
<td>Sy, Dz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PADD</td>
<td>Sx, Sy, Dz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PADD</td>
<td>Sx, Sy, Du</td>
<td>PMULS</td>
<td>Se, Sf, Dg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PADDCC</td>
<td>Sx, Sy, Dz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAND</td>
<td>Sx, Sy, Dz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCLR</td>
<td>Dz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCMP</td>
<td>Sx, Sy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCOPY</td>
<td>Sx, Dz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCOPY</td>
<td>Sy, Dz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDEC</td>
<td>Sx, Dz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDEC</td>
<td>Sy, Dz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDMSB</td>
<td>Sx, Dz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDMSB</td>
<td>Sy, Dz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PINC</td>
<td>Sx, Dz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PINC</td>
<td>Sy, Dz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLDS</td>
<td>Dz, MACH</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLDS</td>
<td>Dz, MACL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMULS</td>
<td>Se, Sf, Dg</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PNEG</td>
<td>Sx, Dz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PNEG</td>
<td>Sy, Dz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POR</td>
<td>Sx, Sy, Dz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRND</td>
<td>Sx, Dz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRND</td>
<td>Sy, Dz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSHA</td>
<td>#imm, Dz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSHA</td>
<td>Sx, Sy, Dz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSHEL</td>
<td>#imm, Dz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSHEL</td>
<td>Sx, Sy, Dz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSTS</td>
<td>MACH, Dz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSTS</td>
<td>MACL, Dz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 11.27 DSP Operation Instructions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Addressing Mode</th>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Addressing Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PSUB</td>
<td>Sx, Sy, Dz</td>
<td>PSUB</td>
<td>Sx, Sy, Du</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>PMULS</td>
<td>Se, Sf, Dg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSUBC</td>
<td>Sx, Sy, Dz</td>
<td>PXOR</td>
<td>Sx, Sy, Dz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCLR</td>
<td>Du</td>
<td>PMULS</td>
<td>Se, Sf, Dg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSUB</td>
<td>Sy, Sx, Dz</td>
<td>PSWAP</td>
<td>Sx, Dz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSWAP</td>
<td>Sy, Dz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2) Data Transfer Instructions

(a) Mnemonics:
Two types of data transfer instructions are available: dual memory transfer instructions and single memory transfer instructions.
Dual memory transfer instructions specify data transfer, at the same time, between X memory and a DSP register, and between Y memory and a DSP register.
Single memory transfer instructions specify data transfer between arbitrary memory and a DSP register. Table 11.28 lists data transfer instructions in mnemonic.

Table 11.28 Data Transfer Instructions in Mnemonic

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification</th>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dual memory transfer</td>
<td>X memory transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NOPX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MOVX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Y memory transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NOPY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MOVY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Single memory transfer</td>
<td>MOVS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) Operation Size:

- NOPX and NOPY instructions: Operation size cannot be specified.
- MOVX and MOVY instructions: Word size (W) or longword size (L) can be specified. If omitted, word size is assumed.
- MOVS instruction: Word size (W) or longword size (L) can be specified. If omitted, longword size is assumed.
(c) Addressing Mode:

Table 11.29 lists addressing modes that can be specified for the data transfer instructions.

Table 11.29  Addressing Modes of Data Transfer Instructions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Addressing mode</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DSP register direct</td>
<td>Dz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Register indirect</td>
<td>@Az</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Register indirect with post-increment</td>
<td>@Az+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Register indirect with index/post-increment</td>
<td>@Az+Iz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Register indirect with pre-decrement</td>
<td>@-Az</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Register indirect with index/post-increment is a special addressing mode for the DSP data transfer instructions. In this mode, after referring to the contents indicated by register Az, register Az contents are incremented by the value of the Iz register.

(d) Registers that Can Be Specified in Addressing Modes:

Table 11.30 lists registers that can be specified in the DSP register direct, register indirect, register indirect with post-increment, register indirect with index/post-increment, and register indirect with pre-decrement addressing modes. For Dx, Dy, Dxy, Ds, Da, Ax, Ax2, Ay, Ay2, As, Ix, Iy, and Is, refer to table 11.31, Data Transfer Instructions.

Table 11.30  Registers that Can Be Specified in Addressing Modes for Data Transfer Instructions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>General Registers</th>
<th>R0</th>
<th>R1</th>
<th>R2</th>
<th>R3</th>
<th>R4</th>
<th>R5</th>
<th>R6</th>
<th>R7</th>
<th>R8</th>
<th>R9</th>
<th>DSP Registers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>A0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dz</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dx</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dxy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ds</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Da</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Az</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ax</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ax2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ay</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ay2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ix</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Note: Warning 703 is displayed if the destination register for the DSP instruction and the destination register for the data transfer instruction are the same register in the same statement.

Example:
PADD A0,M0,Y0  NOPX  MOVY.W @R6+,Y0 → Warning 703

(e) Data Transfer Instruction List:
Table 11.31 lists data transfer instructions for the SH2-DSP and SH3-DSP. Table 11.32 lists data transfer instructions for the SH4AL-DSP added to those of the SH2-DSP and SH3-DSP. For registers that can be specified for Dx, Dy, Dxy, Ds, Da, Ax, Ax2, Ay, Ay2, As, lx, ly, and Is, refer to table 11.30, Registers that Can Be Specified in Addressing Modes for Data Transfer Instructions.
### Table 11.31 Data Transfer Instructions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification</th>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Addressing Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>X data transfer instructions</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOPX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVX.W</td>
<td>@Ax, Dx</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVX.W</td>
<td>@Ax+, Dx</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVX.W</td>
<td>@Ax+Ix, Dx</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVX.W</td>
<td>Da, @Ax</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVX.W</td>
<td>Da, @Ax+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVX.W</td>
<td>Da, @Ax+Ix</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Y data transfer instructions</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOPY</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVY.W</td>
<td>@Ay, Dy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVY.W</td>
<td>@Ay+, Dy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVY.W</td>
<td>@Ay+ly, Dy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVY.W</td>
<td>Da, @Ay</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVY.W</td>
<td>Da, @Ay+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVY.W</td>
<td>Da, @Ay+ly</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Single data transfer instructions</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVS.W</td>
<td>@-As, Ds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVS.W</td>
<td>@As, Ds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVS.W</td>
<td>@As+, Ds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVS.W</td>
<td>@As+Is, Ds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVS.W</td>
<td>Ds, @-As</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVS.W</td>
<td>Ds, @As</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVS.W</td>
<td>Ds, @As+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVS.W</td>
<td>Ds, @As+ls</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVS.L</td>
<td>@-As, Ds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVS.L</td>
<td>@As, Ds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVS.L</td>
<td>@As+, Ds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVS.L</td>
<td>@As+Is, Ds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVS.L</td>
<td>Ds, @-As</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVS.L</td>
<td>Ds, @As</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVS.L</td>
<td>Ds, @As+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVS.L</td>
<td>Ds, @As+ls</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Table 11.32 Data Transfer Instructions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification</th>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Addressing Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>X data transfer instructions</td>
<td>MOVX.W</td>
<td>@Ax2,Dxy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MOVX.W</td>
<td>@Ax2+,Dxy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MOVX.W</td>
<td>@Ax2+R8,Dxy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MOVX. L</td>
<td>@Ax2,Dxy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MOVX. L</td>
<td>@Ax2+,Dxy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MOVX. L</td>
<td>@Ax2+R8,Dxy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y data transfer instructions</td>
<td>MOVY.W</td>
<td>@Ay2,Dxy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MOVY.W</td>
<td>@Ay2+,Dxy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MOVY.W</td>
<td>@Ay2+R9,Dxy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MOVY. L</td>
<td>@Ay2,Dxy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MOVY. L</td>
<td>@Ay2+,Dxy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MOVY. L</td>
<td>@Ay2+R9,Dxy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
11.4  Assembler Directives

The assembler directives are instructions that the assembler interprets and executes. The underlines indicate the default. Table 11.33 lists the assembler directives provided by this assembler.

Table 11.33  Assembler Directives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Target CPU</td>
<td>.CPU</td>
<td>Specifies the target CPU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section and the location counter</td>
<td>.SECTION</td>
<td>Declares a section.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.ORG</td>
<td>Sets the value of the location counter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.ALIGN</td>
<td>Corrects the value of the location counter to a multiple of boundary alignment value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symbols</td>
<td>.EQU</td>
<td>Sets a symbol value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.ASSIGN</td>
<td>Sets or resets a symbol value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.REG</td>
<td>Defines the alias of a register name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.FREG</td>
<td>Defines a floating-point register name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data and data area reservation</td>
<td>.DATA</td>
<td>Reserves integer data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.DATAB</td>
<td>Reserves an integer data block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.SDATA</td>
<td>Reserves string literal data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.SDATAB</td>
<td>Reserves a string literal data block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.SDATAC</td>
<td>Reserves string literal data (with length).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.SDATAZ</td>
<td>Reserves string literal data (with zero terminator).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.FDATA</td>
<td>Reserves floating-point data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.FDATAB</td>
<td>Reserves a floating-point data block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.XDATA</td>
<td>Reserves fixed-point data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.RES</td>
<td>Reserves data area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.SRES</td>
<td>Reserves string literal data area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.SRESC</td>
<td>Reserves string literal data area (with length).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.SRESZ</td>
<td>Reserves string literal data area (with zero terminator).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.FRES</td>
<td>Reserves floating-point data area.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Table 11.33 Assembler Directives (cont)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Externally defined and externally referenced symbol</td>
<td>.EXPORT</td>
<td>Declares externally defined symbols.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.IMPORT</td>
<td>Declares externally referenced symbols.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.GLOBAL</td>
<td>Declares externally defined and externally referenced symbols.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Object modules</td>
<td>.OUTPUT</td>
<td>Controls object module and debugging information output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.DEBUG</td>
<td>Controls the output of symbolic debugging information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.ENDIAN</td>
<td>Selects big endian or little endian.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.LINE</td>
<td>Changes line number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assemble listing</td>
<td>.PRINT</td>
<td>Controls assemble listing output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.LIST</td>
<td>Controls the output of the source program listing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.FORM</td>
<td>Sets the number of lines and columns in the assemble listing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.HEADING</td>
<td>Sets the header for the source program listing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.PAGE</td>
<td>Inserts a new page in the source program listing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.SPACE</td>
<td>Outputs blank lines to the source program listing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other directives</td>
<td>.PROGRAM</td>
<td>Sets the name of the object module.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.RADIX</td>
<td>Sets the radix in which integer constants with no radix specifier are interpreted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.END</td>
<td>Specifies an entry point and the end of the source program.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.STACK</td>
<td>Defines the stack value for the specified symbol.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: .FILE is only used as a descriptor for assembly source code that is output by the compiler, and is only valid for such code. Do not use .FILE in your own assembly programs.
.CPU

Description Format: \( \Delta . \text{CPU} \Delta \text{<target CPU>} \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Target CPU</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SH1</td>
<td>Assembles program for SH-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH2</td>
<td>Assembles program for SH-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH2E</td>
<td>Assembles program for SH-2E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH2A</td>
<td>Assembles program for SH-2A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH2AFPU</td>
<td>Assembles program for SH2A-FPU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHDSP</td>
<td>Assembles program for SH2-DSP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH3</td>
<td>Assembles program for SH-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH3DSP</td>
<td>Assembles program for SH3-DSP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH4</td>
<td>Assembles program for SH-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH4A</td>
<td>Assembles program for SH-4A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH4ALDSP</td>
<td>Assembles program for SH4AL-DSP</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The label field is not used.

Description: .CPU specifies the target CPU for which the source program is assembled.

Specify this directive at the beginning of the source program. If it is not specified at the beginning, an error will occur. However, directives related to assembly listing can be written before this directive.

When several .CPUs are specified, only the first specification becomes valid.

The assembler gives priority to target CPU specification in the order of cpu option, .CPU, and the SHCPU environment variable.

If the directive is not specified, the CPU selected by the environment variable SHCPU becomes valid.
Example:

```assembly
.CPU SH2  ; Assembles program for the SH-2.
.SECTION A,CODE,ALIGN=4
MOV.L R0,R1
MOV.L R0,R2
```

Description Format: 

`.SECTION<section name>[,<section attribute>[,<section type>]]`

- `<section attribute>` = `{ CODE | DATA | STACK | DUMMY }
- `<section type>` = `{LOCATE= <start address> | ALIGN=<boundary alignment value>}

The label field is not used.

Description: `.SECTION` specifies the declaration and restart of a section.

A section is a part of a program, and the optimizing linkage editor regards it as a unit of processing.

The section attributes are as follows.

- **CODE**: Code section
- **DATA**: Data section
- **STACK**: Stack section
- **DUMMY**: Dummy section

Use `LOCATE=<start address>` to output an object in an absolute address format. Use `ALIGN=<boundary alignment value>` to output an object in a relative address format. The optimizing linkage editor will adjust the start address of the section to be the multiple of the boundary alignment value.

When the section type is not specified, `ALIGN=4` is assumed.

The following describes section declaration using the simple examples shown below.
It is possible to redeclare (and thus restart,) a section that was previously declared in the same file. The following is a simple example of section restart.

```
.SECION CD, CODE, ALIGN-4
Source statement set 1

.SECION DT, DATA, ALIGN-4
Source statement set 2

.SECION DM, DUMMY
Source statement set 3

.END
```

Note: This example assumes that the .SECTION directive does not appear in any of the source statement sets 1 to 3.

It is possible to redeclare (and thus restart,) a section that was previously declared in the same file. The following is a simple example of section restart.
When using .SECTION to restart a section, the second and third operands must be omitted. (The original specifications when first declaring the section remain valid.)

Use LOCATE = <start address> as the third operand when starting an absolute address section. The start address is the absolute address of the start of that section.

The symbol value must be specified as follows:
- The specification must be a constant value, and
- Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.

The values allowed for the start address are from H'00000000 to H'FFFFFFFF. (From 0 to 4,294,967,295 in decimal.)

Use ALIGN = <boundary alignment value> to start a relative address section. The optimizing linkage editor will adjust the start address of the section to be the multiple of the boundary alignment value.

The boundary alignment value must be specified as follows:
- The specification must be a constant value, and
- Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.
The values allowed for the boundary alignment value are powers of 2, e.g. $2^0$, $2^1$, $2^2$, ..., $2^{31}$. For code sections, the values must be 4 or larger powers of 2, e.g. $2^2$, $2^3$, $2^4$, ..., $2^{31}$.

The assembler provides a default section for the following cases:
- The use of executable, extended, or DSP instructions when no section has been declared.
- The use of data reservation assembler directives when no section has been declared.
- The use of .ALIGN when no section has been declared.
- The use of .ORG when no section has been declared.
- Reference to the location counter when no section has been declared.
- The use of statements consisting of only the label field when no section has been declared.

The default section is the following section:
- Section name: P
- Section type: Code section
  
Relative address section (with a boundary alignment value of 4)

Example:

```
.ALIGN 4
.DATA.L H'11111111
```

```
.SECTION CD, CODE, ALIGN=4

MOV    R0, R1
MOV    R0, R2
```

```
.SECTION DT, DATA, LOCATE=H'00001000

X1: .DATA.L H'22222222
.DATA.L H'33333333
```

Note: This example assumes .SECTION does not appear in the parts indicated by "∼".
.ORG

Description Format: \texttt{\textasciitilde ORG\textasciitilde<location-counter value>}

The label field is not used.

Description: \texttt{.ORG} sets the value of the location counter. \texttt{.ORG} is used to place executable instructions or data at a specific address. The location-counter value must be specified as follows:

- The specification must be a constant value or an address within the section, and,
- Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.

The values allowed for the location-counter value are from \texttt{H'00000000} to \texttt{H'FFFFFFFF}. (From 0 to 4,294,967,295 in decimal.) When the location-counter value is specified with an absolute address value, the following condition must be satisfied:

\texttt{<location-counter value> \geq <section start address>} (when compared as unsigned values)

The assembler handles the value of the location counter as follows:

- An absolute address value within an absolute address section.
- A relative address value (relative distance from the section head) within a relative address section.
Example:

```assembly
.SECTION DT,DATA,LOCATE=H'FFFF0000
.DATA.L H'11111111
.ORG H'FFFF0010 ; This statement sets the value of the location counter.
.DATA.L H'22222222 ; The integer data H'22222222 is stored at absolute address H'FFFF0010.
~
```

Explanatory Figure for the Coding Example

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Memory</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Absolute address H'FFFF0000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H'11111111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H'00000000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H'00000000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H'22222222</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Absolute address H'FFFF0010 |
| Locations from H'FFFF0004 to H'FFFF000F are filled with H'00 |
| 4 bytes                  |
```
.ALIGN

Description Format: .ALIGN<boundary alignment value>
The label field is not used.

Description: .ALIGN corrects the location-counter value to be a multiple of the boundary alignment value. Executable instructions and data can be allocated on specific boundary values (address multiples) by using .ALIGN. The location counter value must be specified as follows:

- The specification must be a constant value, and,
- Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.

The values allowed for the boundary alignment value are powers of 2, e.g. $2^0$, $2^1$, $2^2$, ..., $2^{31}$.

When .ALIGN is used in a relative section the following must be satisfied:

- Boundary alignment value specified by .SECTION ≥ Boundary alignment value specified by .ALIGN

When .ALIGN is used in a code or data section, the assembler inserts NOP instructions in the object code* to adjust the value of the location counter. Odd byte size areas are filled with H'09.

Note: This object code is not displayed in the assemble listing.
Example: .SECTION P,CODE,ALIGN=4
   .DATA.B H'11
   .DATA.B H'22
   .DATA.B H'33

   .ALIGN 2 ; This statement adjusts the value of the location counter to be a multiple of 2.
   .DATA.W H'4444

   .ALIGN 4 ; This statement adjusts the value of the location counter to be a multiple of 4.
   .DATA.L H'55555555

Explanatory Figure for the Coding Example

This example assumes that the byte-sized integer data H'11 is originally located at the 4-byte boundary address. The assembler will insert the filler data as shown in the figure below.

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>H'11</th>
<th>H'22</th>
<th>H'33</th>
<th>H'09</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H'4444</td>
<td>H'0009</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H'55555555</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

Memory

4-byte boundary

4 bytes

: Codes filled in by the assembler.
.EQU

Description Format: `<symbol>[:\]EQU<symbol value>`

Description: .EQU sets a value to a symbol.
Symbols defined with .EQU cannot be redefined.
The symbol value must be specified as follows:
• The specification must be a constant value, an address value, or an externally referenced symbol value* and,
• Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.

The values allowed for the symbol value are from H'00000000 to H'FFFFFFFF.
(From -2,147,483,648 to 4,294,967,295 in decimal.)
Note: An externally referenced symbol, externally referenced symbol + constant, or externally referenced symbol – constant can be specified.

Example:
~
X1: .EQU 10 ;The value 10 is set to X1.
X2: .EQU 20 ;The value 20 is set to X2.
CMP/EQ #X1,R0 ;This is the same as CMP/EQ #10,R0.
BT LABEL1
CMP/EQ #X2,R0 ;This is the same as CMP/EQ #20,R0.
BT LABEL2
~
.ASSIGN

Description Format: <symbol>[::]A.ASSIGNA<symbol value>

Description: .ASSIGN sets a value to a symbol.
Symbols defined with .ASSIGN can be redefined with .ASSIGN.
The symbol value must be specified as follows:
• The specification must be a constant value or an address value, and,
• Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.

The values allowed for the symbol value are from H'00000000 to
H'FFFFFFFF. (From −2,147,483,648 to 4,294,967,295 in decimal.)
Definitions with .ASSIGN are valid from the point of the definition forward
in the program.
Symbols defined with .ASSIGN have the following limitations:
• They cannot be used as externally defined or externally referenced
  symbols.
• They cannot be referenced from the debugger.

Example:

```
X1: .ASSIGN 1
X2: .ASSIGN 2
  CMP/EQ #X1,R0 ;This is the same as CMP/EQ #1,R0.
  BT LABEL1
  CMP/EQ #X2,R0 ;This is the same as CMP/EQ #2,R0.
  BT LABEL2

~

X1: .ASSIGN 3
X2: .ASSIGN 4
  CMP/EQ #X1,R0 ; This is the same as CMP/EQ #3,R0.
  BT LABEL3
  CMP/EQ #X2,R0 ; This is the same as CMP/EQ #4,R0.
  BF LABEL4
```

~
.REG

Description Format: \texttt{<symbol>[::]\texttt{.REG} <register name>}

or

\texttt{<symbol>[::]\texttt{.REG}(<register name>)}

Description: .REG defines the alias of a register name. The alias of a register name defined with .REG can be used in exactly the same manner as the original register name. The alias of a register name defined with .REG cannot be redefined. The alias of a register name can only be defined for the general registers (R0 to R15, and SP). Definitions with .REG are valid from the point of the definition forward in the program. Symbols defined with .REG have the following limitations: They cannot be used as externally referenced or externally defined symbols.

Example:

```
MIN: .REG R10
MAX: .REG R11
MOV #0,MIN ; This is the same as MOV #1,R10.
MOV #99,MAX ; This is the same as MOV #99,R11.

CMP/HS MIN,R1
BF LABEL
CMP/HS R1,MAX
BF LABEL
```
.FREG

Description Format:  <symbol>[:][FREG]<floating-point register name>
or
<symbol>[:][FREG](<floating-point register name>)

Description:  .FREG defines the alias of a floating-point register name.
The alias of a floating-point register name defined with .FREG can be used
in exactly the same manner as the original register name.
The alias of a floating-point register name defined with .FREG cannot be
redefined.
The alias can only be defined for the floating-point registers FRm (m = 0 to
15), DRn (n = 0, 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12, 14), XDn (n = 0, 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12, 14), and
FVi (i = 0, 4, 8, 12).
Definitions with the .FREG are valid from the point of the definition forward
in the program.
Symbols defined with .FREG have the following limitations:
They cannot be used as externally referenced or externally defined symbols.
.FREG is valid only when SH2E, SH4, SH4A, or SH2AFPU is selected as
the CPU type.

Example:

MAX: .FREG       FR11
       FMOV       FR1,MAX   ; This is the same as
                   ; FMOV FR1,FR11.
       FCMP/EQ MAX,FR2    ; This is the same as
                   ; FCMP/EQ FR11,FR2.
       BF       LABEL

~
**.DATA**

Description Format: `[<symbol>[:]]`Δ`[.operation size.]`Δ`<integer data>[....]

<operation size>:  { B | W | L }

Description:  .DATA reserves integer data in memory.

The specifier determines the size of the reserved data.

The longword size is used when the operation size is omitted.

Arbitrary values, including relative values, forward referenced symbols and externally referenced symbols, can be used to specify the integer data.

The operation size and the range of integer data are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation Size</th>
<th>Integer Data Range*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B  (Byte)</td>
<td>H'00000000 to H'000000FF (0 to 255)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W  (Word, 2 bytes)</td>
<td>H'00000000 to H'0000FFFF (0 to 65,535)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L  (Longword, 4 bytes)</td>
<td>H'00000000 to H'7FFFFFFF (0 to 4,294,967,295)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note:  Numbers in parentheses are decimal.
Example:

```
.X: .ALIGN 4
  .DATA.L H'11111111
  .DATA.W H'2222,H'3333
  .DATA.B H'44,H'55
```

Explanatory Figure for the Coding Example

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>11</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>11</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>55</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

Note: The data in this figure is hexadecimal.
.DATAB

Description Format: [<symbol>[<operation range>]Δ<DATAB>[<block count>,<integer data>]

<operation size>: { B | W | L }

Description: .DATAB reserves the specified number of integer data items consecutively in memory.

The operation size determines the size of the reserved data.

The longword size is used when the operation size is omitted.

The block count must be specified as follows:
- The specification must be a constant value, and,
- Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.

Arbitrary values, including relative values forward reference symbols, and externally referenced symbols, can be used to specify the integer data.

The operation size and the range of block size are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation Size</th>
<th>Block Size Range*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B (Byte)</td>
<td>H'000000001 to H'FFFFFFFF (1 to 4,294,967,295)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W (Word, 2 bytes)</td>
<td>H'000000001 to H'7FFFFFFF (1 to 2,147,483,647)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L (Longword, 4 bytes)</td>
<td>H'000000001 to H'3FFFFFFF (1 to 1,073,741,823)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation Size</th>
<th>Integer Data Range*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>H'000000000 to H'0000000FF (0 to 255)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H'FFFFFFF80 to H'FFFFFFFF (~128 to –1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>H'000000000 to H'0000000FF (0 to 65,535)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H'FFFFFF8000 to H'FFFFFFFF (~32,768 to –1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>H'000000000 to H'7FFFFFFF (0 to 4,294,967,295)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H'800000000 to H'FFFFFFFF (~2,147,483,648 to –1)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Numbers in parentheses are decimal.
Example:

```
.X:
    .ALIGN 4
    .DATAB.L 1,H'11111111
    .DATAB.W 2,H'2222
    .DATAB.B 3,H'33
```

This statement reserves two blocks of integer data.

---

Explanatory Figure for the Coding Example

Note: The data in this figure is hexadecimal.
.SDATA

Description Format: [<symbol>[:]]Δ.SDATA"<string literal>"[...]

Description: .SDATA reserves string literal data in memory. A control character can be appended to a string literal.
The syntax for this notation is as follows:
"<string literal>"<ASCII code for a control character>
The ASCII code for a control character must be specified as follows:
• The specification must be a constant value, and,
• Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.

Example:

```
.X: .ALIGN 4
    .SDATA "AAAAA" ; This statement reserves string literal data.
    .SDATA """BBB"""" ; The string literal in this example includes double quotation marks.
    .SDATA "ABAB"<H'07> ; The string literal in this example has a control character appended.
```

Explanatory Figure for the Coding Example

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address symbol X</th>
<th>Memory</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>41 41 41 41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41 22 42 42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42 22 41 42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41 42 07</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Notes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. The data in this figure is hexadecimal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. The ASCII code for &quot;A&quot; is: H'41.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The ASCII code for &quot;B&quot; is: H'42.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The ASCII code for &quot;&quot;&quot;&quot; is: H'22.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
.SDATAB

Description Format: [<symbol>[;]]\Delta SDATA\Delta <block count>,"<string literal>"

Description: .SDATAB reserves the specified number of string literals consecutively in memory.
The <block count> must be specified as follows:
• The specification must be a constant value, and,
• Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.

A value of 1 or larger must be specified as the block count.
The maximum value of the block count depends on the length of the string literal data.
(The length of the string literal data multiplied by the block count must be less than or equal to H'FFFFFFFF (4,294,967,295) bytes.)
A control character can be appended to a string literal.
The syntax for this notation is as follows:
"<string literal>"<ASCII code for a control character>

The ASCII code for a control character must be specified as follows:
• The specification must be a constant value, and,
• Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.
Example:

```
~
.ALIGN 4

X:
.SDATAB 2,"AAAAA" ; This statement reserves two
string literal data blocks.
.SDATAB 2,""BBB"""" ; The string literal in this
example includes double quotation
marks.
.SDATAB 2,"ABAB"<H'07> ; The string literal in this
example has a control character
 appended.

~
```

Explanatory Figure for the Coding Example

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address symbol X</th>
<th>Memory</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>07</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>07</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
1. The data in this figure is hexadecimal.
2. The ASCII code for “A” is: H’41.
The ASCII code for “B” is: H’42.
The ASCII code for “” is: H’22.
.SDATAC

Description Format: [<symbol>[;]]∆.SDATAC"<string literal>"[...]

Description: .SDATAC reserves string literal data (with length) in memory.
A string literal with length is a string literal with an inserted leading byte that
indicates the length of the string.
The length indicates the size of the string literal (not including the length) in
bytes.
A control character can be appended to a string literal.
The syntax for this notation is as follows:

"<string literal>"<control code>

The ASCII code for a control character must be specified as follows:
• The specification must be a constant value, and,
• Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.
Example:

```
.XALIGN 4
.X:

.XSDATAC "AAAAA" ; This statement reserves character string data (with length).
.XSDATAC ""BBB"" ; The string literal in this example includes double quotation marks.
.XSDATAC "ABAB"<H'07>; The string literal in this example has a control character appended.
```

Explanatory Figure for the Coding Example

![Memory Address Symbol X](image)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address symbol X</th>
<th>Memory</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>05 41 41 41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41 41 05 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42 42 42 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>05 41 42 41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42 07</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
1. The data in this figure is hexadecimal.
2. The ASCII code for ‘A’ is: H'41.
   The ASCII code for ‘B’ is: H'42.
   The ASCII code for ‘’ is: H'22.
.SDATAZ

Description Format: [ <symbol>[:]Δ.SDATAZΔ"<string literal>"[,...]

Description: .SDATAZ reserves string literal data (with zero terminator) in memory. A string literal with zero terminator is a string literal with an appended trailing byte (with the value H'00) that indicates the end of the string. A control character can be appended to a string literal. The syntax for this notation is as follows:

"<string literal>"<ASCII code for a control character>

The ASCII code for a control character must be specified as follows:
- The specification must be a constant value, and,
- Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.
Example:

```c
.ALIGN 4

X:  .SDATAZ "AAAAA"  ; This statement reserves character string data (with zero terminator).
    .SDATAZ """BBB""""  ; The string literal in this example includes double quotation marks.
    .SDATAZ "ABAB"<H'07>  ; The string literal in this example has a control character appended.
```

Explanatory Figure for the Coding Example

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Memory</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes: 1. The data in this figure is hexadecimal.
2. The ASCII code for "A" is: H'41.
The ASCII code for "B" is: H'42.
The ASCII code for """" is: H'22.
.FDATA

Description Format: [<symbol>[:]]∆.FDATA[.<operation size>]∆<floating-point data>[,...]

<operation size>: { S | D }

Description: .FDATA reserves floating-point data in memory. The operation size determines the size of the reserved data. Single precision is used when the operation size is omitted. Operation size is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation Size</th>
<th>Data Size</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>Single precision (4 bytes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Double precision (8 bytes)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example:

```
.X: .ALIGN 4
.FDATA.S F'1.234 ; This statement reserves a 4-byte area 3F9DF3B6 (F'1.234S).
.FDATA.S H'7F800000.S ; This statement reserves a 4-byte area 7F800000 (H'7F800000.S).
.FDATA.D F'4.32D-1 ; This statement reserves an 8-byte area 3FDBA5E353F7CED9 (F'4.32D-1).
```

Explanatory Figure for the Coding Example

```
Memory

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>F</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>F3</th>
<th>B6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3F</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3F</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>A5</td>
<td>E3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>F7</td>
<td>CE</td>
<td>D9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Address symbol X

4 bytes
```
.FDATAB

Description Format: [<symbol>[;]] .FDATA[<operation size>] <block count>, <floating-point data>

<operation size>:  { S | D }

Description: .FDATA reserves the specified number of floating-point data items consecutively in memory. The operation size determines the size of the reserved data. Single precision is used when the operation size is omitted.

The block count must be specified as follows:
- The specification must be a constant value, and,
- Forward reference symbols, externally defined symbols, and relative symbols must not appear in specification.

The range of values that can be specified as the block count varies with the operation size.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation Size</th>
<th>Block Size Range*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S (single precision, 4 bytes)</td>
<td>H'00000001 to H'3FFFFFFFF (1 to 1,073,741,823)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D (double precision, 8 bytes)</td>
<td>H'00000001 to H'1FFFFFFFF (1 to 536,870,911)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Numbers in parentheses are decimal.
Example:

```
.X:  
.ALIGN 4

.FDATAB.S 2, H'7F800000.S ; This statement reserves two blocks
 ; of 4-byte areas 7F800000
 ; (H'7F800000.S).

.FDATAB.D 3, F'4.32D-1 ; This statement reserves three
 ; blocks of 8-byte areas
 ; 3FDBA5E353F7CED9 (F'4.32D-1).
```

Explanatory Figure for the Coding Example

![Explanatory Figure](image-url)
.XDATA

Description Format: [<symbol>:][.XDATA[.<operation size>][<fixed-point data>][,...]]

<operation size>: { W | L }

Description: .XDATA reserves fixed-point data in memory.
The operation size determines the size of the reserved data.
The longword size is used when the operation range is omitted.

The operation size is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation Size</th>
<th>Data Size</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>Word (2 bytes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>Longword (4 bytes)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

```
.XALIGN 4
.X:
.XDATA.L 0.5          ; This statement reserves 4-byte area (H'40000000).
.XDATA.W 0.75,0.25    ; This statement reserves 2-byte areas (H'60000) and (H'2000).
```

Explanatory Figure for the Coding Example

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Memory</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40 00 00 00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>60 00 20 00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Address symbol X

4 bytes
```
.RES

Description Format: [<symbol>[:]]∆.RES[.<operation size>]∆<area count>
<operation size>: { B | W | L }

Description: .RES reserves data areas in memory.
The operation size determines the size of one area.
The longword size is used when the specifier is omitted.
The area count must be specified as follows:
• The specification must be a constant value, and,
• Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.

The range of values that can be specified as the area count varies with the operation size.
The data size and the range of area count are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation Size</th>
<th>Area Count Range*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B (byte)</td>
<td>H'00000001 to H'FFFFFFFF (1 to 4,294,967,295)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W (word, 2 bytes)</td>
<td>H'00000001 to H'7FFFFFFF (1 to 2,147,483,647)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L (longword, 4 bytes)</td>
<td>H'00000001 to H'3FFFFFFF (1 to 1,073,741,823)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Numbers in parentheses are decimal.
Example:

```
~

.X: .ALIGN 4

..RES.L 2 ; This statement reserves two-longword-size areas.
..RES.W 3 ; This statement reserves three-word-size areas.
..RES.B 5 ; This statement reserves five-byte-size areas.

~
```

Explanatory Figure for the Coding Example
.SRES

Description Format: \[<symbol>[:][A.SRESA<string literal area size>][,...]\]

Description: .SRES reserves string literal data areas.
The string literal area size must be specified as follows:
• The specification must be a constant value, and,
• Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.

The values that are allowed for the string literal area size are from H'00000001 to H'FFFFFFFF (from 1 to 4,294,967,295 in decimal).

Example:

```
.X: .ALIGN 4
  .SRES 7 ; This statement reserves a 7-byte area.
  .SRES 6 ; This statement reserves a 6-byte area.
```

Explanatory Figure for the Coding Example
.SRESC

Description Format: [<symbol>[:][]SRESC<string literal area size>[,...]]

Description: .SRESC reserves string literal data areas (with length) in memory. A string literal with length is a string literal with an inserted leading byte that indicates the length of the string. The length indicates the size of the string literal (not including the length) in bytes. The string literal area size must be specified as follows:

• The specification must be a constant value, and,
• Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.

The values that are allowed for the string literal area size are from H'00000000 to H'000000FF (from 0 to 255 in decimal). The size of the area reserved in memory is the size of the string literal area itself plus 1 byte for the count.

Example:

```
~

.ALIGN 4
X:

.SRESC 7 ; This statement reserves 7 bytes plus 1 byte for the count.
.SRESC 6 ; This statement reserves 6 bytes plus 1 byte for the count.

~
```
Explanatory Figure for the Coding Example

Address symbol X

Memory

4 bytes
.SRESZ

Description Format: [<symbol>[:]]Δ.SRESZΔ<string literal area size>[....]

Description: .SRESZ allocates string literal data areas (with zero termination).
A string literal with zero termination is a string literal with an appended
trailing byte (with the value H'00) that indicates the end of the string.
The string literal area size must be specified as follows:
• The specification must be a constant value, and,
• Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.

The values that are allowed for the string literal area size are from
H'00000000 to H'000000FF (from 0 to 255 in decimal).
The size of the area reserved in memory is the size of the string literal area
itself plus 1 byte for the terminating zero.

Example:

```
.X:   .ALIGN 4

    .SRESZ 7 ; This statement reserves 7 bytes plus 1 byte
              ; for the terminating byte.
    .SRESZ 6 ; This statement reserves 6 bytes plus 1 byte
              ; for the terminating byte.
```

```
Explanatory Figure for the Coding Example

Memory

Address symbol
X

4 bytes
.FRES

Description Format: [<symbol>:][.]FRES[.<operation size>][<area count>]

<operation size> = { S | D }

Description: .FRES reserves floating-point data areas in memory. The operation size determines the size of the reserved data. Single precision is used when the specifier is omitted. The area count must be specified as follows:

- The specification must be a constant value,
- Forward reference symbols, externally referenced symbols, and relative symbols must not appear in the specification.

Operation size is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation Size</th>
<th>Data Size</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>Single precision (4 bytes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Double precision (8 bytes)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example:

```
.ALIGN 4
X:
.FRES.S 2 ; This statement reserves two areas.
.FRES.D 3 ; This statement reserves three areas.
```

Explanatory Figure for the Coding Example

![Explanatory Figure]

### .EXPORT

Description Format: `∆.EXPORT∆<symbol>[,...]`

The label field is not used.

Description: `.EXPORT` declares externally defined symbols. An externally defined symbol declaration is required to reference symbols defined in the current file from other files. The following can be declared to be externally defined symbols.
- Constant symbols (other than those defined with `.ASSIGN`)
- Absolute address symbols (other than address symbols in a dummy section)
- Relative address symbols
To reference a symbol as an externally referenced symbol, it is necessary to declare it to be an externally defined symbol, and also to declare it to be an externally referenced symbol. Externally referenced symbols are declared in the file in which they are referenced using either .IMPORT or .GLOBAL.

Example: (In this example, a symbol defined in file A is referenced from file B.)

File A:

```
.EXPORT      X ; This statement declares X to be an externally defined symbol.
```

```
X:  .EQU     H'10000000 ; This statement defines X.
```

File B:

```
.IMPORT      X ; This statement declares X to be an externally referenced symbol.
```

```
.ALIGN       4
.DATA.L      X ; This statement references X.
```

```
.IMPORT

Description Format: .IMPORT<symbol>[,<symbol>...]

The label field is not used.

Description: .IMPORT declares externally referenced symbols. An externally referenced symbol declaration is required to reference symbols defined in another file. Symbols defined in the current file cannot be declared to be externally referenced symbols. To reference a symbol as an externally referenced symbol, it is necessary to declare it to be an externally referenced symbol, and also to declare it to be an externally defined symbol. Externally defined symbols are declared in the file in which they are defined using either .EXPORT or .GLOBAL.

Example: (In this example, a symbol defined in file A is referenced from file B.)

File A:

```
.EXPORT X ; This statement declares X to be an
; externally defined symbol.
```

```
X: .EQU H'10000000 ; This statement defines X.
```

File B:

```
.IMPORT X ; This statement declares X to be an
; externally referenced symbol.
```

```
.ALIGN 4
.DATA.L X ; This statement references X.
```
.GLOBAL

Description Format: .GLOBAL<symbol>[,<symbol>…]

The label field is not used.

Description: .GLOBAL declares symbols to be either externally defined symbols or externally referenced symbols.
An externally defined symbol declaration is required to reference symbols defined in the current file from other files. An externally referenced symbol declaration is required to reference symbols defined in another file.
A symbol defined within the current file is declared to be an externally defined symbol by a .GLOBAL declaration.
A symbol that is not defined within the current file is declared to be an externally referenced symbol by a .GLOBAL declaration.
The following can be declared to be externally defined symbols.
• Constant symbols (other than those defined with .ASSIGN)
• Absolute address symbols (other than address symbols in a dummy section)
• Relative address symbols

To reference a symbol as an externally referenced symbol, it is necessary to declare it to be an externally defined symbol, and also to declare it to be an externally referenced symbol.
Externally defined symbols are declared in the file in which they are defined using either .EXPORT or .GLOBAL.
Externally referenced symbols are declared in the file in which they are referenced using either .IMPORT or .GLOBAL.
Example: (In this example, a symbol defined in file A is referenced from file B.)

File A:

```assembly
.GLOBAL X ; This statement declares X to be an externally defined symbol.

;

X: .EQU $10000000 ; This statement defines X.
```

File B:

```assembly
.GLOBAL X ; This statement declares X to be an externally referenced symbol.

; 

.ALIGN 4 ;
.DATA.L X ; This statement references X.
```
.OUTPUT

Description Format: `\texttt{.OUTPUT\Delta<output specifier>\ldots}`

\begin{verbatim}
<output specifier> = \{ OBJ | NOOBJ |
                  DBG | NODBG \}
\end{verbatim}

The label field is not used.

Description: 
\texttt{.OUTPUT} controls object module and debugging information output.

(1) Output of object module

Controls the output of the object module.

\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
\textbf{Output Specifier} & \textbf{Output Control} \\
\hline
OBJ & An object module is output. \\
NOOBJ & No object module is output. \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

(2) Output of debugging information

Controls the output of the debugging information.

\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
\textbf{Output Specifier} & \textbf{Output Control} \\
\hline
DBG & Debugging information is output in the object module.  \\
NODBG & No debugging information is output in the object module.  \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

If \texttt{.OUTPUT} is used two or more times in a program with inconsistent output specifiers, an error occurs.

Example:
\begin{verbatim}
\sim
.OUTPUT OBJ
.OUTPUT NOOBJ
.OUTPUT NODBG  \textcolor{red}{\sim \text{ OK}}
\sim
\end{verbatim}

Specifications concerning debugging information output are only valid when an object module is output.

The assembler gives priority to command line option specifications concerning the object module and debugging information output.
Example: This example and its description assume that no command line options concerning object module or debugging information output were specified.

Example 1: `.OUTPUT OBJ    ; An object module is output.    ; No debugging information is output. ~

Example 2: `.OUTPUT OBJ,DBG  ; Both an object module and debugging information is output. ~

Example 3: `.OUTPUT OBJ,NODBG ; An object module is output.    ; No debugging information is output. ~

Supplement: Debugging information is required when debugging a program using the debugger, and is part of the object module. Debugging information includes information about source statements and information about symbols.
Description Format: `.DEBUG<output specifier>`

```
<output specifier> = { ON | OFF }
```

The label field is not used.

Description: .DEBUG controls the output of symbolic debugging information. This directive allows assembly time to be reduced by restricting the output of symbolic debugging information to only those symbols required in debugging.

The specification of .DEBUG is only valid when both an object module and debugging information are output.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Output Specifier</th>
<th>Output Control</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ON</td>
<td>Symbolic debugging information is output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>No symbolic debugging information is output.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

```
~
.
``` .DEBUG OFF  ; Starting with the next statement, the
        ; assembler does not output symbolic
        ; debugging information.

```
~
.
``` .DEBUG ON   ; Starting with the next statement, the
        ; assembler outputs symbolic debug
        ; information.

```
~
.
``` Supplement: The term "symbolic debugging information" refers to the parts of debugging information concerned with symbols.
.ENDIAN

Description Format: .ENDIAN<endian>

<endian>: { BIG | LITTLE}
The label field is not used.

Description: .ENDIAN specifies whether the byte order of the target microcomputer is in
big endian or little endian.
Enter .ENDIAN at the beginning of the source program.
The endian type takes priority for option specifications.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Endian</th>
<th>Output Control</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIG</td>
<td>Assembles program in big endian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LITTLE</td>
<td>Assembles program in little endian</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example: 1. When the big endian is selected

```
.CPU    SH3
.ENDIAN BIG    ; This statement selects the big endian.
```

```
X: .DATA.L  H'12345678    ;
.DAT.A.W  H'1234,H'5678  ; These statements reserve integer
                        ; data.
.DAT.A.B  H'12,H'34     ;
```

Explanatory Figure for the Coding Example

```
Memory

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>12</th>
<th>34</th>
<th>56</th>
<th>78</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>34</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Address symbol X

Note: The data in this figure is hexadecimal.
Example: 2. When the little endian is selected

```assembly
.CPU SH3
.ENDIAN LITTLE ; This statement selects the little endian.
```

```
X:
.DATA.L H'12345678 ;
.DATA.W H'1234,H'5678 ; These statements reserve integer data.
.DATA.B H'12,H'34 ;
```

Explanatory Figure for the Coding Example

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address symbol X</th>
<th>Memory</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12 34 78 56 34 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

Note: The data in this figure is hexadecimal.
.LINE

Description Format: ∆.LINEΔ ["<file name>".,]<line number>

The label field is not used.

Description: .LINE changes the file name and line number referred to at error message output or at debugging.

The line number and the file name specified with .LINE is valid until the next .LINE.

The compiler (version 3.0 or later) generates .LINE corresponding to the line in the C source file when the debugging option is specified and the assembly source program is output.

If the file name is omitted, the file name is not changed, but only the line number is changed.

Example:

```
shc -code=asm code -debug test.c
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>C source program (test.c)</th>
<th>Assembly source program (test.src)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>int func()</td>
<td>.FILE &quot;C:\asm\test.c&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{</td>
<td>.EXPORT _func</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int i,j;</td>
<td>.SECTION P, CODE, ALIGN=4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j=0;</td>
<td>_func: ; function: func</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for (i=1;i&lt;=10;i++){</td>
<td>; frame size=0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j+=i;</td>
<td>.LINE &quot;C:\asm\test.c&quot;,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>}</td>
<td>MOV #0,R5 ; H'00000000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>return(j);</td>
<td>.LINE &quot;C:\asm\test.c&quot;,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>}</td>
<td>MOV #1,R2 ; H'00000001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MOV #10,R6 ; H'0000000A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

L11:

```
ADD #-1,R6
TST R6,R6
.LINE "C:\asm\test.c",7
ADD R2,R5
ADD #1,R2
BF L11
RTS
MOV R5,R0
.END
```
.PRINT

Description Format: .PRINT<output specifier>[,...]

<output specifier>={ LIST | NOLIST | SRC | NOSRC | CREF | NOCREF | SCT | NOSCT }

The label field is not used.

Description: .PRINT controls the following output.
(1) Assemble listing
(2) Source program listing
(3) Cross-reference listing
(4) Section information listing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Output Specifier*1</th>
<th>Assembler Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>LIST</td>
<td>An assemble listing is output.*2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NOLIST</td>
<td>No assemble listing is output.*2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>SRC</td>
<td>A source program listing is output in the assemble listing.<em>3</em>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NOSRC</td>
<td>No source program listing is output in the assemble listing.<em>3</em>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>CREF</td>
<td>A cross-reference listing is output in the assemble listing.<em>3</em>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NOCREF</td>
<td>No cross-reference listing is output in the assemble listing.<em>3</em>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4)</td>
<td>SCT</td>
<td>A section information listing is output in the assemble listing.<em>3</em>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NOSCT</td>
<td>No section information listing is output in the assemble listing.<em>3</em>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes: 1. This specification is valid only once.
2. Valid when the list or nolist option is not specified.
3. Valid when the assemble listing is output.
4. Valid when the source or nosource option is not specified.
5. Valid when the cross_reference or nocross_reference option is not specified.
6. Valid when the section or nosection option is not specified.

If .PRINT is used two or more times in a program with inconsistent output specifiers, an error occurs.
Example: This example and its description assume that no options concerning assemble listing output are specified.

Example 1: `.PRINT LIST ; All types of assemble listing are output.

~

Example 2: `.PRINT LIST,NOSRC,NOCREF ; Only a section information listing is output.

~
.LIST

Description Format: .LISTA<output specifier>[,...]

<output specifier>={ ON | OFF | COND | NOCOND | DEF | NODEF |
CALL | NOCALL | EXP | NOEXP |
CODE | NOCODE }

The label field is not used.

Description: .LIST controls output of the source program listing in the following three ways:

1. Selects whether or not to output source statements.
2. Selects whether or not to output source statements related to the preprocessor function.
3. Selects whether or not to output object code lines.

Output is controlled by output specifiers as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Output Specifier</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Output</th>
<th>Not output</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>ON/off</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>Source statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>COND/NOCOND</td>
<td>NOCOND</td>
<td>Failed condition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DEF/NODEF</td>
<td>NODEF</td>
<td>Condition-failed .AIF or .AIFDEF statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CALL/NOCALL</td>
<td>NOCALL</td>
<td>Call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>CODE/NOCODE</td>
<td>NOCODE</td>
<td>Object code lines</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: This specification is valid when the show or noshow option is not specified.

The specification of .LIST is only valid when an assemble listing is output.
The assembler gives priority to option specifications concerning source program listing output.
.LIST statements themselves are not output on the source program listing.
Example: This example and its description assume that no options concerning assemble listing output are specified.

```
.LIST NOCOND,NODEF
.MACRO SHLRN COUNT,Rd
SHIFT .ASSIGNA \COUNT
.AIF \&SHIFT GE 16
SHLR16 \Rd
SHIFT .ASSIGNA \&SHIFT-16
.AENDI
.AIF \&SHIFT GE 8
SHLR8 \Rd
SHIFT .ASSIGNA \&SHIFT-8
.AENDI
.AIF \&SHIFT GE 4
SHLR2 \Rd
SHIFT .ASSIGNA \&SHIFT-4
.AENDI
.AIF \&SHIFT GE 2
SHLR2 \Rd
SHIFT .ASSIGNA \&SHIFT-2
.AENDI
.AIF \&SHIFT GE 1
SHLR \Rd
.AENDI
.ENDM
```

This statement controls source program listing output.

These statements define a general-purpose multiple-bit shift procedure as a macro instruction.

```
SHLRN 23,R0
```

Macro call
Source Listing Output of Coding Example:

```
.LIST suppresses the output of the macro definition, .ASSIGNA and .ASSIGNC, and .AIF and .AIFDEF condition-failed statements.

31                             31
32                             32            SHLRN    23,R0
33                                M
35                                M
36                                M .AIF 23 GE 16
37 00000000 4029             C    SHLR16 R0
39                                M .AENDI
40                                M
41                                M .AIF 7 GE 8
45                                M
46                                M .AIF 7 GE 4
47 00000002 4009             C    SHLR2 R0
48 00000004 4009             C    SHLR2 R0
50                                M .AENDI
51                                M
52                                M .AIF 3 GE 2
53 00000006 4009             C    SHLR2 R0
55                                M .AENDI
56                                M
57                                M .AIF 1 GE 1
58 00000008 4001             C    SHLR R0
59                                M .AENDI
```
.FORM

Description Format: ∆.FORM∆<size specifier>[,...]

<size specifier> = { LIN = <line count> | COL = <column count> | TAB = {4 | 8} }

The label field is not used.

Description: .FORM sets the number of lines per page, columns per line, and tab size in the assemble listing.
The line count and column count must be specified as follows:
• The specifications must be constant values, and,
• Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specifications.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Size Specifier</th>
<th>Listing Size</th>
<th>Allowable Range</th>
<th>When Not Specified</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LIN=&lt;line count&gt;</td>
<td>The specified value is set to the number of lines per page.*1</td>
<td>20 to 255*4</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COL=&lt;column count&gt;</td>
<td>The specified value is set to the number of columns per line.*2</td>
<td>79 to 255*4</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAB = {4</td>
<td>8}</td>
<td>The specified value is set to the tab size.*3</td>
<td>4 or 8*5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes: 1. Valid when the lines option is not specified.
2. Valid when the columns option is not specified.
3. Valid when the tab suboption is not specified in the show option.
4. When a value less than the minimum value is specified, the minimum value is assumed, and when a value larger than the maximum value is specified, the maximum value is assumed; no error is output.
5. When an invalid value is specified, 8 is assumed; no error is output.

The assembler gives priority to command line option specifications concerning the number of lines and columns in the assemble listing.
.FORM can be used any number of times in a given source program.
Example: This example and its description assume that no options concerning the assemble listing line count, column count, and/or tab size are specified.

```
FORM LIN=60, COL=200, TAB=4
; Starting with this page, the number of lines per page in the assemble listing is 60 lines.
; Starting with this line, the number of columns per line in the assemble listing is 200 columns.
; Outputs the assemble listing with setting the tab size as 4.

FORM LIN=55, COL=150
; Starting with this page, the number of lines per page in the assemble listing is 55 lines.
; Starting with this line, the number of columns per line in the assemble listing is 150 columns.
```
.HEADING

Description Format: ∆.HEADING∆"<string literal>" ∆

The label field is not used.

Description: .HEADING sets the header for the source program listing.
A string literal of up to 60 characters can be specified as the header.
.HEADING can be used any number of times in a given source program.
The range of validity for a given use of .HEADING is as follows:
• When .HEADING is on the first line of a page, it is valid starting with
that page.
• When .HEADING appears on the second or later line of a page, it is valid
starting with the next page.

Example: ∼
.HEADING """SAMPLE.SRC"""" WRITTEN BY YAMADA"
∼

Explanatory Figure for the Coding Example

Source program listing

Page boundary
Second line
Header
"SAMPLE.SRC" WRITTEN BY YAMADA
.PAGE

Description Format: .PAGE

The label field is not used.

Description: .PAGE inserts a new page in the source program listing at an arbitrary point. .PAGE is ignored if it is used on the first line of a page. .PAGE statements themselves are not output to the source program listing.

Example:

```
MOV R0,R1
RTS
MOV R0,R2
.PAGE ;A new page is specified here since the section changes at this point.
.SECTION DT,DATA,ALIGN=4
.DATA.L H'11111111
.DATA.L H'22222222
.DATA.L H'33333333
```

~
Explanatory Figure for the Coding Example

**Source program listing**

<p>| | | | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>00000022</td>
<td>6103</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>MOV</td>
<td>R0,R1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>00000024</td>
<td>000B</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>RTS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>00000026</td>
<td>6203</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>MOV</td>
<td>R0,R2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*** SuperH RISC engine ASSEMBLER Ver. 5.1 *** 06/01/01 10:15:30

PROGRAM NAME -

<p>| | | | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>00000000</td>
<td></td>
<td>22</td>
<td>.SECTION D7,DATA,ALIGN</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>00000000</td>
<td>11111111</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>.DATA.L H'11111111</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>00000004</td>
<td>22222222</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>.DATA.L H'22222222</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>00000008</td>
<td>33333333</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>.DATA.L H'33333333</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
.SPACE

Description Format: ∆.SPACE[∆<line count>]

The label field is not used.

Description: .SPACE outputs the specified number of blank lines to the source program listing.
The line count must be specified as follows:
• The specification must be a constant value, and,
• Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.

Values from 1 to 50 can be specified as the line count.
When a new page occurs as the result of blank lines output by .SPACE, any remaining blank lines are not output on the new page.
.SPACE statements themselves are not output to the source program listing.

Example: .SECTION DT1,DATA,ALIGN=4
.DATA.L H'11111111
.DATA.L H'22222222
.DATA.L H'33333333
.DATA.L H'44444444 ; Inserts five blank lines at the point .SPACE 5 ; where the section changes.
.SECTION DT2,DATA,ALIGN=4
~
### Explanatory Figure for the Coding Example

**Source program listing**

```
*** SuperH RISC engine ASSEMBLER Ver. 5.1 *** 06/01/01 10:15:30
PROGRAM NAME =

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Line</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>00000000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>00000000</td>
<td>11111111</td>
<td>.SECTION D71,DATA,ALIGN=4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>00000004</td>
<td>22222222</td>
<td>.DATA.L H'11111111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>00000008</td>
<td>33333333</td>
<td>.DATA.L H'22222222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>0000000C</td>
<td>44444444</td>
<td>.DATA.L H'33333333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>00000000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SECTION D72,DATA,ALIGN=4**
```

---

Mar 01, 2022
.PROGRAM

Description Format: ∆.PROGRAM∆<object module name>

The label field is not used.

Description: .PROGRAM sets the object module name.
The object module name is a name that is required by the optimizing linkage
editor to identify the object module.
Object module naming conventions are the same as symbol naming
conventions.
The assembler distinguishes uppercase and lowercase letter in object module
names.
Setting the object module name with .PROGRAM is valid only once in a
given program. (The assembler ignores the second and later specifications
of .PROGRAM.)
If there is no .PROGRAM specification of the object module name, the
assembler will set a default (implicit) object module name.
The default object module name is the file name of the object file (the object
module output destination).

Example: Object file name .......... [PROG]     [obj]
          || ||
          File name     File type
          ↓
Object module name .... PROG

The object module name can be the same as a symbol used in the program.

Example: .PROGRAM  PROG1  ; This statement sets the object module
                       ; name to be
                       ; PROG1.
~
.RADIX

Description Format: \texttt{.RADIX<radix specifier>}

\texttt{<radix specifier> = \{ B | Q | D | H \}}

The label field is not used.

Description: 

\texttt{.RADIX} sets the radix (base) for integer constants with no radix specification.
This specifier sets the radix (base) for integer constants with no radix specification.
When there is no radix specification with \texttt{.RADIX} in a program, integer constants with no radix specification are interpreted as decimal constants.
If hexadecimal (radix specifier \texttt{H}) is specified as the radix for integer constants with no radix specification, integer constants whose first digit is A through F must be prefixed with a 0 (zero). (The assembler interprets expressions that begin with A through F to be symbols.)
Specifications with \texttt{.RADIX} are valid from the point of specification forward in the program.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Radix Specifier</th>
<th>Integer Constant with no Radix</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Binary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q</td>
<td>Octal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Decimal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>Hexadecimal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: 1.

\begin{verbatim}
.X: .EQU  100 ;This 100 is decimal.
.Y: .EQU  64 ;This 64 is hexadecimal.
\end{verbatim}

2.

\begin{verbatim}
.Y: .EQU  64 ;This 64 is hexadecimal.
\end{verbatim}
Z: .EQU 0F ; A zero is prefixed to this constant "0F" since it would be interpreted as a symbol if it were written as simply "F".

.END

Description Format: \[.END[\Delta<symbol>]\]
Label: The label field is not used.

Description: .END sets the end of the source program and the entry point. The assembly processing ends when .END is detected. A symbol specified for an operand is regarded as the entry point. An externally defined symbol is specified for the symbol.

Example:

```
.EXPORT START
.SECTION P, CODE, ALIGN=4
START:
~
.END START ; Declares the end of the source program.
; Symbol START becomes the entry point.
```

.STACK

Description Format: \[.STACK\Delta<symbol> = <stack value>\]
Label: The label field is not used.

Description: .STACK defines the stack amount for a specified symbol referenced by using the stack analysis tool. The stack value for a symbol can be defined only one time; the second and later specifications for the same symbol are ignored. A multiple of 4 in the range from H'00000000 to H'FFFFFFFC can be specified for the stack value, and any other value is invalid. The stack value must be specified as follows:
- A constant value must be specified.
- Forward reference symbol, external reference symbol, and relative address symbol must not be used.
Example:

```assembly
~
.STACK SYMBOL=H'100
~
```
11.5 File Inclusion Function

The file inclusion function allows source files to be included into other source files at assembly. The file included into another file is called an include file.

This assembler provides .INCLUDE to perform file inclusion.

The file specified with .INCLUDE is inserted at the location of .INCLUDE.

Example:

Source program

```
.INCLUDE "FILE.H"

.SECTION CD1, CODE, ALIGN=4
MOV #ON, R0
```

```
Include file FILE.H
ON: .EQU 1
OFF: .EQU 0
```

```
↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
```

File included result (source list)

```
.INCLUDE "FILE.H"
ON: .EQU 1
OFF: .EQU 0

.SECTION CD1, CODE, ALIGN=4
MOV #ON, R0
```

```
↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
```
.INCLUDE

Description Format: .INCLUDE "<file name>"

The label field is not used.

Description: .INCLUDE is the file inclusion assembler directive. If no file type is specified, only the file name is used as specified (the assembler does not assume any default file type).

The file name can include the directory. The directory can be specified either by the absolute path (path from the root directory) or by the relative path (path from the current directory).

Include files can include other files. The nesting depth for file inclusion is limited to 30 levels.

The current directory for .INCLUDE in a source file is the directory where the assembler is invoked. The current directory for .INCLUDE in an include file is the directory where the include file exits.

The directory name of the filenames specified by .INCLUDE can be changed by the `include` option.

Example: This example assumes the following directory configuration and operations:

- Starts the assembler from the root directory (`\`)
- Inputs source file `\dir1\file1.src`
- Makes file2.h included in file1.src
- Makes file3.h included in file2.h
The start command is as follows:

>asmsh \dir1\file1.src (RET)

file1.src must have the following include directive:

```
.INCLUDE "dir2\file2.h" ; \ is the current directory
 ; (relative path
 ; specification).
```

or

```
.INCLUDE "\dir2\file2.h" ; Absolute path
 ; specification
```

file2.h must have the following inclusion directive:

```
.INCLUDE "file3.h" ; \dir2 is the current
directory ; (relative path
 ; specification).
```

or

```
.INCLUDE "\dir2\file3.h" ; Absolute path
 ; specification
```
11.6 Conditional Assembly Function

11.6.1 Overview of the Conditional Assembly Function

The conditional assembly function provides the following assembly operations:

- Replaces a string literal in the source program with another string literal.
- Selects whether or not to assemble a specified part of a source program according to the condition.
- Iteratively assembles a specified part of a source program.

(1) Preprocessor variables

Preprocessor variables are used to write assembly conditions. Preprocessor variables are of either integer or character type.

(a) Integer preprocessor variables

Integer preprocessor variables are defined by .ASSIGNA (these variables can be redefined).

When referencing integer preprocessor variables, insert a backslash (\) and an ampersand (&) in front of them.

A coding example is shown below:

Example:

```assembly
FLAG: .ASSIGNA 1

.AIF \&FLAG EQ 1 ; MOV R0,R1 is assembled
MOV R0,R1 ; when FLAG is 1.
.AENDIF
```

(b) Character preprocessor variables

Character preprocessor variables are defined by .ASSIGNC (these variables can be redefined).

When referencing character preprocessor variables, insert a backslash (\) and an ampersand (&) in front of them.

A coding example is shown below:
Example:

`FLAG: .ASSIGNC "ON"

.AIF "\&FLAG" EQ "ON" ; MOV R0,R1 is assembled
    MOV R0, R1 ; when FLAG is "ON".
   .AENDI

(2) Replacement Symbols

.DEFINNE specifies symbols that will be replaced with the corresponding string literals at assembly. A coding example is shown below.

Example:

`SYM1: .DEFINE    "R1"

   MOV.L       SYM1, R0 ; Replaced with MOV.L R1, R0.
(3) Conditional Assembly

The conditional assembly function determines whether or not to assemble a specified part of a source program according to the (specified) conditions. Conditional assembly is classified into two types: conditional assembly with comparison using relational operators and conditional assembly with definition of replacement symbols.

(a) Conditional Assembly with Comparison

Selects the part of program to be assembled according to whether or not the specified condition is satisfied. A coding example is as follows:

```assembly
.AIF  <comparison condition 1>
  <Statements to be assembled when condition 1 is satisfied>
.AELIF <comparison condition 2>
  <Statements to be assembled when condition 2 is satisfied>
.AELSE
  <Statements to be assembled when both conditions are not satisfied>
.AENDI
```

Example:

```assembly
.AIF  "\&FLAG" EQ "ON"
  MOV  R0,R10 ; Assembled when FLAG is ON.
  MOV  R1,R11
  MOV  R2,R12 ;
.AELSE
  MOV  R10,R0 ; Assembled when FLAG is not ON.
  MOV  R11,R1
  MOV  R12,R2 ;
.AENDI
```

--- This part can be omitted.
(b) Conditional Assembly with Definition

Selects the part of program to be assembled by whether or not the specified replacement symbol has been defined. A coding example is as follows:

```
.AIFDEF  <definition condition>
<Statements to be assembled when the specified replacement symbol is defined>
.AELSE
<Statements to be assembled when the specified replacement symbol is not defined>
.AENDIF
```

This part can be omitted.

Example:

```
.AIFDEF  FLAG
MOV     R0,R10 ; Assembled when FLAG is defined with
MOV     R1,R11 ; .DEFINE before .AIFDEF
MOV     R2,R12 ; in the program.
.AELSE
MOV     R10,R0 ; Assembled when FLAG is not defined with
MOV     R11,R1 ; .DEFINE before the .AIFDEF
MOV     R12,R2 ; in the program.
.AENDIF
```
(4) Iterated Expansion

A part of a source program can be iteratively assembled the specified number of times. A coding example is shown below.

Example:

```
.AREPEAT <count>
  <Statements to be iterated>
.AENDR
```

Example:

```
TST  R0,R0 ; Zero divisor check
BT   zero_div
CMP/HS R0,R1 ; Overflow check
BT   over_div
DIV0U ; Flag initialization
.AREPEAT 32 ; These statements are iteratively assembled 32 times.
ROTL  R2
DIV1  R0,R1 ;
.AENDR
ROTL  R2 ; R2 = quotient
```

This example is a division of 64-bit data by 32-bit data. R1:R2 (64 bits) ÷ R0 (32 bits) = R2 (32 bits): Unsigned
(5) Conditional Iterated Expansion

A part of a source program can be iteratively assembled while the specified condition is satisfied. A coding example is shown below.

```
.AWHILE <condition>
  <Statements to be iterated>
.AENDW
```

Example:

```
TblSiz: .ASSIGNA  50  ; TblSiz: Data table size
MOV       A_Tbl1,R1  ; R1: Start address of data table 1
MOV       A_Tbl2,R2  ; R2: Start address of data table 2
CLRMAC
.AWILE \&TblSiz GT 0  ; While TblSiz is larger than 0,
  MAC.W   @R1+,@R2+  ; this statement is iteratively assembled.
TblSiz: .ASSIGNA \&TblSiz-1  ; 1 is subtracted from TblSiz.
.AENDW
STS       MACL,R0  ; The result is obtained in R0.
```
### 11.6.2 Conditional Assembly Directives

This assembler provides the following conditional assembly directives.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Variable definition</td>
<td>.ASSIGNA</td>
<td>Defines an integer preprocessor variable. The defined variable can be redefined.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.ASSIGNC</td>
<td>Defines a character preprocessor variable. The defined variable can be redefined.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.DEFINE</td>
<td>Defines a preprocessor replacement string literal. The defined variable cannot be redefined.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditional branch</td>
<td>.AIF</td>
<td>Determines whether or not to assemble a part of a source program according to the specified condition. When the condition is satisfied, the statements after the .AIF are assembled. When not satisfied, the statements after the .AELIF or .AELSE are assembled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.AELIF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.AELSE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.AENDI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.AIFDEF</td>
<td>Determines whether or not to assemble a part of a source program according to the replacement symbol definition. When the replacement symbol is defined, the statements after the .AIFDEF are assembled. When not defined, the statements after the .AELSE are assembled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.AELSE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.AENDI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iterated expansion</td>
<td>.AREPEAT</td>
<td>Repeats assembly of a part of a source program (between .AREPEAT and .AENDR) the specified number of times.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.AENDR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.AWHILE</td>
<td>Assembles a part of a source program (between .AWHILE and .AENDW) iteratively while the specified condition is satisfied.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.AENDW</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.EXITM</td>
<td>Terminates .AREPEAT or .AWHILE iterated expansion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others</td>
<td>.AERROR</td>
<td>Processes an error during preprocessor expansion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.ALIMIT</td>
<td>Specifies the maximum count of .AWHILE expansion.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
.ASSIGNA

Description Format: `<preprocessor variable>[: ] .ASSIGNA <value>`

Description: 

.ASSIGNA defines a value for an integer preprocessor variable. The syntax of integer preprocessor variables is the same as that for symbols. An integer preprocessor variable can be defined with up to 32 characters, and uppercase and lowercase letters are distinguished. The preprocessor variables defined with .ASSIGNA can be redefined with .ASSIGNA. The value to be assigned has the following format:

- Constant (integer constant and character constant)
- Defined preprocessor variable
- Expression using the above as terms

Defined preprocessor variables are valid in the source statements following the directive. Defined preprocessor variables can be referenced in the following locations:

- .ASSIGNA
- .ASSIGNC
- .AIF
- .AELIF
- .AREPEAT
- .AWHILE
- Macro body (source statements between .MACRO and .ENDM)

When referencing integer preprocessor variables, insert a backslash (`\`) and an ampersand (`&`) in front of them.

\&<preprocessor variable>['']

To clearly distinguish the preprocessor variable name from the rest of the source statement, an apostrophe (`'`) can be added. When a preprocessor string literal is defined by an option, .ASSIGNA specifying the preprocessor variable having the same name as the string literal is invalidated.
Example:

```
RN: .REG R0
SHIFT: .ASSIGNA 27

.SHF \&SHIFT GE 16
   SHLR16 Rn
   SHIFT: .ASSIGNA \&SHIFT-16
.AENDI

.SHF \&SHIFT GE 8
   SHLR8 Rn
   SHIFT: .ASSIGNA \&SHIFT-8
.AENDI

.SHF \&SHIFT GE 4
   SHLR2 Rn
   SHLR2 Rn
   SHIFT: .ASSIGNA \&SHIFT-4
.AENDI

.SHF \&SHIFT EQ 1
   SHLR Rn
.AENDI
```

The expanded results are as follows:

```
SHLR16 R0  ; When the condition is satisfied, Rn is shifted to the right by 16 bits.
SHLR8 R0  ; When the condition is satisfied, Rn is shifted to the right by 8 bits.
SHLR2 R0  ; When the condition is satisfied, Rn is shifted to the right by 2 bits.
SHLR R0  ; When the condition is satisfied, Rn is shifted to the right by 1 bit.
```
Section 11 Assembly Specifications

SuperHTM RISC engine C/C++ Compiler, Assembler,
Optimizing Linkage Editor

.ASSIGNC
Description Format: <preprocessor variable>[:] ∆.ASSIGNC ∆"<string literal>"
Description:

.ASSIGNC defines a string literal for a character preprocessor variable. The
syntax of character preprocessor variables is the same as that for symbols. A
character preprocessor variable can be defined with up to 32 characters, and
uppercase and lowercase letters are distinguished.
The preprocessor variables defined with .ASSIGNC can be redefined
with .ASSIGNC.
String literals are specified by characters or preprocessor variables enclosed
with double quotation marks (").
Defined preprocessor variables are valid in the source statements following
the directive.
Defined preprocessor variables can be referenced in the following locations:
• .ASSIGNA
• .ASSIGNC
• .AIF
• .AELIF
• .AREPEAT
• AWHILE
• Macro body (source statements between .MACRO and .ENDM)
When referencing character preprocessor variables, insert a backslash (\) and
an ampersand (&) in front of them.
\&<preprocessor variable>[']
To clearly distinguish the preprocessor variable name from the rest of the
source statement, an apostrophe (') can be added.
When a preprocessor string literal is defined by an option, .ASSIGNC
specifying the preprocessor variable having the same name as the string
literal is invalidated.

Page 976 of 1176

R20UT0704EJ0102 Rev. 1.02
Mar 01, 2022


Example:

```assembly
FLAG: .ASSIGNC "ON" ; "ON" is set to FLAG.

.AIF "\&FLAG" EQ "ON" ; MOV R0,R1 is assembled
  MOV R0,R1 ; when FLAG is "ON".
.AENDI

FLAG: .ASSIGNC "\&FLAG " ; A space (" ") is added to FLAG.
FLAGA: .ASSIGNC "OFF" ; "OFF" is added to FLAGA.
FLAG: .ASSIGNC "\&FLAG'AND \&FLAGA"
  ; An apostrophe (') is used to distinguish FLAG and
  ; AND.
  ; FLAG finally becomes "ON AND OFF".
```
.DEFINE

Description Format: `<symbol>[:]` DEFNE `Δ"<replacement string literal>"`

Description: .DEFINE specifies that the symbol is replaced with the corresponding string literal.

The differences between .DEFINE and .ASSIGNC are as follows.

- The symbol defined by .ASSIGNC can only be used in the preprocessor statement; the symbol defined by .DEFINE can be used in any statement.
- The symbols defined by .ASSIGNA and .ASSIGNC are referenced by the "\&symbol" format; the symbol defined by .DEFINE is referenced by the "symbol" format.

Defined symbols cannot be redefined. .DEFINE specifying a symbol is invalidated when the same replacement symbol has been defined by a option. This replacement is not applied to the .AENDI, .AENDR, .AENDW, .AIFDEF, .END, and .ENDM directives.

Example:

```
SYM1: .DEFINE   "R1"

~

MOV.L SYM1,R0       ; Replaced with MOV.L R1,R0.

~

C0: .DEFINE "0"

MOV.B #H'C0,R0     ; Replaced with MOV.B #H'0,R0.
MOV.B #H'0C0,R0    ; Not replaced.

A hexadecimal number starting with an alphabetical character a to f or A to F will be replaced when the same string literal is specified as a replacement symbol by .DEFINE. Add 0 to the beginning of the number to stop replacing such number.

B: .DEFINE "H"

MOV.B #B'10,R0     ; Replaced with MOV.H #H'10,R0.
```
.AIF, .AELIF, .AELSE, .AENDI

Description Format:  
  ∆.AIF ∆<term1> ∆<relational operator> ∆<term2>
  <Source statements assembled if the .AIF condition is satisfied>
  [∆.AELIF ∆<term1> ∆<relational operator> ∆<term2>]
  <Source statements assembled if the .AELIF condition is satisfied>
  [∆.AELSE
  <Source statements assembled if all the conditions are not satisfied>]
  .AENDI

The label field is not used.

Description: .AIF, .AELIF, .AELSE, and .AENDI are the assembler directives that select
whether or not to assemble source statements according to the condition
specified. .AELIF and .AELSE can be omitted.
.AELIF can be specified repeatedly between .AIF and .AELSE.
The condition must be specified as follows:
.AIF: Condition to be compared.
.AELIF: Condition to be compared.
.AELSE: Operand field cannot be used.
.AENDI: Operand field cannot be used.

Terms are specified with numeric values or string literals. However, when a
numeric value and a string literal are compared, the condition always fails.
Numeric values are specified by constants or preprocessor variables.
String literals are specified by characters or preprocessor variables enclosed
with double quotation marks ("). To specify a double quotation mark in a
string literal, enter two double quotation marks in succession.
The following relational operators can be used:
EQ: term1 = term2
NE: term1 ≠ term2
GT: term1 > term2
LT: term1 < term2
GE: term1 ≥ term2
LE: term1 ≤ term2

Numeric values are handled as 32-bit signed integers. For string literals, only
EQ and NE conditions can be used.
Example:

```
.AIF \&TYPE EQ 1  
  MOV R0,R3    ;  These statements
  MOV R1,R4    ;  are assembled
  MOV R2,R5    ;  when TYPE is 1.
.AELIF \&TYPE EQ 2
  MOV R0,R6    ;  These statements
  MOV R1,R7    ;  are assembled
  MOV R2,R8    ;  when TYPE is 2.
.AELSE
  MOV R0,R9    ;  These statements
  MOV R1,R10   ;  are assembled
  MOV R2,R11   ;  when TYPE is not 1 nor 2.
.AENDI
```
.AIFDEF, .AELSE, .AENDI

Description Format:  Δ.AIFDEF Δ<replacement symbol>
<statements to be assembled when the specified replacement symbol is defined>
[Δ.AELSE
<statements to be assembled when the specified replacement symbol is not defined>]
. AENDI
The label field is not used.

Description: .AIFDEF, .AELSE, and .AENDI are the assembler directives that select whether or not to assemble source statements according to the replacement symbol definition. .AELSE can be omitted.
The condition must be specified as follows.
.AIFDEF: The condition to be defined.
.AELSE: The operand field cannot be used.
.AENDI: The operand field cannot be used.
The replacement symbol can be defined by .DEFINE.
When the specified replacement symbol is defined by the option or defined before being referenced by these directives, the condition is regarded as satisfied. When the replacement symbol is defined after being referenced by these directives or is not defined, the condition is regarded as unsatisfied.

Example:

∼

.AIFDEF   FLAG
MOV       R0,R3 ; These statements are assembled when
MOV       R1,R4 ; FLAG is defined by .DEFINE.
.AELSE
MOV       R0,R6 ; These statements are assembled when
MOV       R1,R7 ; FLAG is not defined by .DEFINE.
.AENDI

∼
.AREPEAT, .AENDR

Description Format:
\[ \text{.AREPEAT} \Delta \langle \text{count} \rangle \]
\[ <\text{Source statements iteratively assembled}> \]
\[ \Delta \text{.AENDR} \]

The label field is not used.

Description: .AREPEAT and .AENDR are the assembler directives that assemble source statements by iteratively expanding them the specified number of times. The condition must be specified as follows.

- **.AREPEAT**: The number of iterations.
- **.AENDR**: The operand field cannot be used.

The source statements between .AREPEAT and .AENDR are iterated the number of times specified with .AREPEAT. Note that the source statements are simply copied the specified number of times, and therefore, the operation is not a loop at program execution.

Counts are specified by constants or preprocessor variables. Nothing is expanded if a value of 0 or smaller is specified.

Example:

```
; This example is a division of 64-bit data by 32-bit data.
; R1:R2 (64 bits) ÷ R0 (32 bits) = R2 (32 bits): Unsigned
TST    R0,R0                   ; Zero divisor check
BT     zero_div
CMP/HS R0,R1                   ; Overflow check
BT     over_div
DIV0U  ; Flag initialization
.AREPEAT 32
ROTCL  R2                      ; These statements are
DIV1   R0,R1                   ; iterated 32 times.
.AENDR
ROTCL  R2                      ; R2 = quotient
```
.AWHILE, .AENDW

Description Format: \[ \text{.AWHILE} \text{ <term1> } \text{ <relational operator> } \text{ <term2>}
\text{ <Source statements iteratively assembled>}
\text{.AENDW} \]
The label field is not used.

Description: .AWHILE and .AENDW are the assembler directives that assemble source statements by iteratively expanding them while the specified condition is satisfied.

The source statements between .AWHILE and .AENDW are iterated while the condition specified with .AWHILE is satisfied. Note that the source statements are simply copied iteratively, and therefore, the operation is not a loop at program execution.

Terms are specified with numeric values or string literals. However, when a numeric value and a string literal are compared, the condition always fails.

Numeric values are specified by constants or preprocessor variables.

String literals are specified by characters or preprocessor variables enclosed with double quotation marks ("'). To specify a double quotation mark in a string literal, enter two double quotation marks (" ") in succession.

Conditional iterated expansion terminates when the condition finally fails.

If a condition which never fails is specified, source statements are iteratively expanded for 65,535 times or until the maximum count of statement expansion specified by .ALIMIT is reached. Accordingly, the condition for this directive must be carefully specified.

The following relational operators can be used:

EQ: term1 = term2
NE: term1 ≠ term2
GT: term1 > term2
LT: term1 < term2
GE: term1 ≥ term2
LE: term1 ≤ term2

Numeric values are handled as 32-bit signed integers. For string literals, only EQ and NE conditions can be used.
Example:

```
TblSiz: .ASSIGNA 50 ; TblSiz: Data table size
MOV A_Tbl1, R1 ; R1: Start address of data table 1
MOV A_Tbl2, R2 ; R2: Start address of data table 2
CLR MAC ; MAC register initialization
.AWHILE &TblSiz GT 0 ; While TblSiz is larger than 0,
  MAC.W @R0+, @R1+ ; this statement is iteratively assembled.
TblSiz: .ASSIGNA &TblSiz-1 ; 1 is subtracted from TblSiz.
.AENDW
STS MACL, R0 ; The result is obtained in R0.
```

; This example is a multiply and accumulate operation.
.EXITM

Description Format: ∆.EXITM
The label field is not used.

Description: .EXITM terminates an iterated expansion (.AREPEAT to .AENDR) or a conditional iterated expansion (.AWHILE to .AENDW).
Each expansion is terminated when this directive appears.
This directive is also used to exit from macro expansions. The location of this directive must be specified carefully when macro instructions and iterated expansion are combined.

Example:

```
∼
COUNT .ASSIGNA 0 ; 0 is set to COUNT.
    .AWHILE 1 EQ 1 ; An infinite loop (condition is always satisfied) is specified.
        ADD R0,R1
        ADD R2,R3
COUNT .ASSIGNA \&COUNT+1 ; 1 is added to COUNT.
    .AIF \&COUNT EQ 2 ; Condition: COUNT = 2
        .EXITM ; When the condition is satisfied
        .AENDI ; .AWHILE expansion is terminated.
    .AENDW
∼
```

When COUNT is updated and satisfies the condition specified with the .AIF, .EXITM is assembled. When .EXITM is assembled, .AWHILE expansion is terminated.

The expansion results are as follows:
```
ADD R0,R1 ....................... When COUNT is 0
ADD R2,R3
ADD R0,R1 ....................... When COUNT is 1
ADD R2,R3
```

After this, COUNT becomes 2 and expansion is terminated.
.AERROR

Description Format:  ∆.AERROR
                     The label field is not used.

Description: When .AERROR is assembled, error 667 occurs and the assembler is
terminated with an error.
 .AERROR can be used to check values such as preprocessor variables.

Example:

```
~

.AIF       \&FLG EQ 1
MOV       R1,R10
MOV       R2,R11
.AELSE
  .AERROR ; When \&FLG is not 1, an error occurs.
.AENDI

~
```
.ALIMIT

Description Format: ∆.ALIMIT ∆<count>
   The label field is not used.

Description: .ALIMIT determines the maximum count for the conditional iterated expansion (.AWHILE to .AENDW).
   <count> must be specified in the following format:
   • Constant (integer constant, character constant)
   • Defined preprocessor variable
   • Expression in which a constant or a defined preprocessor variable is used as the term

During conditional iterated (.AWHILE to .AENDW) expansion, if the statement expansion count exceeds the maximum value specified by .ALIMIT, warning 854 occurs and the expansion is terminated.

If .ALIMIT is not specified, the maximum count is 65,535. The maximum count of iteration expansion can be changed by respecifying this directive. The respecification is valid for the source statements after this directive.

Example:

```
  .ALIMIT    20
  ~
  FLG:   .ASSIGNA  0
  .AWHILE    \&FLG EQ 0 
                  ; Expansion is terminated after performed
   NOP
                  ; 20 times, and a warning message is output.
  .AENDW
  ~
```
11.7  Macro Function

11.7.1  Overview of the Macro Function

The macro function allows commonly used sequences of instructions to be named and defined as one macro instruction. This is called a macro definition. Macro instructions are defined as follows:

```
    .MACRO <macro name>
        <macro body>
    .ENDM
```

A macro name is the name assigned to a macro instruction, and a macro body is the statements to be expanded as the macro instruction.

Using a defined macro instruction by specifying the name is called a macro call. Macro call is as follows:

```
    <defined macro name>
```

An example of macro definition and macro call is shown below.
Example:

```
.MACRO  SUM
  MOV R0,R10
  ADD R1,R10
  ADD R2,R10
  ADD R3,R10
.ENDM

SUM
```

; Processing to obtain the sum of R0, R1, R2, and R3 is defined as macro instruction SUM.

; This statement calls macro instruction SUM.
; Macro body
; MOV R0,R10
; ADD R1,R10
; ADD R2,R10
; ADD R3,R10

; is expanded from the macro instruction.
Parts of the macro body can be modified when expanded by the following procedure:

(1) Macro definition
   Define arguments after the macro name in .MACRO.
   Use the arguments in the macro body. Arguments must be identified in the macro body by
   placing a backslash (\) in front of them.

(2) Macro call
   Specify macro parameters in the macro call.

When the macro instruction is expanded, the arguments are replaced with their corresponding
macro parameters.

Example:

```assembly
.MACRO  SUM ARG1
     MOV R0,\ARG1
     ADD R1,\ARG1
     ADD R2,\ARG1
     ADD R3,\ARG1
.ENDM

SUM R10
```

; Argument ARG1 is defined.
; ARG1 is referenced in the macro body.
; This statement calls macro instruction SUM
; specifying macro parameter R10.
; The argument in the macro body is
; replaced with the macro parameter, and
;     MOV R0,R10
;     ADD R1,R10
;     ADD R2,R10
;     ADD R3,R10 is expanded.
11.7.2 Macro Function Directives

This assembler provides the following macro function directives.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Directive</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.MACRO</td>
<td>Defines a macro instruction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.ENDM</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.EXITM</td>
<td>Terminates macro instruction expansion. Refer to section 11.6.2, .EXITM.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
.MACRO, .ENDM

Description Format:  

-MACRO<macro name>[<argument>[,...]]
-ENDM

<argument>: <argument>[=<default argument>]

The label field is not used.

Description: 

.MACRO and .ENDM define a macro instruction (a sequence of source statements that are collectively named and handled together).

Naming as a macro instruction the source statements (macro body) between .MACRO and .ENDM is called a macro definition.

The operand must be specified as follows:

.MACRO:  Macro instruction, argument, or default (can be omitted)
.ENDM:  Operand field cannot be used.

(1) Macro name

Macro names are the names assigned to macro instructions.

Arguments are specified so that parts of the macro body can be replaced by specific parameters at expansion. Arguments are replaced with the string literals (macro parameters) specified at macro expansion (macro call).

In the macro body, arguments are specified for replacement. The syntax of argument is macro body is as follows:

\<argument name>[']

To clearly distinguish the argument name from the rest of the source statement, an apostrophe (') can be added.

(2) Argument

Defaults for arguments can be specified in macro definitions. The default specifies the string literal to replace the argument when the corresponding macro parameter is omitted in a macro call.

The syntax of the argument is the same as that of symbol. The maximum length of the argument is 32 characters, and uppercase and lowercase letters are distinguished.

(3) Default argument

The default must be enclosed with double quotation marks (") or angle brackets (<>) if any of the following characters are included in the default.
• Space
• Tab
• Comma (,)
• Semicolon (;)
• Double quotation marks ("")
• Angle brackets (<>)

The assembler inserts defaults at macro expansion by removing the double quotation marks or angle brackets that enclose the string literals.

(4) Restrictions
Macros cannot be defined in the following locations:
• Macro bodies (between .MACRO and .ENDM)
• Between .AREPEAT and .AENDR
• Between .AWHILE and .AENDW

.END cannot be used within a macro body.
No symbol can be inserted in the label field of .ENDM. .ENDM is ignored if a symbol is written in the label field, but no error occurs in this case.
Example:

```assembly
.MACRO SUM
    ; Processing to obtain the sum of R0, R1, R2, 
    ; and R3 is defined as macro instruction SUM.
    MOV R0,R10
    ADD R1,R10
    ADD R2,R10
    ADD R3,R10
.ENDM

SUM
    ; This statement calls macro instruction SUM
    ; Macro body
    MOV R0,R10
    ADD R1,R10
    ADD R2,R10
    ADD R3,R10 is expanded.
```
11.7.3 Macro Body

The source statements between .MACRO and .ENDM are called a macro body. The macro body is expanded and assembled by a macro call.

(1) Argument reference

Arguments are used to specify the parts to be replaced with macro parameters at macro expansion.

The syntax of argument reference in a macro body is as follows:

\<argument name>[']

To clearly distinguish the argument name from the rest of the source statement, add an apostrophe (').

Example:

```
.MACRO  PLUS1 P,P1 ; P and P1 are arguments.
ADD     #1,\P1 ; Argument P1 is referenced.
.SDATA  "\P'1" ; Argument P is referenced.
.ENDM
PLUS1   R,R1 ; PLUS1 is expanded.
```

Expanded results are as follows:

```
ADD     #1,R1 ; Argument P1 is referenced.
.SDATA  "R1" ; Argument P is referenced.
```
(2) Preprocessor variable reference

Preprocessor variables can be referenced in macro bodies.

The syntax for preprocessor variable reference is as follows:
\&<preprocessor variable name>[']

To clearly distinguish the preprocessor variable name from the rest of the source statement, add an apostrophe (').

Example:

.MACRO PLUS1
ADD #1,R\&V1 ; Preprocessor variable V1 is referenced.
.SDATA "\V'1" ; Preprocessor variable V is referenced.
.ENDIF
V: .ASSIGNC "R" ; Preprocessor variable V is defined.
V1: .ASSIGNA 1 ; Preprocessor variable V1 is defined.
PLUS1 ; PLUS1 is expanded.

Expanded results are as follows:

ADD #1,R1 ; Preprocessor variable V1 is referenced.
.SDATA "R1" ; Preprocessor variable V is referenced.

(3) Macro generation number

The macro generation number facility is used to avoid the problem that symbols used within a macro body will be multiply defined if the macro is expanded multiple times. To avoid this problem, specify the macro generation number marker as part of any symbol used in a macro. This will result in symbols that are unique to each macro call.

The macro generation number marker is expanded as a 5-digit decimal number (between 00000 and 99999) unique to the macro expansion.

The syntax for specifying the macro generation number marker is as follows:
\@

Two or more macro generation number markers can be written in a macro body, and they will be expanded to the same number in one macro call.

Because macro generation number markers are expanded to numbers, they must not be written at the beginning of symbol names.
Example:

```assembly
.MACRO   RES_STR STR, Rn
   MOV.L   #str\@, \Rn
   BRA     end_str\@
   NOP
str\@ .SDATA   "\STR"
   .ALIGN   2
end_str\@

.ENDM

RES_STR "ONE", R0
RES_STR "TWO", R1
```

**Expanded results are as follows:**

```assembly
   MOV.L   #str00000, R0
   BRA     end_str00000
   NOP
str00000 .SDATA   "ONE"
   .ALIGN   2
end_str00000

   MOV.L   #str00001, R1
   BRA     end_str00001
   NOP
str00001 .SDATA   "TWO"
   .ALIGN   2
end_str00001
```

Different symbols are generated each time `RES_STR` is expanded.
(4) Macro replacement processing exclusion

When a backslash (\) appears in a macro body, it specifies macro replacement processing. Therefore, a means for excluding this macro processing is required when it is necessary to use the backslash as an ASCII character.

The syntax for macro replacement processing exclusion is as follows:
\(<macro replacement processing excluded string literal>)

The backslash and the parentheses will be removed in macro processing.

Example:

```
.MACRO BACK_SLASH_SET
\(MOV      #"\",R0) ; \ is expanded as an ASCII character.
.ENDM
```

Expanded results are as follows:
```
MOV     #"\",R0 ; \ is expanded as an ASCII character.
```

(5) Comments in macros

Comments in macro bodies can be coded as normal comments or as macro internal comments. When comments in the macro body are not required in the macro expansion code (to avoid repeating the same comment in the listing file), those comments can be coded as macro internal comments to suppress their expansion.

The syntax for macro internal comments is as follows:
\;<comment>

Example:

```
.MACRO PUSH Rn
MOV.L   \Rn,@-R15 ; \Rn is a register.
.ENDM
PUSH     R0
```

Expanded results are as follows (the comment is not expanded):
```
MOV.L   R0,@-R15
```
(6) String literal manipulation functions

String literal manipulation functions can be used in a macro body. The following string literal
manipulation functions are provided.

|.LEN| String literal length.
|INSTR| String literal search.
|SUBSTR| String literal extraction.

11.7.4 Macro Call

Expanding a defined macro instruction is called a macro call. The syntax for macro calls is as
follows:

Description Format

`[[<symbol>]][<macro name>][<macro parameter>][,...]]`

The macro name must be defined (.MACRO) before a macro call. String literals must be specified
as macro parameters to replace arguments at macro expansion. The arguments must be declared in
the macro definition with .MACRO.

Description

1. Macro parameter specification

   Macro parameters can be specified by either positional specification or keyword specification.

2. Positional specification

   The macro parameters are specified in the same order as that of the arguments declared in the
   macro definition with .MACRO.

3. Keyword specification

   Each macro parameter is specified following its corresponding argument, separated by an
   equal sign (=).

4. Macro parameter syntax

   Macro parameters must be enclosed with double quotation marks (") or angle brackets (<>) if
   any of the following characters are included in the macro parameters:
   — Space
   — Tab
   — Comma (,)
   — Semicolon (;)
— Double quotation marks ("")
— Angle brackets (<>)

Macro parameters are inserted by removing the double quotation marks or angle brackets that enclose string literals at macro expansion.

Example:

```assembly
.MACRO SUM FROM=0,TO=9 ; Macro instruction SUM and arguments
    MOV R\FROM,R10 ; FROM and TO are defined.
    COUNT .ASSIGNA \FROM+1
    .AENDW
    MOV R\COUNT,R10
    .ASSIGNA \&COUNT+1
    .AENDW
.ENDM

SUM 0,5 ; Both will be expanded
SUM TO=5 ; into the same statements.
```

Expanded results are as follows (the arguments in the macro body are replaced with macro parameters):

```assembly
MOV R0,R10
MOV R1,R10
MOV R2,R10
MOV R3,R10
MOV R4,R10
MOV R5,R10
```
11.7.5 String Literal Manipulation Functions

This assembler provides the following string literal manipulation functions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.LEN</td>
<td>Counts the length of a string literal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.INSTR</td>
<td>Searches for a string literal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.SUBSTR</td>
<td>Extracts a string literal.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
.LEN

Description Format:  .LEN[∆]("<string literal>")

Description:  .LEN counts the number of characters in a string literal and replaces itself with the number of characters in decimal with no radix.

String literals are specified by enclosing the desired characters with double quotation marks ("). To specify a double quotation mark in a string literal, enter two double quotation marks in succession.

Macro arguments and preprocessor variables can be specified in the string literal as shown below.

- .LEN("\<argument>")
- .LEN("\&<preprocessor variable>")

This function can only be used within a macro body (between .MACRO and .ENDM).

Example:

```
~
.MACRO RESERVE_LENGTH P1
.ALIGN 4  
.SRES  .LEN("\P1")
.ENDM
~
RESERVE_LENGTH ABCDEF
RESERVE_LENGTH ABC
```

Expanded results are as follows:

```
.ALIGN 4
.SRES 6  ; "ABCDEF" has six characters.
.ALIGN 4
.SRES 3  ; "ABC" has three characters.
```
.INSTR

Description Format: .INSTR[Δ]("<string literal 1">","<string literal 2>" [,<start position>])

Description: .INSTR searches string literal 1 for string literal 2, and replaces itself with the numerical value of the position of the found string (with 0 indicating the start of the string) in decimal with no radix. .INSTR is replaced with –1 if string literal 2 does not appear in string literal 1.

String literals are specified by enclosing the desired characters with double quotation marks ("). To specify a double quotation mark in a string literal, enter two double quotation marks in succession.

The start position parameter specifies the search start position as a numerical value, with 0 indicating the start of string literal 1. Zero is used as default when this parameter is omitted.

Macro arguments and preprocessor variables can be specified in the string literals and as the start position as shown below.

-INSTR("\<argument>", ...)
-INSTR("\&<preprocessor variable>", ...)

This function can only be used within a macro body (between .MACRO and .ENDM).

Example:

```
∼
.Macro FIND_STR P1
.DATA.W .INSTR("ABCDEFG","P1",0)
.ENDM
∼
FIND_STR CDE
FIND_STR H
```

Expanded results are as follows:

```
.DATA.W 2 ; The start position of "CDE" is 2 (0 indicating the beginning of the string) in "ABCDEFG"
.DATA.W -1 ; "ABCDEFG" includes no "H".
```
.SUBSTR

Description Format: .SUBSTR[A]("<string literal>",<start position>,<extraction length>)

Description: .SUBSTR extracts from the specified string literal a substring starting at the specified start position of the specified length. .SUBSTR is replaced with the extracted string literal enclosed with double quotation marks (""). String literals are specified by enclosing the desired characters in double quotation marks (" "). To specify a double quotation mark in a string literal, enter two double quotation marks in succession. The value of the extraction start position must be 0 or greater. The value of the extraction length must be 1 or greater. If illegal or inappropriate values are specified for the start position or extraction length parameters, this function is replaced with a space (" "). Macro arguments and preprocessor variables can be specified in the string literal, and as the start position and extraction length parameters as shown below.

Example:

```c
.MACRO RESERVE_STR P1=0, P2
  .SDATA  .SUBSTR("ABCDEFG",\P1,\P2)
 .ENDM

RESERVE_STR 2, 2
RESERVE_STR ,3 ; Macro parameter P1 is omitted.
```

Expanded results are as follows:

```c
.SDATA  "CD"
.SDATA  "ABC"
```
11.8 Automatic Literal Pool Generation Function

11.8.1 Overview of Automatic Literal Pool Generation

To transfer 2-byte or 4-byte constant data (referred to below as a "literal") to a register, a literal pool (a collection of literals) must be reserved and referred to in PC relative addressing mode. For literal pool location, the following must be considered:

- Is data stored within the range that can be accessed by data transfer instructions?
- Is 2-byte data aligned to a 2-byte boundary and is 4-byte data aligned to a 4-byte boundary?
- Can data be shared by several data move instructions?
- Where in the program should the literal pool be located?

The assembler automatically generates from a single instruction .DATA and a PC relative MOV or MOVA instruction, which moves constant data to a register.

For example, this function enables program (a) below to be coded as (b):

(a)

```
MOV.L   DATA1,R0
MOV.L   DATA2,R1

~

.ALIGN 4
DATA1  .DATA.L H'12345678
DATA2  .DATA.L 500000
```

(b)

```
MOV.L   #H'12345678,R0
MOV.L   #500000,R1
```
11.8.2 Extended Instructions Related to Automatic Literal Pool Generation

The assembler automatically generates a literal pool corresponding to an extended instruction (MOV.W #imm, Rn; MOV.L #imm, Rn; or MOVA #imm, R0) and calculates the PC relative displacement value.

An extended instruction source statement is expanded to an executable instruction and literal data as shown in table 11.34.

Table 11.34 Extended Instructions and Expanded Results

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Extended Instruction</th>
<th>Expanded Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MOV.W #imm, Rn</td>
<td>MOV.W @(disp, PC), Rn and 2-byte literal data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV.L #imm, Rn</td>
<td>MOV.L @(disp, PC), Rn and 4-byte literal data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVA #imm, R0</td>
<td>MOVA @(disp, PC), R0 and 4-byte literal data</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.8.3 Size Mode for Automatic Literal Pool Generation

Automatic literal pool generation has two modes: size specification mode and size selection mode. In size specification mode, a data transfer instruction (extended instruction) whose operation size is specified is used to generate a literal pool. In size selection mode, when a transfer instruction without size specification is written, the assembler automatically checks the imm operand value and selects a suitable-size transfer instruction.

Table 11.35 shows data transfer instructions and size mode.

Table 11.35 Data Transfer Instructions and Size Mode

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data Transfer Instruction</th>
<th>Size Specification Mode</th>
<th>Size Selection Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MOV #imm, Rn</td>
<td>Executable instruction</td>
<td>Selected by assembler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV.B #imm, Rn</td>
<td>Executable instruction</td>
<td>Executable instruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV.W #imm, Rn</td>
<td>Extended instruction</td>
<td>Extended instruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV.L #imm, Rn</td>
<td>Extended instruction</td>
<td>Extended instruction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) Size Specification Mode

In this mode, a data transfer instruction without size specification (MOV #imm,Rn) is handled as a normal executable instruction. This mode is used when auto literal is not specified as the option.
(2) Size Selection Mode

In this mode, when a data transfer instruction without size specification (MOV #imm,Rn) is written, the assembler checks the imm operand value and automatically generates a literal pool if necessary. The imm value is checked for the signed value range. This mode is used when `auto literal` is specified as the option.

Table 11.36 shows the instructions selected depending on imm value range.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>imm Specification</th>
<th>imm Value Range*</th>
<th>Selected Instruction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Constant value          | H'FFFFFE80000000 to H'0000007F
                         (−128 to 127)                             | MOV.B #imm, Rn                                                 |
| Constants symbols defined before reference | H'FFFFE800000000000 to H'0000007F
                                 (−32,768 to −129)                             | MOV.W #imm, Rn Expansion result:
                                                         | [MOV.W @(disp, PC), Rn and 2-byte literal data] |
| Absolute address symbol defined before reference | H'000000000000 to H'0000007F
                                 (128 to 32,767)                             | MOV.L #imm, Rn Expansion result:
                                                         | [MOV.L @(disp, PC), Rn and 4-byte literal data] |
| Relative address symbol | Does not depend on imm value | MOV.L #imm, Rn Expansion result:
                                                         | [MOV.L @(disp, PC), Rn and 4-byte literal data] |
| Externally referenced symbol |                                  |                                                                  |
| Constants symbols defined after reference |                                  |                                                                  |
| Absolute address symbol defined after reference |                                  |                                                                  |

Note: The values in parentheses ( ) are decimal.

11.8.4 Literal Pool Output

The literal pool is output to one of the following locations:

- After an unconditional branch and its delay slot instruction
- Where .POOL has been specified by the programmer

Note that the output location can be selected by the `literal` option. The assembler outputs the literal corresponding to an extended instruction to the nearest output location following the extended instruction. The assembler gathers the literals to be output as a literal pool.
Note

When a label is specified in a delay slot instruction, no literal pool will be output to the location following the delay slot.

(1) Literal Pool Output after Unconditional Branch

An example of literal pool output is shown below.

Source program

```
.SECTION CD1, CODE, LOCATE=H'0000F000

CD1_START:
    MOV L #H'FFFFF0000, R0
    MOV W #H'FF00, R1
    MOV L #CD1_START, R2
    MOV #H'FF, R3
    RTS
    MOV R0, R10

.END
```

Automatic literal pool generation result (source list)

```
1 0000F000 1 .SECTION CD1, CODE, LOCATE=H'0000F000
2 0000F000 2 CD1_START
3 0000F000 D003 3 MOV L #H'FFFFF0000, R0
4 0000F002 9103 4 MOV W #H'FF00, R1
5 0000F004 D203 5 MOV L #CD1_START, R2
6 0000F006 E3F0 6 MOV #H'FF, R3
7 0000F008 00B0 7 RTS
8 0000F00A 6A03 8 MOV R0, R10
9 0000F00C FF00 **** BEGIN-POOL ****
10 0000F00C FF00 DATA FOR SOURCE-LINE 4
11 0000F00E 0000 ALIGNMENT CODE
12 0000F010 FFFF0000 DATA FOR SOURCE-LINE 3
13 0000F014 0000F000 DATA FOR SOURCE-LINE 5
14 0000F018 0000F000 **** END-POOL ****
15 0000F01C 9 .END
```
(2) Literal Pool Output to the .POOL Location

If literal pool output location after unconditional branches is not available within the valid
displacement range (because the program has a small number of unconditional branches), the
assembler outputs error 402. In this case, .POOL must be specified within the valid
displacement range.

The valid displacement range is as follows:
— Word-size operation: 0 to 511 bytes
— Longword-size operation: 0 to 1023 bytes

When a literal pool is output to a .POOL location, a branch instruction is also inserted to jump
over the literal pool.

An example of literal pool output is shown below.

Source program

```assembly
.SECTION CD1, CODE, LOCATE=H'0000F000
CD1_START
    MOV.L #H'FFFF0000,R0
    MOV.W #H'FF00,R1
    MOV.L #CD1_START,R2
    MOV #H'FF,R3
.POOL
.END
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Literal pool</th>
<th>Offset</th>
<th>Instruction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 0000F000</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>.SECTION CD1, CODE, LOCATE=H'0000F000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 0000F000</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>CD1_START:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 0000F000</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>MOV.L #H'FFFF0000,R0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 0000F002</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>MOV.W #H'FF00,R1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 0000F004</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>MOV.L #CD1_START,R2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 0000F006</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>MOV #H'FF,R3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 0000F008</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>.POOL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 ** END-POOL **</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 0000F008</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>BRA TO END-POOL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 0000F00A</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>NOP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 0000F00C</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>DATA FOR SOURCE-LINE 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 0000F00E</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>ALIGNMENT CODE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 0000F010</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>DATA FOR SOURCE-LINE 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 0000F014</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>DATA FOR SOURCE-LINE 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 ** END-POOL **</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 ** END **</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
11.8.5 Literal Sharing

When the literals for several extended instructions are gathered into a literal pool, the assembler makes the extended instructions share identical immediate value.

The following operand forms can be identified and shared:

(1) Symbol
(2) Constant
(3) Symbol ± Constant

In addition to the above, expressions that are determined to have the same value at assembly processing may be shared.

However, extended instructions having different operation sizes do not share literal data even when they have the same immediate value.

An example of literal data sharing among extended instructions is shown on below.
Source program

```
.SEOCTION CD1,CODE,LOCATE=H'0000F000

CD1_START:
    MOV.L  #H'FFFF0000,R0
    MOV.W  #H'FFFF,R1
    MOV.L  #H'FFFF0000,R2
    MOV    #H'FF,R3
    RTS
    MOV    R0,R10
.END
```

Automatic literal pool generation result (source list)

```
1 0000F000  .SECTION CD1,CODE,LOCATE=H'0000F000
2 0000F000  2 CD1_START:
3 0000F000 D003  3 MOV.L  #H'FFFF0000,R0
4 0000F002 9103  4 MOV.W  #H'FFFF,R1
5 0000F004  D202  5 MOV.L  #H'FFFF0000,R2
6 0000F006 E3F8  6 MOV    #H'FF,R3
7 0000F008 00B8  7 RTS
8 0000F009 6A03  8 MOV    R0,R10
9           **** BEGIN-POOL ****
10 0000F00C FF00  DATA FOR SOURCE-LINE 4
11 0000F00E 0000  ALIGNMENT CODE
12 0000F010 FFFF0000  DATA FOR SOURCE-LINE 3,5
13           **** END-POOL ****
14 9      .END
```
11.8.6 Literal Pool Output Suppression

When a program has too many unconditional branches, the following problems may occur:

- Many small literal pools are output
- Literals are not shared

In these cases, suppress literal pool output as shown below.

```
∼
<delayed branch instruction>
<delay slot instruction>
.NOPOOL
∼
```

**Source program**

```
CASE1:
MOV.L #H'FFFF0000,R0
RTS
NOP

CASE2:
MOV.L #H'FFFF0000,R0
RTS
NOP

```

**Extended instruction 1**

```
No literal pool is output here
```

**Extended instruction 2**

```
Literal pool is output here
```

**Automatic literal pool generation result (source list)**

```
20 0000F000
21 0000F000 0002
22 0000F002 000B
23 0000F004 0009
24
25 0000F006
26 0000F006 0001
27 0000F008 000B
28 0000F00A 0009
29 **** BEGIN-POOL ****
30 0000F00C FFFF0000 DATA FOR SOURCE-LINE 21,26
31 **** END-POOL ****
```
11.8.7 Notes on Automatic Literal Pool Generation

(1) If an error occurs for an extended instruction
   a. Extended instructions must not be specified in delay slots (error 151).
   b. Extended instructions must not be specified in relative sections having a boundary
      alignment value of less than 2 (error 152).
   c. MOV.L #imm, Rn or MOVA #imm, R0 must not be specified in relative sections having a
      boundary alignment value of less than 4 (error 152).

(2) If an error occurs when .POOL is written
   .POOL must not be written after unconditional delayed branches (error 522).

(3) If an error occurs when .NOPOOL is written
   .NOPOOL is valid only when written after delay slot instructions. If written at other
   locations, .NOPOOL causes error 521.

(4) If the displacement of an executable instruction exceeds the valid range when an extended
    instruction is expanded
    The assembler generates a literal pool and outputs error 402 for the instruction having a
    displacement outside the valid range.
    Solution: Move the literal pool output location (for example, by .NOPOOL), or change the
    location or addressing mode of the instruction causing the error.

(5) If the literal pool output location cannot be found
    If the assembler cannot find a literal pool output location satisfying the following conditions in
    respect to the extended instruction,
    — Same file
    — Same section
    — The nearest output location following the extended instruction
    the assembler outputs, at the end of the section which includes the extended instruction, the
    literal pool and a BRA instruction with a NOP instruction in the delay slot to jump around the
    literal pool, and outputs warning 876.

(6) If the displacement from the extended instruction exceeds the valid range
    If the displacement of the literal pool from the extended instruction exceeds the valid range,
    error 402 is generated.
    Solution: Output the literal pool within the valid range (for example, using .POOL.)
(7) Differences between size specification mode and size selection mode

Version 2.0 of the assembler can only use the size specification mode, but the size selection mode is added to the assembler version 3.1 or higher. If the source program created before for version 2.0 is assembled in the size selection mode by version 3.1 or higher, the imm values of data transfer instructions without size suffix will differ in the range of H'00000080 to H'000000FF (128 to 255) from these assembled by version 2.0.

An example of source listing output in the size specification mode and size selection mode is shown on below.
Example:

Source program

```
.SECTION CD1, CODE, LOCATE=H'0000F000
MOV.L #H'FF, R0
MOV.W #H'FF, R1
MOV.B #H'FF, R2
MOV.R #H'FF, R3
RTS
MOV.R R0, R10
.END
```

Automatic literal pool output in size specification mode (source listing)

```
1 0000F000 1  .SECTION CD1, CODE, LOCATE=H'0000F000
2 0000F000 D003 2  MOV.L #H'FF, R0
3 0000F002 9103 3  MOV.W #H'FF, R1
4 0000F004 E2FF 4  MOV.B #H'FF, R2
5 0000F006 B3FF 5  MOV.R #H'FF, R3
6 0000F008 0008 6  RTS
7 0000F00A 6A03 7  MOV.R R0, R10
8  ***** BEGIN-POOL *****
9 0000F00C 0000 9  DATA FOR SOURCE-LINE 3
10 0000F00E 0000 10  ALIGNMENT CODE
11 0000F010 000000FF 11  DATA FOR SOURCE-LINE 2
12  ***** END-POOL *****
13     8 .END
```

The contents of R3 is H'FFFFFFFF.'

Automatic literal pool output in size selection mode (source listing)

```
1 0000F000 1  .SECTION CD1, CODE, LOCATE=H'0000F000
2 0000F000 D003 2  MOV.L #H'FF, R0
3 0000F002 9103 3  MOV.W #H'FF, R1
4 0000F004 E2FF 4  MOV.B #H'FF, R2
5 0000F006 9301 5  MOV.R #H'FF, R3
6 0000F008 0008 6  RTS
7 0000F00A 6A03 7  MOV.R R0, R10
8  ***** BEGIN-POOL *****
9 0000F00C 0000 9  DATA FOR SOURCE-LINE 3,5
10 0000F00E 0000 10  ALIGNMENT CODE
11 0000F010 000000FF 11  DATA FOR SOURCE-LINE 2
12  ***** END-POOL *****
13      8 .END
```

The contents of R3 is H'0000000FF.'
11.9 Automatic Repeat Loop Generation Function

11.9.1 Overview of Automatic Repeat Loop Generation Function

In the SH-DSP, SH3-DSP, or SH4AL-DSP, the start and end addresses of the repeat loop are set in the RS and RE registers by the LDRS and LDRE instructions. The address settings differ depending on the number of instructions in the repeat loop. When setting the address, consider the relationship between the address and the number of instructions in the repeat loop shown in table 11.37.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Register Name</th>
<th>One Instruction</th>
<th>Two Instructions</th>
<th>Three Instructions</th>
<th>Four or more Instructions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RS</td>
<td>s_addr0+8</td>
<td>s_addr0+6</td>
<td>s_addr0+4</td>
<td>s_addr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RE</td>
<td>s_addr0+4</td>
<td>s_addr0+4</td>
<td>s_addr0+4</td>
<td>e_addr3+4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

s_addr0: Address of the instruction one instruction before the repeat loop start address
s_addr: Repeat loop start address
e_addr3: Address of the instruction three instructions before the repeat loop end address

The automatic repeat loop generation automatically generates the PC relative instructions LDRS and LDRE, and the SETRC instruction from a single extended instruction. The LDRS and LDRE instructions transfer the repeat loop start and end to the RS and RE registers addresses based on the number of instructions in the repeat loop, and the SETRC instruction specifies the repetition count.

For example, program A can be written as program B when using the automatic repeat loop generation.

Program A:

```
LDRS s_addr0+6
LDRE s_addr0+4
SETRC #10

s_addr0: NOP
PADD A0,M0,A0 ; Repeat loop start address
PCMP X1,M0 ; Repeat loop end address
```
Program B:

```
REPEAT s_addr, e_addr, #10
NOP
```

- **s_addr**: `PADD A0, M0, A0`; Repeat loop start address
- **e_addr**: `PCMP X1, M0`; Repeat loop end address

### 11.9.2 Extended Instructions of Automatic Repeat Loop Generation Function

The assembler automatically generates necessary instructions from extended instructions (REPEAT s_label, e_label, #imm, REPEAT s_label, e_label, Rn, and REPEAT s_label, e_label) and calculates the PC relative displacement.

Table 11.38 lists the source statement of each extended instruction and its expanded results of two or three executable instructions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Extended Instruction</th>
<th>Expanded Results</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>REPEAT s_label, e_label, #imm</td>
<td>LD @(disp,PC), LDRE @(disp,PC), and SETRC #imm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REPEAT s_label, e_label, Rn</td>
<td>LD @(disp,PC), LDRE @(disp,PC), and SETRC Rn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REPEAT s_label, e_label</td>
<td>LD @(disp,PC) and LDRE @(disp,PC)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 11.9.3 REPEAT Description

**Description Format**

```
[<symbol>[::]] ∆REPEAT ∆<start address>,<end address>[,,<repeat count>]
```

**Statement Elements**

1. **Start and end addresses**
   - Enter the labels of the start and end addresses of the repeat loop.
2. **Repeat count**
   - Enter the repeat count as an immediate value or as a general register name.

**Description**
1. REPEAT automatically generates the executable instructions LDRS and LDRE to repeat the instructions in the range from the start address to the end address inclusive.
2. When the repeat count is specified, REPEAT generates a SETRC instruction. When the repeat count is omitted, SETRC is not generated.

### 11.9.4 Coding Examples

**To Repeat Four or More Instructions (Basic Example):**

```assembly
REPEAT RptStart,RptEnd,#5
PCLR Y0
PCLR A0
RptStart: MOVX @R4+,X1 MOVY @R6+,Y1
          PADD A0,Y0,Y0 PMULS X1,Y1,A0
          DCT PCLR A0
          AND R0,R4
RptEnd:   AND R0,R6
```

This program repeats execution of five instructions from RptStart to RptEnd five times.

The above program has the same meaning as the following:

```assembly
LDRS RptStart
LDRE RptEnd3+4
SETRC #5
PCLR Y0
PCLR A0
RptStart: MOVX @R4+,X1 MOVY @R6+,Y1
          PADD A0,Y0,Y0 PMULS X1,Y1,A0; The label is not actually generated.
          DCT PCLR A0
          AND R0,R4
RptEnd3:  ...
RptEnd:   AND R0,R6
```

To Repeat One Instruction: Specify the same labels as the start and end addresses.

```
REPEAT Rpt,Rpt,R0
    MOVX @R4+,X1 MOVY @R6,Y1
Rpt:
    PADD A0,Y0,Y0 PMULS X1,Y1,A0 MOVX @R4+,X1 MOVY @R6+,Y1
```

The above program has the same meaning as the following:

```
LDRS RptStart0+8
LDRE RptStart0+4
SETRC R0
RptStart0: MOVX @R4+,X1 MOVY @R6,Y1 ; The label is not actually generated.
Rpt:       PADD A0,Y0,Y0 PMULS X1,Y1,A0 MOVX @R4+,X1 MOVY @R6+,Y1
```

To Repeat Two Instructions:

```
REPEAT RptStart,RptEnd,#10
    PCLR Y0
RptStart:  MOVX @R4+,X1 MOVY @R6+,Y1
RptEnd:    PADD A0,Y0,Y0 PMULS X1,Y1,A0
```

The above program has the same meaning as the following:

```
LDRS RptStart0+6
LDRE RptStart0+4
SETRC #10
RptStart0: PCLR Y0 ; The label is not actually generated.
RptStart:  MOVX @R4+,X1 MOVY @R6+,Y1
RptEnd:    PADD A0,Y0,Y0 PMULS X1,Y1,A0
```
To Repeat Three Instructions:

```
REPEAT RptStart,RptEnd,R0
PCLR Y0
RptStart:  MOVX @R4+,X1 MOVY @R6+,Y1
           PMULS X1,Y1,A0
RptEnd:    PADD A0,Y0,Y0
```

The above program has the same meaning as the following:

```
LDRE RptStart0+4
LDRS RptStart0+4
SETRC R0
RptStart0: PCLR Y0 ; The label is not actually generated.
RptStart:  MOVX @R4+,X1 MOVY @R6+,Y1
           PMULS X1,Y1,A0
RptEnd:    PADD A0,Y0,Y0
```

When Repeat Count is Omitted: When the repeat count is omitted, the assembler does not generate SETRC. To separate the LDRS and LDRE from the SETRC, omit the repeat count.

```
REPEAT RptStart,RptEnd
 ; The LDRS and LDRE are expanded here.
MOV #10,R0
OuterLoop:
    SETRC #16
    PCLR Y0
    PCLR A0
RptStart: MOVX @R4+,X1 MOVY @R6+,Y1
          PADD A0,Y0,Y0 PMULS X1,Y1,A0
DCT PCLR A0
    AND R0,R4
RptEnd:   AND R0,R6
    DT R0
    BF OuterLoop
```
11.9.5 Notes on the REPEAT Extended Instruction

Start and End Addresses: Only labels in the same section or local labels in the same local block can be specified as the start and end addresses.

The start address must be at a higher address than the REPEAT extended instruction. The end address must be at a higher address than the start address.

Instructions Inside Loops:

- If one of the following assembler directives that reserve data or data area or .ORG is used inside a loop, the assembler outputs a warning message and counts the directive as one of the instructions to be repeated. If .ALIGN is used inside a loop to adjust the boundary alignment, the assembler outputs a warning message and counts .ALIGN as one of the instructions to be repeated.
  
  The following are the directives which cause this action:
  .DATA, .DATAB, .SDATA, .SDATAB, .SDATAC, .SDATAZ, .FDATA, .FDATAB, .XDATA, .RES, .SRES, .SRESC, .SRESZ, .FRES, .ALIGN, and .ORG

- The assembler prevents automatic generation of literal pools within a loop. Therefore, even when an unconditional branch is used in a loop, no literal pool is generated. If .POOL is used in a loop, the assembler outputs a warning message and ignores .POOL.

Instruction Immediately before Loop: If three or fewer instructions are to be repeated, the instruction immediately before the loop must be an executable instruction or a DSP instruction. Therefore, when three or fewer instructions are to be repeated and if one of the following is located immediately before the start address of the loop, the assembler outputs an error.

- Assembler directives that reserve a data item or a data area or .ORG
  .DATA, .DATAB, .SDATA, .SDATAB, .SDATAC, .SDATAZ, .FDATA, .FDATAB, .XDATA, .RES, .SRES, .SRESC, .SRESZ, .FRES, or .ORG

- Literal pool generated by the automatic literal pool generation
  If an unconditional branch instruction and a delay slot instruction are located immediately before a loop, or if .POOL is located immediately before a loop, a literal pool may be automatically generated. To prevent literal pool generation before a loop, use .NOPOOL immediately after the delay slot instruction.

- One-byte alignment generated by .ALIGN
When .ALIGN is used at an odd address immediately before a loop, one-byte alignment may be generated (for example, .ALIGN 4 is specified when the location counter value is 3). In this case, the contents of the byte before a loop is not an executable instruction, and an error message is output. If two or more-byte alignment is generated before a loop, their contents consist of a NOP instruction and the program can be correctly executed.

**Others:**

- One or more executable or DSP instructions must be located between a REPEAT extended instruction and the start address. Otherwise, the assembler outputs an error message.
- A REPEAT extended instruction must not be located between another REPEAT extended instruction and its end address. If REPEAT extended instructions are nested, the assembler outputs an error message.
- A branch instruction, TRAPA instruction (excluding cpu=sh4aldsp), or a load instruction toward SR, RS, or RE must not be located between a REPEAT extended instruction and its end address. If one of these instructions is used, the assembler outputs an error message.
11.10 Extended Automatic Repeat Loop Generation Function

11.10.1 Overview of Extended Automatic Repeat Loop Generation Function

In the SH4AL-DSP, the start and end addresses of the repeat loop are set in the RS and RE registers by the LDRS and LDRE instructions.

The extended automatic repeat loop generation automatically generates the PC relative instructions LDRS and LDRE, and the LDRC instruction from a single extended instruction. The LDRS and LDRE instructions transfer the repeat start and end addresses to the RS and RE registers, and the LDRC instruction specifies the repetition count.

For example, program A can be written as program B when using the extended automatic repeat loop generation.

Program A:

```
LDRS s_addr
LDRE e_addr
LDRC #10
NOP
```

```
s_addr: PADD A0,M0,A0 ; Repeat loop start address
```

```
e_addr: PCMP X1,M0    ; Repeat loop end address
```

Program B:

```
EREPEAT s_addr,e_addr,#10
NOP
```

```
s_addr: PADD A0,M0,A0 ; Repeat loop start address
```

```
e_addr: PCMP X1,M0    ; Repeat loop end address
```
11.10.2 Extended Instructions of Extended Automatic Repeat Loop Generation Function

The assembler automatically generates necessary instructions from extended instructions (EREPEAT s_label,e_label,#imm, EREPEAT s_label,e_label,Rn, and EREPEAT s_label,e_label).

Table 11.39 lists the source statement of each extended instruction and its expanded results of two or three executable instructions.

**Table 11.39 Extended Instructions and Expanded Results**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Extended Instruction</th>
<th>Expanded Results</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EREPEAT s_label,e_label,#imm</td>
<td>LDRS @(disp,PC), LDRE @(disp,PC), and LDRC #imm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EREPEAT s_label,e_label,Rn</td>
<td>LDRS @(disp,PC), LDRE @(disp,PC), and LDRC Rn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EREPEAT s_label,e_label</td>
<td>LDRS @(disp,PC) and LDRE @(disp,PC)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.10.3 EREPEAT Description

Description Format

`[<symbol>[:]] ΔEREPEAT Δ<start address>,<end address>[,<repeat count>]`

Statement Elements

1. Start and end addresses
   - Enter the labels of the start and end addresses of the repeat loop.
2. Repeat count
   - Enter the repeat count as an immediate value or as a general register name.

Description

1. EREPEAT automatically generates the executable instructions LDRS and LDRE to repeat the instructions in the range from the start address to the end address inclusive.
2. When the repeat count is specified, EREPEAT generates a LDRC instruction. When the repeat count is omitted, LDRC is not generated.
11.10.4 Coding Examples

Basic Example:

EREPEAT RptStart,RptEnd,#5
PCLR Y0
PCLR A0
RptStart: MOVX @R4+,X1 MOVY @R6+,Y1
PADD A0,Y0,Y0 PMULS X1,Y1,A0
DCT PCLR A0
AND R0,R4
RptEnd: AND R0,R6

This program repeats execution of five instructions from RptStart to RptEnd five times.

The above program has the same meaning as the following:

LDRS RptStart
LDRE RptEnd3+4
LDRC #5
PCLR Y0
PCLR A0
RptStart: MOVX @R4+,X1 MOVY @R6+,Y1
PADD A0,Y0,Y0 PMULS X1,Y1,A0
DCT PCLR A0
AND R0,R4
RptEnd: AND R0,R6

When Repeat Count is Omitted: When the repeat count is omitted, the assembler does not generate LDRC. To separate the LDRS and LDRE from the LDRC, omit the repeat count.
EREPEAT RptStart,RptEnd
   ; The LDRS and LDRE are expanded here.
   MOV #10,R0
OuterLoop:
   LDRC #16
   PCLR Y0
   PCLR A0
RptStart: MOVX @R4+,X1 MOVY @R6+,Y1
   PADD A0,Y0,Y0 PMULS X1,Y1,A0
   DCT PCLR A0
   AND R0,R4
RptEnd:   AND R0,R6
   DT R0
   BF OuterLoop
11.10.5 Notes on the EREPEAT Extended Instruction

Start and End Addresses: Only labels in the same section or local labels in the same local block can be specified as the start and end addresses.

The start address must be at a higher address than the EREPEAT extended instruction. The end address must be at a higher address than the start address.

Instructions Inside Loops:

- If one of the following assembler directives that reserve data or data area or .ORG is used inside a loop, the assembler outputs a warning message and counts the directive as one of the instructions to be repeated. If .ALIGN is used inside a loop to adjust the boundary alignment, the assembler outputs a warning message and counts .ALIGN as one of the instructions to be repeated.
  The following are the directives which cause this action:
  .DATA, .DATAB, .SDATA, .SDATAB, .SDATAC, .SDATAZ, .FDATA, .FDATAB, .XDATA, .RES, .SRES, .SRESC, .SRESZ, .FRES, .ALIGN, and .ORG
- The assembler prevents automatic generation of literal pools within a loop. Therefore, even when an unconditional branch is used in a loop, no literal pool is generated. If .POOL is used in a loop, the assembler outputs a warning message and ignores .POOL.

Instruction Immediately before Loop: The instruction immediately before the loop must be an executable instruction or a DSP instruction. Therefore, if one of the following is located immediately before the start address of the loop, the assembler outputs an error.

- Assembler directives that reserve a data item or a data area or .ORG
  .DATA, .DATAB, .SDATA, .SDATAB, .SDATAC, .SDATAZ, .FDATA, .FDATAB, .XDATA, .RES, .SRES, .SRESC, .SRESZ, .FRES, or .ORG
- Literal pool generated by the automatic literal pool generation
  If an unconditional branch instruction and a delay slot instruction are located immediately before a loop, or if .POOL is located immediately before a loop, a literal pool may be automatically generated. To prevent literal pool generation before a loop, use .NOPOOL immediately after the delay slot instruction.
- One-byte alignment generated by .ALIGN
When .ALIGN is used at an odd address immediately before a loop, one-byte alignment may be generated (for example, .ALIGN 4 is specified when the location counter value is 3). In this case, the contents of the byte before a loop is not an executable instruction, and an error message is output. If two or more-byte alignment is generated before a loop, their contents consist of a NOP instruction and the program can be correctly executed.

Others:

- An EREPEAT extended instruction must not be used as another EREPEAT end instruction. If EREPEAT extended instructions are nested, the assembler outputs an error message.
- A delayed branch instruction, or a load instruction toward SR, RS, or RE must not be used as an EREPEAT end instruction. If one of these instructions is used, the assembler outputs an error message.
Section 12  Compiler Error Messages

12.1  Error Format and Error Levels

In this section, error messages output in the following format and the details of errors are explained.

Error number  (Error level) Error message

There are five different error levels, corresponding to different degrees of seriousness.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Level</th>
<th>Error Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(I)</td>
<td>Information</td>
<td>Processing is continued and the object program is output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(W)</td>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>Processing is continued and the object program is output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(E)</td>
<td>Error</td>
<td>Processing is continued but the object program is not output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(F)</td>
<td>Fatal</td>
<td>Processing is interrupted and an error message is output simultaneously.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-)</td>
<td>Internal</td>
<td>Processing is interrupted and an error message is output simultaneously.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12.2  Error Messages

C0001  (I) Character combination "String literal" in comment
A comment has "string literal".

C0002  (I) No declarator
A declaration without a declarator exists.

C0003  (I) Unreachable statement
A statement that will not be executed exists.

C0004  (I) Constant as condition
A constant expression is specified as the condition for an if or switch statement.
C0005  (I) Precision lost
Precision may be lost when assigning with type conversion a right hand side value to the left hand side value.

C0006  (I) Conversion in argument
A function parameter expression is converted into a parameter type specified in the prototype declaration.

C0008  (I) Conversion in return
A return statement expression is converted into a value type that should be returned from a function.

C0010  (I) Elimination of needless expression
A needless expression exists.

C0011  (I) Used before set symbol: "variable name" in "function name"
A local variable is used before setting its value.

C0012  (I) Unused variable "variable name"
An unused variable exists.

C0015  (I) No return value
A return statement is not returning a value in a function that should return a type other than the void type.

C0016  (I) Conversion in case constant expression
A constant expression of a case label is converted into the promoted type of the controlling expression.

C0017  (I) Missing return statement
There is a control path that a return statement does not exist in a function that should return a type other than the void type.

C0100  (I) Function "function name" not optimized
A function which is too large cannot be optimized.

C0101  (I) Optimizing range divided in function "function name"
The optimizing range of "function name" is divided into many sections.
C0102 (I) Register is not allocated to "variable name" in "function name"
Any register cannot be allocated to the variable of the register storage class.

C0200 (I) No prototype function
There is no prototype declaration.

C1000 (W) Illegal pointer assignment
A pointer is assigned to a pointer with a different data type.

C1001 (W) Illegal comparison in "operator"
The operands of the binary operator == or != are a pointer and an integer other than 0, respectively.

C1002 (W) Illegal pointer for "operator"
The operands of the binary operator ==, !=, >, >=, or <= are pointers assigned to different types.

C1003 (W) Illegal pointer initialization
The type specified for a pointer differs from the type in specification of the initial value for the pointer.

C1005 (W) Undefined escape sequence
An undefined escape sequence (a backslash and the character following the backslash) is used in a character constant or string literal.

C1007 (W) Long character constant
A character constant consists of two or more characters.

C1008 (W) Identifier too long
An identifier consists of more than 8189 characters. The 8190th and subsequent characters are invalid.

C1010 (W) Character constant too long
A character constant consists of more than four characters.

C1012 (W) Floating point constant overflow
The value of a floating-point constant exceeds the limit. Assumes the internally represented value corresponding to +\infty or -\infty depending on the sign of the result.

C1013 (W) Integer constant overflow
The integer value exceeds the limit of an unsigned long long integer constant. Assumes a value ignoring the overflown upper bits.
C1014  (W) Escape sequence overflow
The value of an escape sequence indicating a bit pattern in a character constant or string literal exceeds 255. The low order byte is valid.

C1015  (W) Floating point constant underflow
The absolute value of a floating-point constant is less than the lower limit. Assumes 0.0 as the value of the constant.

C1016  (W) Argument mismatch
The data type assigned to a pointer specified as a formal parameter in a prototype declaration differs from the data type assigned to a pointer used as the corresponding actual parameter in a function call. Uses the internal representation of the pointer used for the function call actual parameter.

C1017  (W) Return type mismatch
The function return type and the type of a return statement expression are pointers but the data types assigned to these pointers are different. Uses the internal representation of the pointer specified in the return statement expression.

C1019  (W) Illegal constant expression
The operands of the relational operator <, >, <=, or >= in a constant expression are pointers to different data types. Assumes 0 as the result value.

C1020  (W) Illegal constant expression of "-"
The operands of the binary operator - in a constant expression are pointers to different data types. Assumes 0 as the result value.

C1021  (W) Register saving pragma conflicts in interrupt function "function name"
Invalid #pragma that controls saving or recovery of register contents corresponding to an interrupt function indicated by "function name". The #pragma specification is ignored.

C1022  (W) First operand of "operator" is not lvalue
The first operand "operator" cannot be the lvalue.

C1023  (W) Can not convert Japanese code "code" to output type
Some Japanese codes cannot be converted into the specified output codes.

C1024  (W) Out of float
The number of significant digits in a floating-point constant exceeds 17. The 18th and subsequent digits are invalid.
C1026 (W) Address of packed member
The address of a structure member with pack=1 specification is referred to.

C1027  (W) Invalid #pragma gbr_base/gbr_base1
Both gbr=auto and either #pragma gbr_base or #pragma gbr_base1 have been specified. The #pragma specification is ignored.

C1028  (W) #pragma "identifier" has no effect
The specified #pragma identifier is invalid.

C1029  (W) Function with ifunc calls "function name" without ifunc
A function with ifunc calls a function without ifunc specified.

C1030  (W) Bit order mismatch
The structure and the structure member have different bit_order.

C1031  (W) Multiple #pragma for one function
#pragma is specified for a single function more than once.

C1200  (W) Division by floating point zero
Division by the floating-point number 0.0 is carried out in a constant expression. Assumes the internal representation value corresponding to +∞ or −∞ depending on the sign of the operands.

C1201  (W) Ineffective floating point operation
Invalid floating-point operations such as ∞ - ∞ or 0.0/0.0 are carried out in a constant expression. Assumes the internal representation value corresponding to a not-a-number indicating the result of an ineffective operation.

C1300  (W) Command parameter specified twice
The same compiler option is specified more than once. Uses the last specified compiler option.

C1301  (W) "option" option ignored
"option" is ignored at compilation.

C1302  (W) "double=float" option ignored
Both double=float and cpu=sh2afpu, sh4, or sh4a have been specified. The compiler ignores double=float and assumes that fpu=single has been specified.

C1304  (W) "CPU type 1" is interpreted as "CPU type 2"
cpu=<CPU type 1> is invalid. The compiler will interpret this as cpu=<CPU type 2>.
C1308  (W) Duplicate number specified in option "option": "number"
The same number is specified twice in "option".

C1309  (W) Section name "Section name" specified
The name may be the same as that of created by the compiler.

C1310  (W) "repeat" option ignored
The compiler ignores the repeat option.

C1311  (W) "softpipe" option ignored
The compiler ignores the softpipe option.

C1312  (W) "fdiv" option ignored
The compiler ignores the fdiv option.

C1313  (W) "bss_order=declaration" option ignored
The compiler ignores the bss_order=declaration option.

C1314  (W) File_inline "file name" ignored by #pragma global_register mismatch
#pragma global_register is specified incorrectly. The file_inline option is ignored.

C1315  (W) File_inline "file name" ignored by same file as source file
The file to be compiled is same as the file_inline option's. The file_inline option is ignored.

C1400  (W) Function "function name" in #pragma inline is not expanded
A function specified using the #pragma inline could not be expanded. Ignores the #pragma inline specification.

C1402  (W) #pragma "identifier" ignored
The #pragma "identifier" specification is ignored.

C1405  (W) Illegal #pragma syntax
The specified #pragma keyword is not allowed in this compiler syntax.

C1410  (W) A struct/union/class has different pack specifications
A single structure, union, or class has members with different pack specifications.

C1501  (W) Division by zero
Division by zero is generated.
C1600  (W) Debugging information describing location of "name" is lost
The compiler did not output symbol information on variable "name" because the total amount of symbol information to be output by the compiler had exceeded the limit. So variable "name" does not appear in the [Watch] window.
One of the reasons for this error may be a locally defined structure that has many members. If this is the case, the error may be avoided in either of the following ways.

- Use the pointer to variable "name".
- Define variable "name" as static.

C1700  (W) Memory qualifier ignored
Ignores the specification of the memory qualifier.

C1701  (W) Conversion from pointer without memory qualifier to pointer with memory qualifier
A pointer without the memory qualifier was converted to a pointer with the memory qualifier. The memory qualifier becomes invalid.

C1702  (W) Conversion from pointer with circular qualifier to pointer without circular qualifier
A pointer with the __circ qualifier was converted to a pointer without the __circ qualifier. The __circ qualifier becomes invalid.

C1703  (W) Fixed point constant overflow
The value of a fixed-point constant exceeds the limit.

C1704  (W) Out of Fixed point
The number of significant digits in a fixed-point constant exceeds 17.

C1705  (W) Modulo addressing may be illegal in function "function name"
Modulo addressing may be illegal in a function indicated by "function name".

C1800  (W) Variable "variable name" type mismatch in files
The types of the variable are different in files. Do not use the file_inline option.

C2000  (E) Illegal preprocessor keyword
An illegal keyword is used in a preprocessor directive.

C2001  (E) Illegal preprocessor syntax
There is an error in a preprocessor directive or in a macro call specification.
C2002  (E) Missing ","
A comma (,) is not used to delimit two arguments in a \#define directive.

C2003  (E) Missing ")"
A right parenthesis ()) does not follow a name in a defined expression that determines whether the name is defined by a \#define directive.

C2004  (E) Missing ">"
A right angle bracket (>) does not follow a file name in an \#include directive.

C2005  (E) Cannot open include file "file name"
The file specified by an \#include directive cannot be opened.

C2006  (E) Multiple \#define's
The same macro name is redefined by \#define directives.

C2008  (E) Processor directive \#elif mismatches
There is no \#if, \#ifdef, \#ifndef, or \#elif directive corresponding to an \#elif directive.

C2009  (E) Processor directive \#else mismatches
There is no \#if, \#ifdef, or \#ifndef directive corresponding to an \#else directive.

C2010  (E) Macro parameters mismatch
The number of macro call parameters and the number of macro definition parameters are different.

C2011  (E) Line too long
After macro expansion, a source program line exceeds the compiler limit.

C2012  (E) Keyword as a macro name
A preprocessor keyword is used as a macro name in a \#define or \#undef directive.

C2013  (E) Processor directive \#endif mismatches
There is no \#if, \#ifdef, or \#ifndef directive corresponding to an \#endif directive.

C2014  (E) Missing \#endif
There is no \#endif directive corresponding to an \#if, \#ifdef, or \#ifndef directive, and the end of file is detected.
C2016 (E) Preprocessor constant expression too complex
The total number of operators and operands in a constant expression specified by an \#if or \#elif directive exceeds the limit.

C2017 (E) Missing "
A closing double quotation mark (") does not follow a file name in an \#include directive.

C2018 (E) Illegal \#line
The line count specified by a \#line directive exceeds the limit.

C2019 (E) File name too long
The length of a file name exceeds the limit.

C2020 (E) System identifier "name" redefined
The name of the defined symbol is the same as that of an intrinsic function.

C2021 (E) Invalid number specified in option "option": "number"
An invalid value is specified in "option". Check the range of the value.

C2022 (E) Error level message cannot be changed: "change_message"
The level of an error-level message cannot be changed.

C2027 (E) Cannot read specified file: "file name"
The specified file cannot be read correctly. Check the file specification.

C2100 (E) Multiple storage classes
Two or more storage class specifiers are used in a declaration.

C2101 (E) Address of register
A unary-operator & is used for a variable that has a register storage class.

C2102 (E) Illegal type combination
A combination of type specifiers is illegal.

C2103 (E) Bad self reference structure
A structure or union member has the same data type as its parent.

C2104 (E) Illegal bit field width
A constant expression indicating the width of a bit field is not an integer or it is negative.
C2105  (E) Incomplete tag used in declaration
An incomplete tag name declared with a struct or union, or an undeclared tag name is used in a typedef declaration or in the declaration of a data type not assigned to a pointer or to a function return value.

C2106  (E) Extern variable initialized
A compound statement specifies an initial value for an extern storage class variable.

C2107  (E) Array of function
An array with a function type is specified.

C2108  (E) Function returning array
A function type with an array return value type is specified.

C2109  (E) Illegal function declaration
A storage class other than extern is specified in the declaration of a function type variable used in a compound statement.

C2110  (E) Illegal storage class
The storage class in an external definition is specified as auto or register.

C2111  (E) Function as a member
A member of a structure or union is declared as a function type.

C2112  (E) Illegal bit field
The type specifier for a bit field is illegal. char, unsigned char, short, unsigned short, int, unsigned int, long, unsigned long, long long, unsigned long long, bool, enum, or a combination of const or volatile with one of the above types is allowed as a type specifier for a bit field.

C2113  (E) Bit field too wide
The width of a bit field is greater than the size (8, 16, 32, or 64 bits) indicated by its type specifier.

C2114  (E) Multiple variable declarations
A variable name is declared more than once in the same scope.

C2115  (E) Multiple tag declarations
A structure, union, or enum tag name is declared more than once in the same scope.

C2117  (E) Empty source program
There are no external definitions in the source program.
C2118  (E) Prototype mismatch "function name"
A function type differs from the one specified in the declaration.

C2119  (E) Not a parameter name "parameter name"
An identifier not in the function parameter list is declared as a parameter.

C2120  (E) Illegal parameter storage class
A storage class other than register is specified in a function parameter declaration.

C2121  (E) Illegal tag name
The combination of a structure, union, or enum with a tag name differs from the declared combination.

C2122  (E) Bit field width 0
The width of a bit field specifying a member name is 0.

C2123  (E) Undefined tag name
An undefined tag name is specified in an enum declaration.

C2124  (E) Illegal enum value
A non-integral constant expression is specified as a value for an enum member.

C2125  (E) Function returning function
A function type with a function type return value is specified.

C2126  (E) Illegal array size
The value specifying the number of array elements is not an integer or out of range of 1 to 2147483647.

C2127  (E) Missing array size
The number of elements in an array is not specified.

C2128  (E) Illegal pointer declaration for "*"
A type specifier other than const or volatile is specified following an asterisk (*), which indicates a pointer declaration.

C2129  (E) Illegal initializer type
The initial value specified for a variable is not a type that can be assigned to a variable.
C2130 (E) Initializer should be constant
A value other than a constant expression is specified as either the initial value of a structure, union, or array variable or as the initial value of a static variable.

C2131 (E) No type nor storage class
Storage class or type specifiers is not given in an external data definition.

C2132 (E) No parameter name
A parameter is declared even though the function parameter list is empty.

C2133 (E) Multiple parameter declarations
Either a parameter name is declared in a macro or function definition parameter list more than once or a parameter is declared inside and outside the function declarator.

C2134 (E) Initializer for parameter
An initial value is specified in the declaration of a parameter.

C2135 (E) Multiple initialization
A variable is initialized more than once.

C2136 (E) Type mismatch
An extern or static storage class variable or function is declared more than once with different data types.

C2137 (E) Null declaration for parameter
An identifier is not specified in the function parameter declaration.

C2138 (E) Too many initializers
The number of initial values specified for a structure, union, or array is greater than the number of structure members or array elements. This error also occurs if two or more initial values are specified when the first member of a union is scalar.

C2139 (E) No parameter type
A type is not specified in a function parameter declaration.

C2140 (E) Illegal bit field
A bit field is used in a union.

C2141 (E) Struct has no member name
An anonymous bit field is used as the first member of a structure.
C2142 (E) Illegal void type

void is used illegally. void can only be used in the following three cases:

(1) To specify a type assigned to a pointer
(2) To specify a function return type
(3) To explicitly specify that a function whose prototype is declared does not have a parameter

C2143 (E) Illegal static function

There is a function declaration with a static storage class function that has no definition in the source program.

C2144 (E) Type mismatch

Variables or functions with the same name which have an extern storage class are assigned to different data types.

C2145 (E) Const/volatile specified for incomplete type

An incomplete type is specified as a const or volatile type.

C2200 (E) Index not integer

An array index expression type is not integer.

C2201 (E) Cannot convert parameter "n"

The n-th parameter of a function call cannot be converted to the type of parameter specified in the prototype declaration.

C2202 (E) Number of parameters mismatch

The number of parameters for a function call is not equal to the number of parameters specified in the prototype declaration.

C2203 (E) Illegal member reference for "."

The expression to the left-hand side of the (.) operator is not a structure or union.

C2204 (E) Illegal member reference for "->"

The expression to the left-hand side of the -> operator is not a pointer to a structure or union.

C2205 (E) Undefined member name

An undeclared member name is used to reference a structure or union.
C2206  (E) Modifiable lvalue required for "operator"
The operand for a prefix or suffix operator ++ or -- has a left value that cannot be assigned (a left value whose type is not array or const).

C2207  (E) Scalar required for "!"
The unary operator ! is used on an expression that is not scalar.

C2208  (E) Pointer required for "*"
The unary operator * is used on an expression that is not a pointer or on an expression of a pointer for void.

C2209  (E) Arithmetic type required for "operator"
The unary operator + or − is used on a non-arithmetic expression.

C2210  (E) Integer required for "~"
The unary operator ~ is used on a non-integral expression.

C2211  (E) Illegal sizeof
A sizeof operator is used for a bit field member, function, void, or array with an undefined size.

C2212  (E) Illegal cast
Either array, struct, or union is specified in a cast operator, or the operand of a cast operator is void, struct, or union and cannot be converted.

C2213  (E) Arithmetic type required for "operator"
The binary operator *, /, *=, or /= is used in an expression that is not an arithmetic expression.

C2214  (E) Integer required for "operator"
The binary operator <<, >>, &, |, ^, %, <<=, >>=, &=, |=, ^=, or %= is used in an expression that is not an integer expression.

C2215  (E) Illegal type for "+"
The combination of operand types used with the binary operator + is not allowed. Only the following type combinations are allowed for the binary operator +:

(1) Two arithmetic operands
(2) Pointer and integer

C2216  (E) Illegal type for parameter
Type void is specified for a function call parameter type.
C2217  (E) Illegal type for "-"  
The combination of operand types used with the binary operator – is not allowed. Only the following three combinations are allowed for the binary operator:

(1) Two arithmetic operands  
(2) Two pointers assigned to the same data type  
(3) The first operand is a pointer and the second operand is an integer

C2218  (E) Scalar required  
The first operand of the conditional operator ?: is not a scalar.

C2219  (E) Type not compatible in "?:"  
The types of the second and third operands of the conditional operator ?: do not match with each other. Only the following six combinations are allowed for the second and third operands when using the ?: operator:

(1) Two arithmetic operands  
(2) Two void operands  
(3) Two pointers assigned to the same data type  
(4) A pointer and an integer constant whose value is zero, or another pointer assigned to void that was converted from an integer constant whose value is zero  
(5) A pointer and another pointer assigned to void  
(6) Two structure or union variables with the same data type

C2220  (E) Modifiable lvalue required for "operator"  
An expression whose left value cannot be assigned (a left value whose type is not array or const) is used as an operand of an assignment operator =, *=, /=, %=, +=, −=, <<=, >>=, &=, ^=, or |=.

C2221  (E) Illegal type for "operator"  
The operand of the suffix operator ++ or -- is a pointer assigned to function type, void type, or to a data type other than scalar type.
C2222 (E) Type not compatible for "=

The operand types for the assignment operator = do not match. Only the following five combinations are allowed for the operands of the assignment operator =:

(1) Two arithmetic operands
(2) Two pointers assigned to the same data type
(3) The left operand is a pointer and the right operand is an integer constant whose value is zero, or another pointer assigned to void that was converted from an integer constant whose value is zero
(4) A pointer and another pointer assigned to void
(5) Two structure or union variables with the same data type

C2223 (E) Incomplete tag used in expression

An incomplete tag name is used for a structure or union in an expression.

C2224 (E) Illegal type for assign

The operand types of the assign operator += or -= are illegal.

C2225 (E) Undeclared name "name"

An undeclared name is used in an expression.

C2226 (E) Scalar required for "operator"

The binary operator && or || is used in a non-scalar expression.

C2227 (E) Illegal type for equality

The combination of operand types for the equality operator == or != is not allowed. Only the following three combinations of operand types are allowed for the equality operator == or !=:

(1) Two arithmetic operands
(2) Two pointers assigned to the same data type
(3) A pointer and an integer constant whose value is zero or another pointer assigned to void

C2228 (E) Illegal type for comparison

The combination of operand types for the relational operator >, <, >=, or <= is not allowed. Only the following two combinations of operand types are allowed for a relational operator:

(1) Two arithmetic operands
(2) Two pointers assigned to the same data type
C2230  (E) Illegal function call
An expression which is not a function type or a pointer assigned to a function type is used for a function call.

C2231  (E) Address of bit field
The unary operator & is used in a bit field.

C2232  (E) Illegal type for "operator"
The operand of the prefix operator ++ or -- is a pointer assigned to a function type, void type, or to a data type other than scalar type.

C2233  (E) Illegal array reference
An expression used as an array is an array or a pointer assigned to a data type other than a function or void.

C2234  (E) Illegal typedef name reference
A typedef name is used as a variable in an expression.

C2235  (E) Illegal cast
An attempt is made to cast a pointer with a floating-point or fixed-point type.

C2236  (E) Illegal cast in constant
In a constant expression, an attempt is made to cast a pointer with a char or short type.

C2237  (E) Illegal constant expression
In a constant expression, a pointer constant is cast with an integer and the result is manipulated.

C2238  (E) Lvalue or function type required for "&"
The unary operator & is not used in the lvalue or an expression other than function type.

C2239  (E) Illegal section name
The section name includes a character that is not available for use.

C2240  (E) Illegal section naming
There is an error in section naming. The same section name is specified for different use of the section.

C2300  (E) Case not in switch
A case label is specified outside a switch statement.
C2301  (E) Default not in switch
A default label is specified outside a switch statement.

C2302  (E) Multiple labels
A label name is defined more than once in a function.

C2303  (E) Illegal continue
A continue statement is specified outside a while, for, or do statement.

C2304  (E) Illegal break
A break statement is specified outside a while, for, do, or switch statement.

C2305  (E) Void function returns value
A return statement specifies a return value for a function with a void return type.

C2306  (E) Case label not constant
A case label expression is not an integer constant expression.

C2307  (E) Multiple case labels
Two or more case labels with the same value are specified for one switch statement.

C2308  (E) Multiple default labels
Two or more default labels are specified for one switch statement.

C2309  (E) No label for goto
There is no label corresponding to the destination specified by a goto statement.

C2310  (E) Scalar required
The control expression (that determines statement execution) for a while, for, or do statement is not a scalar.

C2311  (E) Integer required
The control expression (that determines statement execution) for a switch statement is not an integer.

C2312  (E) Missing ( 
The control expression (that determines statement execution) does not have a left parenthesis ( ( ) for an if, while, for, do, or switch statement.
C2313  (E) Missing ;
A do statement is ended without a semicolon (;).

C2314  (E) Scalar required
A control expression (that determines statement execution) for an if statement is not a scalar.

C2316  (E) Illegal type for return value
An expression in a return statement cannot be converted to the type of value expected to be returned by the function.

C2400  (E) Illegal character "character"
An illegal character is detected.

C2401  (E) Incomplete character constant
An end of line indicator is detected in the middle of a character constant.

C2402  (E) Incomplete string
An end of line indicator is detected in the middle of a string literal.

C2403  (E) EOF in comment
An end of file indicator is detected in the middle of a comment.

C2404  (E) Illegal character code "character code"
An illegal character code is detected.

C2405  (E) Null character constant
There are no characters in a character constant (i.e., no characters are specified between two quotation marks).

C2407  (E) Incomplete logical line
A backslash (\) or a backslash followed by an end of line indicator (\ (RET) ) is specified as the last character in a non-empty source file.

C2408  (E) Comment nest too deep
The nesting level of the comment exceeds the limit of 255.

C2500  (E) Illegal token "phrase"
An illegal token sequence is used.
C2501  (E) Division by zero
An integer or a fixed point is divided by zero in a constant expression.

C2600  (E) "string literal"
An error message specified by the #error string literal is output to the list file if the nolistfile option is not specified.

C2650  (E) Invalid pointer reference
The specified address does not match the boundary alignment value.

C2700  (E) Function "function name" in #pragma interrupt already declared
A function specified in an interrupt function declaration #pragma interrupt has been declared as a normal function.

C2701  (E) Multiple interrupt for one function
An interrupt function declaration #pragma interrupt has been declared more than once for the same function.

C2702  (E) Multiple #pragma interrupt options
The same type of interrupt is declared more than once.

C2703  (E) Illegal #pragma interrupt declaration
An interrupt function declaration #pragma interrupt is specified incorrectly.

C2704  (E) Illegal reference to interrupt function
The interrupt function is incorrectly referenced.

C2705  (E) Illegal parameter in interrupt function
Parameter types to be used for an interrupt function do not match.

C2706  (E) Missing parameter declaration in interrupt function
There is no declaration for a variable to be used for an optional specification of an interrupt function.

C2707  (E) Parameter out of range in interrupt function
The parameter value tn of an interrupt function exceeds the limit of 256.

C2709  (E) Illegal section name declaration
The #pragma section specification is illegal.
C2710  (E) Section name too long
The specified section name exceeds the limit of 31 characters.

C2711  (E) Section name table overflow
The number of sections specified in one file exceeds the limit of 64.

C2712  (E) GBR based displacement overflow
The variable declared in #pragma gbr_base or #pragma gbr_base1 overflows.

C2713  (E) Illegal #pragma interrupt function type
The function type specified #pragma interrupt is illegal.

C2799  (E) GBR used in-line function
A GBR-related intrinsic function cannot be used when gbr=auto is specified.

C2800  (E) Illegal parameter number in in-line function
The number of parameters to be used for an intrinsic function do not match.

C2801  (E) Illegal parameter type in in-line function
There are different parameter types in an intrinsic function.

C2802  (E) Parameter out of range in in-line function
A parameter exceeds the range that can be specified in an intrinsic function.

C2803  (E) Invalid offset value in in-line function
An argument for an intrinsic function is incorrectly specified.

C2804  (E) Illegal in-line function
An intrinsic function that cannot be used by the specified cpu option exists.

C2805  (E) Function "function name" in #pragma inline/inline_asm already declared
The function indicated by "function name" exists before the #pragma specification.

C2806  (E) Multiple #pragma for one function
Two or more #pragma directives are incorrectly specified for one function.

C2807  (E) Illegal #pragma inline/inline_asm declaration
#pragma inline or #pragma inline_asm is specified illegally.
C2808  (E) Illegal option for #pragma inline_asm
The code=machinecode option is specified in addition to the #pragma inline_asm specification.

C2809  (E) Illegal #pragma inline/inline_asm function type
An identifier type that specifies #pragma inline or #pragma inline_asm is illegal.

C2810  (E) Global variable "variable name" in #pragma gbr_base/gbr_base1 already declared
A variable definition indicated by "variable name" exists before the #pragma specification.

C2811  (E) Multiple #pragma for one global variable
Two or more #pragma directives are incorrectly specified for one variable.

C2812  (E) Illegal #pragma gbr_base/gbr_base1 declaration
The #pragma gbr_base or #pragma gbr_base1 specification is illegal.

C2813  (E) Illegal #pragma gbr_base/gbr_base1 global variable type
An identifier type that specifies #pragma gbr_base or #pragma gbr_base1 is illegal.

C2814  (E) Function "function name" in #pragma noregsave/noregalloc/regsave already declared
The function indicated by "function name" exists before the #pragma specification.

C2815  (E) Illegal #pragma noregsave/noregalloc/regsave declaration
The #pragma noregsave, #pragma noregalloc, or #pragma regsave specification is illegal.

C2816  (E) Illegal #pragma noregsave/noregalloc/regsave function type
An identifier type that specifies #pragma noregsave, #pragma noregalloc, or #pragma regsave is illegal.

C2817  (E) Symbol "identifier" in #pragma abs16/abs20/abs28/abs32 already declared
A name indicated by "identifier" exists before the #pragma specification.

C2818  (E) Multiple #pragma for one symbol
More than one #pragma is incorrectly specified for one identifier.

C2819  (E) Illegal #pragma abs16/abs20/abs28/abs32 declaration
The #pragma abs16/abs20/abs28/abs32 specification is illegal.
C2820  (E) Illegal #pragma abs16/abs20/abs28/abs32 symbol type
An identifier type that specifies #pragma abs16/abs20/abs28/abs32 is illegal.

C2821  (E) Global variable "variable name" in #pragma global_register already declared
The variable that specifies #pragma global_register has already been defined.

C2822  (E) Illegal register "register" in #pragma global_register
The register that specifies #pragma global_register is illegal.

C2823  (E) Illegal #pragma global_register declaration
The specification of #pragma global_register is illegal.

C2824  (E) Illegal #pragma global_register type
A variable that cannot specify #pragma global_register exists.

C2828  (E) Illegal #pragma entry declaration
There is an error in the #pragma entry declaration syntax.

C2829  (E) Function "function name" in #pragma entry already declared
A symbol with the same name as the function exists before the #pragma entry declaration or #pragma has already been specified.

C2830  (E) Illegal #pragma entry function type
The specified symbol is not a function.

C2831  (E) Multiple #pragma entry declaration
There are two or more #pragma entry declarations.

C2832  (E) Illegal #pragma stacksize declaration
There is an error in the #pragma stacksize declaration syntax.

C2833  (E) Multiple #pragma stacksize declaration
There are multiple #pragma stacksize declarations.

C2840  (E) Illegal #pragma ifunc declaration
There is an error in the #pragma ifunc declaration syntax.

C2841  (E) Illegal #pragma ifunc function type
An illegal identifier is specified in the #pragma ifunc declaration.
C2842  (E) Function "function name" in #pragma ifunc already declared
The name indicated by "function name" is declared before the #pragma specification.

C2843  (E) Illegal floating type used in function
The float or double type is used in the function. The float or double type must not be used when the function is declared by #pragma ifunc.

C2844  (E) Illegal #pragma pack/unpack declaration
There is an error in the #pragma pack/unpack declaration syntax.

C2845  (E) Illegal #pragma bit_order declaration
There is an error in the #pragma bit_order declaration syntax.

C2846  (E) Packed structure used in in-line function
The structure specified with pack is used for the intrinsic function.

C2847  (E) Illegal #pragma tbr declaration
There is an error in the #pragma tbr specification.

C2848  (E) Function "function name" in #pragma tbr already declared
The function indicated by "function name" exists before the #pragma tbr specification.

C2849  (E) Illegal offset in #pragma tbr
An illegal offset is specified.

C2850  (E) Illegal #pragma tbr function type
The specified symbol is not a function.

C2851  (F) Too many function in tbr
The number of functions specified in #pragma tbr exceeds the limit.

C2852  (E) Variable "variable name" in #pragma address already declared
The variable specified in #pragma address has already been defined.

C2853  (E) Illegal #pragma address symbol type
A compound type member or a symbol which is not a variable name is specified in #pragma address.
C2854  (E) Illegal address in #pragma address
The specified address has one of the following errors.
(1) The specified address is not a multiple of 4 when the corresponding variable or structure has boundary alignment value 4.
(2) The specified address is not a multiple of 2 when the corresponding variable or structure has boundary alignment value 2.
(3) The same address is specified for different variables.
(4) The address ranges for different variables overlap each other.
(5) #pragma abs16/abs20/abs28 is specified but the absolute address is not included in that range.
(6) abs16/abs20/abs28 option is specified but the absolute address is not included in that range.

C2855  (E) All registers are used in #pragma global_register
All registers are occupied by #pragma global_register.

C2856  (E) Illegal usage of in-line function "function name"
The intrinsic function "function name" is used incorrectly.

C2857  (E) Function "function name" in #pragma already declared
The function is defined before the #pragma declaration is not specifiable.

C2858  (E) Illegal #pragma "identifier" function type
The symbol specified for #pragma "identifier" is not a function.

C2859  (E) Illegal #pragma "identifier" declaration
The #pragma "identifier" declaration has a syntax error.

C2900  (E) Incompatible memory qualifiers
There had been an attempt to convert to a pointer type with incompatible memory qualifiers.

C2901  (E) Illegal type qualifier
There is an error in the specification of the type qualifier.

C2902  (E) Illegal arithmetic conversion
There is an error in the arithmetic conversion.

C2903  (E) Illegal _ _circ specification
There is an error in the _ _circ specification.
C3000  (F) Statement nest too deep
The nesting level of an if, while, for, do, or switch statement exceeds the limit.

C3001  (F) Block nest too deep
The nesting level of a compound statement exceeds the limit.

C3006  (F) Too many parameters
The number of parameters in a function declaration or a function call exceeds the limit.

C3007  (F) Too many macro parameters
The number of parameters in a macro definition or a macro call exceeds the limit.

C3008  (F) Line too long
After a macro expansion, the length of a line exceeds the limit.

C3009  (F) String literal too long
The length of a string literal exceeds 32766 characters. The length of a string literal is the number of bytes when linking string literals specified continuously. The length of the string literal is not the length in the source program but the number of bytes included in the string literal data. Escape sequence is counted as one character.

C3013  (F) Too many switches
The number of switch statements exceeds the limit.

C3014  (F) For nest too deep
The nesting level of a for statement exceeds the limit.

C3015  (F) Symbol table overflow
The number of symbols to be generated by the compiler exceeds the limit.

C3016  (F) Internal label overflow
The number of internal labels to be generated by the compiler exceeds the limit.

C3017  (F) Too many case labels
The number of case labels in one switch statement exceeds the limit.

C3018  (F) Too many goto labels
The number of goto labels defined in one function exceeds the limit.
C3019  (F) Cannot open source file "file name"
A source file cannot be opened.

C3020  (F) Source file input error "file name"
A source or include file cannot be read.

C3021  (F) Memory overflow
The compiler cannot allocate sufficient memory to compile the program.

C3022  (F) Switch nest too deep
The nesting level of a switch statement exceeds the limit.

C3023  (F) Type nest too deep
The number of types (pointer, array, and function) that qualify the basic type exceeds 16.

C3024  (F) Array dimension too deep
An array has more than six dimensions.

C3025  (F) Source file not found
A source file name is not specified in the command line.

C3026  (F) Expression too complex
An expression is too complex.

C3027  (F) Source file too complex
The nesting level of statements in the program is too deep or an expression is too complex.

C3030  (F) Too many compound statements
The number of compound statements in one function exceeds 2048.

C3031  (F) Data size overflow
The size of an array or a structure exceeds the limit of 2147483647 bytes.

C3100  (F) Misaligned pointer access
There has been an attempt to reference or specify using a pointer that has an invalid alignment.

C3201  (F) Object size overflow
The object file size exceeds the limit of 4 Gbytes.
C3203  (F) Assembly source line too long
The assembly source line is too long to output.

C3204  (F) Illegal stack access
The size of a stack to be used in a function (including a local variable area, register save area, and parameter push area to call other functions) or a parameter area to call the function exceeds 2 Gbytes.

C3205  (F) Cannot apply repeat operation for a loop
An extended repeat loop cannot be generated against a loop. Modify the loop size small, or cancel the repeat option.

C3300  (F) Cannot open internal file
An error occurred due to one of the following three causes:
(1) An intermediate file internally generated by the compiler cannot be opened.
(2) A file that has the same file name as the intermediate file already exists.
(3) A file which the compiler uses internally cannot be opened.

C3301  (F) Cannot close internal file
An intermediate file internally generated by the compiler cannot be closed. Make sure the compiler is correctly installed.

C3302  (F) Cannot input internal file
An intermediate file internally generated by the compiler cannot be read. Make sure the compiler is correctly installed.

C3303  (F) Cannot output internal file
An intermediate file internally generated by the compiler cannot be written to. Increase the disk space.

C3304  (F) Cannot delete internal file
An intermediate file internally generated by the compiler cannot be deleted. Check that the intermediate file generated by the compiler is not being accessed.

C3305  (F) Invalid command parameter "option name"
An invalid compiler option is specified.
C3306 (F) Interrupt in compilation
An interrupt generated by a (CNTL) + C command (from a standard input terminal) is detected during compilation.

C3307 (F) Compiler version mismatch
File versions in the compiler do not match the other file versions. Refer to the Install Guide for the installation procedure, and reinstall the compiler.

C3308 (F) Cannot create file "file name"
The compiler cannot create necessary files.

C3320 (F) Command parameter buffer overflow
The command line specification exceeds 4096 characters.

C3321 (F) Illegal environment variable
An error occurred due to one of the following five causes:
(1) The environment variable SHC_LIB was not specified.
(2) Other than "SH1", "SH2", "SH2E", "SH2DSP", "SHDSP", "SH2A", "SH2AFPU", "SH3", "SH3DSP", "SH4", "SH4A", or "SH4ALDSP" is set for the environment variable SHCPU.
(3) The environment variable SHC_TMP was not set.
(4) The folder name specified for the environment variable SHC_TMP does not exist.
(5) Double-quotation marks (" ") are used in the path name of the environment variable SHC_TMP.

C3322 (F) Current directory cannot be read to get its name
Information on the current directory cannot be read.

C4000-C4999 (—) Internal error
An internal error occurred during compilation. Report the error occurrence to your local Renesas sales office.

C5003 (F) #include file "file name" includes itself

C5004 (F) Out of memory

C5005 (F) Could not open source file "name"

C5006 (E) Comment unclosed at end of file
C5007  (E)  (I)  Unrecognized token

C5008  (E)  (I)  Missing closing quote

C5009  (I)  Nested comment is not allowed

C5010  (E)  "#"  not expected here

C5011  (E)  Unrecognized preprocessing directive

C5012  (E)  Parsing restarts here after previous syntax error

C5013  (F)  (E)  Expected a file name

C5014  (E)  Extra text after expected end of preprocessing directive

C5016  (F)  "name"  is not a valid source file name

C5017  (E)  Expected a "["

C5018  (E)  Expected a "]"

C5019  (E)  Extra text after expected end of number

C5020  (E)  Identifier "name"  is undefined

C5021  (W)  Type qualifiers are meaningless in this declaration

C5022  (E)  Invalid hexadecimal number

C5024  (E)  Invalid octal digit

C5025  (E)  Quoted string should contain at least one character
C5026  (E) Too many characters in character constant

C5027  (W) Character value is out of range

C5028  (E) Expression must have a constant value

C5029  (E) Expected an expression

C5030  (E) Floating constant is out of range

C5031  (E) Expression must have integral type

C5032  (E) Expression must have arithmetic type

C5033  (E) Expected a line number

C5034  (E) Invalid line number

C5035  (F) #error directive: "line number"

C5036  (E) The #if for this directive is missing

C5037  (E) The #endif for this directive is missing

C5038  (W) Directive is not allowed -- an #else has already appeared

C5039  (W) Division by zero

C5040  (E) Expected an identifier

C5041  (E) Expression must have arithmetic or pointer type

C5042  (E) Operand types are incompatible ("type 1" and "type 2")
C5044  (E) Expression must have pointer type

C5045  (W) #undef may not be used on this predefined name

C5046  (W) This predefined name may not be redefined

C5047  (W) Incompatible redefinition of macro "name" (declared at line "line number")

C5049  (E) Duplicate macro parameter name

C5050  (E) "##" may not be first in a macro definition

C5051  (E) "##" may not be last in a macro definition

C5052  (E) Expected a macro parameter name

C5053  (E) Expected a ":"

C5054  (W) Too few arguments in macro invocation

C5055  (W) Too many arguments in macro invocation

C5056  (E) Operand of sizeof may not be a function

C5057  (E) This operator is not allowed in a constant expression

C5058  (E) This operator is not allowed in a preprocessing expression

C5059  (E) Function call is not allowed in a constant expression

C5060  (E) This operator is not allowed in an integral constant expression

C5061  (W) Integer operation result is out of range
C5062  (W) Shift count is negative
C5063  (W) Shift count is too large
C5064  (W) Declaration does not declare anything
C5065  (E) Expected a ";"
C5066  (E) Enumeration value is out of "int" range
C5067  (E) Expected a "}" 
C5068  (W) Integer conversion resulted in a change of sign
C5069  (W) Integer conversion resulted in truncation
C5070  (E) Incomplete type is not allowed
C5071  (E) Operand of sizeof may not be a bit field
C5075  (E) Operand of "*" must be a pointer
C5077  (E) This declaration has no storage class or type specifier
C5079  (E) Expected a type specifier
C5080  (E) A storage class may not be specified here
C5081  (E) More than one storage class may not be specified
C5083  (W) Type qualifier specified more than once
C5084  (E) Invalid combination of type specifiers
C5085  (E) Invalid storage class for a parameter
C5086  (E) Invalid storage class for a function
C5087  (E) A type specifier may not be used here
C5088  (E) Array of functions is not allowed
C5089  (E) Array of void is not allowed
C5090  (E) Function returning function is not allowed
C5091  (E) Function returning array is not allowed
C5093  (E) Function type may not come from a typedef
C5094  (E) The size of an array must be greater than zero
C5095  (E) Array is too large
C5097  (E) A function may not return a value of this type
C5098  (E) An array may not have elements of this type
C5100  (E) Duplicate parameter name
C5101  (E) "name" has already been declared in the current scope
C5103  (E) Class is too large
C5105  (E) Invalid size for bit field
C5106  (E) Invalid type for a bit field
C5107  (E) Zero-length bit field must be unnamed

C5108  (W) Signed bit field of length 1

C5109  (E) Expression must have (pointer-to-) function type

C5110  (E) Expected either a definition or a tag name

C5111  (I) Statement is unreachable

C5112  (E) Expected "while"

C5114  (E) Entity-kind "name" was referenced but not defined

C5115  (E) A continue statement may only be used within a loop

C5116  (E) A break statement may only be used within a loop or switch

C5117  (W) Non-void entity-kind "name" should return a value

C5118  (E) A void function may not return a value

C5119  (E) Cast to type "type" is not allowed

C5120  (E) Return value type does not match the function type

C5121  (E) A case label may only be used within a switch

C5122  (E) A default label may only be used within a switch

C5123  (E) Case label value has already appeared in this switch

C5124  (E) Default label has already appeared in this switch
C5125  (E) Expected a "(

C5126  (E) Expression must be an lvalue

C5127  (E) Expected a statement

C5128  (I) Loop is not reachable from preceding code

C5129  (E) A block-scope function may only have extern storage class

C5130  (E) Expected a "{

C5131  (E) Expression must have pointer-to-class type

C5132  (E) Expression must have pointer-to-struct-or-union type

C5133  (E) Expected a member name

C5134  (E) Expected a field name

C5135  (E) Entity-kind "name" has no member "member name"

C5136  (E) Entity-kind "name" has no field "field name"

C5137  (E) Expression must be a modifiable lvalue

C5139  (E) Taking the address of a bit field is not allowed

C5140  (E) Too many arguments in function call

C5142  (E) Expression must have pointer-to-object type

C5143  (F) Program too large or complicated to compile
C5144  (E) A value of type "type 1" cannot be used to initialize an entity of type "type 2"

C5145  (E) Entity-kind "name" may not be initialized

C5146  (E) Too many initializer values

C5147  (E) Declaration is incompatible with "name" (declared at line "line number")

C5148  (E) Entity-kind "name" has already been initialized

C5149  (E) A global-scope declaration may not have this storage class

C5150  (E) A type name may not be redeclared as a parameter

C5151  (E) A typedef name may not be redeclared as a parameter

C5153  (E) Expression must have class type

C5154  (E) Expression must have struct or union type

C5157  (E) Expression must be an integral constant expression

C5158  (E) Expression must be an lvalue or a function designator

C5159  (E) Declaration is incompatible with previous "name" (declared at line "line

number")

C5160  (E) Name conflicts with previously used external name "name"

C5161  (I) Unrecognized #pragma

C5163  (F) Could not open temporary file "name"

C5164  (F) Name of directory for temporary files is too long ("name")
C5165  (E) Too few arguments in function call

C5166  (E) Invalid floating constant

C5167  (E) Argument of type "type 1" is incompatible with parameter of type "type 2"

C5168  (E) A function type is not allowed here

C5169  (E) Expected a declaration

C5170  (W) Pointer points outside of underlying object

C5171  (E) Invalid type conversion

C5172  (I) External/internal linkage conflict with previous declaration

C5173  (E) Floating-point value does not fit in required integral type

C5174  (I) Expression has no effect

C5175  (W) Subscript out of range

C5177  (W) (I) Entity-kind "name" was declared but never referenced

C5179  (W) Right operand of "%" is zero

C5182  (F) Could not open source file "name" (no directories in search list)

C5183  (E) Type of cast must be integral

C5184  (E) Type of cast must be arithmetic or pointer

C5185  (I) Dynamic initialization in unreachable code
C5186  (W) Pointless comparison of unsigned integer with zero

C5187  (I) Use of "=" where "==" may have been intended

C5189  (F) Error while writing "file name" file

C5191  (W) Type qualifier is meaningless on cast type

C5192  (W) Unrecognized character escape sequence

C5193  (I) Zero used for undefined preprocessing identifier

C5219  (F) Error while deleting file "file name"

C5221  (W) Floating-point value does not fit in required floating-point type

C5224  (W) The format string requires additional arguments

C5225  (W) The format string ends before this argument

C5226  (W) Invalid format string conversion

C5228  (W) Trailing comma is nonstandard

C5229  (W) Bit field cannot contain all values of the enumerated type

C5235  (E) Variable "name" was declared with a never-completed type

C5236  (W) (I) Controlling expression is constant

C5237  (I) Selector expression is constant

C5238  (E) Invalid specifier on a parameter
C5239  (E) Invalid specifier outside a class declaration

C5240  (E) Duplicate specifier in declaration

C5241  (E) A union is not allowed to have a base class

C5242  (E) Multiple access control specifiers are not allowed

C5243  (E) Class or struct definition is missing

C5244  (E) Qualified name is not a member of class "type" or its base classes

C5245  (E) A nonstatic member reference must be relative to a specific object

C5246  (E) A nonstatic data member may not be defined outside its class

C5247  (E) Entity-kind "name" has already been defined

C5248  (E) Pointer to reference is not allowed

C5249  (E) Reference to reference is not allowed

C5250  (E) Reference to void is not allowed

C5251  (E) Array of reference is not allowed

C5252  (E) Reference entity-kind "name" requires an initializer

C5253  (E) Expected a ","

C5254  (E) Type name is not allowed

C5255  (E) Type definition is not allowed
C5256  (E) Invalid redeclaration of type name "name" (declared at line "line number")

C5257  (E) Const entity-kind "name" requires an initializer

C5258  (E) "this" may only be used inside a nonstatic member function

C5259  (E) Constant value is not known

C5261  (I) Access control not specified ("name" by default)

C5262  (E) Not a class or struct name

C5263  (E) Duplicate base class name

C5264  (E) Invalid base class

C5265  (E) Entity-kind "name" is inaccessible

C5266  (E) "name" is ambiguous

C5269  (E) Implicit conversion to inaccessible base class "type" is not allowed

C5274  (E) Improperly terminated macro invocation

C5276  (E) Name followed by "::" must be a class or namespace name

C5277  (E) Invalid friend declaration

C5278  (E) A constructor or destructor may not return a value

C5279  (E) Invalid destructor declaration

C5280  (E) (W) Declaration of a member with the same name as its class
C5281  (E) Global-scope qualifier (leading "::") is not allowed

C5282  (E) The global scope has no "name"

C5283  (E) Qualified name is not allowed

C5284  (W) NULL reference is not allowed

C5285  (E) Initialization with "[..]" is not allowed for object of type "type"

C5286  (E) Base class "type" is ambiguous

C5287  (E) Derived class "type" contains more than one instance of class "type"

C5288  (E) Cannot convert pointer to base class "type 1" to pointer to derived class "type 2" -- base class is virtual

C5289  (E) No instance of constructor "name" matches the argument list

C5290  (E) Copy constructor for class "type" is ambiguous

C5291  (E) No default constructor exists for class "type"

C5292  (E) "name" is not a nonstatic data member or base class of class "type"

C5293  (E) Indirect nonvirtual base class is not allowed

C5294  (E) Invalid union member -- class "type" has a disallowed member function

C5297  (E) Expected an operator

C5298  (E) Inherited member is not allowed

C5299  (E) Cannot determine which instance of entity-kind "name" is intended
C5300  (E) A pointer to a bound function may only be used to call the function

C5302  (E) Entity-kind "name" has already been defined

C5304  (E) No instance of entity-kind "name" matches the argument list

C5305  (E) Type definition is not allowed in function return type declaration

C5306  (E) Default argument not at end of parameter list

C5307  (E) Redefinition of default argument

C5308  (E) More than one instance of entity-kind "name" matches the argument list:

C5309  (E) More than one instance of constructor "name" matches the argument list:

C5310  (E) Default argument of type "type 1" is incompatible with parameter of type "type 2"

C5311  (E) Cannot overload functions distinguished by return type alone

C5312  (E) No suitable user-defined conversion from "type 1" to "type 2" exists

C5313  (E) Type qualifier is not allowed on this function

C5314  (E) Only nonstatic member functions may be virtual

C5315  (E) The object has type qualifiers that are not compatible with the member function

C5316  (E) Program too large to compile (too many virtual functions)

C5317  (E) Return type is not identical to nor covariant with return type "type" of overridden virtual function entity-kind" name"
C5318  (E) Override of virtual entity-kind "name" is ambiguous

C5319  (E) Pure specifier ("0") allowed only on virtual functions

C5320  (E) Badly-formed pure specifier (only "0" is allowed)

C5321  (E) Data member initializer is not allowed

C5322  (E) Object of abstract class type "type" is not allowed:

C5323  (E) Function returning abstract class "type" is not allowed:

C5324  (I) Duplicate friend declaration

C5325  (E) Inline specifier allowed on function declarations only

C5326  (E) "inline" is not allowed

C5327  (E) Invalid storage class for an inline function

C5328  (E) Invalid storage class for a class member

C5329  (E) Local class member entity-kind "name" requires a definition

C5330  (E) Entity-kind "name" is inaccessible

C5332  (E) Class "type" has no copy constructor to copy a const object

C5333  (E) Defining an implicitly declared member function is not allowed

C5334  (E) Class "type" has no suitable copy constructor

C5335  (E) Linkage specification is not allowed
C5336  (E) Unknown external linkage specification

C5337  (E) Linkage specification is incompatible with previous "name" (declared at line "line number")

C5338  (E) More than one instance of overloaded function "name" has "C" linkage

C5339  (E) Class "type" has more than one default constructor

C5340  (E) Value copied to temporary, reference to temporary used

C5341  (E) "operator" must be a member function

C5342  (E) Operator may not be a static member function

C5343  (E) No arguments allowed on user-defined conversion

C5344  (E) Too many parameters for this operator function

C5345  (E) Too few parameters for this operator function

C5346  (E) Nonmember operator requires a parameter with class type

C5347  (E) Default argument is not allowed

C5348  (E) More than one user-defined conversion from "type 1" to "type 2" applies:

C5349  (E) No operator "operator" matches these operands

C5350  (E) More than one operator "operator" matches these operands:

C5351  (E) First parameter of allocation function must be of type "size_t"

C5352  (E) Allocation function requires "void *" return type
C5353  (E) Deallocation function requires "void" return type

C5354  (E) First parameter of deallocation function must be of type "void *"

C5356  (E) Type must be an object type

C5357  (E) Base class "type" has already been initialized

C5359  (E) Entity-kind "name" has already been initialized

C5360  (E) Name of member or base class is missing

C5363  (E) Invalid anonymous union -- nonpublic member is not allowed

C5364  (E) Invalid anonymous union -- member function is not allowed

C5365  (E) Anonymous union at global or namespace scope must be declared static

C5366  (E) Entity-kind "name" provides no initializer for:

C5367  (E) Implicitly generated constructor for class "type" cannot initialize:

C5368  (W) Entity-kind "name" defines no constructor to initialize the following:

C5369  (E) Entity-kind "name" has an uninitialized const or reference member

C5370  (W) Entity-kind "name" has an uninitialized const field

C5371  (E) Class "type" has no assignment operator to copy a const object

C5372  (E) Class "type" has no suitable assignment operator

C5373  (E) Ambiguous assignment operator for class "type"
C5375  (E) Declaration requires a typedef name

C5377  (E) "virtual" is not allowed

C5378  (E) "static" is not allowed

C5380  (E) Expression must have pointer-to-member type

C5381  (I) Extra ";" ignored

C5382  (W) Nonstandard member constant declaration (standard form is a static const integral member)

C5384  (E) No instance of overloaded "name" matches the argument list

C5386  (E) No instance of entity-kind "name" matches the required type

C5388  (E) "operator->" for class "type 1" returns invalid type "type 2"

C5389  (E) A cast to abstract class "type" is not allowed:

C5391  (E) A new-initializer may not be specified for an array

C5392  (E) Member function "name" may not be redeclared outside its class

C5393  (E) Pointer to incomplete class type is not allowed

C5394  (E) Reference to local variable of enclosing function is not allowed

C5397  (E) Implicitly generated assignment operator cannot copy:

C5399  (I) Entity-kind "name" has an operator newxxx () but no default operator deletexxx ()
C5400  (I) Entity-kind "name" has a default operator deletexxx () but no operator newxxx ()

C5401  (E) Destructor for base class "type" is not virtual

C5403  (E) Entity-kind "name" has already been declared

C5404  (E) Function "main" may not be declared inline

C5405  (E) Member function with the same name as its class must be a constructor

C5407  (E) A destructor may not have parameters

C5408  (E) Copy constructor for class "type 1" may not have a parameter of type "type2 "

C5409  (E) Entity-kind "name" returns incomplete type "type"

C5410  (E) Protected entity-kind "name" is not accessible through a "type" pointer or object

C5411  (E) A parameter is not allowed

C5412  (E) An "asm" declaration is not allowed here

C5413  (E) No suitable conversion function from "type 1" to "type 2" exists

C5414  (W) Delete of pointer to incomplete class

C5415  (E) No suitable constructor exists to convert from "type 1" to "type 2"

C5416  (E) More than one constructor applies to convert from "type 1" to "type 2":

C5417  (E) More than one conversion function from "type 1" to "type 2" applies:
C5418  (E) More than one conversion function from "type" to a built-in type applies:

C5424  (E) A constructor or destructor may not have its address taken

C5427  (E) Qualified name is not allowed in member declaration

C5429  (E) The size of an array in "new" must be non-negative

C5430  (W) Returning reference to local temporary

C5432  (E) "enum" declaration is not allowed

C5433  (E) Qualifiers dropped in binding reference of type "type 1" to initializer of type "type 2"

C5434  (E) A reference of type "type 1" (not const-qualified) cannot be initialized with a value of type "type 2"

C5435  (E) A pointer to function may not be deleted

C5436  (E) Conversion function must be a nonstatic member function

C5437  (E) Template declaration is not allowed here

C5438  (E) Expected a "<"n

C5439  (E) Expected a ">"

C5440  (E) Template parameter declaration is missing

C5441  (E) Argument list for entity-kind "name" is missing

C5442  (E) Too few arguments for entity-kind "name"

C5443  (E) Too many arguments for entity-kind "name"
C5445  (E) Entity-kind "name 1" is not used in declaring the parameter types of entity-kind "name 2"

C5449  More than one instance of entity-kind "name" matches the required type

C5452  (E) Return type may not be specified on a conversion function

C5456  (E) Excessive recursion at instantiation of entity-kind "name"

C5457  (E) "name" is not a function or static data member

C5458  (E) Argument of type "type 1" is incompatible with template parameter of type "type 2"

C5459  (E) Initialization requiring a temporary or conversion is not allowed

C5461  (E) Initial value of reference to non-const must be an lvalue

C5463  (E) "template" is not allowed

C5464  (E) "type" is not a class template

C5466  (E) "main" is not a valid name for a function template

C5467  (E) Invalid reference to entity-kind "name" (union/nonunion mismatch)

C5468  (E) A template argument may not reference a local type

C5469  (E) Tag kind of "name 1" is incompatible with declaration of entity-kind "name 2" (declared at line "line number")

C5470  (E) The global scope has no tag named "name"

C5471  (E) Entity-kind "name 1" has no tag member named "name 2"
C5473  (E) Entity-kind "name" may be used only in pointer-to-member declaration

C5475  (E) A template argument may not reference a non-external entity

C5476  (E) Name followed by "::~" must be a class name or a type name

C5477  (E) Destructor name does not match name of class "type"

C5478  (E) Type used as destructor name does not match type "type"

C5479  (I) Entity-kind "name" redeclared "inline" after being called

C5481  (E) Invalid storage class for a template declaration

C5484  (E) Invalid explicit instantiation declaration

C5485  (E) Entity-kind "name" is not an entity that can be instantiated

C5486  (E) Compiler generated entity-kind "name" cannot be explicitly instantiated

C5487  (E) Inline entity-kind "name" cannot be explicitly instantiated

C5488  (E) Pure virtual entity-kind "name" cannot be explicitly instantiated

C5489  (E) Entity-kind "name" cannot be instantiated -- no template definition was supplied

C5490  (E) Entity-kind "name" cannot be instantiated -- it has been explicitly specialized

C5493  (E) No instance of entity-kind "name" matches the specified type

C5496  (E) Template parameter "name" may not be redeclared in this scope

C5497  (W) Declaration of "name" hides template parameter
C5498  (E) Template argument list must match the parameter list

C5499  (E) Conversion function to convert from "type 1" to "type 2" is not allowed

C5500  (E) Extra parameter of postfix "operatorxxxx" must be of type "int"

C5501  (E) An operator name must be declared as a function

C5502  (E) Operator name is not allowed

C5503  (E) Entity-kind "name" cannot be specialized in the current scope

C5505  (E) Too few template parameters -- does not match previous declaration

C5506  (E) Too many template parameters -- does not match previous declaration

C5507  (E) Function template for operator delete (void *) is not allowed

C5508  (E) Class template and template parameter may not have the same name

C5510  (E) A template argument may not reference an unnamed type

C5511  (E) Enumerated type is not allowed

C5512  (W) Type qualifier on a reference type is not allowed

C5513  (E) A value of type "type 1" cannot be assigned to an entity of type "type 2"

C5514  (W) Pointless comparison of unsigned integer with a negative constant

C5515  (E) Cannot convert to incomplete class "type"

C5516  (E) Const object requires an initializer
C5517 (E) Object has an uninitialized const or reference member

C5519 (E) Entity-kind "name" may not have a template argument list

C5520 (E) Initialization with "{...}" expected for aggregate object

C5521 (E) Pointer-to-member selection class types are incompatible ("type 1" and "type 2")

C5522 (W) Pointless friend declaration

C5526 (E) A parameter may not have void type

C5529 (E) This operator is not allowed in a template argument expression

C5530 (E) Try block requires at least one handler

C5531 (E) Handler requires an exception declaration

C5532 (E) Handler is masked by default handler

C5533 (E) Handler is potentially masked by previous handler for type "type"

C5534 (I) Use of a local type to specify an exception

C5535 (I) Redundant type in exception specification

C5536 (E) Exception specification is incompatible with that of previous entity-kind "name" (declared at line "line number"): 

C5540 (E) Support for exception handling is disabled

C5541 (W) Omission of exception specification is incompatible with previous entity-kind "name" (declared at line "line number")
C5542 (F) Could not create instantiation request file "name"

C5543 (E) Non-arithmetic operation not allowed in nontype template argument

C5544 (E) Use of a local type to declare a nonlocal variable

C5545 (E) Use of a local type to declare a function

C5546 (E) Transfer of control bypasses initialization of:

C5548 (E) Transfer of control into an exception handler

C5549 (W) Entity-kind "name" is used before its value is set

C5550 (W) Entity-kind "name" was set but never used

C5551 (E) Entity-kind "name" cannot be defined in the current scope

C5552 (W) Exception specification is not allowed

C5553 (W) External/internal linkage conflict for entity-kind "name" (declared at line "line number")

C5554 (W) Entity-kind "name" will not be called for implicit or explicit conversions

C5555 (E) Tag kind of "name" is incompatible with template parameter of type "type"

C5556 (E) Function template for operator new (size_t) is not allowed

C5558 (E) Pointer to member of type "type" is not allowed

C5559 (E) Ellipsis is not allowed in operator function parameter list

C5563 (F) Invalid preprocessor output file
C5598  (E) A template parameter may not have void type

C5601  (E) A throw expression may not have void type

C5603  (E) Parameter of abstract class type "type" is not allowed:

C5604  (E) Array of abstract class "type" is not allowed:

C5610  (W) Entity-kind "name 1" does not match "name 2" -- virtual function override intended?

C5611  (W) Overloaded virtual function "name 1" is only partially overridden in entity-kind "name 2"

C5612  (E) Specific definition of inline template function must precede its first use

C5614  (F) Invalid error number: "specified number"

C5624  (E) "name" is not a type name

C5641  (F) "name" is not a valid directory

C5642  (F) Cannot build temporary file name

C5656  (E) Transfer of control into a try block

C5657  (W) Inline specification is incompatible with previous "name" (declared at line "line number")

C5658  (E) Closing brace of template definition not found

C5660  (E) Invalid packing alignment value

C5662  (W) Call of pure virtual function
C5663  (E) Invalid source file identifier string

C5664  (E) A class template cannot be defined in a friend declaration

C5673  (E) A reference of type "type 1" cannot be initialized with a value of type "type 2"

C5674  (E) Initial value of reference to const volatile must be an lvalue

C5678  (I) Call of entity-kind "name" (declared at line "line number") cannot be inlined

C5679  (I) Entity-kind "name" cannot be inlined

C5693  (E) <typeinfo> must be included before typeid is used

C5694  (E) "name" cannot cast away const or other type qualifiers

C5695  (E) The type in a dynamic_cast must be a pointer or reference to a complete class type, or void *

C5696  (E) The operand of a pointer dynamic_cast must be a pointer to a complete class type

C5697  (E) The operand of a reference dynamic_cast must be an lvalue of a complete class type

C5698  (E) The operand of a runtime dynamic_cast must have a polymorphic class type

C5701  (E) An array type is not allowed here

C5702  (E) Expected an "="

C5703  (E) Expected a declarator in condition declaration

C5704  (E) "name", declared in condition, may not be redeclared in this scope
C5705  (E) Default template arguments are not allowed for function templates

C5706  (E) Expected a "," or ">"

C5707  (E) Expected a template parameter list

C5708  (W) Incrementing a bool value is deprecated

C5709  (E) bool type is not allowed

C5710  (E) Offset of base class "name 1" within class "name 2" is too large

C5711  (E) Expression must have bool type (or be convertible to bool)

C5717  (E) The type in a const_cast must be a pointer, reference, or pointer to member to an object type

C5718  (E) A const_cast can only adjust type qualifiers; it cannot change the underlying type

C5719  (E) mutable is not allowed

C5720  (W) Redefinition of entity-kind "name" is not allowed to alter its access

C5722  (W) Use of alternative token "<:" appears to be unintended

C5723  (W) Use of alternative token "%:" appears to be unintended

C5724  (E) namespace definition is not allowed

C5725  (E) Name must be a namespace name

C5726  (E) Namespace alias definition is not allowed

C5727  (E) namespace-qualified name is required
C5728  (E) A namespace name is not allowed

C5730  (E) Entity-kind "name" is not a class template

C5732  (E) Allocation operator may not be declared in a namespace

C5733  (E) Deallocation operator may not be declared in a namespace

C5734  (E) Entity-kind "name 1" conflicts with using-declaration of entity-kind "name 2"

C5735  (E) Using-declaration of entity-kind "name 1" conflicts with entity-kind "name 2" (declared at line "line number")

C5737  (W) Using-declaration ignored -- it refers to the current namespace

C5738  (E) A class-qualified name is required

C5741  (W) Using-declaration of entity-kind "name" ignored

C5742  (E) Entity-kind "name 1" has no actual member "name 2"

C5750  (E) Entity-kind "name" (declared at line "line number") was used before its template was declared

C5751  (E) Static and nonstatic member functions with same parameter types cannot be overloaded

C5752  (E) No prior declaration of entity-kind "name"

C5753  (E) A template-id is not allowed

C5754  (E) A class-qualified name is not allowed
C5755  (E) Entity-kind "name" may not be redeclared in the current scope

C5756  (E) Qualified name is not allowed in namespace member declaration

C5757  (E) Entity-kind "name" is not a type name

C5761  (E) Typename may only be used within a template

C5766  (W) Exception specification for virtual entity-kind "name 1" is incompatible with that of overridden entity-kind "name 2"

C5767  (W) Conversion from pointer to smaller integer

C5768  (W) Exception specification for implicitly declared virtual entity-kind "name 1" is incompatible with that of overridden entity-kind "name 2"

C5771  (E) "explicit" is not allowed

C5772  (E) Declaration conflicts with "name" (reserved class name)

C5773  (E) Only "( )" is allowed as initializer for array entity-kind "name"

C5774  (E) "virtual" is not allowed in a function template declaration

C5775  (E) Invalid anonymous union -- class member template is not allowed

C5776  (E) Template nesting depth does not match the previous declaration of entity-kind "name"

C5777  (E) This declaration cannot have multiple "template <...>" clauses

C5779  (E) "name", declared in for-loop initialization, may not be redeclared in this scope
C5782  (E) Definition of virtual entity-kind "name" is required here

C5784  (E) A storage class is not allowed in a friend declaration

C5785  (E) Template parameter list for "name" is not allowed in this declaration

C5786  (E) entity-kind "name" is not a valid member class or function template

C5787  (E) Not a valid member class or function template declaration

C5788  (E) A template declaration containing a template parameter list may not be followed by an explicit specialization declaration

C5789  (E) Explicit specialization of entity-kind "name 1" must precede the first use of entity-kind "name 2"

C5790  (E) Explicit specialization is not allowed in the current scope

C5791  (E) Partial specialization of entity-kind "name" is not allowed

C5792  (E) Entity-kind "name" is not an entity that can be explicitly specialized

C5793  (E) Explicit specialization of entity-kind "name" must precede its first use

C5794  (W) Template parameter "template" may not be used in an elaborated type specifier

C5795  (E) Specializing entity-kind "name" requires "template< >" syntax

C5800  (E) This declaration may not have extern "C" linkage

C5801  (E) "name" is not a class or function template name in the current scope
C5802  (W) Specifying a default argument when redeclaring an unreferenced function template is nonstandard

C5803  (E) Specifying a default argument when redeclaring an already referenced function template is not allowed

C5804  (E) Cannot convert pointer to member of base class "type 1" to pointer to member of derived class "type 2" – base class is virtual

C5805  (E) Exception specification is incompatible with that of entity-kind "name" (declared at line "line number"):

C5806  (W) Omission of exception specification is incompatible with entity-kind "name" (declared at line "line number")

C5807  (E) The parse of this expression has changed between the point at which it appeared in the program and the point at which the expression was evaluated -- "typename" may be required to resolve the ambiguity

C5808  (E) Default-initialization of reference is not allowed

C5809  (E) Uninitialized entity-kind "name" has a const member

C5810  (E) Uninitialized base class "type" has a const member

C5811  (E) Const entity-kind "name" requires an initializer -- class "type" has no explicitly declared default constructor

C5812  (W) Const object requires an initializer -- class "type" has no explicitly declared default constructor

C5815  (I) Type qualifier on return type is meaningless

C5817  (E) Static data member declaration is not allowed in this class
C5818  (E) Template instantiation resulted in an invalid function declaration

C5822  (E) Invalid destructor name for type "type"

C5824  (E) Destructor reference is ambiguous -- both entity-kind "name 1" and entity-kind "name 2" could be used

C5825  (E) Virtual inline entity-kind "name" was never defined

C5826  (W) Entity-kind "name" was never referenced

C5827  (E) Only one member of a union may be specified in a constructor initializer list

C5831  (I) Support for placement delete is disabled

C5832  (E) No appropriate operator delete is visible

C5833  (E) Pointer or reference to incomplete type is not allowed

C5834  (E) Invalid partial specialization -- entity-kind "name" is already fully specialized

C5835  (E) Incompatible exception specifications

C5836  (W) Returning reference to local variable

C5837  (W) Omission of explicit type is nonstandard ("int" assumed)

C5838  (E) More than one partial specialization matches the template argument list of entity-kind "name"

C5840  (E) A template argument list is not allowed in a declaration of a primary template
Partial specializations may not have default template arguments

Entity-kind "name 1" is not used in template argument list of entity-kind "name 2"

The type of partial specialization template parameter entity-kind "name" depends on another template parameter

The template argument list of the partial specialization includes a nontype argument whose type depends on a template parameter

This partial specialization would have been used to instantiate entity-kind "name"

This partial specialization would have been made the instantiation of entity-kind "name" ambiguous

Expression must have integral or enum type

Expression must have arithmetic or enum type

Expression must have arithmetic, enum, or pointer type

Type of cast must be integral or enum

Type of cast must be arithmetic, enum, or pointer

Expression must be a pointer to a complete object type

A partial specialization of a member class template must be declared in the class of which it is a member

A partial specialization nontype argument must be the name of a nontype parameter or a constant
C5855 (E) Return type is not identical to return type "type" of overridden virtual function entity-kind "name"

C5857 (E) A partial specialization of a class template must be declared in the namespace of which it is a member

C5858 (E) Entity-kind "name" is a pure virtual function

C5859 (E) Pure virtual entity-kind "name" has no overrider

C5861 (E) Invalid character in input line

C5862 (E) Function returns incomplete type "type"

C5864 (E) "name" is not a template

C5865 (E) A friend declaration may not declare a partial specialization

C5867 (W) Declaration of "size_t" does not match the expected type "type"

C5868 (E) Space required between adjacent ">" delimiters of nested template argument lists (">>" is the right shift operator)

C5870 (W) Invalid multibyte character sequence

C5871 (E) Template instantiation resulted in unexpected function type of "type 1" (the meaning of a name may have changed since the template declaration -- the type of the template is "type 2")

C5873 (E) Non-integral operation not allowed in nontype template argument

C5875 (E) Embedded C++ does not support templates

C5876 (E) Embedded C++ does not support exception handling
C5877  (E) Embedded C++ does not support namespaces
C5878  (E) Embedded C++ does not support run-time type information
C5879  (E) Embedded C++ does not support the new cast syntax
C5880  (E) Embedded C++ does not support using-declarations
C5881  (E) Embedded C++ does not support "mutable"
C5882  (E) Embedded C++ does not support multiple or virtual inheritance
C5885  (E) "type 1" cannot be used to designate constructor for "type 2"
C5891  (E) An explicit template argument list is not allowed on this declaration
C5894  (E) Entity-kind "name" is not a template
C5896  (E) Expected a template argument
C5898  (E) Nonmember operator requires a parameter with class or enum type
C5900  (E) Using-declaration of entity-kind "name" is not allowed
C5901  (E) Qualifier of destructor name "type 1" does not match type "type 2"
C5902  (W) Type qualifier ignored
C5916  (E) Cannot convert pointer to member of derived class "type 1" to pointer to member of base class "type 2" – base class is virtual
C5919  (F) Invalid output file: "name"
C5920  (F) Cannot open output file: "name"

C5926  (F) Cannot open definition list file: "name"

C5928  (E) Incorrect use of va_start

C5929  (E) Incorrect use of va_arg

C5930  (E) Incorrect use of va_end

C5935  (E) "typedef" may not be specified here

C5936  (W) Redefinition of entity-kind "name" alters its access

C5937  (E) A class or namespace qualified name is required

C5940  (W) Missing return statement at end of non-void entity-kind "name"

C5941  (W) Duplicate using-declaration of "name" ignored

C5946  (E) Name following "template" must be a member template

C5947  (E) Name following "template" must have a template argument list

C5952  (E) A template parameter may not have class type

C5953  (E) A default template argument cannot be specified on the declaration of a member of a class template

C5954  (E) A return statement is not allowed in a handler of a function try block of a constructor

C5959  (W) Declared size for bit field is larger than the size of the bit field type; truncated to "size" bits
C5960 (E) Type used as constructor name does not match type "type"

C5961 (W) Use of a type with no linkage to declare a variable with linkage

C5962 (W) Use of a type with no linkage to declare a function

C5963 (E) Return type may not be specified on a constructor

C5964 (E) Return type may not be specified on a destructor

C5965 (E) Incorrectly formed universal character name

C5966 (E) Universal character name specifies an invalid character

C5967 (E) A universal character name cannot designate a character in the basic character set

C5968 This universal character is not allowed in an identifier

C5978 (E) A template friend declaration cannot be declared in a local class

C5979 (E) Ambiguous "?" operation: second operand of type "type 1" can be converted to third operand type "type 2", and vice versa

C5980 (E) Call of an object of a class type without appropriate operator ( ) or conversion functions to pointer-to-function type

C5982 (E) There is more than one way an object of type "type" can be called for the argument list

C5986 (E) Expected a section name string

C5988 (E) Invalid pragma declaration

C5989 (E) "name" has already been specified by other pragma
C5990  (E) Pragma may not be specified after definition

C5991  (E) Invalid kind of pragma is specified to this symbol

C5994  (W) Operator new and operator delete cannot be given internal linkage

C5995  (E) Storage class "mutable" is not allowed for anonymous unions

C5997  (E) Abstract class type "type" is not allowed as catch type:

C5998  (E) A qualified function type cannot be used to declare a nonmember function or a static member function

C5999  (E) A qualified function type cannot be used to declare a parameter

C6000  (E) Cannot create a pointer or reference to qualified function type

C6001  (W) Extra braces are nonstandard

C6002  (E) An empty template parameter list is not allowed in a template template parameter declaration

C6005  (E) Expected "class"

C6006  (E) The "class" keyword must be used when declaring a template template parameter

C6007  (W) "function name 1" is hidden by "function name 2" -- virtual function override intended?

C6008  (E) A qualified name is not allowed for a friend declaration that is a function definition

C6009  (E) "type 1" is not compatible with "type 2"
C6010 (W) A storage class may not be specified here

C6011 (E) Class member designated by a using-declaration must be visible in a direct base class

C6016 (E) A template template parameter cannot have the same name as one of its template parameters

C6017 (E) Recursive instantiation of default argument

C6018 (E) A parameter of a template template parameter cannot depend on the type of another template parameter

C6019 (E) "instantiation name" is not an entity that can be defined

C6023 (E) A qualified friend template declaration must refer to a specific previously declared template

C6028 (E) "class name" has no member class "member name"

C6029 (E) The global scope has no class named "class name"

C6030 (E) Recursive instantiation of template default argument

C6031 (E) Access declarations and using-declarations cannot appear in unions

C6032 (E) "name" is not a class member

C6038 (W) Invalid redeclaration of nested class

C6045 (E) "template name" cannot be declared in this scope
12.3 Standard Library Error Messages

For some library functions, if an error occurs during the library function execution, an error code is set in the macro `errno` defined in the header file `<errno.h>` contained in the standard library. Error messages are defined in the error codes so that error messages can be output. The following shows an example of an error message output program.

Example:

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <errno.h>

main()
{
    FILE *fp;

    fp=fopen("file", "w");
    fp=NULL;

    fclose(fp);                           /* error occurred */
    printf("%s\n", strerror(errno));      /* print error message */
}
```

Description:

1. Since the file pointer of NULL is passed to the `fclose` function as an actual parameter, an error will occur. In this case, an error code corresponding to `errno` is set.
2. The `strerror` function returns a pointer of the string literal of the corresponding error message when the error code is passed as an actual parameter. An error message is output by specifying the output of the string literal of the `printf` function.
Table 12.1 List of Standard Library Error Messages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error No.</th>
<th>Error Message/Explanation</th>
<th>Functions to Set Error Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1100</td>
<td>Data out of range</td>
<td>frexp, ldexp, modf, ceil, floor, fmod, atof, atoi, atol, atolfix, atolaccum, strtod, strtol, strtoul, strtoll, strtoffixed, strtolaccum, perror, fprintf, fscanf, printf, scanf, sprintf, sscanf, vfprintf, vprintf, vsprintf, acos, asin, atan, atan2, atanh, cos, cosf, sinh, sinhf, sqrt, sqrtf, tan, tanf, tanh, fmod, pow, powf, sin, sinf, sinh, sinhf, sqrt, sqrtf, tan, tanf, tanh, fabs, fabsf, frexp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1101</td>
<td>Data out of domain</td>
<td>acos, acosf, asin, atan, atan2, atan2f, atanf, ceil, ceilf, cos, cosf, cosh, coshf, exp, expf, floor, fmod, modf, pow, powf, floor, floorf, fmod, fmodf, ldexp, ldexpf, log, log10, log10f, logf, modf, pow, powf, sin, sinf, sinh, sinhf, sqrt, sqrtf, tan, tanf, tanh, fabs, fabsf, frexp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1104</td>
<td>Too long string</td>
<td>atof, atoi, atol, atolfix, atolaccum, strtod, strtol, strtoul, strtoll, strtoffixed, strtolaccum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1106</td>
<td>Invalid file pointer</td>
<td>fclose, flush, freopen, setbuf, setvbuf, fprintf, fscanf, printf, scanf, sprintf, sscanf, vfprintf, vprintf, vsprintf, fgetc, fgets, fputc, fputs, ungetc, fread, fwrite, fseek, ftell, rewind, perror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1200</td>
<td>Invalid radix</td>
<td>atof, atoi, atol, strtol, strtoul, strtoll, strtoffixed, strtolaccum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1202</td>
<td>Number too long</td>
<td>atof, atolfix, atolaccum, strtod, strtollaccum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1204</td>
<td>Exponent too large</td>
<td>strtol, fscanf, scanf, sscanf, atof</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1206</td>
<td>Normalized exponent too large</td>
<td>strtol, fscanf, scanf, sscanf, atof</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 12.1  List of Standard Library Error Messages (cont)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error No.</th>
<th>Error Message/Explanation</th>
<th>Functions to Set Error Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1210 (EFLOATO)</td>
<td>Overflow out of float A float-type decimal value is out of range (overflow).</td>
<td>fscanf, scanf, sscanf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1220 (EFLOATU)</td>
<td>Underflow out of float A float-type decimal value is out of range (underflow).</td>
<td>fscanf, scanf, sscanf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1250 (EDBLO)</td>
<td>Overflow out of double A double-type decimal value is out of range (overflow).</td>
<td>fscanf, scanf, sscanf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1260 (EDBLU)</td>
<td>Underflow out of double A double-type decimal value is out of range (underflow).</td>
<td>fscanf, scanf, sscanf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1270 (ELDBLO)</td>
<td>Overflow out of long double A long double-type decimal value is out of range (overflow).</td>
<td>fscanf, scanf, sscanf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1280 (ELDBLU)</td>
<td>Underflow out of long double A long double-type decimal value is out of range (underflow).</td>
<td>fscanf, scanf, sscanf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1300 (NOTOPN)</td>
<td>File not open The file is not open.</td>
<td>fclose, fflush, setbuf, setvbuf, fprintf, fscanf, printf, scanf, sprintf, sscanf, vfprintf, vprintf, vsprintf, fputc, fgets, fputs, gets, puts, ungetc, fread, fwrite, fseek, ftell, rewind, perror, freopen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1302 (EBADF)</td>
<td>Bad file number An output function was issued for an input-only file, or an input function was issued for an output-only file.</td>
<td>fprintf, fscanf, printf, scanf, sprintf, sscanf, vfprintf, vprintf, vsprintf, fputc, fgets, fputs, gets, puts, ungetc, fread, fwrite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1304 (ECSPEC)</td>
<td>Error in format An erroneous format was specified for an input/output function using format.</td>
<td>fprintf, fscanf, printf, scanf, sprintf, sscanf, vfprintf, vprintf, vsprintf, perror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1400 (EFIXEDO)</td>
<td>Overflow out of _ _fixed A _ _fixed-type decimal value is out of range (overflow).</td>
<td>fscanf, scanf, sscanf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1410 (EFIXEDU)</td>
<td>Underflow out of _ _fixed A _ _fixed-type decimal value is out of range (underflow).</td>
<td>fscanf, scanf, sscanf</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 12.1 List of Standard Library Error Messages (cont)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error No.</th>
<th>Error Message/Explanation</th>
<th>Functions to Set Error Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1420</td>
<td>Overflow out of _ accum</td>
<td>fscanf, scanf, sscan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1430</td>
<td>Underflow out of _ accum</td>
<td>fscanf, scanf, sscan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1440</td>
<td>Overflow out of long _ fixed</td>
<td>fscanf, scanf, sscan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1450</td>
<td>Underflow out of long _ fixed</td>
<td>fscanf, scanf, sscan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1460</td>
<td>Overflow out of long _ accum</td>
<td>fscanf, scanf, sscan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1470</td>
<td>Underflow out of long _ accum</td>
<td>fscanf, scanf, sscan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2100</td>
<td>Error in waiting semaphore</td>
<td>calloc, free, malloc, realloc,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Failed to define semaphore resources for malloc.</td>
<td>calloc__X, free__X, malloc__X,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>realloc__X, calloc__Y, free__Y,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>malloc__Y, realloc__Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2101</td>
<td>Error in signaling semaphore</td>
<td>calloc, free, malloc, realloc,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Failed to define semaphore resources for strtok.</td>
<td>calloc__X, free__X, malloc__X,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>realloc__X, calloc__Y, free__Y,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>malloc__Y, realloc__Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2110</td>
<td>Error in waiting semaphore</td>
<td>calloc, free, malloc, realloc,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Failed to define semaphore resources for strtok.</td>
<td>calloc__X, free__X, malloc__X,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>realloc__X, calloc__Y, free__Y,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>malloc__Y, realloc__Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2111</td>
<td>Error in signaling semaphore</td>
<td>calloc, free, malloc, realloc,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Failed to release semaphore resources for malloc.</td>
<td>calloc__X, free__X, malloc__X,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>realloc__X, calloc__Y, free__Y,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>malloc__Y, realloc__Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2120</td>
<td>Error in waiting semaphore</td>
<td>calloc, free, malloc, realloc,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Failed to release semaphore resources for _iob.</td>
<td>calloc__X, free__X, malloc__X,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>realloc__X, calloc__Y, free__Y,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>malloc__Y, realloc__Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2121</td>
<td>Error in signaling semaphore</td>
<td>calloc, free, malloc, realloc,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Failed to release semaphore resources for _iob.</td>
<td>calloc__X, free__X, malloc__X,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>realloc__X, calloc__Y, free__Y,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>malloc__Y, realloc__Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Section 13  Assembler Error Messages

13.1 Error Message Format and Error Levels

This section gives lists of error messages in order of error code. A list of error messages are provided for each level of errors in the format below:

Error code (Error Level: W, E, or F) Error Message
Meaning of the error message.

Error levels are classified into the following three types:

- (W): Warning error (Continues compiling processing and outputs the object program.)
- (E): Error (Continues compiling processing but does not output the object program.)
- (F): Fatal error (Aborts compiling processing.)

13.2 Error Messages

10  (E) NO INPUT FILE SPECIFIED
There is no input source file specified.
Specify an input source file.

20  (E) CANNOT OPEN FILE <file name>
The specified file cannot be opened.
Check and correct the file name and directory.

30  (E) INVALID COMMAND PARAMETER
The command line options are not correct.
Check and correct the command line options.

40  (E) CANNOT ALLOCATE MEMORY
All available memory is used up during processing.
This error only occurs when the amount of available user memory is extremely small. If there is other processing occurring at the same time as assembly, interrupt that processing and restart the assembler. If the error still occurs, check and correct the memory management employed on the host system.
50  (E) INVALID FILE NAME <file name>
The file name including the directory is too long or invalid file name.
Check and correct the file name.
It is possible that the object module output by the assembler after this error has occurred will not
be usable with the debugger.

101  (E) SYNTAX ERROR IN SOURCE STATEMENT
Syntax error in source statement.
Check and correct the whole source statement.

102  (E) SYNTAX ERROR IN DIRECTIVE
Syntax error in assembler directive source statement.
Check and correct the whole source statement.

104  (E) LOCATION COUNTER OVERFLOW
The value of location counter exceeded its maximum value.
Reduce the size of the program.

105  (E) ILLEGAL INSTRUCTION IN STACK SECTION
An executable instruction, DSP instruction, extended instruction, or assembler directive that
reserves data is in the stack section.
Remove, from the stack section, the executable instruction, DSP instruction, extended instruction,
or assembler directive that reserves data.

106  (E) TOO MANY ERRORS
Error display terminated due to too many errors.
Check and correct the whole source statement.

108  (E) ILLEGAL CONTINUATION LINE
Illegal continuation line.
Check and correct continuation line.

150  (E) INVALID DELAY SLOT INSTRUCTION
Illegal delay slot instruction placed following delayed branch instruction.
Change the order of the instructions so that the illegal delay slot instruction does not immediately
follow a delayed branch instruction.

151  (E) ILLEGAL EXTENDED INSTRUCTION POSITION
Extended instruction placed following a delayed branch instruction.
Place an executable instruction following the delayed branch instruction.
152  (E) ILLEGAL BOUNDARY ALIGNMENT VALUE
Illegal boundary alignment value specified for a section including extended instructions.
Specify 2 or a larger multiple of 2 as a boundary alignment value.

160  (E) REPEAT LOOP NESTING
Another REPEAT is located between a REPEAT and its end address.
Correct the REPEAT location.

161  (E) ILLEGAL START ADDRESS FOR REPEAT LOOP
No executable or DSP instructions are located between a REPEAT and the start address.
Use one or more executable or DSP instructions between the REPEAT and the start address.

162  (E) ILLEGAL DATA BEFORE REPEAT LOOP
Illegal data is found immediately before the loop specified by a REPEAT instruction.
If an assembler directive is located before the loop, correct the directive. If a literal pool is located
before the loop, use a .NOPool directive to prevent the literal pool output.
When three or fewer instructions are to be repeated, an executable or DSP instruction must be
located before the loop.

163  (E) ILLEGAL INSTRUCTION IN REPEAT LOOP
An illegal instruction is used in a repeat loop.
A branch instruction, TRAPA instruction (excluding cpu=sh4aldsp), or a load instruction toward
SR, RS, or RE must not be used between a REPEAT extended instruction and its end address.

164  (E) ILLEGAL INSTRUCTION IN REPEAT LOOP
An illegal instruction is used as a repeat end instruction.
A branch instruction, or a load instruction toward SR, RS, or RE must not be used as a repeat end
instruction.

200  (E) UNDEFINED SYMBOL REFERENCE
Undefined symbol reference.
Define the symbol.

201  (E) ILLEGAL SYMBOL OR SECTION NAME
Reserved word specified as symbol or section name.
Correct the symbol or section name.

202  (E) ILLEGAL SYMBOL OR SECTION NAME
Illegal symbol or section name.
Correct the symbol or section name.
203  (E) ILLEGAL LOCAL LABEL
Illegal local label.
Correct the local label.

300  (E) ILLEGAL MNEMONIC
Illegal operation.
Correct the operation.

301  (E) TOO MANY OPERANDS OR ILLEGAL COMMENT
Too many operands of executable instruction, or illegal comment format.
Correct the operands or comment.

304  (E) LACKING OPERANDS
Too few operands.
Correct the operands.

307  (E) ILLEGAL ADDRESSING MODE
Illegal addressing mode in operand.
Correct the operand.

308  (E) SYNTAX ERROR IN OPERAND
Syntax error in operand.
Correct the operand.

309  (E) FLOATING POINT REGISTER MISMATCH
A double-precision floating-point register is specified for a single-precision operation, or a single-pre-
cision floating-point register is specified for a double-precision operation.
Correct the operation size or the floating-point register.

350  (E) SYNTAX ERROR IN SOURCE STATEMENT (<mnemonic>)
There are syntax error(s) in the DSP instruction statement.
Correct the source statement.

351  (E) ILLEGAL COMBINATION OF MNEMONICS (<mnemonic>, <mnemonic>)
Illegal combination of DSP operation instruction is specified.
Correct the combination of DSP operation instructions.

352  (E) ILLEGAL CONDITION (<mnemonic>)
Illegal condition for DSP operation instruction is specified.
Delete the condition or change the DSP operation instruction.
353  (E) ILLEGAL POSITION OF INSTRUCTION (<mnemonic>)
The DSP operation instruction is specified in an illegal position.
Specify the DSP operation instruction in the correct position.

354  (E) ILLEGAL ADDRESSING MODE (<mnemonic>)
The addressing mode of the DSP operation instruction is illegal.
Correct the operand.

355  (E) ILLEGAL REGISTER NAME (<mnemonic>)
The register name of the DSP operation instruction is illegal.
Correct the register name.

357  (E) ILLEGAL COMBINATION OF MNEMONICS (<mnemonic>)
An illegal data transfer instruction is specified.
Correct the data transfer instruction.

371  (E) ILLEGAL COMBINATION OF MNEMONICS (<mnemonic>, <mnemonic>)
The combination of data transfer instructions is illegal.
Correct the combination of data transfer instructions.

372  (E) ILLEGAL ADDRESSING MODE (<mnemonic>)
An illegal addressing mode for the data transfer instruction operand is specified.
Correct the operand.

373  (E) ILLEGAL REGISTER NAME (<mnemonic>)
An illegal register name for the data transfer instruction is specified.
Correct the register name.

400  (E) CHARACTER CONSTANT TOO LONG
Character constant is longer than 4 characters.
Correct the character constant.

402  (E) ILLEGAL VALUE IN OPERAND
Operand value out of range for this instruction.
Change the value.

403  (E) ILLEGAL OPERATION FOR RELATIVE VALUE
Attempt to perform multiplication, division, or logic operation on relative-address value.
Correct the expression.
404  (E) ILLEGAL IMMEDIATE DATA
An illegal value (forward reference symbol, external reference symbol, or relative address symbol) is specified for the immediate value.
Correct the immediate value.

407  (E) MEMORY OVERFLOW
Memory overflow during expression calculation.
Simplify the expression.

408  (E) DIVISION BY ZERO
Attempt to divide by 0.
Correct the expression.

409  (E) REGISTER IN EXPRESSION
Register name in expression.
Correct the expression.

411  (E) INVALID STARTOF/SIZEOF OPERAND
STARTOF or SIZEOF specifies illegal section name.
Correct the section name.

412  (E) ILLEGAL SYMBOL IN EXPRESSION
Relative-address value specified as shift value.
Correct the expression.

450  (E) ILLEGAL DISPLACEMENT VALUE
Illegal displacement value. (Negative value is specified.)
Correct the displacement value.

452  (E) ILLEGAL DATA AREA ADDRESS
PC-relative data transfer instruction specifies illegal address for data area.
Access a correct address according to the instruction operation size. (4-byte boundary for MOV.L and MOVA, and 2-byte boundary for MOV.W.)

453  (E) LITERAL POOL OVERFLOW
More than 510 extended instructions exist that have not output literals.
Output literal pools using .POOL.
460 (E) ILLEGAL SYMBOL
A label which does not reference a forward position, an undefined symbol, or a symbol other than a label is specified as an operand of a REPEAT, or the start address comes after (which means at a higher address than) the end address.
Correct the operand.

461 (E) SYNTAX ERROR IN OPERAND
Illegal operand.
Correct the operand.

462 (E) ILLEGAL VALUE IN OPERAND
The distance between a REPEAT and the label is out of range.
Correct the location of the REPEAT or the label.

463 (E) NO INSTRUCTION IN REPEAT LOOP
No instruction is found in a REPEAT loop, or no instruction is found at the end address.
Write an instruction between the start and end addresses, or specify an address storing an instruction as the end address.

500 (E) SYMBOL NOT FOUND
Label not defined in directive that requires label.
Insert a label.

501 (E) ILLEGAL ADDRESS VALUE IN OPERAND
Illegal specification of the start address or the value of location counter in section.
Correct the start address or value of location counter.

502 (E) ILLEGAL SYMBOL IN OPERAND
Illegal value (forward reference symbol, import symbol, relative-address symbol, or undefined symbol) specified in operand.
Correct the operand.

503 (E) UNDEFINED EXPORT SYMBOL
Symbol declared for export symbol not defined in the file.
Define the symbol. Alternatively, remove the export symbol declaration.

504 (E) INVALID RELATIVE SYMBOL IN OPERAND
Illegal value (forward reference symbol or import symbol) specified in operand.
Correct the operand.
505  (E) ILLEGAL OPERAND  
Misspelled operand.  
Correct the operand.

506  (E) ILLEGAL OPERAND  
Illegal element specified in operand.  
Correct the operand.

508  (E) ILLEGAL VALUE IN OPERAND  
Operand value out of range for this directive.  
Correct the operand.

510  (E) ILLEGAL BOUNDARY VALUE  
Illegal boundary alignment value.  
Correct the boundary alignment value.

512  (E) ILLEGAL EXECUTION START ADDRESS  
Illegal execution start address.  
Correct the execution start address.

513  (E) ILLEGAL REGISTER NAME  
Illegal register name.  
Correct the register name.

514  (E) INVALID EXPORT SYMBOL  
Symbol declared for export symbol that cannot be exported.  
Remove the declaration for the export symbol.

516  (E) EXCLUSIVE DIRECTIVES  
Inconsistent directive specification.  
Check and correct all related directives.

517  (E) INVALID VALUE IN OPERAND  
Illegal value (forward reference symbol, an import symbol, or relative-address symbol) specified in operand.  
Correct the operand.

518  (E) INVALID IMPORT SYMBOL  
Symbol declared for import defined in the file.  
Remove the declaration for the import symbol.
519  **(E) ILLEGAL SYMBOL IN OPERAND**
A symbol whose value is an address or a location counter value is specified for a constant value operand when the CPU type is SH2A or SH2A-FPU. Do not specify such a value for an operand when the CPU type is SH2A or SH2A-FPU.

520  **(E) ILLEGAL .CPU DIRECTIVE POSITION**
.CPU is not specified at the beginning of the program, or specified more than once. Specify .CPU at the beginning of the program once.

521  **(E) ILLEGAL .NOPOOL DIRECTIVE POSITION**
.NOPool placed at illegal position. Place .NOPool following a delayed branch instruction.

522  **(E) ILLEGAL .POOL DIRECTIVE POSITION**
.POOL placed following a delayed branch instruction. Place an executable instruction following the delayed branch instruction.

523  **(E) ILLEGAL OPERAND**
Illegal .LINE operand. Correct the operand.

525  **(E) ILLEGAL .LINE DIRECTIVE POSITION**
.LINE specified during macro expansion or conditional iterated expansion. Change the specified position of .LINE.

526  **(E) STRING TOO LONG**
The operand character string has more than 255 characters. The character strings to specify to the operand of .SDATA, .SDATAB, .SDATAC, and .SDATAZ directives must have 255 or less characters.

527  **(E) CANNOT SUPPORT COMMON SECTION SINCE VERSION 5**
COMMON is specified for the section attribute. Common section cannot be used. More than one section can be allocated to the same address by using a colon (:) in the start option of the optimizing linkage editor.

528  **(E) SPECIFICATION OF THE ADDRESS OVERLAPS**
Address allocation overlaps in a section. Check the specified contents of .SECTION and .ORG.
529  (E) THE ADDRESS BETWEEN SECTIONS OVERLAPS
Address allocation overlaps between sections.
Check the specified contents of .SECTION and .ORG.

530  (E) ILLEGAL OPERAND
Error in the operand of .FILE.
Correct the operand in .FILE.

531  (E) ILLEGAL .FILE DIRECTIVE POSITION
Macro expansion or conditional iterated expansion is specified for .FILE.
Correct the location of .FILE.

532  (E) ILLEGAL OPERAND
Error in the operand of .STACK.
Correct the stack value to be a multiple of 4.

533  (E) ILLEGAL .STACK DIRECTIVE POSITION
.STACK is specified in macro expansion or conditional iterated expansion.
Correct the location of .STACK.

600  (E) INVALID CHARACTER
Illegal character.
Correct it.

601  (E) INVALID DELIMITER
Illegal delimiter character.
Correct it.

602  (E) INVALID CHARACTER STRING FORMAT
Character string error.
Correct it.

603  (E) SYNTAX ERROR IN SOURCE STATEMENT
Source statement syntax error.
Check and correct the whole source statement.

604  (E) ILLEGAL SYMBOL IN OPERAND
Illegal operand specified in a directive.
No symbol or location counter ($) can be specified as an operand of this directive.
610  (E) MULTIPLE MACRO NAMES
Macro name reused in macro definition (.MACRO directive).
Correct the macro name.

611  (E) MACRO NAME NOT FOUND
Macro name not specified (.MACRO directive).
Specify a macro name in the name field of the .MACRO directive.

612  (E) ILLEGAL MACRO NAME
Macro name error (.MACRO directive).
Correct the macro name.

613  (E) ILLEGAL .MACRO DIRECTIVE POSITION
.MACRO directive appears in macro body (between .MACRO and .ENDM directives),
between .AREPEAT and .AENDR directives, or between .AWHILE and .AENDW directives.
Remove the .MACRO directive.

614  (E) MULTIPLE MACRO PARAMETERS
Identical formal parameters repeated in formal parameter declaration in macro definition
(.MACRO directive).
Correct the formal parameters.

615  (E) ILLEGAL .END DIRECTIVE POSITION
.END directive appears in macro body (between .MACRO and .ENDM directives).
Remove the .END directive.

616  (E) MACRO DIRECTIVES MISMATCH
. ENDM directive appears without a preceding .MACRO directive, or an .EXITM directive
appears outside of a macro body (between .MACRO and .ENDM directives), outside
of .AREPEAT and .AENDR directives, or outside of .AWHILE and .AENDW directives.
Remove the .ENDM or .EXITM directive.

618  (E) MACRO EXPANSION TOO LONG
Line with over 8,192 characters generated by macro expansion.
Correct the definition or call so that the line is less than or equal to 8,192 characters.
619  (E) ILLEGAL MACRO PARAMETER
Macro parameter name error in macro call, or error in formal parameter in a macro body (between .MACRO and .ENDM directives).
Correct the formal parameter.
When there is an error in a formal parameter in a macro body, the error will be detected and flagged during macro expansion.

620  (E) UNDEFINED PREPROCESSOR VARIABLE
Reference to an undefined preprocessor variable.
Define the preprocessor variable.

621  (E) ILLEGAL .END DIRECTIVE POSITION
.END directive in macro expansion.
Remove the .END directive.

622  (E) ')' NOT FOUND
Matching parenthesis missing in macro processing exclusion.
Add the missing macro processing exclusion parenthesis.

623  (E) SYNTAX ERROR IN STRING FUNCTION
Syntax error in character string manipulation function.
Check and correct the character string manipulation function.

624  (E) MACRO PARAMETERS MISMATCH
Too many numbers of macro parameters for positional specification in macro call.
Correct the number of macro parameters.

631  (E) END DIRECTIVE MISMATCH
Terminating preprocessor directive does not agree with matching directive.
Check and correct the preprocessor directives.

640  (E) SYNTAX ERROR IN OPERAND
Syntax error in conditional assembly directive operand.
Check and correct the whole source statement.

641  (E) INVALID RELATIONAL OPERATOR
Error in conditional assembly directive relational operator.
Correct the relational operator.
642  (E) ILLEGAL .END DIRECTIVE POSITION
.END directive appears between .AREPEAT and .AENDR directives or between .AWHILE
and .AENDW directives.
Remove the .END directive.

643  (E) DIRECTIVE MISMATCH
.AENDR or .AENDW directive does not form a proper pair with .AREPEAT or .AWHILE
directive.
Check and correct the preprocessor directives.

644  (E) ILLEGAL .AENDW OR .AENDR DIRECTIVE POSITION
.AENDW or .AENDR directive appears between .AIF and .AENDI directives.
Remove the .AENDW or .AENDR directive.

645  (E) EXPANSION TOO LONG
After .AREPEAT or .AWHILE expansion, the number of characters in a line exceeds 8,192
characters.
Correct the .AREPEAT or .AWHILE to generate lines of less than or equal to 8,192 characters.

650  (E) INVALID INCLUDE FILE
Error in .INCLUDE file name.
Correct the file name.

651  (E) CANNOT OPEN INCLUDE FILE
Could not open the file specified by .INCLUDE directive.
Correct the file name.

652  (E) INCLUDE NEST TOO DEEP
File inclusion nesting exceeded 30 levels.
Limit the nesting to 30 or fewer levels.

653  (E) SYNTAX ERROR IN OPERAND
Syntax error in .INCLUDE operand.
Correct the operand.

660  (E) .ENDM NOT FOUND
Missing .ENDM following .MACRO.
Insert .ENDM.
662  (E) ILLEGAL .END DIRECTIVE POSITION
.END appears between .AIF and .AENDI directives.
Remove .END.

663  (E) ILLEGAL .END DIRECTIVE POSITION
.END appears in included file.
Remove .END.

664  (E) ILLEGAL .END DIRECTIVE POSITION
.END appears between .AIF and .AENDI directives.
Remove .END.

665  (E) EXPANSION TOO LONG
The number of line characters exceeds 8,192 in .DEFINE.
Correct the characters as 8,192 or less.

667  (E) SUCCESSFUL CONDITION .AERROR
Statement including .AERROR was processed in the .AIF condition.
Check and correct the conditional statement so that .AERROR is not processed.

668  (E) ILLEGAL VALUE IN OPERAND
Error in the operand of .AIFDEF.
Specify, as the operand of this directive, a symbol defined by .DEFINE.

669  (E) STRING TOO LONG
The operand character string exceeds 255 characters.
The character strings to specify to the operand of .ASSIGNC, .DEFINE, and character manipulating functions (.LEN, .INSTR, and .SUBSTR) must have 255 or less characters.

670  (E) ILLEGAL SYMBOL IN OPERAND
A symbol other than a preprocessor variable is specified in a preprocessor directive when the CPU type is SH2A or SH2A-FPU.
Correct the symbol.

700  (W) ILLEGAL VALUE IN OPERAND (<mnemonic>)
The operand value of the DSP operation instruction is out of range.
Correct the operand value.
701  (W) MULTIPLE REGISTER IN DESTINATION (<mnemonic>, <mnemonic>)
The same register is specified as multiple destination operands of the DSP instruction.
Specify the register correctly.

702  (W) ILLEGAL OPERATION SIZE (<mnemonic>)
The operation size of the DSP operation instruction or the data transfer instruction is illegal.
Cancel or correct the operation size.

703  (W) MULTIPLE REGISTER IN DESTINATION (<mnemonic>, <mnemonic>)
The same register is specified as the destination registers of the DSP operation instruction and data
transfer instruction.
Specify the register correctly.

704  (W) A PRIVILEGED INSTRUCTION "mnemonic" IS USED
A privileged instruction is found when the CHKMD option is specified.

705  (W) A LDTLB INSTRUCTION IS USED
A LDTLB instruction is found when the CHKTLB option is specified.

706  (W) A CACHE INSTRUCTION "mnemonic" IS USED
A cache-related instruction is found when the CHKCACHE option is specified.

707  (W) A DSP INSTRUCTION "mnemonic" IS USED
A DSP-related instruction is found when the CHKDSP option is specified.

708  (W) A FPU INSTRUCTION "mnemonic" IS USED
An FPU-related instruction is found when the CHKFPU option is specified.

800  (W) SYMBOL NAME TOO LONG
A preprocessor variable name exceeds 32 characters.
Correct the preprocessor variable.
The assembler ignores the 33rd and later characters.

801  (W) MULTIPLE SYMBOLS
Symbol already defined.
Remove the symbol redefinition.
The assembler ignores the second and later definitions.
807 (W) ILLEGAL OPERATION SIZE
Illegal operation size.
Correct the operation size.
The assembler ignores the incorrect operation size specification.

808 (W) ILLEGAL CONSTANT SIZE
Illegal notation of integer constant.
Correct the notation.
The assembler may misinterpret the integer constant, i.e., interpret it as a value not intended by the programmer.

810 (W) TOO MANY OPERANDS
Too many operands or illegal comment format.
Correct the operand or the comment.
The assembler ignores the extra operands.

811 (W) ILLEGAL SYMBOL DEFINITION
A label specified in assembler directive that cannot have a label is written.
Remove the label.
The assembler ignores the label.

813 (W) SECTION ATTRIBUTE MISMATCH
A different section type is specified on section restart, or a section start address is respecified at the restart of absolute-address section.
Do not respecify a different section type or a start address on section restart.
The specification of starting section remains valid.

814 (W) ILLEGAL OBJECT CODE SIZE
Illegal allocation size.
Only :12 can be specified for the allocation size.

815 (W) MULTIPLE MODULE NAMES
Respecification of object module name.
Specify the object module name once in a program.
The assembler ignores the second and later object module name specifications.
816  (W) ILLEGAL DATA AREA ADDRESS
Illegal allocation of data or data area.
Locate the word data or data area on an even address. Locate the long-word or single-precision data or data area on an address of a multiple of 4. Locate the double-precision data or data area on an address of a multiple of 8.
The assembler corrects the location of the data or data area according to its specified size.

817  (W) ILLEGAL BOUNDARY VALUE
A boundary alignment value less than 4 specified for a code section or stack section.
The specification is valid, but if an executable instruction, DSP instruction, or extended instruction is located at an odd address, warning 882 occurs.
Special care must be taken when specifying 1 for code section or stack section boundary alignment value.

818  (W) COMMANDLINE OPTION MISMATCH FOR FLOATING DIRECTIVE
When the CPU type is SH2E, round=nearest or denormalize=on is specified, or when the CPU type is SH2A-FPU, denormalize=on is specified.
Change the specification in the round or denormalize option.
The assembler creates the object code according to the specification in the round or denormalize option.

825  (W) ILLEGAL INSTRUCTION IN DUMMY SECTION
An executable instruction, DSP instruction, extended instruction, or assembler directive that reserves data is in dummy section.
Remove, from the dummy section, the executable instruction, DSP instruction, extended instruction, or assembler directive that reserves data.
The assembler ignores the executable instruction, DSP instruction, extended instruction, or assembler directive that reserves data in dummy section.

826  (W) ILLEGAL PRECISION
The floating-point constant does not have the same precision specified with the operation size.
Correct the operation size or the precision type of the floating-point constant.
The assembler assumes the precision specified with the operation size.

832  (W) MULTIPLE ‘P’ DEFINITIONS
Symbol P already defined before a default section is used.
Do not define P as a symbol if a default section is used.
The assembler regards P as the name of the default section, and ignores other definitions of the symbol P.
835  (W) ILLEGAL VALUE IN OPERAND
Operand value out of range for the executable instruction.
Correct the value.
The assembler generates object code with a value corrected to be within range.

836  (W) ILLEGAL CONSTANT SIZE
Illegal notation of integer constant.
Correct the notation.
The assembler may misinterpret the integer constant, i.e., interpret it as a value not intended by the programmer.

837  (W) SOURCE STATEMENT TOO LONG
After .AREPEAT or .AWHILE expansion, the number of characters in a line exceeds 8192 characters.
Rewrite the source statement to be within 8,192 bytes by, for example, rewriting the comment.
Alternatively, rewrite the statement as a multi-line statement.

838  (W) ILLEGAL CHARACTER CODE
The shift JIS code, EUC code, or LATIN1 code is specified outside character strings and comments, or the sjis, euc, or latin1 option is not specified.
Specify the shift JIS code, EUC code, LATIN1 code in character strings or comments. Or specify the sjis, euc, or latin1 option.

839  (W) ILLEGAL FIGURE IN OPERAND
Fixed-point data having six or more digits is specified in word size, or that having 11 or more digits is specified in long-word size.
Reduce the digits to the limit.

840  (W) OPERAND OVERFLOW
Floating-point data overflowed.
Modify the value.
The assembler assumes +∞ when the value is positive and −∞ when negative.

841  (W) OPERAND UNDERFLOW
Floating-point data underflowed.
Modify the value.
The assembler assumes +0 when the value is positive and −0 when negative.
842  (W) OPERAND DENORMALIZED
Denormalized numbers are specified for floating-point data.
Check and correct the floating-point data.
The assembler creates the object code according to the specification (sets denormalized numbers).

843  (W) INEFFECTIVE FLOATING POINT OPERATION
An invalid operation such as $\infty - \infty$ or $0.0 / 0.0$ is specified in a constant expression.
An internal representation corresponding to a not-a-number, which represents an invalid operation result, is assumed.

844  (W) DIVISION BY FLOATING POINT ZERO
Division by zero is specified in a constant expression.
An internal representation corresponding to $+\infty$ or $-\infty$ is assumed depending on the sign.

845  (W) ILLEGAL IMMEDIATE VALUE
Illegal immediate value; the lower eight bits are not 0.
The assembler corrects the lower eight bits of the immediate value to be 0.

850  (W) ILLEGAL SYMBOL DEFINITION
Symbol specified in label field.
Remove the symbol.

851  (W) MACRO SERIAL NUMBER OVERFLOW
Macro serial number exceeded 99,999.
Reduce the number of macro calls.

852  (W) UNNECESSARY CHARACTER
Characters appear after the operands.
Correct the operand(s).

854  (W) .AWHILE ABORTED BY .ALIMIT
Expansion count has reached the maximum value specified by .ALIMIT, and expansion has been terminated.
Check and correct the condition for iterated expansion.

856  (W) MULTIPLE SYMBOLS
A stack value is defined for the same symbol again.
Remove the stack value redefinition.
The assembler ignores the second and later definitions.
870  (W) ILLEGAL DISPLACEMENT VALUE
Illegal displacement value.
Either the displacement value is not an even number when the operation size is word, or the
displacement value is not a multiple of 4 when the operation size is long word.
Take account of the fact that the assembler corrects the displacement value.
The assembler generates object code with the displacement corrected according to the operation
size.
For a word size operation the assembler discards the low order bit of the displacement to create an
even number, and for a long-word-size operation the assembler discards the two low order bits of
the displacement to create a multiple of 4.

874  (W) CANNOT CHECK DATA AREA BOUNDARY
Cannot check data area boundary for PC-relative data transfer instructions.
Note carefully the data area boundary at linkage process.
The assembler outputs this message when a data transfer instruction is included in a relative-
address section, or when an import symbol is used to indicate a data area.

875  (W) CANNOT CHECK DISPLACEMENT SIZE
Cannot check displacement size for PC-relative data transfer instructions.
Note carefully the distance between data transfer instructions and data area at linkage.
The assembler outputs this message when a data transfer instruction is included in a relative-
address section, or when an import symbol is used to indicate a data area.

876  (W) ASSEMBLER OUTPUTS BRA INSTRUCTION
The assembler automatically outputs a BRA instruction.
Specify a literal pool output position using .POOL, or check that the program to which a BRA
instruction is added can run normally.
When a literal pool output location is not available, the assembler automatically outputs literal
pool and a BRA instruction to jump over the literal pool.

880  (W) .END NOT FOUND
No .END in the program.
Insert an .END.

881  (W) ILLEGAL DIRECTIVE IN REPEAT LOOP
An illegal assembler directive was found in a .REPEAT loop.
Delete the directive.
If a directive that reserves a data item or a data area, .ALIGN, or .ORG is used in a .REPEAT loop,
the assembler counts the directive as one of the instructions to be repeated.
882  (W) ILLEGAL ADDRESS
The executable instruction and extended instruction are written in an odd address.
Write the executable instruction and extended instruction are written in an even address.

883  (W) MULTIPLE FILE NAMES
.FILE is specified more than once.
The second and later specifications are ignored.

884  (W) "CPU type 1" is interpreted as "CPU type 2"
cpu=<CPU type 1> is invalid.
It is interpreted as cpu=<CPU type 2> for assembling.

885  (W) CANNOT SUPPORT "CPU type"
The CPU type specified by .CPU is not supported.
It is interpreted as the CPU type specified by the cpu option.

901  (F) SOURCE FILE INPUT ERROR
Source file input error.
Check the hard disk for adequate free space. Create the required free space, e.g. by deleting unnecessary files.

902  (F) MEMORY OVERFLOW
Insufficient memory. (Unable to process the temporary information.)
Subdivide the program.

903  (F) LISTING FILE OUTPUT ERROR
Output error on the listing file.
Check the hard disk for adequate free space. Create the required free space, e.g. by deleting unnecessary files.

904  (F) OBJECT FILE OUTPUT ERROR
Output error on the object file.
Check the hard disk for adequate free space. Create the required free space, e.g. by deleting unnecessary files.
905  (F) MEMORY OVERFLOW
Insufficient memory. (Unable to process the line information.)
Subdivide the program.

906  (F) MEMORY OVERFLOW
Insufficient memory. (Unable to process the symbol information.)
Subdivide the program.

907  (F) MEMORY OVERFLOW
Insufficient memory. (Unable to process the section information.)
Subdivide the program.

908  (F) SECTION OVERFLOW
Too much number of sections.
When debugging information is output, up to 62,265 sections can be enabled.
When debugging information is not output, up to 65,274 sections can be enabled.
Subdivide the program.

933  (F) ILLEGAL ENVIRONMENT VARIABLE
The specified target CPU is incorrect.
Correct the target CPU.

935  (F) SUBCOMMAND FILE INPUT ERROR
Subcommand file input error.
Check the hard disk for adequate free space. Create the required free space, e.g. by deleting
unnecessary files.

950  (F) MEMORY OVERFLOW
Insufficient memory.
Subdivide the source program.

951  (F) LITERAL POOL OVERFLOW
The number of literal pools exceeds 100,000.
Subdivide the source program.

952  (F) LITERAL POOL OVERFLOW
Literal pool capacity overflow.
Insert unconditional branch before overflow.
953  (F) MEMORY OVERFLOW
Insufficient memory.
Subdivide the source program.

954  (F) LOCAL BLOCK NUMBER OVERFLOW
The number of local blocks that are valid in the local label exceeds 100,000.
Subdivide the source program.

956  (F) EXPAND FILE INPUT/OUTPUT ERROR
File output error for preprocessor expansion.
Check the hard disk for adequate free space. Create the required free space, e.g. by deleting
unnecessary files.

957  (F) MEMORY OVERFLOW
Insufficient memory.
Subdivide the source program.

958  (F) MEMORY OVERFLOW
Insufficient memory.
Subdivide the source program.

964  (F) MEMORY OVERFLOW
Insufficient memory (Unable to process the symbol information).
Subdivide the source program.

970  (F) MEMORY OVERFLOW
Insufficient memory.
Section size is too large. A large offset may have been given to the location counter using .ORG,
or a large data area may have been reserved by using directives such as .DATAB.
Subdivide the section or reduce the data area.
Section 14  Error Messages for the Optimizing Linkage Editor

14.1  Error Format and Error Levels

This section gives a list of error messages and explains details of errors in the following format.

Error number  (Error level) Error message
               Error details

There are five different error levels, corresponding to different degrees of seriousness.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Number</th>
<th>Error Level</th>
<th>Error Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L0000–L0999</td>
<td>(I)</td>
<td>Information</td>
<td>Processing is continued.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P0000–P0999</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L1000–L1999</td>
<td>(W)</td>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>Processing is continued.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P1000–P1999</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L2000–L2999</td>
<td>(E)</td>
<td>Error</td>
<td>Option analysis processing is continued;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P2000–P2999</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>processing is interrupted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L3000–L3999</td>
<td>(F)</td>
<td>Fatal</td>
<td>Processing is interrupted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P3000–P3999</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L4000–</td>
<td>(−)</td>
<td>Internal</td>
<td>Processing is interrupted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P4000–</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Error numbers beginning with an L are optimizing linkage editor output messages.

Error numbers beginning with a P are prelinker output messages. Output of errors with numbers beginning with a P cannot be controlled using the nomessage or change_message options.

14.2  Return Values for Errors

When terminating execution, the optimizing linkage editor returns a numeric value to the OS indicating the processing result as shown below.
14.3 List of Messages

L0001 (I) Section "section" created by optimization "optimization"
The section named section was created as a result of the optimization.

L0002 (I) Symbol "symbol" created by optimization "optimization"
The symbol named symbol was created as a result of the optimization.

L0003 (I) "file"-"symbol" moved to "section" by optimization
As a result of variable_access optimization, the symbol named symbol in file was moved.

L0004 (I) "file"-"symbol" deleted by optimization
As a result of symbol_delete optimization, the symbol named symbol in file was deleted.

L0005 (I) The offset value from the symbol location has been changed by optimization :
"file"-"section"-"symbol ± offset"
As a result of the size being changed by optimization within the range of symbol ± offset, the offset value was changed. Check that this does not cause a problem. To disable changing of the offset value, cancel the specification of the goptimize option on assembly of file.

L0100 (I) No inter-module optimization information in "file"
No inter-module optimization information was found in file. Inter-module optimization is not performed on file. To perform inter-module optimization, specify the goptimize option on compiling and assembly. Note however that the goptimize option is not available in asms.

L0101 (I) No stack information in "file"
No stack information was found in file. file may be an assembler output file or a SYSROF-> ELF converted file. The contents of the file will not be in the stack information file output by the optimizing linkage editor.
L0102  (I) Stack size "size" specified to the undefined symbol "symbol" in "file"
Stack size size is specified for the undefined symbol named symbol in file.

L0103  (I) Multiple stack sizes specified to the symbol "symbol"
Multiple stack sizes are specified for the symbol named symbol.

L0300  (I) Mode type "mode type 1" in "file" differ from "mode type 2"
A file with a different mode type was input.

L0400  (I) Unused symbol "file"--"symbol"
The symbol named symbol in file is not used.

L0500  (I) Generated CRC code at "address"
Generated CRC code at address.

L0510  (I) Section "section" was moved other area specified in option "cpu=<attribute>"
section without dividing is allocated according to cpu=<attribute>.

L0511  (I) Sections "section name","new section name" are Non-contiguous
section was divided and the newly created section is new section name.

L1000  (W) Option "option" ignored
The option named option is invalid, and is ignored.

L1001  (W) Option "option 1" is ineffective without option "option 2"
option 1 needs specifying option 2. option 1 is ignored.

L1002  (W) Option "option 1" cannot be combined with option "option 2"
option 1 and option 2 cannot be specified simultaneously. option 1 is ignored.

L1003  (W) Divided output file cannot be combined with option "option"
option and the option to divide the output file cannot be specified simultaneously. option is ignored. The first input file name is used as the output file name.

L1004  (W) Fatal level message cannot be changed to other level : "number"
The level of a fatal error type message cannot be changed. The specification of number is ignored. Only errors at the information/warning/error level can be changed with the change_message option.

L1005  (W) Subcommand file terminated with end option instead of exit option
There is no processing specification following the end option. Processing is done with the exit option assumed.
L1006  (W) Options following exit option ignored
All options following the exit option is ignored.

L1007  (W) Duplicate option : "option"
Duplicate specifications of option were found. Only the last specification is effective.

L1008  (W) Option "option" is effective only in cpu type "CPU type" option is effective only in CPU type. option is ignored.

L1010  (W) Duplicate file specified in option "option" : "file" option was used to specify the same file twice. The second specification is ignored.

L1011  (W) Duplicate module specified in option "option" : "module" option was used to specify the same module twice. The second specification is ignored.

L1012  (W) Duplicate symbol/section specified in option "option" : "name" option was used to specify the same symbol name or section name twice. The second specification is ignored.

L1013  (W) Duplicate number specified in option "option" : "number" option was used to specify the same error number. Only the last specification is effective.

L1100  (W) Cannot find "name" specified in option "option"
The symbol name or section name specified in option cannot be found. The name specification is ignored.

L1101  (W) "name" in rename option conflicts between symbol and section name specified by the rename option exists as both a section name and as a symbol name. Rename is performed for the symbol name only in this case.

L1102  (W) Symbol "symbol" redefined in option "option"
The symbol specified by option has already been defined. Processing is continued without any change.

L1103  (W) Invalid address value specified in option "option" : "address" address specified by option is invalid. The address specification is ignored.

L1104  (W) Invalid section specified in option "option" : "section"
An invalid section was specified in option. Confirm the following:
(1) The -output option does not accept a section that has no initial value.
(2) The -jump_entries_for_pic option accepts only a program section.
L1110  (W) Entry symbol "symbol" in entry option conflicts
A symbol other than symbol specified by the entry option is specified as the entry symbol on compiling or assembling. The option specification is given priority.

L1120  (W) Section address is not assigned to "section"
section has no addresses specified for it. section will be located at the rearmost address. Specify the address of the section using the optimizing linkage editor option -start.

L1121  (W) Address cannot be assigned to absolute section "section" in start option
section is an absolute address section. An address assigned to an absolute address section is ignored.

L1122  (W) Section address in start option is incompatible with alignment : "section"
The address of section specified by the start option conflicts with memory boundary alignment requirements. The section address is modified to conform to boundary alignment.

L1130  (W) Section attribute mismatch in rom option : "section 1, section 2"
The attributes and boundary alignment of section 1 and section 2 specified by the rom option are different. The larger value is effective as the boundary alignment of section 2.

L1140  (W) Load address overflowed out of record-type in option "option"
A record type smaller than the address value was specified. The range exceeding the specified record type has been output as different record type.

L1141  (W) Cannot fill unused area from "address" with the specified value
Specified data cannot be output to addresses higher than address because the unused area size is not a multiple of the value specified by the space option.

L1150  (W) Sections in "option" option have no symbol
The section specified in option does not have an externally defined symbol.

L1160  (W) Undefined external symbol "symbol"
An undefined external symbol symbol was referenced.

L1170  (W) Specified SBR addresses conflict
Different SBR addresses have been specified. Processing is done with SBR=USER assumed.

L1171  (W) Least significant byte in SBR="constant" ignored
The least significant 8 bits in address constant specified by the SBR option are ignored.
L1180  (W) Directive command "directive" is duplicated in "file"
   directive was specified in multiple source files.
   directive cannot be written more than once across files.

L1181  (W) Fail to write "type of output code"
   Failed to write type of output code to the output file.
   The output file may not contain the address to which type of output code should be output.
   Type of output code:
   When failed to write ID code -> ID Code
   →L1181 Fail to write "ID Code"
   When failed to write PROTECT/OFSREG code -> Protect Code or OFSREG Code
   →L1181 Fail to write "Protect Code" or "OFSREG Code"
   When failed to write CRC code -> CRC Code
   →L1181 Fail to write "CRC Code"

L1182  (W) Cannot generate vector table section "section"
   The input file contains vector table section. The linkage editor does not create the section automatically.

L1183  (W) Interrupt number "vector number" of "section" is defined in input file
   The vector number specified by the VECTN option is defined in the input file.
   Processing is continued with priority given on the definition in the input file.

L1190  (W) Section "section" was moved other area specified in option "cpu=<memory attribute>"
   The object size was modified through optimization of access to external variables.
   Accordingly, the section in the area specified by the next cpu specification was moved.

L1191  (W) Area of "FIX" is within the range of the area specified by "cpu=<memory type>:" "<start>-<end>"
   In the cpu option, the address range of <start>-<end> specified for FIX overlapped with that specified for another memory type. The setting for FIX is valid.

L1192  (W) Bss Section "section name" is not initialized
   section name, which is a data section without an initial value, cannot be initialized by the initial setup program. Check the address range specified with –cpu and the sizes of pointer variables.
L1193  (W) Section "section name" specified in option "option" is ignored
option specified for the section newly created due to -cpu=stride is invalid. Do not
specify option for the newly created section.

L1194  (W) Section "option" in relocation "file"."section"."offset" is changed.
The relocation section file offset now refers to a location in the new section created with
the division of section. To prevent division, declare the contiguous_section option for
section.

L1200  (W) Backed up file "file 1" into "file 2"
Input file file 1 was overwritten. A backup copy of the data in the previous version of file
1 was saved in file 2.

L1300  (W) No debug information in input files
There is no debugging information in the input files. The debug, sdebug, or compress
option has been ignored. Check whether the relevant option was specified at compilation
or assembly.

L1301  (W) No inter-module optimization information in input files
No inter-module optimization information is present in the input files. The optimize
option has been ignored. Check whether the goptimize option was specified at
compilation or assembly.

L1302  (W) No stack information in input files
No stack information is present in the input files. The stack option is ignored. If all input
files are assembler output files or SYSROF->ELF converted files, the stack option is
ignored.

L1303  (W) No rts information in input files
No information in input files to generate .rts file. The processing will end without
creating an .rts file.

L1304  (W) No utl information in input files
The information necessary to generate a utl file was not input.

L1305  (W) Entry address in "file" conflicts : "address"
Multiple files with different entry addresses are input.

L1310  (W) "section" in "file" is not supported in this tool
An unsupported section was present in file section has been ignored.
L1311 (W) Invalid debug information format in "file"
Debugging information in file is not dwarf2. The debugging information has been deleted.

L1320 (W) Duplicate symbol "symbol" in "file"
The symbol named symbol is duplicated. The symbol in the first file input is given priority.

L1321 (W) Entry symbol "symbol" in "file" conflicts
Multiple object files containing more than one entry symbol definition were input. Only the entry symbol in the first file input is effective.

L1322 (W) Section alignment mismatch : "section"
Sections with the same name but different boundary alignments were input. Only the largest boundary alignment specification is effective.

L1323 (W) Section attribute mismatch : "section"
Sections with the same name but different attributes were input. If they are an absolute section and relative section, the section is treated as an absolute section. If the read/write attributes mismatch, both are allowed.

L1324 (W) Symbol size mismatch : "symbol" in "file"
Common symbols or defined symbols with different sizes were input. A defined symbol is given priority. In the case of two common symbols, the symbol in the first file input is given priority.

L1325 (W) Symbol attribute mismatch : "symbol":"file"
The attribute of symbol in file does not match the attribute of the same-name symbol in other files. Check the symbol.

L1326 (W) Reserved symbol "symbol" is defined in "file"
Reserved symbol name symbol is defined in the file.

L1327 (W) Section alignment in option "aligned_section" is small : "section"
Since the boundary alignment value specified for the aligned_section option is 16, which is smaller than that of section, the option settings made for that section are ignored.

L1330 (W) Cpu type "CPU type 1" in "file" differ from "CPU type 2"
Files with different CPU types were input. Processing is continued with the CPU type assumed as H8SX.
L1400 (W) Stack size overflow in register optimization
During register optimization, the stack access code exceeded the stack size limit of the compiler. The register optimization specification has been ignored.

L1401 (W) Function call nest too deep
The number of function call nesting levels is so deep that register optimization cannot be performed.

L1402 (W) Parentheses specified in option "start" with optimization
Optimization is not available when parentheses "( )" are specified in the start option. Optimization has been disabled.

L1410 (W) Cannot optimize "file"."section" due to multi label relocation operation
A section having multiple label relocation operations cannot be optimized. Section section in file file has not been optimized.

L1420 (W) "file" is newer than "profile"
file was updated after profile. The profile information has been ignored.

L1430 (W) Cannot generate effective bls file for compiler optimization
An invalid bls file was created. This optimization is not available even if optimization of access to external variables (map option) is specified for compilation. The optimization of access to external variables (map option) in the compiler has the following restriction. Check if this restriction is applicable and modify the section allocation.

Access to external variables cannot be optimized in some cases if a data section is allocated immediately after a program section when the base option is specified for compilation.

Note: The bls file indicates the external symbol allocation information file. It contains the information to be used for the map option of the compiler.

L1500 (W) Cannot check stack size
There is no stack section, and so consistency of the stack size specified by the stack option on compiling cannot be checked. To check the consistency of the stack size on compiling, the gopimize option needs to be specified on compiling and assembling.

L1501 (W) Stack size overflow : "stack size"
The stack section size exceeded the stack size specified by the stack option on
compiling. Either change the option used on compiling, or change the program so as to reduce the use of the stack.

L1502 (W) Stack size in "file" conflicts with that in another file
Different values for stack size are specified for multiple files. Check the options used on compiling.

L1510 (W) Input file was compiled with option "smap" and option "map" is specified at linkage
A file was compiled with smap specification. The file with smap specification should not be compiled with the map option specification in the second build processing.

P1600 (W) An error occurred during name decoding of "instance"
instance could not be decoded. The message is output using the encoding name.

L2000 (E) Invalid option : "option"
option is not supported.

L2001 (E) Option "option" cannot be specified on command line
option cannot be specified on the command line. Specify this option in a subcommand file.

L2002 (E) Input option cannot be specified on command line
The input option was specified on the command line. Input file specification on the command line should be made without the input option.

L2003 (E) Subcommand option cannot be specified in subcommand file
The subcommand option was specified in a subcommand file. The subcommand option cannot be nested.

L2004 (E) Option "option 1" cannot be combined with option "option 2"
option 1 and option 2 cannot be specified simultaneously.

L2005 (E) Option "option" cannot be specified while processing "process"
option cannot be specified for process.

L2006 (E) Option "option 1" is ineffective without option "option 2"
option 1 requires option 2 be specified.

L2010 (E) Option "option" requires parameter
option requires a parameter to be specified.
L2011  (E) Invalid parameter specified in option "option" : "parameter"
An invalid parameter was specified for option.

L2012  (E) Invalid number specified in option "option" : "value"
An invalid value was specified for option. Check the range of valid values.

L2013  (E) Invalid address value specified in option "option" : "address"
The address address specified in option is invalid. A hexadecimal address between 0 and FFFFFFFF should be specified.

L2014  (E) Illegal symbol/section name specified in "option" : "name"
The section or symbol name specified in option uses an illegal character. Only alphanumerics, the underscore (_), and the dollar sign ($) may be used in section/symbol names (the leading character cannot be a number).

L2016  (E) Invalid alignment value specified in option "option" : "alignment value"
The alignment value specified in option is invalid. 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, or 32 should be specified.

L2017  (E) Cannot output "section" specified in option "option"
Part of the code in section specified by option cannot be output. Part of the instruction code in section has been swapped with instruction code in another section due to endian conversion. Check the section address range with respect to 4-byte boundaries in the linkage list and find which section code is swapped with the target section code.
Note: The endian conversion function is available only in the RX Family CPU.

L2020  (E) Duplicate file specified in option "option" : "file"
The same file was specified twice in option.

L2021  (E) Duplicate symbol/section specified in option "option" : "name"
The same symbol name or section name was specified twice in option.

L2022  (E) Address ranges overlap in option "option" : "address range"
Address ranges address range specified in option overlap.

L2100  (E) Invalid address specified in cpu option : "address"
An invalid address was specified in the cpu option.

L2101  (E) Invalid address specified in option "option" : "address"
The address specified in option exceeds the address range that can be specified by the cpu or the range specified by the cpu option.
L2110  (E) Section size of second parameter in rom option is not 0 : "section"
section whose size is not zero was specified in the second parameter of the rom option.

L2111  (E) Absolute section cannot be specified in "option" option : "section"
An absolute address section was specified in option.

L2112  (E) "section 1" and "section 2" cannot mapped as ROM/RAM in "file"
section 1 and section 2 specified in the name of file are not ROM/RAM-mapped.

L2113  (E) Option "rom" and internal information in the file are conflicted
Specification of the rom option conflicts with the internal information.

L2120  (E) Library "file" without module name specified as input file
A library file without a module name was specified as the input file.

L2121  (E) Input file is not library file : "file (module)"
The file specified by file (module) as the input file is not a library file.

L2130  (E) Cannot find file specified in option "option" : "file"
The file specified in option could not be found.

L2131  (E) Cannot find module specified in option "option" : "module"
The module specified in option could not be found.

L2132  (E) Cannot find "name" specified in option "option"
The symbol or section specified in option does not exist.

L2133  (E) Cannot find defined symbol "name" in option "option"
The externally defined symbol specified in option does not exist.

L2140  (E) Symbol/section "name" redefined in option "option"
The symbol or section specified in option has already been defined.

L2141  (E) Module "module" redefined in option "option"
The module specified in option has already been defined.

L2142  (E) Interrupt number "vector number" of "section" has multiple definition
Vector number definition was made multiple times in vector table section. Only one address can be specified for a vector number. Check and correct the code in the source file.
L2143  (E) Invalid vector number specified: "number"
The vector number indicated by number is not allowed.
Check and correct the vector number specified with #pragma special.

L2200* (E) Illegal object file : "file"
A format other than ELF format was input.
* The error number will be shown as P2200.

L2201  (E) Illegal library file : "file"
file is not a library file.

L2202  (E) Illegal cpu information file : "file"
file is not a cpu information file.

L2203  (E) Illegal profile information file : "file"
file is not a profile information file.

L2210  (E) Invalid input file type specified for option "option" : "file (type)"
When specifying option, a file (type) that cannot be processed was input.

L2211  (E) Invalid input file type specified while processing "process" : "file (type)"
A file (type) that cannot be processed was input during processing process.

L2212  (E) "option" cannot be specified for inter-module optimization information in "file"
The option option cannot be used because file includes inter-module optimization information. Do not specify the goptimize option at compilation or assembly.

L2220  (E) Illegal mode type "mode type" in "file"
A file with a different mode type was input.

L2221  (E) Section type mismatch : "section"
Sections with the same name but different attributes (whether initial values present or not) were input.

L2223  (E) Cpu type "CPU type 1" in "file" is incompatible with "CPU type 2"
A different CPU type was input.
Since these types are incompatible in part of the specifications, even if the file is linked, correct operation cannot be guaranteed.

L2300  (E) Duplicate symbol "symbol" in "file"
There are duplicate occurrences of symbol.
L2301  (E) Duplicate module "module" in "file"
There are duplicate occurrences of module.

L2310  (E) Undefined external symbol "symbol" referenced in "file"
An undefined symbol symbol was referenced in file.

L2311  (E) Section "section 1" cannot refer to overlaid section : "section 2"-"symbol"
A symbol defined in section 1 was referenced in section 2 that is allocated to the same address as section 1 overlaid. section 1 and section 2 must not be allocated to the same address.

L2320  (E) Section address overflowed out of range : "section"
The address of section exceeds the usable address range.

L2321  (E) Section "section 1" overlaps section "section 2"
The addresses of section 1 and section 2 overlap. Change the address specified by the start option.

L2322  (E) Section size too large: "section"
The size of section is too large. The size of a STBR section must be 1024 bytes or less.

L2323  (E) Section "section 1 (address range)" overlaps with section "section 2 (address range)" in physical space
section 1 overlaps with section 2 in the physical memory. Check the addresses of the sections.
<address range>: <section start address> - <section end address>

L2330  (E) Relocation size overflow : "file"-"section"-"offset"
The result of the relocation operation exceeded the relocation size. Possible causes include inaccessibility of a branch destination, and referencing of a symbol which must be located at a specific address. Ensure that the referenced symbol at the offset position of section in the source list is placed at the correct position.

L2331  (E) Division by zero in relocation value calculation : "file"-"section"-"offset"
Division by zero occurred during a relocation operation. Check for problems in calculation of the position at offset in section in the source list.

L2332  (E) Relocation value is odd number : "file"-"section"-"offset"
The result of the relocation operation is an odd number. Check for problems in calculation of the position at offset in section in the source list.
L2340  (E) Symbol name "file"-"section"-"symbol..." is too long
    The number of characters comprising symbol in section exceeds the translation limit of
    the assembler.
    When outputting a symbol address file, make sure that the number of characters
    comprising the symbol name does not exceed the translation limit of the assembler.

L2400  (E) Global register in "file" conflicts : "symbol", "register"
    Another symbol has already been allocated to a global register specified in file.

L2401  (E) near8, near16 symbol "symbol" is outside near memory area
    symbol is not allocated in the near8 or near16 range. Either change the start
    specification, or remove the near specifier at compilation, so that correct address
    calculations can be made.

L2402  (E) Number of register parameter conflicts with that in another file : "function"
    Different numbers of register parameters are specified for function in multiple files.

L2403  (E) Fast interrupt register in "file" conflicts with that in another file
    The register number specified for the fast interrupt general register in file does not match
    the settings in other files. Correct the register number to match the other settings and
    recompile the code.

L2404  (E) Base register "base register type" in "file" conflicts with that in another file
    The register number specified for base register type in file does not match the settings in
    other files. Correct the register number to match the other settings and recompile the
    code.

L2405  (E) Option "compile option" conflicts with that in other files
    Specification of compile option is inconsistent between the input files.
    Check and correct compile option.

L2410  (E) Address value specified by map file differs from one after linkage as to
    "symbol"
    The address of symbol differs between the address within the external symbol allocation
    information file used at compilation and the address after linkage. Check (1) to (3) below.

(1)  Do not change the program before or after the map option specification at
     compilation.
(2) optLink optimization may cause the sequence of the symbols after the map option specification at compilation to differ from that before the map option. Disable the map option at compilation or disable the optLink option for optimization.

(3) When the tbr option or #pragma tbr is used, optimization by the compiler may delete symbols after the map option specification at compilation. Disable the map option at compilation or disable the tbr option or #pragma tbr.

L2411 (E) Map file in "file" conflicts with that in another file
Different external symbol allocation information files were used by the input files at compilation.

L2412 (E) Cannot open file : "file"
file (external symbol allocation information file) cannot be opened. Check whether the file name and access rights are correct.

L2413 (E) Cannot close file : "file"
file (external symbol allocation information file) cannot be closed. There may be insufficient disk space.

L2414 (E) Cannot read file : "file"
file (external symbol allocation information file) cannot be read. An empty file may have been input, or there may be insufficient disk space.

L2415 (E) Illegal map file : "file"
file (external symbol allocation information file) has an illegal format. Check whether the file name is correct.

L2416 (E) Order of functions specified by map file differs from one after linkage as to "function name"
The sequences of a function function name and those of other functions are different between the information within the external symbol allocation information file used at compilation and the location after linkage. The address of static within the function may be different between the external symbol allocation information file and the result after linkage.

L2417 (E) Map file is not the newest version: "file name"
The .bls file is not the latest version.

L2420 (E) "file 1" overlap address "file 2" : "address"
The address specified for file 1 is the same as that specified for file 2.
P2500  (E) Cannot find library file : "file"
file specified as a library file cannot be found.

P2501  (E) "instance" has been referenced as both an explicit specialization and a
generated instantiation
Instantiation has been requested of an instance already defined. For the file using
instance, confirm that form=relocate has not been used to generate a relocatable object
file.

P2502  (E) "instance" assigned to "file 1" and "file 2"
The definition of instance is duplicated in file 1 and file 2. For the file using instance,
confirm that form=relocate has not been used to generate a relocatable object file.

L3000  (F) No input file
There is no input file.

L3001  (F) No module in library
There are no modules in the library.

L3002  (F) Option "option 1" is ineffective without option "option 2"
The option option 1 requires that the option option 2 be specified.

L3004  (F) Unsupported inter-module optimization information type "type" in "file"
The file contains an unsupported inter-module optimization information type. Check if
the compiler and assembler versions are correct.

P3007  (F) Cannot create instantiation request file "file"
Unable to create an intermediate file for the instance generation process.
Check that the access rights of the object created folder and those beneath it are correct.

P3008  (F) Cannot change to directory "folder"
Unable to move to folder. Check that the folder exists.

P3009  (F) File "file" is read-only
file is read-only. Change its access right.

L3100  (F) Section address overflow out of range : "section"
The address of section exceeded FFFFFFFF. Change the address specified by the start
option. For details of the address space, refer to the hardware manual of the target CPU.

L3102  (F) Section contents overlap in absolute section "section"
Data addresses overlap within an absolute address section. Modify the source program.
L3110  (F) Illegal cpu type "cpu type" in "file"
A file with a different cpu type was input.

L3111  (F) Illegal encode type "endian type" in "file"
A file with a different endian type was input.

L3112  (F) Invalid relocation type in "file"
There is an unsupported relocation type in file. Ensure the compiler and assembler versions are correct.

L3120  (F) Illegal size of the absolute code section : "section" in "file"
Absolute-addressing program section section in file has an illegal size. When the CPU type is RX Family in big endian, correct the size to a multiple of 4.

L3200  (F) Too many sections
The number of sections exceeded the translation limit. It may be possible to eliminate this problem by specifying multiple file output.

L3201  (F) Too many symbols
The number of symbols exceeded the translation limit. It may be possible to eliminate this problem by specifying multiple file output.

L3202  (F) Too many modules
The number of modules exceeded the translation limit. Divide the library.

L3203  (F) Reserved module name "optlink_generates"
optlink_generates_** (** is a value from 01 to 99) is a reserved name used by the optimizing linkage editor. It is used as an .obj or .rel file name or a module name within a library. Modify the name if it is used as a file name or a module name within a library.

L3300* (F) Cannot open file : "file"
file cannot be opened. Check whether the file name and access rights are correct.
* The error number will be shown as P3300.

L3301  (F) Cannot close file : "file"
file cannot be closed. There may be insufficient disk space.

L3302  (F) Cannot write file : "file"
Writing to file is not possible. There may be insufficient disk space.

L3303* (F) Cannot read file : "file"
file cannot be read. An empty file may have been input, or there may be insufficient disk space.
* The error number will be shown as P3303.

L3310* (F) Cannot open temporary file
A temporary file cannot be opened. Check to ensure the HLNK_TMP specification is correct, or there may be insufficient disk space.
* The error number will be shown as P3310.

L3311 (F) Cannot close temporary file
A temporary file cannot be closed. There may be insufficient disk space.

L3312 (F) Cannot write temporary file
Writing to a temporary file is not possible. There may be insufficient disk space.

L3313 (F) Cannot read temporary file
A temporary file cannot be read. There may be insufficient disk space.

L3314 (F) Cannot delete temporary file
A temporary file cannot be deleted. There may be insufficient disk space.

L3320* (F) Memory overflow
There is no more space in the usable memory within the linkage editor. Increase the amount of memory available.
* The error number will be shown as P3320.

L3400 (F) Cannot execute "load module"
load module cannot be executed. Check whether the path for load module is set correctly.

L3410 (F) Interrupt by user
An interrupt generated by (Ctrl) + C keys from a standard input terminal was detected.

L3420 (F) Error occurred in "load module"
An error occurred while executing the load module.

P3500 (F) Bad instantiation request file -- instantiation assigned to more than one file
An intermediate file for the instance generation process contains an error. Recompile the files to be linked.

P3505 (F) Corrupted template information file or instantiation request file
An intermediate file for the template process or that for the instance generation process
contains an error.
Do not edit these files.

L4000* (–) Internal error : ("internal error code") "file line number" / "comment"
An internal error occurred during processing by the optimizing linkage editor. Make a
note of the internal error number, file name, line number, and comment in the message,
and contact the support department of the vendor.
* The error number will be shown as P4000.
Section 15  Limitations

15.1  Limitations of the Compiler

Table 15.1 shows the limitations of the compiler. Source programs must fall within these limitations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Limit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Invoking the compiler</td>
<td>Total number of macro names that can be specified</td>
<td>None (the limit depends on the memory capacity)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>using the define option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Length of file name (characters)</td>
<td>None (the limit depends on the OS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source programs</td>
<td>Length of one line (characters)</td>
<td>32768</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Number of source program lines in one file</td>
<td>None (other than the memory capacity)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Number of source program lines that can be compiled</td>
<td>None (other than the memory capacity)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preprocessing</td>
<td>Nesting levels of files in a #include directive</td>
<td>None (the limit depends on the memory capacity)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Total number of macro names that can be specified</td>
<td>None (other than the memory capacity)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in a #define directive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Number of parameters that can be specified using a</td>
<td>None (the limit depends on the memory capacity)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>macro definition or a macro call operation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Number of expansions of a macro name</td>
<td>None (the limit depends on the memory capacity)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nesting levels of #if, #ifdef, #ifndef, #else, or</td>
<td>None (the limit depends on the memory capacity)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>#elif directive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 15.1 Limitation of the Compiler (cont)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Limit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Preprocessing</td>
<td>Total number of operators and operands that can be specified in a <code>#if</code> or <code>#elif</code> directive</td>
<td>None (the limit depends on the memory capacity)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Declarations</td>
<td>Number of function definitions</td>
<td>None (the limit depends on the memory capacity)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Number of external identifiers used for external linkage</td>
<td>None (the limit depends on the memory capacity)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Number of valid internal identifiers used in one function</td>
<td>None (the limit depends on the memory capacity)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Total number of pointers, arrays, and function declarators that qualify the basic type</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Array dimensions</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Size of arrays and structures</td>
<td>2147483647 bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statements</td>
<td>Nesting levels of compound statements</td>
<td>None (the limit depends on the memory capacity)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nesting levels of statement in a combination of repeat (while, do, and for) and select (if and switch) statements</td>
<td>4096</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Number of goto labels that can be specified in one function</td>
<td>2147483646</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Number of switch statements</td>
<td>2048</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nesting levels of switch statements</td>
<td>2048</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Number of case labels in a single switch statement</td>
<td>2147483646</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nesting levels of for statements</td>
<td>2048</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 15.1 Limitation of the Compiler (cont)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Limit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Expressions</td>
<td>Character array length</td>
<td>32766</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Number of parameters that can be specified using a function definition or a function call operation</td>
<td>2,147,483,646</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Total number of operators and operands that can be specified in one expression</td>
<td>About 500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard library</td>
<td>Number of files that can be opened simultaneously in an open function</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sections</td>
<td>Length of section name*</td>
<td>8192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Number of sections that can be specified in #pragma section in one file</td>
<td>2045</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** This limitation is applied to the length of a section name created by the compiler when generating an object. The length that can be specified in `#pragma section` or `section` option is shorter than this limitation.
15.2 Limitations of the Assembler

Table 15.2 shows the limitations of the assembler.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Limit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Length of one line (characters)</td>
<td>8192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Character constants</td>
<td>Up to 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symbol character arrays</td>
<td>None*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of symbols</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of externally referenced symbols</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of externally defined symbols</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum size for a section</td>
<td>Up to H'FFFFFFFF bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of sections</td>
<td>H'FEF1 (with debugging information) or H'FEFA (without debugging information)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File include</td>
<td>Up to 30 levels of nesting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Character array length</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Length of file name (characters)</td>
<td>None (the limit depends on the OS)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: For a preprocessor variable name, macro name, or macro parameter name, it is limited to 32 characters. There is no limitation on the number of characters in a replacement symbol specified in .DEFINE. However, the replacement string literal is limited to 255 characters, and up to 8192 characters can be specified in one line.
16.1 Notes on Version Upgrade

This section describes notes when the version is upgraded from the earlier version (SuperH RISC engine C/C++ Compiler Package Ver. 8.x or lower).

16.1.1 Guaranteed Program Operation

When a program is developed with an upgraded version of the compiler, operation of the program may change. When creating the program, note the following and thoroughly test your program.

1. Programs Depending on Execution Time or Timing

C/C++ language specifications do not specify the program execution time. Therefore, a version difference in the compiler may cause operation changes due to timing lag with the program execution time and peripherals such as the I/O, or processing time differences in asynchronous processing, such as in interrupts.

2. Programs Including an Expression with Two or More Side Effects

Operations may change depending on the version when two or more side effects are included in one expression.

Example

```c
a[i++] = b[i++];  /* increment order of i is undefined. */
f(i++, i++);       /* Parameter value changes according to increment order. */
                /* This results in f(3, 4) or f(4, 3) when the value of i is 3. */
```

3. Programs with Overflow Results or an Illegal Operation

The value of the result is not guaranteed when an overflow occurs or an illegal operation is performed. Operations may change depending on the version.

Example

```c
int a, b;
x = (a*b)/10;  /* This may cause an overflow depending on the value range of a and b. */
```
4. No Initialization of Variables or Type Inequality

When a variable is not initialized or the parameter or return value types do not match between the calling and called functions, an illegal value is accessed. Operations may change depending on the version.

Example

file 1:
int f(double d)
{
    :
}

file 2:
int g(void)
{
    f(1);
}

The parameter of the calling function is the int type, but the parameter of the called function is the double type. Therefore, a value cannot be correctly referenced.

The information provided here does not include all cases that may occur. Please use this compiler prudently, and thoroughly test your programs keeping the differences between the versions in mind.

16.1.2 Compatibility with Earlier Version

The following notes cover situations in which the compiler (Ver. 5.x or lower) is used to generate a file that is to be linked with files generated by the earlier version of the compiler or with object files or library files that have been output by the assembler (Ver. 4.x or lower) or linkage editor (Ver. 6.x or lower), or in case the debugger used with the earlier version is to be continuously used.

1. Format Converter

Later versions of the compiler (Ver. 9.04 or higher) do not include the format converter. Contact our support center if you need to input object files (SYSROF) output by earlier versions of the compiler (up to Ver. 5.x) or assembler (up to Ver. 4.x) to the optimizing linkage editor.
2. **Point of Origin for Include Files**

When an include file specified with a relative directory format was searched for, in the earlier version, the search would start from the compiler’s directory. In the new version, the search starts from the directory that contains the source file.

3. **C++ Program**

Since the encoding rule and execution method were changed, C++ object files created by the earlier version of the compiler cannot be linked. Be sure to recompile such files.

The name of the library function for initial/post processing of the global class object, which is used to set the execution environment, has also been changed. Refer to section 9.2.2, Execution Environment Settings, and modify the name.

4. **Specification of Entry via .END (Assembly Program)**

Only an externally defined symbol can be specified with .END.

5. **Objects Supported by the Optimizing Linkage Editor**

The optimizing linkage editor supports different compiler or assembler depending on the version. The following shows the version of the supported tool. Linkage processing for the object file that is not described is not guaranteed.

- Optimizing linker Ver. 7: Ver. 7 or lower of the compiler, Ver. 5 or lower of the assembler
- Optimizing linker Ver. 8: Ver. 8 or lower of the compiler, Ver. 6 or lower of the assembler
- Optimizing linker Ver. 9: Ver. 9 or lower of the compiler, Ver. 7 or lower of the assembler

6. **16.1.3 Compatibility with Objects for Earlier Version**

(1) Specify the following option in Ver. 7 (or later) to link an object created by Ver. 7 (or later) with an object created by Ver. 6.

- gbr=user
- pack=4 (after Ver. 8)
- bit_order=left (after Ver. 8)

(2) The following options should always be the same in compiling user files and in building libraries. If the following option is specified during compilation in Ver. 6, the same option should be specified during compilation in Ver. 7 (or later).

- endian=big/little (SH-3, SH3-DSP, SH-4, SH-4A, or SH4AL-DSP)
- pic=0/1 (excluding SH-1)
- fpu=single/double (SH-4 or SH-4A)
- fpscr=safe/aggressive (SH-4 or SH-4A)
round=zero/nearest (SH-4 or SH-4A)
denormalize=on/off (SH-4 or SH-4A)
double=float (excluding SH-4 or SH-4A)
exception/noexception
rtti=on/off
rtnext/nortnext
macsave

(3) Assembly program
Conform to section 9.3.2, Function Calling Interface in the user’s manual.

Notes: 1. A compatibility regarding the version up is not guaranteed for the contents which is not written in user’s manual. If assembly code depends on the order to save or restore registers, and so on, an object created by Ver. 6 cannot be linked with an object created by Ver. 7 (or later).
2. Make contact with the sales office about linking with OS’s, middleware and so on.

16.1.4 Command-line Interface

1. Rules for Assembler and Optimizing Linkage Editor Command Lines
Spaces must be inserted between file names and options.
There are no limitations on the order in which options and their associated file names are specified.

2. Optimizing Linkage Editor Option
Support for the interactive specification of options has been abolished.
The inter-module optimizing tool (optlnksh), linkage editor (lnk), librarian (lbr), and object converter (cnvs) of earlier versions have been integrated into an optimizing linkage editor (optlnk). Therefore, command-line specifications have changed greatly. Tables 16.1 and 16.2 is a list of changed commands.
### Table 16.1 Changed Linkage Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Command Name</th>
<th>Ver. 6</th>
<th>Ver. 7</th>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>start</td>
<td>start=section (address)</td>
<td>start=section/ address</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Abbreviation: st</td>
<td>Abbreviation: star</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>rom</td>
<td>rom=(rom section, ram section)</td>
<td>rom =rom section= ram section</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>define</td>
<td>define=external name (defined value)</td>
<td>define=external name=defined value</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>rename</td>
<td>rename= ed=before change (after change), er=before change (after change), un=before change (after change)</td>
<td>rename= (before change= after change), (before change= after change), (before change= after change), —</td>
<td>The concept of unit has been abolished due to change in the object format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Abbreviation: re</td>
<td>Abbreviation: ren</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>delete</td>
<td>delete= ed=unit.symbol un=unit</td>
<td>delete=(symbol) —</td>
<td>The concept of unit has been abolished due to the change in the object format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>print/noprint</td>
<td>print noprint</td>
<td>list</td>
<td>File name can be omitted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>mlist</td>
<td>mlist</td>
<td>list</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>information</td>
<td>information</td>
<td>message</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>directory</td>
<td>directory</td>
<td>HLNK_DIR (environment variable)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>form</td>
<td>Abbreviation: f</td>
<td>Abbreviation: fo</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>output/nooutput</td>
<td>Abbreviation: o; nooutput can be specified.</td>
<td>Abbreviation: ou; nooutput cannot be specified.</td>
<td>Only output can be specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Direct range can be specified.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>cpu</td>
<td>Abbreviation: c</td>
<td>Abbreviation: cp</td>
<td>Direct range can be specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>elf/sysrof/sysrofplus</td>
<td>elf/sysrof/sysrofplus</td>
<td>Abolished</td>
<td>Always ELF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Abolished</td>
<td>Always exclude</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>align_section</td>
<td>align_section</td>
<td>Abolished</td>
<td>Always valid*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 16.1 Changed Linkage Commands (cont)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Command Name</th>
<th>Ver. 6</th>
<th>Ver. 7</th>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>check_section</td>
<td>check_section</td>
<td>Abolished</td>
<td>Always valid*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>cpucheck</td>
<td>cpucheck</td>
<td>Abolished</td>
<td>Always valid*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>udf/noudf</td>
<td>udf/noudf</td>
<td>Abolished</td>
<td>Always output*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>udfcheck</td>
<td>udfcheck</td>
<td>Abolished</td>
<td>Always valid*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>echo/noecho</td>
<td>echo/noecho</td>
<td>Abolished</td>
<td>Always disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>exchange</td>
<td>exchange</td>
<td>Abolished</td>
<td>The conception of unit has been abolished due to the change in the object format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>autoplay</td>
<td>autoplay</td>
<td>Abolished</td>
<td>No target cpu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>abort</td>
<td>abort</td>
<td>Abolished</td>
<td>Interactive format has been abolished.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>list</td>
<td>list</td>
<td>Abolished</td>
<td>Different from the list option for Ver. 7.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>library/nolibrary</td>
<td>nolibrary can be specified.</td>
<td>nolibrary cannot be specified.</td>
<td>Only library can be specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>exit</td>
<td>Cannot be omitted.</td>
<td>Can be omitted.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>debug/nodebug</td>
<td>At default: nodebug</td>
<td>At default: depends on the debugging information in the input file</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Invalidated by the `change_message` option.
Table 16.2 Changed Librarian Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Command Name</th>
<th>Ver. 2</th>
<th>Ver. 7</th>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>add</td>
<td>add</td>
<td>input</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>directory</td>
<td>directory</td>
<td>HLNK_DIR</td>
<td>(environment variable)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>slist</td>
<td>slist</td>
<td>list</td>
<td>show</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>list</td>
<td>list (s)</td>
<td>list</td>
<td>show</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>delete</td>
<td>Abbreviation: d</td>
<td>Abbreviation: del</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>create</td>
<td>create (s</td>
<td>u)</td>
<td>output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>output</td>
<td>output (s</td>
<td>u)</td>
<td>output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Abbreviation: o</td>
<td>Abbreviation: ou</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>replace</td>
<td>Abbreviation: r</td>
<td>Abbreviation: rep</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>abort</td>
<td>abort</td>
<td>Abolished</td>
<td>Interactive format has been abolished.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>exit</td>
<td>Abbreviation disabled.</td>
<td>Abbreviation enabled.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

16.1.5 Provided Contents

In the SuperH RISC engine C/C++ Compiler Package, the following files have been changed.

1. Standard Library File
   To specify any function interface or optimizing option, a standard library generator is provided instead of the conventional standard library files.

2. Header File
   The header file _h_c_lib.h newly added declares the _INITSCT, _CALL_INIT, and _CALL_END functions as standard libraries.
   The header file fixed.h that defines various limitations concerning the internal representation of fixed-point numbers is also added.
16.1.6 List File Specification

1. Optimizing Linkage Editor
   The formats of the conventional linkage map and library lists have been renewed.

16.2 Additions and Improvements

16.2.1 Common Additions and Improvements (Package: Ver. 6)

1. Loosening Limits on Values
   Limitations on source programs and command lines have been greatly loosened:
   — Length of file name: 251 bytes -> unlimited
   — Length of symbol: 251 bytes -> unlimited
   — Number of symbols: 32,767 -> unlimited
   — Number of source program lines: C/C++: 32,767, ASM: 65,535 -> unlimited
   — Length of C program string literals: 512 characters -> 32,766 characters
   — Length of assembly program line: 255 characters -> 8,192 characters
   — Length of subcommand file line: ASM: 300 bytes, optlnk: 512 bytes -> unlimited
   — Number of parameters of the optimizing linkage editor rom option: 64 -> unlimited

2. Hyphens for Directory and File Names
   A hyphen (-) can be specified for directory and file names.

3. Specification of Copyright Display
   Specifying the logo/nologo option can specify whether or not the copyright output is displayed.

4. Prefix to Error Messages
   To support the error-help function in the integrated development environment, a prefix has been added to error messages for the compiler and optimizing linkage editor.

16.2.2 Added and Improved Compiler Functions

Functions Added and Improved in Ver. 7

(a) External Variable Access Optimization Function (map option support)
   Accesses external variables and optimizes function branch instructions based on the addresses of variables at linkage and addresses where functions are allocated.
Optimization is performed by recompiling the program with the map option specifying the external symbol allocation-information file output by the optimizing linkage editor when the program was compiled for the first time.

(b) Automatic Creation of Code with GBR-Relative Access Code (gbr option support)
When gbr=auto is specified, the compiler sets the GBR and automatically creates code with which GBR-relative access is used. The contents of GBR are guaranteed before and after function calls. However, the GBR related intrinsic functions cannot be used.

(c) Enhancement of the speed/size Selection Option
Provides more precise adjustment to the speed/size option by the newly added shift, blockcopy, division, and approxdiv options.

(d) Enhancement of Intrinsic Functions
- The number of intrinsic functions have been increased
  Double-precision multiplication, SWAP, LDTLB, and NOP instructions.
- The number of #pragma extensions has increased and some extensions have been modified
  #pragma entry: Specifies entry functions and sets SP
  #pragma stacksize: Specifies the stack size
  #pragma interrupt: Supports sp=<variable>+<constant> and sp=&<variable>+<constant>
- Section operators are supported
  Functions to describe the section address and the size reference in C language have been added.
- The criteria for the generation of errors by cast expressions
  Checking of the cast expression for the address-initialization of external variables has been made less strict.

(e) Improvement of Library Handling
- Reentrant library is supported
  When the reent option is specified to the library generator, a reentrant library is created.
- The unit of the size allocated by the malloc calls and the number of I/O files can be changed
  In the initial settings for the C/C++ library function, _sbrk_size can be used to specify the unit size of a block for use with malloc, and _nfiles can be used to specify the number of I/O files. This saves RAM capacity. The default size for malloc is 1024, and the default size for the number of I/O files is 20.
• Simple I/O Support

When the `nofloat` option is specified by the library generator, a small-size I/O routine that does not support floating-point conversion will be created.

2. Functions Added and Improved in Ver. 7.1
(a) Optimizing options are added

The following options are added, and enabled finer adjustment of the level of compiler optimization
• global_volatile
• opt_range
• del_vacant_loop
• max_unroll
• infinite_loop
• global_alloc
• struct_alloc
• const_var_propagate
• const_load
• schedule

3. Functions Added and Improved in Ver. 8
(a) Support for New CPUs

The SH-4A and SH4AL-DSP are supported.
(b) Extension and Change of Language Specifications
• The DSP-C language is supported.
• The data types of long long and unsigned long long are supported.
(c) Enhancement of Intrinsic Functions
• Intrinsic functions for DSP are added.
  Detection of absolute value and MSB, arithmetic shift, rounding operation, bit pattern copy, module addressing setting, module addressing cancellation, and CS bit setting
• Intrinsic functions for SH4-A and SH4AL-DSP are added.
  Calculation of sine and cosine, reciprocal number of square root, invalidation of an instruction cache block, prefetch of an instruction cache block, and synchronous data operation
• #pragma extensions are added and changed.
  
  #pragma ifunc: Disables or enables save and restore of floating-point registers.
  
  #pragma bit_order: Specifies the bit field order.
  
  #pragma pack: Specifies the boundary alignment value for structures, unions, and classes.

(d) Automatic Selection of Enumeration Type Size (**auto_enum** option support)

Enumeration data is handled as the minimum data type with which enumeration data can fit in.

(e) Specification of Boundary Alignment of Structure, Union, and Class Members (**pack** option support)

Boundary alignment of structure, union, and class members can be specified.

(f) Specification of Bit Field Order (**bit_order** option support)

The order of bit field members can be specified.

(g) Change of Error Level (**change_message** option support)

The error level of information-level and warning-level error messages can be individually changed.

(h) Loosening Limits on Values

Number of switch statements: 256 -> 2048

(i) DSP Library of Fixed-Point Type Support

DSP library of fixed-point type is supported.

4. Functions Added and Improved in Ver. 9

(a) Support for New CPUs

The SH-2A and SH2A-FPU are supported.

An option and a #pragma extension are added to use TBR in the SH-2A and SH2A-FPU.

(b) Extension and Change of Language Specifications

• The following items conform to the ANSI standard.
  
  • Array index
    
    int iarray[10], i=3;
    
    i[iarray] = 0; /* Same as iarray[i] = 0; */
  
  • union bit field specification enabled
    
    union u {
      int a:3;
    };

•
• Constant operation
  static int i=1||2/0; /* Error is changed to warning for zero division */
• Addition of library and macro
  strtol, FOPEN_MAX
• The following items conform to the ANSI standard when the strict Ansi option is
  specified, which may cause a difference in results between Ver. 9 and former versions.
  • unsigned int and long operations
  • Associativity of floating-point operations
• The variables with register storage class specification are preferentially allocated to
  registers when the enable_register option is specified.

(c) Enhancement of Intrinsic Functions
• Intrinsic functions for SH-2A and SH2A-FPU are added.
  Saturation operations and TBR setting and reference
• Intrinsic functions for instructions that cannot be written in C are added.
  Reference and setting of the T bit, extraction of the middle of registers connected,
  addition with carry, subtraction with borrow, sign inversion, 1-bit division, rotation, and
  shift.

(d) Loosening Limits on Values
  The following limits are loosened.
  • Nesting level in a combination of repeat statements (while, do, and for) and select
    statements (if and switch): 32 levels -> 4096 levels
  • Number of goto labels allowed in one function: 511 -> 2,147,483,646
  • Nesting level of switch statements: 16 levels -> 2048 levels
  • Number of case labels allowed in one switch statement: 511 -> 2,147,483,646
  • Number of parameters allowed in a function definition or function call: 63 ->
    2,147,483,646
  • Length of section name: 31 bytes -> 8192 bytes
  • Number of sections allowed in #pragma section in one file: 64 -> 2045

(e) Extension of Memory Space Allocation
  More detailed settings can be made for memory space allocation.
  • abs16/abs20/abs28/abs32 option
  • #pragma abs16/abs20/abs28/abs32

(f) Specification of Absolute Address for Variables (support for #pragma address)
  An absolute address can be specified for an external variable.
(g) Extension of Optimization for External Variable Access (support for map option)
Optimization is applied to access to external variables defined in the file to be compiled. Recompilation, which is required for the map option, is not necessary.

(h) Improvement in Precision of Mathematics Library
The precision of operation using the mathematics library is improved, which may cause a difference in results between Ver. 9 and former versions.

5. Functions Added and Improved in Ver. 9.01
(a) Debugging Information Output Mode Added (Support for optimize=debug_only Option)
The information on local variables can be always referenced through the optimize=debug_only option setting.

(b) Interrupt Specifications Added (SH-3, SH3-DSP, SH-4, SH-4A, and SH4AL-DSP)
The following interrupt specifications for #pragma interrupt have been added so that high-performance interrupt functions can be created.
- Interrupt specifications
  #pragma interrupt sr_rts  Register bank switching and RTS-instruction return
  #pragma interrupt bank    Interrupt handling function
  #pragma interrupt rts     RTS-instruction return
- Intrinsic function
  sr_jsr() Nested interrupt control

(c) Function for Omitting Range Check for Conversion between Floating-Point Number and Integer (Support for simple_float_conv Option: SH-2E, SH2A-FPU, SH-4, and SH-4A)
Through the simple_float_conv option setting, the check of the target value range for the type conversion between unsigned integers and floating-point numbers can be omitted from the output code.

(d) Added and Modified Specifications of Existing Functions
- The division=cpu=inline | runtime option can also be specified in the SH-2A and SH2A-FPU.
- Intrinsic functions ocbi(), ocbp(), and ocbwb(), which manipulate the cache block, can also be specified in the SH-4.
- The function specified with #pragma inline is inline-expanded regardless of the inline option.
- The contents of the files specified with the subcommand option are output to the compile listing when the subcommand option and listfile option are specified. Accordingly, the options are output to the listing file when the listing file is output through the Renesas integrated development environment.
(e) Improvement of Mathematical Function Libraries (SH-1, SH-2, SH2-DSP, SH-2A, SH-3, SH3-DSP, and SH4AL-DSP)
   The object sizes of floating-point mathematical functions `sinf`, `cosf`, `tanf`, `expf`, `logf`, `sqrtf`, and `atanf` have been reduced and their speed and precision have been improved. Note that the results of these functions may differ from those output by Ver. 9.00.

6. Functions Added and Improved in Ver. 9.02
   (a) Specifying the allocation of variables in the $G0 and $G1 sections
      Variables declared with `#pragma gbr_base` and `#pragma gbr_base1` can be allocated according to size by using the `stuff_gbr` option.
   (b) Alignment of branch-destination addresses with four-byte boundaries
      The `align4` option and `#pragma align4` can be used to align destination addresses for branch instructions with four-byte boundaries.
   (c) Preventing inline expansion for functions with the inline specification
      The `cpp_noinline` option prevents the inline expansion of functions and member functions that have the inline specification in C++.

7. Functions Added and Improved in Ver. 9.03
   (a) Selection of destinations for the allocation of variables declared with the `const` and `volatile` qualifiers
      The `const_volatile` option is used to select the initialized data area or constant area for the allocation of initialized variables declared with the `const` and `volatile` specifiers.
   (b) Inclusion of intrinsic functions for bitwise processing
      When compiled, the following intrinsic functions invariably employ instructions for bitwise operations of the SH-2A core for the processing of individual bits in memory.

      `bset()`: The specified bit in memory is set to 1.
      `bclr()`: The specified bit in memory is cleared to 0.
      `bcopy()`: The value of a bit in memory is copied to another.
      `bnotcopy()`: The value of a bit in memory is inverted and the result is copied to another bit.

8. Functions Added and Improved in Ver. 9.04
   (a) Optimization in consideration of type at locations indicated by pointers
      The `alias=ansi` option can be used to select optimization in consideration of type at locations indicated by pointers in accord with the ANSI standard.
(b) Ability to prevent the output of DIVS and DIVU instructions (for the SH-2A and SH2A-FPU)
The `nouse_div_inst` option can be used to prevent the output of DIVS and DIVU instructions
in code for SH-2A CPU cores.

(c) Optimization of the floating-point expressions by changing the order of operations
The `float_order` option can be used to optimize the floating-point expressions by changing
the order of operations, aggressively.

16.2.3 Added and Improved Assembler Functions

1. Functions Added and Improved in Ver. 7
   (a) Support for New CPUs
       The SH-2A and SH2A-FPU are supported.
   (b) Loosening Limits on Values
       The limitation on the number of characters in a replacement symbol specified in the `define`
       option or `.DEFINE` is loosened from 32 characters to unlimited.
   (c) Support for `.STACK` Directive
       The `.STACK` directive is supported, which enables the stack size of a function written in
       the assembly language to be reflected in the CallWalker.

16.2.4 Added and Improved Optimizing Linkage Editor Functions

1. Functions Added and Improved in Ver. 7
   (a) Support for Wild Cards
       A wild card can be specified with a section name of an input file or for file names in start
       options.
   (b) Search Path
       An environment variable (HLNK_DIR) can be used to specify several search paths for
       input files or library files.
   (c) Subdividing the Output of Load Modules
       The output of an absolute load module file can be subdivided.
   (d) Changing the Error Level
       For information, warning, and error level messages, the error level or disabling/enabling
       the output can be individually changed.
   (e) Support for Binary and HEX
       Binary files can be input and output.
       Intel® HEX-type output can be selected.
(f) Output of Stack Amount Information

The stack option can output an information file for the CallWalker.

(g) Debugging Information Deletion

The strip option can be used to delete only debugging information from either the load module file or the library file.

(h) Debugging Information Compression

The compress option can be used to compress debugging information.

2. Functions Added and Improved in Ver. 7.1

Output of External Symbol Allocation-Information File (map option support)

When the map option is specified, an external symbol allocation file is created for use by the compiler in optimizing accesses to external variables.

3. Functions Added and Improved in Ver. 8

(a) Output Specification of Empty Areas

When the space option is specified, the specified value can be written to an empty area.

(b) Specification of Memory Amount

The memory option can be used to specify the internal memory amount.

(c) Changing Error Level when a Section Address is Overlapped

When the section address is overlapped at linking, the error level was ‘Fatal’ in Ver. 7, which has been changed as ‘Error’ in Ver. 8.0. This enables continuous processing under user’s responsibilities by specifying the change_message option even if the section address is overlapped.

4. Functions Added and Improved in Ver. 9

(a) Support for New CPUs

Object files with the SH-2A or SH2A-FPU as the CPU type can be input.

(b) Alignment Value Specification for Input Section with binary Option

A boundary alignment value can be specified for the section specified by the binary option.

(c) Output of Cross-Reference Information

The cross-reference information is output to the linkage list when the show=xreference option is specified, which is useful to determine the location that refers to a variable or function.

(d) Notification of Unreferenced Symbol

When the msg_unused option is specified, the user can be notified of unreferenced symbols even if optimization is not specified.
5. Functions Added and Improved in Ver. 9.01
(a) Suppression of Optimization in Section Units
   A new option (**section_forbid**) has been added, which allows suppression of inter-module optimization in section units.
(b) Enhanced Overlay Function
   Parentheses "( )" can be used in the **start** option, which enables descriptions of more complex overlay allocations than the former-version assemblers.
(c) Notification of Same-Name Symbols in a Library
   The following message is output as a warning when multiple symbols have the same name in a library file used at linkage.
   ** L1320 (W) Duplicate Symbol "symbol" in "library (module)"

6. Functions Added and Improved in Ver. 9.02
(a) Detection of Overlapped Objects in Physical Space
   A new option (**ps_check**) has been added, which can detect overlapped objects in the physical space.
(b) Specification of Byte Count of Data Record
   A new option (**byte_count**) has been added, which can change the maximum byte count for a data record in the Intel-Hex-type file.
(c) Unused Area Filling with Random Numbers
   The **space=random** option enables an unused area to be filled with random numbers.
(d) Reduction of Memory Size Occupied for Library Creation
   The memory occupancy reduction function (**memory=low**) can also be used for library file creation.

7. Functions Added and Improved in Ver. 9.03
(a) Output of the total sizes of sections according to section types
   The **total_size** option can be used to send the total sizes of the following types of section to standard output.
   Executable section
   ROM allocation section
   RAM allocation section
(b) Output of the total sizes of sections to the linkage list
The `show=total_size` option can be used for output to the linkage list of the total sizes of different types of section produced by the `total_size` option.

8. Functions Added and Improved in Ver. 9.04
(a) Placing the results of CRC calculations in memory
The `crc` option can be used to place the results of calculations for CRC operations in a specified range of code at designated locations in memory.

9. Functions Added and Improved in Ver. 9.05
(a) Splitting of sections when allocation to the specified region is not possible.
In the allocation of sections to addresses, if a section does not fit in the designated range of memory, the `cpu=stride` option can be used to split sections and allocate the excess to the next section with the same type of memory.
(b) Specifying sections as outside the scope of splitting
When the `cpu=stride` option is in effect, the `contiguous_section` option can be used to specify sections for allocation to a given type of memory with no splitting.
(c) Strengthened functionality for output of listings
The `show=all` option can be used to select the output of all listings with full details.
(d) Output of linkage maps when errors are encountered
The output of linkage maps in cases of termination due to errors is specifiable.
(e) Easier specification of input files
Binary files are specifiable as input files at the time of output of relocatable files.

10. Functions Added and Improved in Ver. 10.00
(a) Multiplication of the number for alignment in setting up section sizes
The `padding` option can be used to multiply the number for alignment in setting up section sizes.

11. Functions Added and Improved in Ver. 10.01
(a) Alignment on boundaries
The `aligned_section` option can be used to change the boundary-alignment number for specified sections to 16 bytes in linkage units.
(b) Specifying the section attributes of binary data
The `binary=<section attribute>` option can be used to specify the section attributes of binary data.
17.1 \textbf{S-Type and HEX File Format}

This section describes the S-type files and HEX files that are output by the optimizing linkage editor.

17.1.1 \textbf{S-Type File Format}

\begin{figure}[h]
\centering
\includegraphics[width=\textwidth]{s_file_format.png}
\caption{S-Type File Format}
\end{figure}

(a) Header record (S0 record)

(b) Data record (S1, S2, and S3 records)

(i) When the load address is 0 to FFFF

(ii) When the load address is 10000 to FFFFFFFF
Figure 17.1  S-Type File Format (cont)
17.1.2 HEX File Format

The execution address of each data record is obtained as described below.

- **Segment address**
  
  \[(\text{Segment base address} \ll 4) + (\text{Address offset of the data record})\]

- **Linear address**
  
  \[(\text{Linear base address} \ll 16) + (\text{Address offset of the data record})\]
Figure 17.2  HEX File Format
(d) Start Address Record (03 Record)

| : 0 4 0 0 0 0 3 XX XX XX XX XX XX XX |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Record type | Address offset | Byte count [1] | Start mark |

(e) Expansion Linear Address Record (04 Record)

| : 0 2 0 0 0 0 4 XX XX XX XX XX |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Record type | Address offset | Byte count [1] | Start mark |

(f) 32-Bit Start Linear Address Record (05 Record)

| : 0 4 0 0 0 0 0 5 XX XX XX XX XX XX XX XX |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Record type | Address offset | Byte count [1] | Start mark |

Notes:

[1] The number of bytes from the byte following the record type to the previous byte of the checksum.
[2] 2’s complement of the sum of the byte count and the data between the byte count and checksum, in hexadecimal (lower 8 bits are valid).
[3] Line feed is added immediately after the checksum.

Figure 17.2   HEX File Format (cont)
## 17.2 ASCII Code List

### Table 17.1 ASCII Code List

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lower 4 bits</th>
<th>Upper 4 bits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>NUL, DLE, SP, 0, @, P, `, p</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>SOH, DC1, !, 1, A, Q, a, q</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>STX, DC2, *, 2, B, R, b, r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>ETX, DC3, #, 3, C, S, c, s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>EOT, DC4, $, 4, D, T, d, t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>ENQ, NAK, %, 5, E, U, e, u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>ACK, SYN, &amp;, 6, F, V, f, v</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>BEL, ETB, *, 7, G, W, g, w</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>BS, CAN, (, 8, H, X, h, x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>HT, EM, ), 9, I, Y, i, y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>LF, SUB, *, 0, J, Z, j, z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>VT, ESC, +, :, K, [, k, \</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>FF, FS, ., &lt;, L, , I,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>CR, GS, –, =, M, ], m, }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>SO, RS, &gt;, N, ^, n, ~</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>SI, US, /, ?, O, _, o, DEL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>